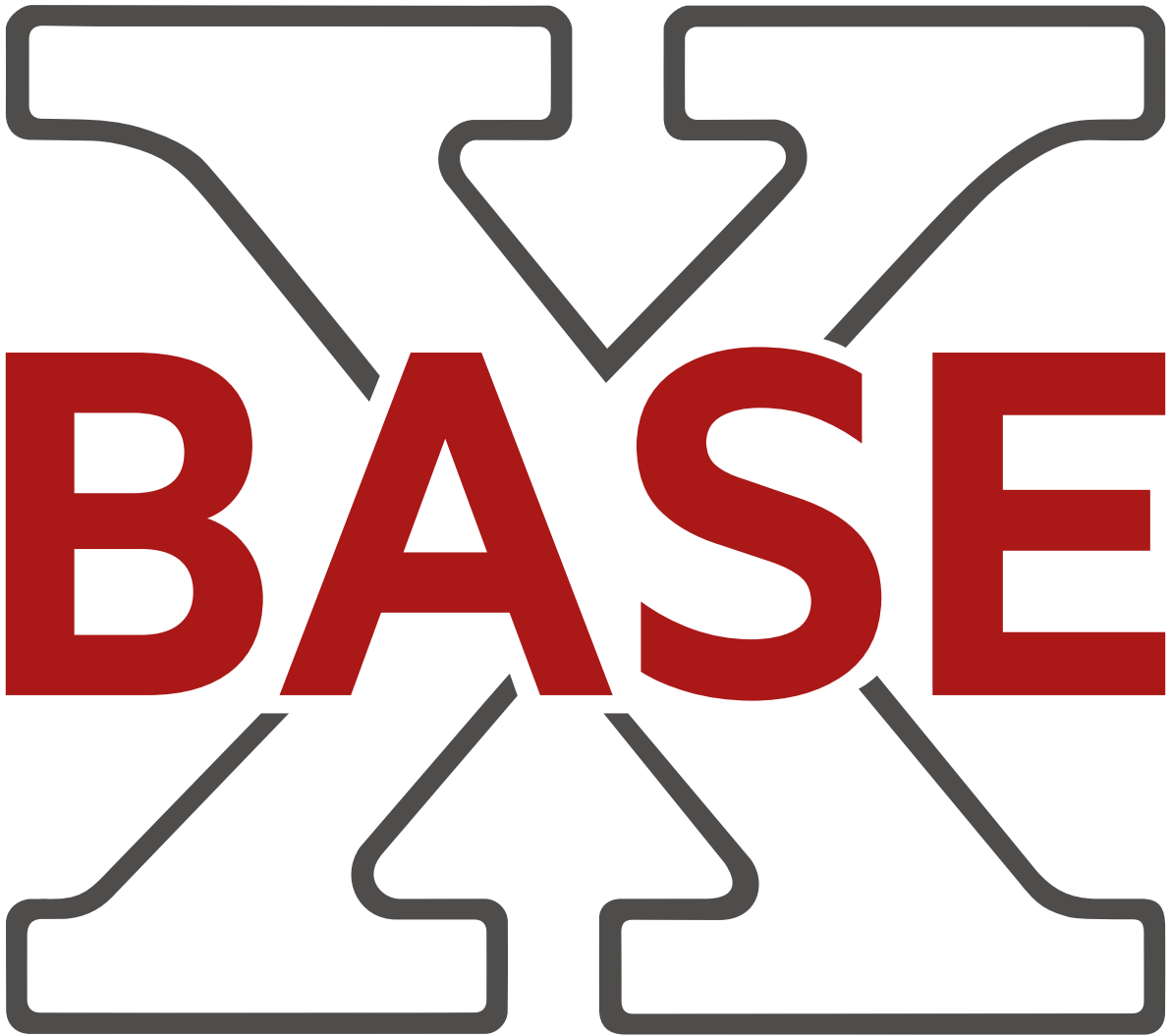


# BaseX Documentation

Version 10



---

**BaseX Documentation:**

**Version 10**



Publication date 2022-08-01

Content is available under [Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported \(CC BY-SA 3.0\)](#).



---

# Table of Contents

I. Main Page .....	1
1. Main Page .....	2
Getting Started .....	2
XQuery Portal .....	2
Advanced User's Guide .....	3
2. BaseX 10 .....	4
Prerequisites .....	4
Migrating Applications .....	4
Storage .....	4
Whitespaces .....	4
Value Resources .....	4
Backups .....	5
XQuery .....	5
Compilation .....	5
Main-Memory Updates .....	6
Key-Value Store .....	6
Modules .....	6
Commands .....	7
HTTP Requests .....	7
Catalogs .....	7
Graphical User Interface .....	7
REST .....	8
II. Getting Started .....	9
3. Getting Started .....	10
Overview .....	10
Tutorials and Slides .....	10
4. Startup .....	12
Introduction .....	12
Startup .....	12
Core Package .....	12
Full Distributions .....	12
Web Archive .....	13
Other Distributions .....	13
Concurrent Operations .....	13
Changelog .....	13
5. Graphical User Interface .....	15
Startup .....	15
Introduction .....	15
Database Management .....	16
Editor .....	17
Project View .....	18
Input Bar .....	18
Find .....	18
XQuery .....	18
Command .....	18
Visualizations .....	19
Real-time Options .....	20
Look and Feel .....	20
Changelog .....	20
6. Shortcuts .....	22
Editor .....	22
Code Completions .....	22
Editor Shortcuts .....	22
Changelog .....	25
7. Command-Line Client .....	26

Startup .....	26
Operations .....	26
Create a Database .....	26
Execute a Query .....	26
Database Commands .....	26
Multiple Resources .....	27
Backup and Restore .....	27
8. Database Server .....	28
Startup .....	28
Server .....	28
Client .....	28
Introduction .....	28
Language Bindings .....	29
Changelog .....	29
9. Web Application .....	30
Startup .....	30
Servlet Container .....	30
Maven .....	31
Services .....	31
Configuration .....	31
Authentication .....	32
Changelog .....	32
10. DBA .....	34
Startup .....	34
Logs .....	34
Databases .....	34
Queries .....	35
Files .....	35
Jobs .....	35
Users .....	35
Sessions .....	36
Settings .....	36
Changelog .....	36
III. Command Line .....	37
11. Command-Line Options .....	38
Standalone .....	38
GUI .....	40
Server .....	40
Client .....	40
HTTP Server .....	42
Changelog .....	43
12. Start Scripts .....	45
Standalone .....	45
Windows: basex.bat .....	45
Linux/Mac: basex .....	45
GUI, Server, Client .....	46
HTTP Server .....	46
Windows: basexhttp.bat .....	46
Linux/Mac: basexhttp .....	46
Included Start Scripts .....	46
Changelog .....	47
IV. General Info .....	48
13. Databases .....	49
Create Databases .....	49
Access Resources .....	49
XML Documents .....	49
Binary Data .....	50
XQuery Values .....	51

---

Update Resources .....	51
Commands .....	51
XQuery .....	51
Export Database .....	52
Main-Memory Databases .....	52
Changelog .....	52
14. Commands .....	53
Basics .....	53
Command Scripts .....	53
Glob Syntax .....	53
Valid Names .....	54
Aliases .....	54
Database Operations .....	54
CREATE DB .....	54
OPEN .....	54
CHECK .....	55
CLOSE .....	55
LIST .....	55
DIR .....	55
EXPORT .....	56
CREATE INDEX .....	56
DROP INDEX .....	56
ALTER DB .....	56
DROP DB .....	56
COPY .....	57
INSPECT .....	57
Backups .....	57
CREATE BACKUP .....	57
DROP BACKUP .....	57
ALTER BACKUP .....	57
RESTORE .....	58
SHOW BACKUPS .....	58
Querying .....	58
XQUERY .....	58
GET .....	58
BINARY GET .....	59
FIND .....	59
TEST .....	59
REPO INSTALL .....	59
REPO LIST .....	60
REPO DELETE .....	60
Updates .....	60
ADD .....	60
DELETE .....	60
RENAME .....	61
PUT .....	61
BINARY PUT .....	61
OPTIMIZE .....	61
FLUSH .....	62
User Management .....	62
CREATE USER .....	62
ALTER USER .....	62
ALTER PASSWORD .....	62
DROP USER .....	63
GRANT .....	63
PASSWORD .....	63
Administration .....	63
SHOW OPTIONS .....	63

---

---

SHOW SESSIONS .....	63
SHOW USERS .....	64
KILL .....	64
INFO DB .....	64
INFO INDEX .....	64
INFO STORAGE .....	64
General Commands .....	65
RUN .....	65
EXECUTE .....	65
SET .....	65
INFO .....	65
HELP .....	65
EXIT .....	66
QUIT .....	66
Changelog .....	66
15. Options .....	69
Global Options .....	69
General Options .....	70
Client/Server Architecture .....	71
HTTP Services .....	74
Create Options .....	75
General .....	75
Parsing .....	76
XML Parsing .....	77
Indexing .....	79
Full-Text Indexing .....	81
Query Options .....	82
QUERYINFO .....	82
MIXUPDATES .....	82
BINDINGS .....	82
INLINELIMIT .....	83
UNROLLLIMIT .....	83
ENFORCEINDEX .....	83
COPYNODE .....	83
TAILCALLS .....	84
WITHDB .....	84
DEFAULTDB .....	84
FORCECREATE .....	84
CHECKSTRINGS .....	84
WRAPJAVA .....	85
LSERROR .....	85
RUNQUERY .....	85
RUNS .....	85
Serialization Options .....	85
SERIALIZE .....	85
SERIALIZER .....	85
EXPORTER .....	86
XMLPLAN .....	86
FULLPLAN .....	86
Other Options .....	86
AUTOFLUSH .....	86
WRITEBACK .....	86
MAXSTAT .....	87
Changelog .....	87
16. Configuration .....	90
Configuration Files .....	90
Home Directory .....	90
Database Directory .....	90

---

---

Log Files .....	90
Changelog .....	91
V. Integration .....	92
17. Integrating oXygen .....	93
Access Database Resources .....	93
Preparations .....	93
Configuration .....	93
Perform Queries .....	94
One-Time Setup .....	94
Execute Query .....	95
18. Integrating Eclipse .....	96
Preparations .....	96
Access Database Resources .....	96
Preparations .....	96
Configuration .....	96
Perform Queries .....	97
One-Time Setup .....	97
Execute Query .....	98
19. Integrating IntelliJ IDEA .....	99
Preparations .....	99
xquery-intellij-plugin .....	99
Installation .....	99
Configuring The Processor .....	100
Querying Your Data .....	100
Conclusion .....	102
XQuery Support Plugin .....	102
Installation .....	102
Setting Up .....	103
Configuring The Processor .....	103
Querying Your Data .....	105
Conclusion .....	106
VI. XQuery Portal .....	107
20. XQuery .....	108
21. XQuery 3.0 .....	109
Enhanced FLWOR Expressions .....	109
group by .....	109
count .....	110
allowing empty .....	110
window .....	110
Function Items .....	111
Simple Map Operator .....	111
Try/Catch .....	111
Switch .....	112
Expanded QNames .....	112
Namespace Constructors .....	113
String Concatenations .....	113
External Variables .....	113
Serialization .....	113
Context Item .....	113
Annotations .....	114
Functions .....	114
Changelog .....	114
22. Higher-Order Functions .....	116
Function Items .....	116
Function Types .....	116
Higher-Order Functions .....	116
Sequences .....	117
Folds .....	119

---

---

23. XQuery 3.1 .....	122
Maps .....	122
Arrays .....	122
Atomization .....	123
Lookup Operator .....	123
Arrow Operator .....	124
String Constructor .....	124
Serialization .....	125
Adaptive Serialization .....	125
JSON Serialization .....	125
Functions .....	125
Map Functions .....	125
Array Functions .....	126
JSON Functions .....	126
fn:sort .....	127
fn:contains-token .....	127
fn:parse-ietf-date .....	127
fn:apply .....	127
fn:random-number-generator .....	128
fn:format-number .....	128
fn:tokenize .....	128
fn:trace .....	128
fn:string-join .....	128
fn:default-language .....	129
Appendix .....	129
Binary Data .....	129
Collations .....	129
Enclosed Expressions .....	129
Changelog .....	129
24. XQuery Extensions .....	131
Expressions .....	131
Ternary If .....	131
Elvis Operator .....	131
If Without Else .....	131
Functions .....	132
Regular Expressions .....	132
Serialization .....	132
Option Declarations .....	132
Database Options .....	132
XQuery Locks .....	132
Pragmas .....	132
BaseX Pragmas .....	132
Database Pragmas .....	133
Annotations .....	133
Function Inlining .....	133
Lazy Evaluation .....	134
XQuery Locks .....	134
Non-Determinism .....	134
Namespaces .....	135
Suffixes .....	135
Miscellaneous .....	135
Changelog .....	135
25. XQuery Optimizations .....	136
Introduction .....	136
Compilation .....	136
Pre-Evaluation .....	136
Variable Inlining .....	136
Function Inlining .....	137

---



---

Loop Unrolling .....	137
Paths .....	138
FLWOR Rewritings .....	138
Static Typing .....	139
Pure Logic .....	140
Optimization .....	140
Database Statistics .....	140
Index Rewritings .....	141
Evaluation .....	143
Comparisons .....	143
Changelog .....	143
26. Module Library .....	144
Conventions .....	144
Changelog .....	146
27. Java Bindings .....	147
Identification .....	147
Classes .....	147
Functions and Variables .....	147
Namespace Declarations .....	148
Module Imports .....	149
Integration .....	149
Annotations .....	149
Updates .....	150
Locking .....	151
Data Types .....	151
URI Rewriting .....	153
Changelog .....	154
28. Repository .....	155
Introduction .....	155
Accessing Modules .....	155
Commands .....	155
Installation .....	156
Listing .....	156
Removal .....	156
Packaging .....	156
XQuery .....	156
Java .....	156
Combined .....	158
EXPath Packaging .....	159
XQuery .....	159
Java .....	159
Performance .....	160
Changelog .....	160
29. Full-Text .....	161
Introduction .....	161
Combining Results .....	161
Positional Filters .....	162
Match Options .....	162
BaseX Features .....	163
Languages .....	163
Scoring .....	164
Thesaurus .....	164
Fuzzy Querying .....	165
Mixed Content .....	165
Functions .....	166
Collations .....	166
Changelog .....	167
30. XQuery Update .....	168

---

---

Features .....	168
Updating Expressions .....	168
Main-Memory Updates .....	169
Functions .....	170
Concepts .....	171
Pending Update List .....	171
Returning Results .....	171
Effects .....	172
Original Files .....	172
Indexes .....	172
Error Messages .....	172
Changelog .....	172
31. Indexes .....	174
Structural Indexes .....	174
Name Index .....	174
Path Index .....	174
Document Index .....	175
Value Indexes .....	175
Text Index .....	175
Attribute Index .....	176
Token Index .....	176
Full-Text Index .....	177
Selective Indexing .....	177
Enforce Rewritings .....	178
Custom Index Structures .....	179
Performance .....	179
Updates .....	180
Changelog .....	180
32. Serialization .....	182
Parameters .....	182
Character mappings .....	185
Changelog .....	185
33. XQuery Errors .....	187
Static Errors .....	187
Type Errors .....	189
Dynamic Errors .....	189
Functions Errors .....	190
Serialization Errors .....	192
Update Errors .....	192
Full-Text Errors .....	194
BaseX Errors .....	194
VII. XQuery Modules .....	196
34. Admin Module .....	197
Conventions .....	197
Database Logs .....	197
admin:logs .....	197
admin:write-log .....	197
admin:delete-logs .....	197
Database Sessions .....	197
admin:sessions .....	197
Errors .....	198
Changelog .....	198
35. Archive Module .....	199
Conventions .....	199
Content Handling .....	199
archive:entries .....	199
archive:options .....	199
archive:extract-text .....	199

---

---

archive:extract-binary .....	200
Updates .....	200
archive:create .....	200
archive:update .....	201
archive:delete .....	201
Convenience .....	202
archive:create-from .....	202
archive:extract-to .....	202
archive:write .....	202
Errors .....	203
Changelog .....	203
36. Array Module .....	204
Conventions .....	204
Functions .....	204
array:size .....	204
array:get .....	204
array:append .....	204
array:subarray .....	204
array:put .....	204
array:remove .....	205
array:insert-before .....	205
array:head .....	205
array:tail .....	205
array:reverse .....	205
array:join .....	205
array:flatten .....	206
array:for-each .....	206
array:filter .....	206
array:fold-left .....	206
array:fold-right .....	206
array:for-each-pair .....	207
array:sort .....	207
Errors .....	207
Changelog .....	207
37. Binary Module .....	209
Conventions .....	209
Constants and Conversions .....	209
bin:hex .....	209
bin:bin .....	209
bin:octal .....	209
bin:to-octets .....	210
bin:from-octets .....	210
Basic Operations .....	210
bin:length .....	210
bin:part .....	210
bin:join .....	210
bin:insert-before .....	210
bin:pad-left .....	211
bin:pad-right .....	211
bin:find .....	211
Text Decoding and Encoding .....	211
bin:decode-string .....	211
bin:encode-string .....	211
Packing and Unpacking of Numeric Values .....	212
bin:pack-double .....	212
bin:pack-float .....	212
bin:pack-integer .....	212
bin:unpack-double .....	212

---

---

bin:unpack-float .....	213
bin:unpack-integer .....	213
bin:unpack-unsigned-integer .....	213
Bitwise Operations .....	213
bin:or .....	213
bin:xor .....	213
bin:and .....	214
bin:not .....	214
bin:shift .....	214
Errors .....	214
Changelog .....	214
38. Client Module .....	215
Conventions .....	215
Functions .....	215
client:connect .....	215
client:execute .....	215
client:info .....	215
client:query .....	216
client:close .....	216
Errors .....	216
Changelog .....	217
39. Conversion Module .....	218
Conventions .....	218
Strings .....	218
convert:binary-to-string .....	218
convert:string-to-base64 .....	218
convert:string-to-hex .....	218
Binary Data .....	219
convert:integers-to-base64 .....	219
convert:integers-to-hex .....	219
convert:binary-to-integers .....	219
convert:binary-to-bytes .....	219
Numbers .....	219
convert:integer-to-base .....	219
convert:integer-from-base .....	220
Dates and Durations .....	220
convert:integer-to-dateTime .....	220
convert:dateTime-to-integer .....	220
convert:integer-to-dayTime .....	220
convert:dayTime-to-integer .....	221
Keys .....	221
convert:encode-key .....	221
convert:decode-key .....	221
Errors .....	221
Changelog .....	222
40. Cryptographic Module .....	223
Conventions .....	223
Message Authentication .....	223
crypto:hmac .....	223
Encryption & Decryption .....	223
crypto:encrypt .....	224
crypto:decrypt .....	224
XML Signatures .....	224
crypto:generate-signature .....	225
crypto:validate-signature .....	226
Errors .....	227
Changelog .....	227
41. CSV Module .....	229

---

---

Conventions .....	229
Conversion .....	229
Options .....	230
Functions .....	232
csv:doc .....	232
csv:parse .....	232
csv:serialize .....	233
Examples .....	233
Errors .....	234
Changelog .....	234
42. Database Module .....	235
Conventions .....	235
Database Nodes .....	235
Updating Functions .....	235
General Functions .....	235
db:system .....	235
db:option .....	235
db:info .....	236
db:property .....	236
db:list .....	236
db:list-details .....	236
db:dir .....	237
Read Operations .....	237
db:get .....	237
db:get-pre .....	237
db:get-id .....	238
db:get-binary .....	238
db:get-value .....	238
db:node-pre .....	238
db:node-id .....	239
db:export .....	239
Value Indexes .....	239
db:text .....	239
db:text-range .....	240
db:attribute .....	240
db:attribute-range .....	240
db:token .....	240
Updates .....	241
db:create .....	241
db:add .....	241
db:put .....	242
db:put-binary .....	243
db:put-value .....	243
db:delete .....	243
db:copy .....	244
db:alter .....	244
db:optimize .....	244
db:rename .....	244
db:flush .....	245
db:drop .....	245
Backups .....	245
db:create-backup .....	245
db:drop-backup .....	245
db:alter-backup .....	246
db:restore .....	246
db:backups .....	246
Helper Functions .....	246
db:name .....	246

---

---

db:path .....	246
db:exists .....	246
db:type .....	247
db:content-type .....	247
Errors .....	247
Changelog .....	248
43. Fetch Module .....	250
Conventions .....	250
Functions .....	250
fetch:binary .....	250
fetch:text .....	250
fetch:doc .....	251
fetch:binary-doc .....	251
fetch:content-type .....	252
Errors .....	252
Changelog .....	252
44. File Module .....	253
Conventions .....	253
File Paths .....	253
Read Operations .....	253
file:list .....	253
file:children .....	253
file:descendants .....	254
file:read-binary .....	254
file:read-text .....	254
file:read-text-lines .....	254
Write Operations .....	255
file:create-dir .....	255
file:create-temp-dir .....	255
file:create-temp-file .....	255
file:delete .....	255
file:write .....	256
file:write-binary .....	256
file:write-text .....	256
file:write-text-lines .....	257
file:append .....	257
file:append-binary .....	257
file:append-text .....	257
file:append-text-lines .....	257
file:copy .....	258
file:move .....	258
File Properties .....	258
file:exists .....	258
file:is-dir .....	258
file:is-absolute .....	258
file:is-file .....	258
file:last-modified .....	258
file:size .....	259
Path Functions .....	259
file:name .....	259
file:parent .....	259
file:path-to-native .....	259
file:resolve-path .....	259
file:path-to-uri .....	259
System Properties .....	260
file:dir-separator .....	260
file:path-separator .....	260
file:line-separator .....	260

---

---

file:temp-dir .....	260
file:current-dir .....	260
file:base-dir .....	260
Errors .....	260
Changelog .....	261
45. Full-Text Module .....	262
Conventions .....	262
Database Functions .....	262
ft:search .....	262
ft:tokens .....	263
General Functions .....	263
ft:contains .....	263
ft:count .....	264
ft:score .....	264
ft:tokenize .....	264
ft:normalize .....	265
ft:thesaurus .....	265
Highlighting Functions .....	265
ft:mark .....	265
ft:extract .....	266
Errors .....	266
Changelog .....	266
46. Hashing Module .....	268
Conventions .....	268
Functions .....	268
hash:md5 .....	268
hash:sha1 .....	268
hash:sha256 .....	268
hash:hash .....	268
Errors .....	269
Changelog .....	269
47. Higher-Order Functions Module .....	270
Conventions .....	270
Loops .....	270
hof:fold-left1 .....	270
hof:until .....	270
hof:scan-left .....	271
hof:take-while .....	271
hof:drop-while .....	271
Sorting .....	272
hof:top-k-by .....	272
hof:top-k-with .....	272
IDs .....	272
hof:id .....	272
hof:const .....	272
Changelog .....	273
48. HTML Module .....	274
Conventions .....	274
Functions .....	274
html:doc .....	274
html:parse .....	274
html:parser .....	274
Examples .....	274
Basic Example .....	274
Specifying Options .....	275
Parsing Binary Input .....	275
Errors .....	275
Changelog .....	275

---

---

49. HTTP Client Module .....	276
Conventions .....	276
Functions .....	276
http:send-request .....	276
Examples .....	276
Status Only .....	276
Google Homepage .....	277
POST Request .....	278
File Upload .....	279
Errors .....	279
Changelog .....	280
50. Index Module .....	281
Conventions .....	281
Functions .....	281
index:facets .....	281
index:texts .....	281
index:attributes .....	281
index:tokens .....	282
index:element-names .....	282
index:attribute-names .....	282
Changelog .....	282
51. Inspection Module .....	283
Conventions .....	283
Reflection .....	283
inspect:functions .....	283
inspect:function-annotations .....	283
inspect:static-context .....	283
Documentation .....	284
inspect:type .....	284
inspect:function .....	285
inspect:context .....	285
inspect:module .....	286
inspect:xqdoc .....	286
Examples .....	286
Errors .....	288
Changelog .....	288
52. Job Module .....	289
Conventions .....	289
Services .....	289
Executing Jobs .....	289
job:eval .....	289
job:result .....	291
job:remove .....	292
job:wait .....	292
Listing Jobs .....	292
job:current .....	292
job:list .....	292
job:list-details .....	292
job:bindings .....	293
job:finished .....	293
job:services .....	293
Errors .....	293
Changelog .....	293
53. JSON Module .....	295
Conventions .....	295
Conversion Formats .....	295
Options .....	296
Functions .....	297

---



---

json:doc .....	297
json:parse .....	297
json:serialize .....	297
Examples .....	297
BaseX Format .....	297
JsonML Format .....	299
XQuery Format .....	300
Errors .....	301
Changelog .....	301
54. Lazy Module .....	303
Conventions .....	303
Functions .....	303
lazy:cache .....	303
lazy:is-lazy .....	304
lazy:is-cached .....	304
Changelog .....	304
55. Map Module .....	305
Conventions .....	305
Functions .....	305
map:contains .....	305
map:entry .....	305
map:find .....	306
map:for-each .....	306
map:get .....	306
map:keys .....	307
map:merge .....	307
map:put .....	307
map:remove .....	307
map:size .....	308
Changelog .....	308
56. Math Module .....	309
Conventions .....	309
W3 Functions .....	309
math:pi .....	309
math:sqrt .....	309
math:sin .....	309
math:cos .....	309
math:tan .....	309
math:asin .....	309
math:acos .....	310
math:atan .....	310
math:atan2 .....	310
math:pow .....	310
math:exp .....	310
math:log .....	310
math:log10 .....	310
Additional Functions .....	311
math:e .....	311
math:sinh .....	311
math:cosh .....	311
math:tanh .....	311
math:crc32 .....	311
Changelog .....	311
57. Process Module .....	312
Conventions .....	312
Functions .....	312
proc:system .....	312
proc:execute .....	312

---

---

proc:fork .....	313
proc:property .....	313
proc:property-names .....	313
Errors .....	314
Changelog .....	314
58. Profiling Module .....	315
Conventions .....	315
Performance Functions .....	315
prof:track .....	315
prof:time .....	316
prof:memory .....	316
prof:current-ms .....	316
prof:current-ns .....	316
Debugging Functions .....	316
prof:dump .....	316
prof:variables .....	317
prof:type .....	317
prof:gc .....	317
prof:runtime .....	317
Helper Functions .....	317
prof:void .....	317
prof:sleep .....	318
prof:human .....	318
Errors .....	318
Changelog .....	318
59. Random Module .....	319
Conventions .....	319
Functions .....	319
random:double .....	319
random:integer .....	319
random:seeded-double .....	319
random:seeded-integer .....	319
random:gaussian .....	319
random:seeded-permutation .....	320
random:uuid .....	320
Errors .....	320
Changelog .....	320
60. Repository Module .....	321
Conventions .....	321
Functions .....	321
repo:install .....	321
repo:delete .....	321
repo:list .....	321
Errors .....	321
Changelog .....	321
61. Request Module .....	323
Conventions .....	323
General Functions .....	323
request:method .....	323
URI Functions .....	323
request:scheme .....	323
request:hostname .....	323
request:port .....	323
request:path .....	324
request:query .....	324
request:uri .....	324
request:context-path .....	324
Connection Functions .....	324

---

---

request:address .....	324
request:remote-hostname .....	324
request:remote-address .....	324
request:remote-port .....	324
Parameter Functions .....	325
request:parameter-names .....	325
request:parameter .....	325
Header Functions .....	325
request:header-names .....	325
request:header .....	325
Cookie Functions .....	325
request:cookie-names .....	325
request:cookie .....	326
Attribute Functions .....	326
request:attribute-names .....	326
request:attribute .....	326
request:set-attribute .....	326
Errors .....	326
Changelog .....	326
62. RESTXQ Module .....	328
Conventions .....	328
General Functions .....	328
rest:base-uri .....	328
rest:uri .....	328
rest:wadl .....	328
rest:init .....	328
Changelog .....	328
63. Session Module .....	330
Conventions .....	330
Functions .....	330
session:id .....	330
session:created .....	330
session:accessed .....	330
session:names .....	330
session:get .....	331
session:set .....	331
session:delete .....	331
session:close .....	331
Errors .....	331
Changelog .....	331
64. Sessions Module .....	333
Conventions .....	333
Functions .....	333
sessions:ids .....	333
sessions:created .....	333
sessions:accessed .....	333
sessions:names .....	333
sessions:get .....	333
sessions:set .....	334
sessions:delete .....	334
sessions:close .....	334
Errors .....	334
Changelog .....	334
65. SQL Module .....	335
Conventions .....	335
Functions .....	335
sql:init .....	335
sql:connect .....	335

---

---

sql:execute .....	335
sql:execute-prepared .....	336
sql:prepare .....	336
sql:commit .....	336
sql:rollback .....	336
sql:close .....	337
Examples .....	337
Direct queries .....	337
Prepared Statements .....	337
SQLite .....	337
Errors .....	338
Changelog .....	338
66. Store Module .....	339
Conventions .....	339
Key-value operations .....	339
store:get .....	339
store:put .....	339
store:get-or-put .....	339
store:remove .....	339
store:keys .....	340
store:clear .....	340
Store Operations .....	340
store:read .....	340
store:write .....	340
store:list .....	340
store:delete .....	340
Examples .....	340
Errors .....	341
Changelog .....	341
67. String Module .....	342
Conventions .....	342
Computations .....	342
string:levenshtein .....	342
string:soundex .....	342
string:cologne-phonetic .....	342
Formatting .....	343
string:format .....	343
string:cr .....	343
string:nl .....	343
string:tab .....	343
Changelog .....	343
68. Unit Module .....	344
Introduction .....	344
Usage .....	344
Conventions .....	344
Annotations .....	344
unit:test .....	344
unit:before .....	344
unit:after .....	345
unit:before-module .....	345
unit:after-module .....	345
unit:ignore .....	345
Functions .....	345
unit:assert .....	345
unit:assert-equals .....	345
unit:fail .....	346
Example .....	346
Query .....	346

---

---

Result .....	347
Errors .....	347
Changelog .....	348
69. Update Module .....	349
Conventions .....	349
Updates .....	349
update:apply .....	349
update:for-each .....	349
update:for-each-pair .....	349
update:map-for-each .....	350
Output .....	350
update:output .....	350
update:cache .....	350
Changelog .....	350
70. User Module .....	352
Conventions .....	352
Read Operations .....	352
user:current .....	352
user:list .....	352
user:list-details .....	352
user:exists .....	352
user:check .....	353
user:info .....	353
Updates .....	353
user:create .....	353
user:grant .....	354
user:drop .....	354
user:alter .....	354
user:password .....	354
user:update-info .....	355
Errors .....	355
Changelog .....	355
71. Validation Module .....	357
Conventions .....	357
DTD Validation .....	357
validate:dtd .....	357
validate:dtd-info .....	357
validate:dtd-report .....	358
XML Schema Validation .....	358
validate:xsd .....	358
validate:xsd-info .....	359
validate:xsd-report .....	359
validate:xsd-processor .....	359
validate:xsd-version .....	359
RelaxNG Validation .....	360
validate:rng .....	360
validate:rng-info .....	360
validate:rng-report .....	360
Schematron Validation .....	360
Errors .....	361
Changelog .....	361
72. Web Module .....	362
Conventions .....	362
Functions .....	362
web:content-type .....	362
web:create-url .....	362
web:encode-url .....	362
web:decode-url .....	362

---

---

web:forward .....	363
web:redirect .....	363
web:response-header .....	363
web:error .....	364
Errors .....	364
Changelog .....	364
73. WebSocket Module .....	366
Conventions .....	366
General Functions .....	366
ws:id .....	366
ws:ids .....	366
ws:path .....	366
ws:close .....	366
Sending Data .....	366
ws:send .....	366
ws:broadcast .....	367
ws:emit .....	367
ws:eval .....	367
WebSocket Attributes .....	367
ws:get .....	367
ws:set .....	368
ws:delete .....	368
Examples .....	368
Example 1 .....	368
Example 2 .....	368
Errors .....	369
Changelog .....	369
74. XQuery Module .....	370
Conventions .....	370
Evaluation .....	370
xquery:eval .....	370
xquery:eval-update .....	371
Parsing .....	371
xquery:parse .....	371
Parallelized Execution .....	372
xquery:fork-join .....	372
Errors .....	372
Changelog .....	373
75. XSLT Module .....	375
Conventions .....	375
Functions .....	375
xslt:processor .....	375
xslt:version .....	375
xslt:transform .....	375
xslt:transform-text .....	376
xslt:transform-report .....	376
Examples .....	376
Errors .....	378
Changelog .....	378
VIII. Developing .....	379
76. Developing .....	380
77. Developing with Eclipse .....	381
Prerequisites .....	381
Check Out .....	381
Start in Eclipse .....	381
Alternative .....	382
78. Git .....	383
Using Git to contribute to BaseX .....	383

---

---

Using Git & Eclipse .....	383
Using Git on Command-Line .....	388
Links .....	391
79. Maven .....	392
Using Maven .....	392
Artifacts .....	392
80. Releases .....	394
Official Releases .....	394
Stable Snapshots .....	394
Code Base .....	394
Maven Artifacts .....	394
Linux .....	394
81. Translations .....	395
Working with the sources .....	395
Updating BaseX.jar .....	395
IX. Web Technology .....	397
82. RESTXQ .....	398
Introduction .....	398
Preliminaries .....	398
Examples .....	399
Request .....	399
Constraints .....	399
Content Types .....	401
Parameters .....	402
Query Execution .....	403
Response .....	404
Custom Response .....	404
Forwards and Redirects .....	405
Output .....	405
Error Handling .....	406
Raise Errors .....	406
Catch XQuery Errors .....	407
Catch HTTP Errors .....	407
User Authentication .....	408
Functions .....	408
References .....	408
Changelog .....	408
83. Permissions .....	410
Preliminaries .....	410
Annotations .....	410
Permission Strings .....	410
Checking Permissions .....	411
Authentication .....	412
Changelog .....	412
84. WebSockets .....	414
Introduction .....	414
Protocol .....	414
Preliminaries .....	414
Configuration .....	414
Annotations .....	415
ws:connect(path) .....	415
ws:message(path, message) .....	415
ws:error(path, message) .....	415
ws:close(path) .....	415
ws:header-param(name, variable[, default]) .....	415
Writing Applications .....	416
Examples .....	416
Basic Example .....	416

---

---

Chat Application .....	417
Changelog .....	417
85. REST .....	418
Usage .....	418
URL Architecture .....	418
Parameters .....	418
Request .....	419
GET Method .....	419
POST Method .....	419
PUT Method .....	420
DELETE Method .....	421
Assigning Variables .....	421
GET Method .....	421
POST Method .....	422
Response .....	422
Content Type .....	422
Usage Examples .....	423
Java .....	423
Command Line .....	423
Changelog .....	424
86. WebDAV .....	426
Usage .....	426
Authentication .....	426
Root Directory .....	426
Resources .....	426
XML Documents .....	426
Binary Files .....	426
Locking .....	426
WebDAV Clients .....	427
Changelog .....	427
87. WebDAV: Windows 7 .....	428
88. WebDAV: Windows XP .....	430
89. WebDAV: Mac OSX .....	434
90. WebDAV: GNOME .....	437
91. WebDAV: KDE .....	439
X. Client APIs .....	441
92. Clients .....	442
Changelog .....	443
93. Standard Mode .....	444
Usage .....	444
Example in PHP .....	444
94. Query Mode .....	445
Usage .....	445
PHP Example .....	445
Changelog .....	446
95. Server Protocol .....	447
Workflow .....	447
Transfer Protocol .....	447
Example .....	450
Constructors and Functions .....	450
96. Server Protocol: Types .....	452
XDM Metadata .....	452
Type IDs .....	452
97. Java Examples .....	454
Local Examples .....	454
Server Examples .....	454
XQuery Module Examples .....	454
XQJ API (closed source) .....	455

---



---

XI. Extensions .....	456
98. YAJSW .....	457
Some basics of YAJSW .....	457
Gather the files .....	457
Install BaseX as a Windows Service .....	457
99. Android .....	459
Creating the Android Library Project .....	459
Adjusting the Code .....	460
Using the BaseX Android Library .....	463
XII. Advanced User's Guide .....	464
100. Advanced User's Guide .....	465
101. Catalog Resolver .....	466
Introduction .....	466
Usage .....	466
Changelog .....	468
102. Storage Layout .....	469
Data Types .....	469
Database Files .....	469
Metadata, Name/Path/Doc Indexes: inf .....	469
Node Table: tbl, tbli .....	470
Texts: txt, atv .....	470
Value Indexes: txtl, txtr, atvl, atvr .....	470
Document Path Index: pth .....	470
ID/Pre Mapping: idp .....	470
Full-Text Fuzzy Index: ftxx, ftxy, ftxz .....	470
103. Node Storage .....	471
Node Table .....	471
PRE Value .....	471
ID Value .....	471
Block Storage .....	471
104. Binary Data .....	473
Storage .....	473
Usage .....	473
105. Parsers .....	474
XML Parsers .....	474
GUI .....	474
Command Line .....	474
XQuery .....	474
HTML Parser .....	474
Installation .....	474
Options .....	475
JSON Parser .....	476
GUI .....	476
Command Line .....	476
XQuery .....	476
CSV Parser .....	476
GUI .....	476
Command Line .....	476
XQuery .....	476
Text Parser .....	477
GUI .....	477
Command Line .....	477
XQuery .....	477
Changelog .....	477
106. User Management .....	478
Rules .....	478
Operations .....	478
Commands .....	478

---

---

XQuery .....	479
Storage .....	479
Changelog .....	479
107. Transaction Management .....	480
Introduction .....	480
XQuery Update .....	480
Concurrency Control .....	480
Limitations .....	481
XQuery Locks .....	481
Annotations .....	482
Pragmas .....	482
Options .....	482
Java Modules .....	482
File-System Locks .....	482
Update Operations .....	482
Database Locks .....	483
Changelog .....	483
108. Logging .....	484
Introduction .....	484
RESTXQ .....	484
Format .....	484
Changelog .....	485
XIII. Use Cases .....	486
109. Statistics .....	487
Databases .....	487
Sources .....	489
110. Twitter .....	491
BaseX as Twitter Storage .....	491
Twitter's Streaming Data .....	491
Statistics .....	491
Example Tweet (JSON) .....	492
Example Tweet (XML) .....	493
BaseX Performance .....	494
Insert with XQuery Update .....	494

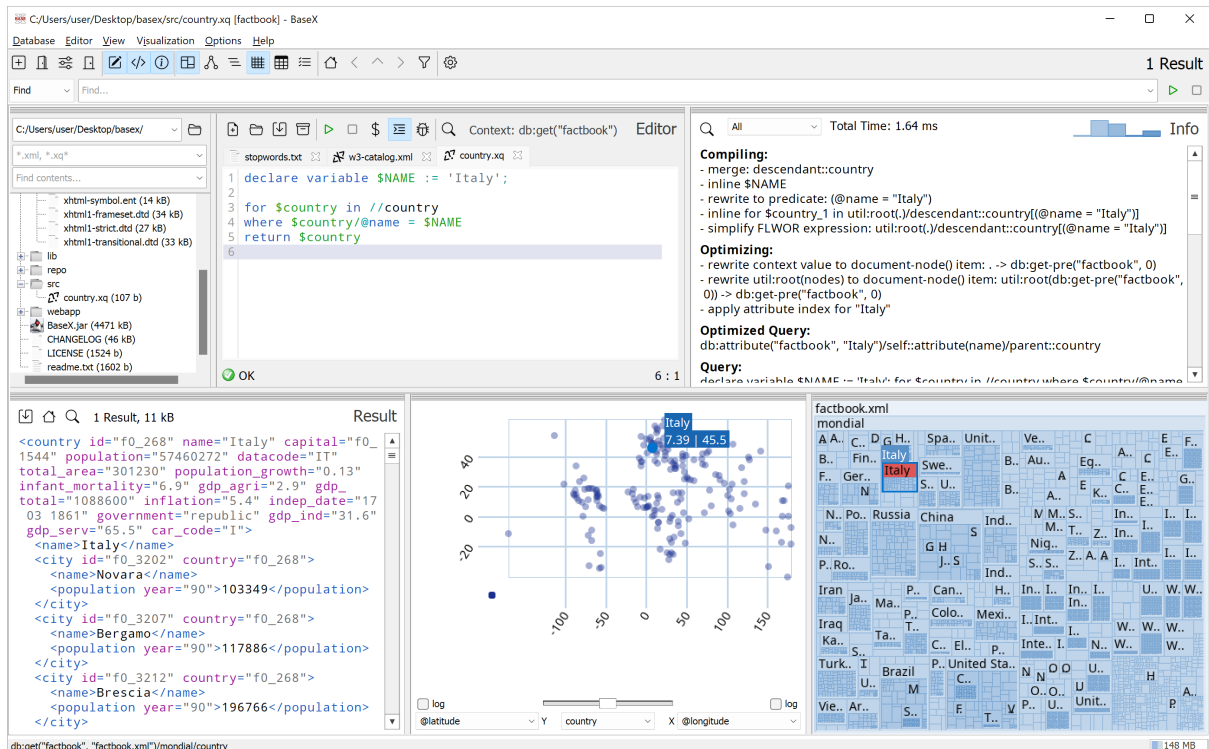
---

# Part I. Main Page

---

# Chapter 1. Main Page

Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.



BaseX, Graphical User Interface **BaseX** is a light-weight, high-performance and scalable XML Database and an XQuery 3.1 Processor with full support for the W3C Update and Full-Text extensions. It allows you to store, query and process large corpora of textual (XML, HTML, JSON, CSV, others) and binary data. The GUI provides an XQuery editor for writing complex applications and provides various visualizations to interactively explore data. RESTXQ enables Web Application development in XQuery. BaseX is platform-independent BSD-licensed (find more on [Wikipedia](#)).

This is the documentation for **BaseX 10**. The newest and upcoming features are *highlighted*.

If you have questions, or if you want to get into direct contact with the developer team and users of BaseX, please write to our [mailing lists](#). Many questions are being discussed at [StackOverflow](#); confirmed bugs and feature requests are discussed on [GitHub](#).

## Getting Started

The getting started section gives you a quick introduction to BaseX. We suggest that you start with the [Graphical User Interface](#) as this is the easiest way to access your XML data, and to get an idea of how XQuery and BaseX works.

## XQuery Portal

More information on using the wide range of XQuery functions and performing XPath and XQuery requests with BaseX can be found in our [XQuery Portal](#).

## Developer Section

The developer section provides useful information for developers. Here you can find information on our supported client APIs and HTTP services, and we present different ways how you can integrate BaseX into your project.

## **Advanced User's Guide**

Information for advanced users can be found in our advanced user's guide, which contains details on the BaseX storage, the Client/Server architecture, and some querying features.

---

# Chapter 2. BaseX 10

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

After 15 years of continuous development, the first double-digit version of BaseX is about to see the light of day soon.

We have taken the version jump as an opportunity to perform some major refactorings of BaseX, both under the hood and on API and XQuery level. Before migrating your projects to the new version, some adjustments may be required, so please read this article carefully.

## Prerequisites

BaseX 10 requires Java 11 or later to run. Databases created with the new version are backward compatible and can still be opened with BaseX 9.

## Migrating Applications

The following modifications might be relevant when migrating existing applications:

- The default ports for web applications have been changed from 8984/8985 to 8080/8081.
- The default admin password has been removed. The `admin` user can only be used if a password has been assigned, e.g., via the `PASSWORD` command.
- The conventions for functions in **Clients** in other programming languages were revised.
- The `IGNOREHOSTNAME` option was dropped and merged with `IGNORECERT`.

## Storage

### Whitespaces

All whitespaces are now preserved when importing XML resources, unless whitespace stripping is enabled.

The notorious `CHOP` option was removed to prevent conflicting behavior caused by earlier installations. It was replaced by a new `STRIPWS` option, which defaults to `false`. In addition, the new default of the `serialization parameter indent` is `no`.

Please be warned that the new default can throw off existing applications. If you want to restore the old behavior, you should assign the following values in your `.basex configuration file`, or the `web.xml` file of your **Web Application**:

```
STRIPWS: true
SERIALIZER: indent=yes
```

In the GUI editor, a **shortcut** and an icon were added to switch result indentation on and off.

In addition, databases may considerably increase in size, as whitespaces used for indenting an XML document will be interpreted and stored as additional text nodes. If your XML resources are structured and have no **mixed content**, it is advisable to enable whitespaces stripping when importing them to a database.

## Value Resources

In addition to XML and binary resources, a third resource type has been added: XQuery values (atomic items and nodes, sequences, maps, arrays) can now be stored in databases as well. The `db:put-value` and `db:get-value` can be used to store and retrieve values.

The new feature can e.g. be used to store maps in a database:

```

db:put-value(
  'factbook',
  map:merge(
    for $country in db:get('factbook')//country
    return map:entry($country/@name, $country//city/name ! string())
  ),
  'cities'
)

```

...and use them as index later on:

```

let $cities := db:get-value('factbook', 'cities')
for $country in ('Japan', 'Indonesia', 'Malaysia')
return $country || ': ' || string-join($cities?($country), ', ')

```

## Backups

The [Backup Commands](#) and [Backup Functions](#) were enhanced to back up general data: [registered users](#), [scheduled services](#), [key-value stores](#).

## XQuery

### Compilation

The compilation has been split up into multiple steps to improve locking.

So far, several internal steps were already performed when executing a query (see [XQuery Optimizations](#) for more details):

1. The query is parsed, i.e., the original query string is transformed to an executable tree representation.
2. External values that are passed on by APIs are bound to variables and the query context. External values can be names of databases, or contribute to a name that will later on be constructed in the query.
3. The query is compiled and evaluated.

The [transaction manager](#) gathers the names of the databases that will be accessed by a query. If it is not possible to uniquely identify all databases that may be opened by the query, global locking will be applied, and all databases will be locked. Detection can fail if the names of databases depend on external input. It can also fail if a query is too complex to associate character strings with database operations.

The compilation phase now comprises two separate steps:

1. *Compilation* of logical, context-independent (static) operations. External values are bound to the query, and deterministic code is rewritten, simplified and pre-evaluated.
2. *Optimization* of physical, context-based (dynamic) operations. Databases are opened and checked for available indexes; current date/time is retrieved. The resulting code is further rewritten and optimized.

Lock detection will be performed after the first step, and the code resulting from this step offers much more insight into which specific databases need to be locked. As a result, local locks can be applied to many more queries than before, and many queries can now run in parallel. An example:

```

declare variable $n external;
db:get('names-' || $n)

```

After the query has been parsed, a user-specific value (e.g., 123) will be bound to \$n. The variable will be inlined by the compiler, and the argument of `db:get` will be pre-evaluated to `names123`. It is then easy for the lock detector to collect the name of the database that needs to read-locked before the query is eventually executed.

Another positive side effect of two-step compilation is that productive environments get faster in general: Queries can be compiled in parallel, and it's only the optimization and evaluation of a query that may need to be delayed by locking.

## Main-Memory Updates

XQuery Update provides constructs to **update XML nodes in main memory**. The data structures for in-memory representations of XML resources have been revised, such that updates can be performed orders of magnitudes faster than before. With BaseX 9.x, the following query runs for several minutes, whereas it can now be computed in a few seconds:

```
<xml>{
  (1 to 1000000) ! <child/>
}</xml> update {
  for $child at $pos in child
  return insert node text { $pos } into $child
}
```

## Key-Value Store

A new **Store Module** provides functions to organize values in a persistent main-memory key-value store. The store allows you to speed up access to frequently accessed data.

Store data

```
let $email := map:merge(
  for $address in db:get('addressbook')//address
  return map:entry($address/name, $address/email)
)
return store:put('emails', $email)
```

Retrieve data

```
let $name := 'Richard David James'
return store:get('email')($name)
```

The store is persistent: Its contents are written to disk if BaseX is shut down, and retrieved again after a restart.

## Modules

Functions of all modules, excluding the **File Module**, now consistently resolve relative URI references against the static base URI, and not the current working directory.

Various modules and functions have been revised, added, renamed or removed:

Description	BaseX 10	BaseX 9
Retrieve XML resources	db:get	db:open
Retrieve nodes with specified pre values	db:get-pre	db:open-pre
Retrieve nodes with specified IDs	db:get-id	db:open-id
Retrieve binary resources	db:get-binary	db:retrieve
Retrieve value resources	db:get-value	<i>new</i>
Add or replace resource	db:put, arguments swapped!	db:replace
Add or replace binary resource	db:put-binary, arguments swapped!	db:store
Add or replace value resource	db:put-value	<i>new</i>
Get resource type	db:type	db:is-raw, db:is-xml
Fetch XML document	fetch:doc	fetch:xml
Convert binary data to XML	fetch:binary-doc	fetch:xml-binary
Module: Process Geo data	<i>removed</i>	Geo Module



XQuery jobs	<b>Job Module</b>	Jobs Module
Return variable bindings of a job	job:bindings	<i>new</i>
Return variable bindings of a job	job:remove	jobs:stop
Module: Main-memory key-value store	<b>Store Module</b>	<i>new</i>
Module: String computations	<b>String Module</b>	Strings Module
Format string	string:format	out:format
Return control characters	string:cr, string:nl, string:tab	out:cr, out:nl, out:tab
Module: Process ZIP files	<i>removed</i>	ZIP Module

## Commands

The following commands have been revised:

Description	BaseX 10	BaseX 9
List directories and resources.	DIR	<i>new</i>
Retrieve single XML document	GET	<i>new</i>
Retrieve binary resource	BINARY GET	RETRIEVE
Add or replace resources	PUT	REPLACE
Store binary resource	BINARY PUT	STORE
Returns current option values	SHOW OPTIONS	GET
Lists jobs	<i>removed</i>	JOBS LIST
Returns a job result	<i>removed</i>	JOBS RESULT
Stops a job	<i>removed</i>	JOBS STOP

## HTTP Requests

HTTP requests in BaseX take advantage of the new **Java HTTP Client**. This client provides a better overall performance, uses internal connection pools and follows redirects across different protocols (http, https).

HTTP operations are, among others, performed by:

- the **HTTP Client Module**;
- the **Fetch Module**, **Database Module**, **Fetch Module**, **Validation Module**, **XSLT Module** or **Repository Module**;
- `fn:doc` and `fn:collection`;
- the `CREATE DB` and `REPO INSTALL` commands.

## Catalogs

From early on, catalog resolvers had been neglected both in BaseX and Java. This has changed: The new **XML Catalog API** from Java is universally used to resolve references to external resources. As an alternative, Norman Walsh's **Enhanced XML Resolver** is utilized if it is found in the classpath.

The option for supplying the XML catalog was renamed from `CATFILE` to `CATALOG`. See **Catalog Resolver** for more details.

## Graphical User Interface

The graphical user interface of BaseX has been revised and made more consistent.

The icons were replaced by scalable ones, building upon the [HiDPI graphics support for Windows and Linux](#).

## REST

Results in the `rest` namespace are now returned without prefix:

```
<!-- before -->
<rest:databases xmlns:rest="http://basex.org/rest"/>

<!-- now -->
<databases xmlns="http://basex.org/rest"/>
```

When listing the resources of a database, `dir` elements are returned for resources that are located in subdirectories. See [REST](#) for more details.

---

## **Part II. Getting Started**

---

---

# Chapter 3. Getting Started

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is one of the [Main Sections](#) of the documentation. It gives you a brief introduction on how to start, run, and use BaseX. After you have set up BaseX, we suggest that you should start with the [Graphical User Interface](#).

## Overview

### First Steps

- [Startup](#) : How to get BaseX running
- [Graphical User Interface](#) (see available [Shortcuts](#))
- [Command-Line Client](#) : Use BaseX in your bash
- [Database Server](#) : The client/server architecture
- [Web Application](#) : The HTTP server
- [DBA](#) : Browser-based database administration

### Command Line

- [Command-Line Options](#)
- [Start Scripts](#)

### General Info

- [Databases](#) : How databases are created, populated and deleted
- [Commands](#) : Full overview of all database commands
- [Options](#) : Listing of all database options
- [Configuration](#) : BaseX start files and directories

### Editing XML and XQuery Files

We encourage you to use the [BaseX Editor](#) to run your queries and edit your XML data.

- [Integrating oXygen](#)
- [Integrating Eclipse](#)
- [Integrating IntelliJ IDEA](#)

## Tutorials and Slides

### BaseX: Introduction

- Tamara Marnell: [BaseX for Newbies](#)
- Paul Swennenhuis: BaseX for Dummies: [Part I](#), [Part I \(files\)](#), [Part II](#)
- Neven Jovanovi#: [BaseX Adventures](#)

- Imed Bouchrika: [Tutorial. Using a native XMLDBS](#)
- Farid Djaidja: [XQuery pour les Humanités Numériques](#) (French)

### **XML and XQuery**

- [XML Technologies](#) . University course on XML, XPath, XQuery, XSLT, Validation, Databases, etc.
- [XQuery: A Guided Tour](#) . From the book "XQuery from the Experts".
- [XQuery Summer Institute](#) . Exercises and Answers.
- [W3 Schools XQuery Tutorial](#) . Not affiliated with W3C.

### **BaseX: Talks, Questions**

- [Our Mailing List](#) . Join and contribute.
- [Stack Overflow](#) . Questions on basex.
- [GitHub Issue Tracker](#) . Confirmed bugs and feature requests.
- [XML Prague User Meetings](#) . Slides and videos.

---

# Chapter 4. Startup

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article is part of the [Getting Started](#) Guide. It tells you how to get BaseX running.

## Introduction

BaseX is very light-weight. It can be run and used in many different ways:

1. BaseX comes with a [Graphical User Interface](#) that offers you tools for managing, querying and visualizing your data and writing sophisticated applications in XQuery.
2. You can start BaseX as a standalone [Command-Line Client](#) if you prefer to work in the terminal, or want to do batch processing.
3. The [Database Server](#) is the right choice if you have multiple users or clients, or if you use other programming languages and if you don't require HTTP services.
4. The [HTTP Server](#) provides [REST](#) and [WebDAV](#) services. With [RESTXQ](#), complex web applications can be built, and the embedded [DBA](#) application allows you to work with BaseX in the browser.
5. It can also be embedded as a Java library in your applications.

BaseX has been tested on numerous platforms, including Windows (2000, XP, Vista, 7, 10, 11), Mac OS X (10.x , 11.x), Linux (SuSE xxx, Debian, Redhat, CentOS, Ubuntu) and OpenBSD (up to 7.x). It is platform-independent and runs on any system supporting Java.

## Startup

First, ensure that an up-to-date version of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) is available:

BaseX Version	Minimum Java Version
10	11
9	8
8	7
<i>older</i>	6

If you have several versions or distributions installed, you can type `java -version` on command-line to check which Java version is currently used.

If you have Windows, we recommend the `.msi` distributions from [Adoptium](#). The JRE packages are sufficient, but you can also install the JDK (Java Development Kit).

Next, [get a fresh copy of BaseX](#) from our homepage. The following distributions are available:

## Core Package

The **Core Package** is a very compact JAR file. It contains the BaseX database management system, the XQuery processor, the client/server architecture, and the graphical user interface. It runs without additional libraries.

## Full Distributions

In addition, the **ZIP Package** and the **Windows Installer** contain extra libraries for RESTXQ web applications and other advanced features, [Start Scripts](#), and the [DBA](#), a browser-based database administration interface. If you unzip or install BaseX, the target directory will contain the following directories:

Directory	Description
bin	Start scripts (Windows, Linux).
data	The database directory.
etc	Example data: XML sample, <a href="#">catalog</a> and <a href="#">DTD files</a> .
lib	Extra libraries (Jetty, Tagsoup, ...).
lib/custom	Directory in which additional JAR files can be placed (such as the Saxon library).
repo	<a href="#">Repository</a> for external XQuery modules (the <a href="#">FunctX</a> library is included as example).
src	Directory for your XQuery scripts and other source data.
webapp	<a href="#">Web Application</a> directory: home of the RESTXQ web application, REST scripts, and <a href="#">DBA</a> .

Global [Options](#) are stored in the [.basex configuration file](#).

If BaseX is started via the start scripts or the Windows icons, all JAR files in the `lib` directory and its descendant directories will be added to the class path.

If you work with the ZIP distribution, and if you want to make BaseX globally available, you can add the `bin` directory to your PATH environment variable.

## Web Archive

The **WAR Archive** can be embedded in existing Java web servers.

## Other Distributions

Various other distributions are available from the download page, most of which contain only the core package and, optionally, scripts for starting BaseX.

## Concurrent Operations

If you want to perform parallel (concurrent) read and write operations on your databases, you must use the client/server architecture or run BaseX as a web application. You can safely open a database in different JVMs (Java virtual machines) for read-only access, and you will not encounter any problems when reading from and writing to different databases. Update operations from different JVMs to the same database will be rejected or may even lead to corrupt databases.

For example, if you only read data, you can easily run several clients (standalone, GUI, database clients) in parallel. If you update your data, however, you shouldn't use the GUI or a standalone instance at the same time.

More details on concurrency can be found on the [Transaction Management](#) page.

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Update: Switched to Java 11

Version 9.0

- Update: Switched to Java 8

Version 8.0

- Update: Switched to Java 7

Version 7.0

- Updated: BaseXJAXRX has been replaced with BaseXHTTP



---

# Chapter 5. Graphical User Interface

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. BaseX comes with a graphical user interface that offers you great tools for managing, querying and visualizing your data and write complex applications in XQuery.

## Startup

The graphical user interface can be started as follows:

- If you have installed BaseX on *Windows*, click on the **BaseX GUI** icon.
- Run one of the `basexgui` or `basexgui.bat` scripts.
- You can also double-click on the `BaseX.jar` file (this way, no libraries will be added).
- For developers: type in `mvn exec:java` in the main directory of the `basex` project.

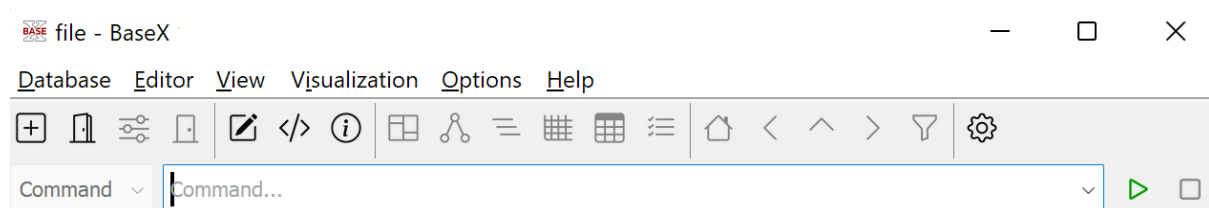
Some additional [command-line options](#) are available.

It is worth mentioning that the standalone client must not be used if you perform parallel (concurrent) read and write operations on your databases. See [Concurrent Operations](#) for more details.

## Introduction

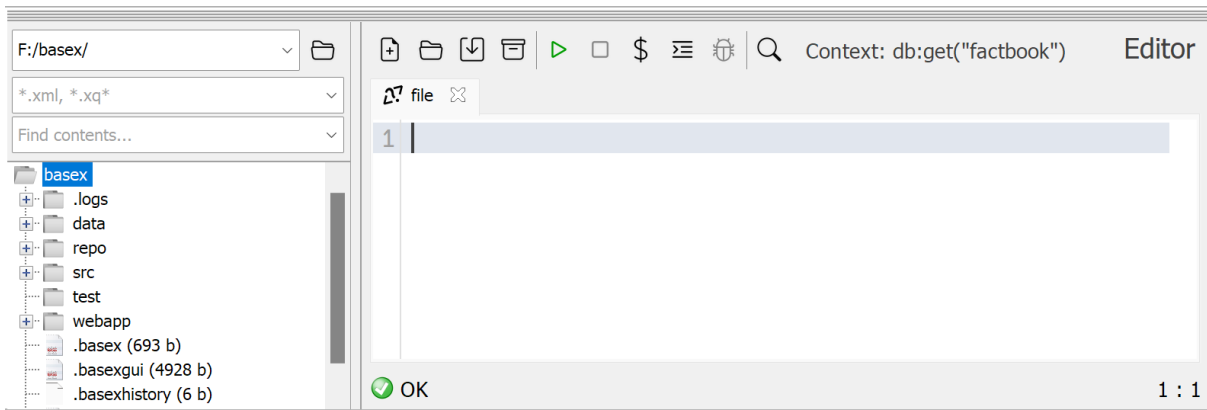
At the top of the BaseX window, the menu bar resides. It houses all important features of the BaseX GUI. Use the *Database* menu to [create and manage your XML databases](#). The *Editor* menu gives you access to a variety of tools and options for working with files. The *View* menu lets you toggle between the bars and panels described below. The *Visualization* menu offers you a comprehensive set of data representations that will help you to understand your data even better. Use the *Options* menu to set your preferences regarding real-time execution, colors, fonts, and packages.

Right below the menu bar, you can find the *Buttons* bar and just below that the *Input Bar*. The *Buttons* bar offers you a wide range of shortcuts, mostly for menu options, such as managing databases and displaying views and visualizations, but also for navigating through your data. With the *Input Bar*, you can query your data using three different kinds of query syntax.

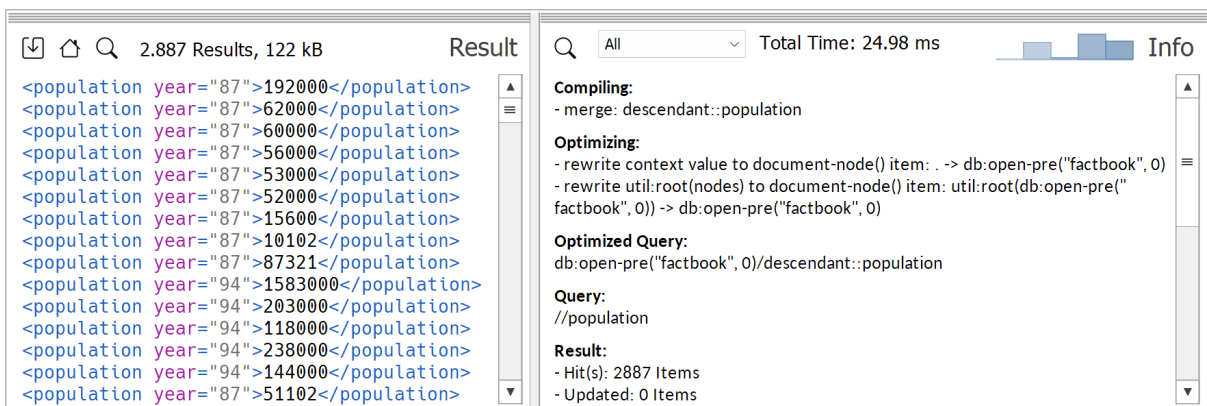


The *Status Bar* is situated at the bottom of the BaseX window.

The BaseX *editor* consists of the *Project* view, a file browser with optional input fields for searching files, and the actual *Editor* panel with buttons for creating, opening, saving, searching, executing and debugging your files.



In addition to that, the *Result* view displays the output of queries and database operations and the *Info* view shows you information about database processes and query execution.



To gain further insights into your data, you can choose to display various **visualizations** such as *Map*, *Tree*, *Folder*, *Plot*, *Table* and *Explorer*.

## Database Management

The BaseX GUI is a great place for creating and managing your XML databases.

To **create a new database**, select *Database* → *New* from the menu and browse to an XML document of your choice. You can start with the `factbook.xml` document, which contains statistical information on the worlds' countries. It is included in the `etc` directory of our [full distributions](#) (ZIP Package and Windows Installer) or can be downloaded [here](#) (1.3 MB). In the *Create Database* dialog, specify the path to your input file and the name of the new database. If you leave the input file field empty, an empty database will be created. Click the *OK* button to create the database.

**Note:** You can also use the GUI's **editor** to create and edit your own XML document. Just specify it as input file for the creation of a new database after saving the document to disk.

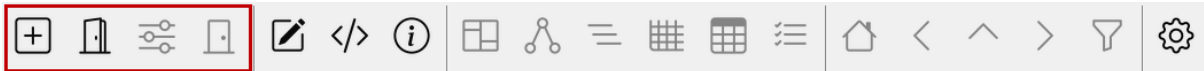
To **open, rename, copy or drop a database**, choose *Database* → *Open & Manage...* from the menu. Select one of the available databases on the left-hand side and click on one of the buttons on the right: *Open*, *Rename*, *Copy* or *Drop*. To open a database, you can also double-click on the database name.

Opening a database activates three more options in the *Database* menu:

- The *Properties* item gives you access to a variety of database options and information:
  - Add resources and/or set parsing preferences.
  - Gain insights into element and attribute names, paths and other meta information.

- Create and manage text, attribute, token and full-text indexes. Customize indexes by specifying language, stemming, case-sensitivity and diacritics settings or include a stop word list.
- With the *Export* item, you can serialize your database into a whole range of different output formats, including XML, JSON and CSV.
- The *Close* item closes the database. An open database is closed automatically as soon as another database is opened.

**Note:** You can also access the menu options *New*, *Open & Manage*, *Properties* and *Close* from BaseX's Buttons bar.



## Editor

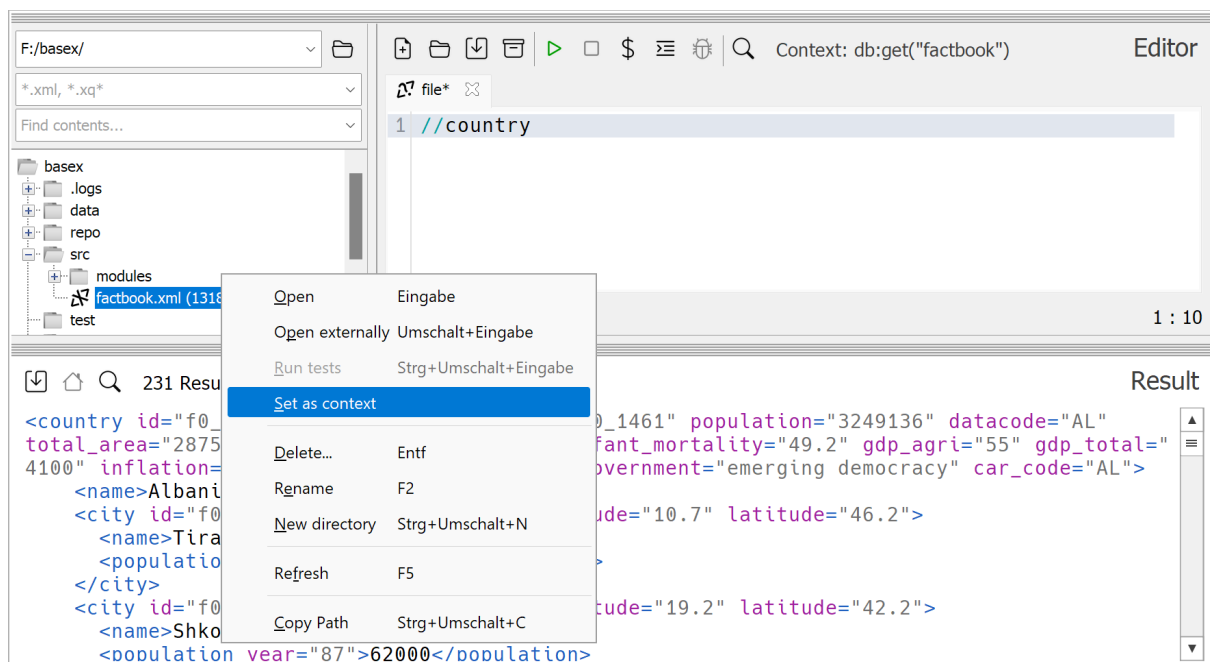
The built-in editor of BaseX is a powerful tool for write XQuery code and **Command Scripts**, editing text documents (XML, JSON, JavaScript, ...), and developing **RESTXQ** applications:

- The editor offers native **syntax highlighting** for XQuery, XML, JSON and JavaScript.
- XQuery, XML and JSON files will be **parsed** in real time and **errors** will be highlighted.
- XQuery code and command scripts can be **executed** (via Ctrl Enter or by clicking on the green triangle).

Numerous **keyboard shortcuts** are available to speed up editing and debugging. Some examples:

- Ctrl H: Search for the currently selected string in your complete project.
- Ctrl .: Jump to the next erroneous code in your project.

If you right-click on an XML document in the *Project* view, the selected file will be parsed and bound to the context item:



## Project View

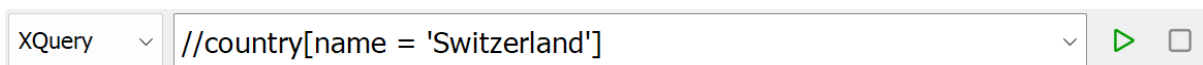
The *Project* view is attached to the *Editor* panel. It displays all files of the current project directory in a tree structure. Files can be renamed and deleted by right-clicking on the files. The project directory can be changed as well; the most recent directories will be kept in the history.

All XQuery files in the project directory will be parsed in the background. Buggy XQuery modules, and files importing these modules, will be marked red. With the text fields on top, you can interactively search for file names and contents.

If a directory contains a `.ignore` file, its files and contents will be ignored.

## Input Bar

The *Input Bar* is situated on top of the main window. It offers you three different modes to query your XML databases: **Find**, **XQuery** and **Command**.



The upcoming example queries can all be used with an instance of the `factbook` database:

### Find

In the **Find** mode, the input bar can be used to find single elements and texts in the currently opened database. The following syntax is supported:

Query	Description
<code>city</code>	Find elements named <code>city</code> , and texts containing this token.
<code>=India</code>	Find texts matching the exact string <code>India</code> .
<code>~Cingdom</code>	Find texts equal or similar to the token <code>Cingdom</code> .
<code>@id</code>	Find attributes named <code>id</code> and attribute values containing this token.
<code>@=f0_119</code>	Find attribute values matching the exact string <code>f0_119</code> .
<code>"European Chinese"</code>	Find texts containing the phrase <code>"European Chinese"</code> .
<code>//city</code>	Leading slash: Interpret the input as XPath expression (see below).

### XQuery

In the **XQuery** mode, XPath and XQuery expressions can be entered in the input bar.

To evaluate the following example queries, type them in the input bar and press `Enter` or click on the *Run query* button (green triangle) adjacent to the input bar:

Query	Description
<code>//country</code>	Return all <code>country</code> elements.
<code>//country[name = "Switzerland"]</code>	Return the <code>country</code> element of <code>"Switzerland"</code> .
<code>for \$city in //citywhere \$city/population &gt; 1000000order by \$city ascendingreturn \$city/name</code>	Return the names of all cities with a population larger than one million and order the results by the name of the city.

### Command

In the **Command** mode, BaseX **Commands** can be entered and executed. Just try the following examples:



Displays all nodes in an Explorer-like folder view. Nodes can be expanded or closed by clicking on the arrows.

Displays all nodes in a scatter plot, which is particularly helpful if you want to explore analyze your data. Three dropdown menus allow custom axis assignments.

open_auction	emailaddress	category	name	homepage	creditc.	id	phone	str.	con.	in.	cl.	e.	p.	g.	b.	z.	a.	in.	w.	
open_auction447	open_au...	mailto:shio@ucd.ie	category57...	Xianlong Us...		2133 5.	perso.													
open_auction283	open_au...	mailto:tesim@gte.com		Keung Yetim			perso.													
		mailto:lamb@ufl.edu		Irfaq Lam...	http://www...		perso.	+0 06.												
		mailto:Simone@eveng...		Libra Sim...	http://www...		perso.		38.	Unl.	C.	N.								
		mailto:Prodrondid...	category38...	Torkel Prod...		5144 2.	perso.	+0 050.												
		mailto:Alola@bell-labs.com		Fumino Alola			perso.													
open_auction630	open_au...	mailto:Rassar@img...	category27...	Mehtdad Ra...	http://www...	629 5.	perso.			6.	G.	f.	N.							
		mailto:kum@virdes...	category9...	Claudine Ha...			perso.		75.	Unl.	3.	V.	F.	E.	Y.					
		mailto:Gahlo@ucsd...	category93...	Budak GahL	http://www...	2202 7.	perso.													
open_auction319	open_au...	mailto:Markovitch@u...		Friedrich M...		2309 4.	perso.			72.	Unl.	G.								
		mailto:arashara@ubs...		Mehtdad Na...	http://www...		perso.			86.	G.									
open_auction94	open_auc...	mailto:Prasanth@u...	category5...	Singlin P...			perso.	+86 0.												
		mailto:Solchenbach@...	category6...	Hirochika So...		5864 2.	perso.	+86 0.												
open_auction908	open_au...	mailto:talwar@cohera...	category73...	Billur Talwar		2066 3.	perso.			41.	Unl.	4.	C.	G.	m.	Y.				
		mailto:tuser@beduik		Shiby Tusera			perso.			44.	Unl.	H.								
open_auction831	open_au...	mailto:sterina@bids...		Toyahide N...			perso.													
open_auction875	open_au...	mailto:Arkov@pana...		Bradó H&K.		2847 5.	perso.													
open_auction979	open_au...	mailto:kh@erbek@clis...		Jianming K...		9020 4.	perso.													
open_auction205	open_au...	mailto:zlotek@ab.ca		TingTing Zlo...		8128 4.	perso.	+0 08.	65.	Unl.	P.	N.								
		mailto:koron@bids...		Haar Peters...	http://www...		perso.			94.	Unl.	W.								
		mailto:Beassotell@tr...		Mehtdad B...	http://www...		perso.	+0 068.												
open_auction713	open_au...	mailto:Oberhuber@l...		Libby Ober...		8641 7.	perso.	+0 022.	24.	Unl.	M.									
		mailto:Blumenroth@b...		Gilli Blumen...			perso.	+0 088.	42.	Unl.	G.									
open_auction730	open_au...	mailto:koron@bids...	category56...	Charley Kor...	http://www...	7866 4.	perso.	+0 060.	21.	Unl.	4.	S.	G.	Y.						
open_auction543	open_au...	mailto:Witz@ufl.edu	category25...	Seema W&T			perso.			55.	Unl.	S.	C.	Y.						
		mailto:Markatos@tel...	category5...	Milja Marka...		5437 7.	perso.			31.	Unl.	1.	A.	O.	M.	Y.				

Explorer

John

regions

item

payment Creditcard

(0 entries)

Explorer

Can be used to explore the contents of your database via drop-down menus, search fields and double sliders.

Table

Comes in handy if your data is highly regular. It displays all nodes in a table with rows and columns. Different assignments can be chosen by clicking on the arrow in the right upper corner.

Real-time Options

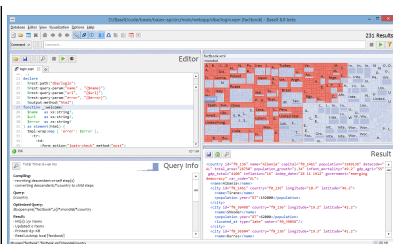
In the *Options* menu, you can change how queries are executed and visualized:

- **Real-time Execution** : If real-time execution is enabled, your searches and queries will be executed with each key click and the results will be instantly shown.
- **Real-time Filtering** : If enabled, all visualizations will be limited to the actual results in real-time. If this feature is disabled, the query results are highlighted in the visualizations and can be explicitly filtered with the 'Filter' button.

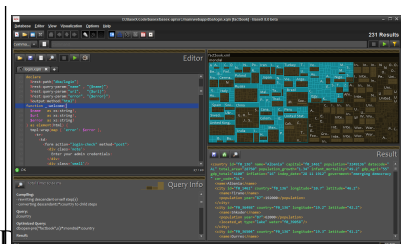
Look and Feel

By default, the Look and Feel of your operating system will be used in the GUI. In the *Preferences* dialog, you can choose from additional window themes.

The **JTattoo library** offers some more look and feels. If you download and copy the JTattoo jar file into the lib directory provided by the ZIP and EXE distribution of BaseX, 13 additional themes will get available.



Look & Feel



HiFi

Changelog

Version 9.3

- Updated: Project View: ignore directories with .ignore file

Version 9.1

- Added: Project View, set XML document as context.

Version 8.4

- Added: highlighting of erroneous XQuery modules in the project view.

Version 8.0

- Updated: support for dark look and feels; support for JTattoo library

---

# Chapter 6. Shortcuts

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is about the **GUI** of BaseX. It gives you an overview of the most important hotkeys available in the visual frontend.

## Editor

### Code Completions

The GUI editor provides various code completions, which simplify the authoring of complex XQuery applications. Opening elements, comments, quotes or brackets will automatically be closed, and new lines will automatically be indented.

If some characters have been entered, and if the **shortcut** for code completions is pressed (Ctrl Space), a popup menu will appear and provides some code templates. If only one completion is possible, it will automatically be inserted.

### Editor Shortcuts

The text editor can be used to create, edit, save and execute XQuery expressions, XML documents and any other textual files.

### Query Execution

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Execute XQuery	Ctrl Enter	# Enter
Execute XQUnit tests	Ctrl Shift Enter	# Shift Enter
Edit external variables	Ctrl Shift E	# Shift E
Result indentation on/off	Ctrl Shift I ( <i>new</i> )	# Shift I ( <i>new</i> )

### Custom Editing

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Performs <b>Code Completions</b>	Ctrl Space	Ctrl Space
Sort lines	Ctrl U	# U
(Un)comment selection/line	Ctrl K	# K
Delete line(s)	Ctrl Shift D	# Shift D
Duplicate line(s)	Ctrl D	# D
Lower case	Ctrl Shift L	# Shift L
Upper case	Ctrl Shift U	# Shift U
Title case	Ctrl Shift T	# Shift T
Format code (experimental)	Ctrl Shift F	# Shift F

### Finding

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Search highlighted string in project	Ctrl H	# Shift H
Jump to next error in project	Ctrl . (period)	# . (period)



## Shortcuts

Jump to currently edited file	Ctrl J	# J
Go to line	Ctrl L	# L
Find and replace text	Ctrl F	# F
Find next instance of text	F3Ctrl G	# F3# G
Find previous instance of text	Shift F3Ctrl Shift G	# Shift F3# Shift G
Jump to file history	Ctrl F6 ( <i>new</i> )	# F6 ( <i>new</i> )

### Standard Editing

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Undo recent changes	Ctrl Z	# Z
Redo recent changes	Ctrl Y	# Shift Z
Cut selection	Ctrl XCtrl Delete	# X
Copy selection to clipboard	Ctrl CCtrl Insert	# C
Paste from clipboard	Ctrl VShift Insert	# V
Select All	Ctrl A	# A
Delete character left of cursor	Backspace	Backspace
Delete character right of cursor	Delete	Delete (fn Backspace)
Delete word left of cursor	Ctrl Backspace	Alt Backspace
Delete word right of cursor	Ctrl Delete	Alt Delete
Delete text left of cursor	Ctrl Shift Backspace	# Backspace
Delete text right of cursor	Ctrl Shift Delete	# Delete

### Navigation

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Move one character to the left/right	←/→	←/→
Move one word to the left/right	Ctrl ←/→	Alt ←/→
Move to beginning/end of line	Home/End	# ←/→
Move one line up/down	↑/↓	↑/↓
Move one screen-full up/down	Page ↑/↓	Page ↑/↓ (fn ↑/↓)
Move to top/bottom	Ctrl Home/End	#/# (# ↑/↓)
Scroll one line up/down	Ctrl ↑/↓	Alt ↑/↓

### GUI

#### Global Shortcuts

The following shortcuts are available from most GUI components:

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Focus input bar	F8 ( <i>before: F6</i> )	# F8 ( <i>before: # F6</i> )
Focus editor view	F12	# F12
Focus result view	Shift F12 ( <i>new</i> )	Shift # F12 ( <i>new</i> )
Jump to next/previous panel	Ctrl (Shift) Tab	Ctrl (Shift) Tab
Increase/Decrease font size	Ctrl +/-	# +/-

Reset font size	Ctrl 0	# 0
-----------------	--------	-----

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Browse back/forward	Alt ←/#Backspace	# ←/→
Browse one level up	Alt ↑	# ↑
Browse to the root node	Alt Home	# Home

### Menu Shortcuts

The following commands and options are also linked from the main menu:

### Database

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Create new database	Ctrl N	# N
Open/manage existing databases	Ctrl M	# M
View/edit database properties	Ctrl D	# D
Close opened database	Ctrl Shift W	# Shift W
Exit application	Ctrl Q	# Q

### Editor

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Create new tab	Ctrl T	# T
Open existing file	Ctrl O	# O
Save file	Ctrl S	# S
Save copy of file	Ctrl Shift S	# Shift S
Close tab	Ctrl W, Ctrl F4	# W, # F4

### View

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Toggle query/text editor	Ctrl E	# E
Toggle project structure	Ctrl P	# P
Toggle result view	Ctrl R	# R
Toggle query info view	Ctrl I	# I

### Options

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Open preference dialog	Ctrl Shift P	# , (comma)

### Visualization

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Toggle map view	Ctrl 1	# 1
Toggle tree view	Ctrl 2	# 2

## Shortcuts

---

Toggle folder view	Ctrl 3	# 3
Toggle plot view	Ctrl 4	# 4
Toggle table view	Ctrl 5	# 5
Toggle explorer view	Ctrl 6	# 6

### Help

Description	Win/Linux	Mac
Show Help	F1	F1

Additionally, the names of HTML entities will be converted to their Unicode representation (as an example, Auml will be translated to ä).

## Changelog

### Version 10.0

- Updated: Some shortcuts were modified.

### Version 8.4

- Added: Duplicate line (Ctrl D)

### Version 8.4

- Added: Lower case (Ctrl Shift L), Upper case (Ctrl Shift U), Title case (Ctrl Shift T)

### Version 8.0

- Added: New code completions, popup menu

### Version 7.8.2

- Added: Sort lines (Ctrl U)

### Version 7.8

- Added: **Code Completions**, Project (Ctrl P), Find Files (Ctrl Shift F)

### Version 7.5

- Added: go to line (Ctrl F)

### Version 7.3

- Added: delete line(s) (Ctrl Shift D), jump to highlighted error (Ctrl .)

---

# Chapter 7. Command-Line Client

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It introduces you to the standalone command-line mode of BaseX.

## Startup

The command-line client can be started as follows:

- Run one of the `basex` or `basex.bat` scripts.
- If you have installed BaseX on *Windows*, click on the **BaseX Standalone** icon.

All operations will be performed with admin permissions (no password needs to be supplied). Various [command-line options](#) are available to simplify batch processing. The [start script](#) can be adjusted for individual purposes (e.g. if the default memory limit is too restrictive).

The standalone client must not be used if you perform parallel (concurrent) read and write operations on your databases. See [Concurrent Operations](#) for more details.

## Operations

### Create a Database

To create a database, you need an XML document, e.g., `factbook.xml`. Save this document to your working directory and type in the following command to create and open the database: `> CREATE DB factbook factbook.xml`

`factbook` is the name of the database

`factbook.xml` is the initial input of the database

By default, databases are stored in the `basex/data` directory of your project's home directory. Depending on your [Configuration](#), the location may vary.

### Execute a Query

The [Template:Commands](#) command lets you run a query. The following query returns all country elements of the currently opened database:

```
> XQUERY //country
```

You can also run queries in files:

```
> RUN /path/to/query.xq
```

### Database Commands

The following command lists all databases that can be opened by the currently logged-in user:

```
> LIST
```

To open an existing database, execute the following:

```
> OPEN factbook
```

To get information on the currently opened database, type:

```
> INFO
```

You can also address a database within your query with the `db:get` function:

```
> XQUERY db:get("factbook")//country
```

To close the current database, please type:

```
> CLOSE
```

A database can eventually be dropped again:

```
> DROP DB factbook
```

## Multiple Resources

One database can contain not only a single, but millions of documents. All documents can have a different structure.

With the following commands, you can create an empty database and add two documents. It is also possible to address resources via URLs:

```
> CREATE DB store , > ADD factbook.xml , > ADDhttp://files.basex.org/xml/xmark.xml
```

Deleting a document from a database is easy, but make sure that the database, which contains the addressed document, is currently opened:

```
> DELETE factbook.xml
```

## Backup and Restore

To back up and restore your database, type:

```
> CREATE BACKUP factbook , > RESTORE factbook
```

The backup file is stored in the database directory. It contains the name of the database and a timestamp: `[db-name]-[timestamp].zip`. If a database is to be restored, and if several backups exist, the backup with the newest timestamp is taken.

---

# Chapter 8. Database Server

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article belongs to the [Getting Started](#) Guide. It tells you how to run BaseX in client-server mode from command-line.

## Startup

### Server

*With Version 10, the default admin password has been removed.*

The database server handles concurrent [read and write transactions](#), [manages user permissions](#) and [logs user interactions](#). It can be started as follows:

- Run one of the `basexserver` or `basexserver.bat` scripts. Use `basexserverstop` or `basexserverstop.bat` to gracefully shut down the server.
- If you have installed BaseX on *Windows*, click on the **BaseX HTTP Server (Start)** icon, which will start both the HTTP Server used for [Web Applications](#) and the database server. With **BaseX HTTP Server (Stop)**, you can shut down the server process.

Unless you have already chosen an admin password yet (e.g., via the Windows installer or a previous installation), you can do so by invoking the `PASSWORD` command on your terminal:

```
basexserver -c PASSWORD
BaseX [Server]
Server was started (port: 1984).
Password: _
```

By default, the server listens to the port 1984. Pressing `Ctrl+c` will close all connections and databases and gracefully shut down the server process.

Various [command-line options](#) are available to simplify batch processing. The [start script](#) can be adjusted for individual purposes (e.g. if the default memory limit is too restrictive).

### Client

Database clients are started similarly:

- Run one of the `basexclient` or `basexclient.bat` scripts.
- Execute the following command: `java -cp BaseX.jar org.baseX.BaseXClient`
- If you have installed BaseX on *Windows*, click on the **BaseX Client** icon.

At startup, you need to enter your credentials.

For further details, have a look at the [command-line options](#) and the [start script](#).

## Introduction

The BaseX command-line client provides similar features to the [standalone client](#). The major difference is that all commands will be executed by the BaseX server instance. As a consequence, paths/URIs to resources need to be resolvable by the server (file contents will not be transferred to the server).

Username and password can also be specified as command-line option. To evaluate commands without entering the console mode, you can use the `-c` option on the command line:

```
basexclient -V -Uadmin -P... -c "CREATE DB input <example/>; XQUERY /"

Database 'input' created in 13.85 ms.
<example/>
Query:
/

Parsing: 0.18 ms
Compiling: 0.04 ms
Evaluating: 0.12 ms
Printing: 0.07 ms
Total Time: 0.41 ms

Hit(s): 1 Item
Updated: 0 Items
Printed: 10 Bytes
Read Locking: local [input]
Write Locking: none

Query "user" executed in 0.41 ms.
```

## Language Bindings

If you want to communicate with the database server programmatically, we provide clients for various [programming languages](#).

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: The default admin password has been removed.

---

# Chapter 9. Web Application

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It describes how BaseX can be used to both provide simple APIs and build complex web applications.

## Startup

With Version 10, the default admin password has been removed, and the default ports have been changed from 8984/8985 to 8080/8081.

- Run one of the `basexhttp` or `basexhttp.bat` scripts. Call the script with the `stop` keyword to gracefully shut down the server.
- If you have installed BaseX on *Windows*, click on the **BaseX HTTP Server (Start)** icon.

Both an instance of [Jetty](#) and [BaseX Database Server](#) will be started. By default, Jetty listens to the port 8080, and the [BaseX Database Server](#) is accessible on port 1984. After startup, you can access a plain HTML welcome page via <http://localhost:8080>.

Unless you have already chosen an admin password yet (e.g., via the Windows installer or a previous installation), you can do so by invoking the `PASSWORD` command on your terminal:

```
basexhttp -c PASSWORD
BaseX [HTTP Server]
...
[main] INFO org.eclipse.jetty.util.log - Logging initialized @239ms to
org.eclipse.jetty.util.log.Slf4jLog
...
HTTP STOP Server was started (port: 8081).
HTTP Server was started (port: 8080).
Password: _
```

The Jetty logging level can be adjusted by adding the following properties to the start script:

```
-Dorg.eclipse.jetty.util.log.class=org.eclipse.jetty.util.log.StdErrLog -
D{classref}.LEVEL=DEBUG
```

Various [command-line options](#) are available to simplify batch processing. The [start script](#) can be adjusted for individual purposes (e.g. if the default memory limit is too restrictive).

BaseX can also be deployed as web servlet in a servlet container or with Maven:

## Servlet Container

In order to deploy BaseX HTTP Services in a servlet container, you can download the WAR distribution of BaseX from the [download site](#), or compile it by calling `mvn compile war:war` in the `basex-api` directory. The WAR file can then be deployed following the instructions of the corresponding servlet container ([Jetty](#), [Tomcat](#), etc.).

You can configure the port, context path, etc. by following the instructions of the corresponding servlet container. This is needed if you want to replace the default URL path (e.g. <http://localhost:8080/rest>) with a custom one (e.g. <http://localhost:8080/basex/rest>).

If you use Jetty (which is the default HTTP server of BaseX), the server configuration is available via the `jetty.xml` file, which is stored in the `WEB-INF` directory next to the `web.xml`. For detailed configuration, refer to the [Jetty Documentation](#).

To run on [Apache Tomcat](#), start the Tomcat server and add any `*.war` distribution to deploy via the Tomcat web interface. By default, the interface is accessible via <http://localhost:8080/manager/html/>.



## Maven

Check out the BaseX sources via [Eclipse](#) or [Git](#). Execute `mvn install` in the main project directory and then `mvn install jetty:run` in the `basex-api` subdirectory. This will start a Jetty instance in which the servlets will be deployed.

The same options as in the case of deployment apply in a servlet container. In this case, however, there is no WAR archive. Instead, Jetty looks up all files in the directory `basex-api/src/main/webapp`. Jetty and servlet options can be configured in the `jetty.xml` and `web.xml` files as described above in the [Servlet Container Configuration](#). The Jetty stop port can be changed in the [Maven Jetty Plugin](#) session in the `pom.xml` file.

## Services

The following services are available and enabled by default:

Name	Standard Path	Description
<a href="#">RESTXQ</a>	/	Write enriched APIs and full web applications with XQuery.
<a href="#">WebSockets</a>	ws/	Bidirectional client/server communication.
<a href="#">REST</a>	rest/	Straightforward access to XML databases and its resources.
<a href="#">WebDAV</a>	webdav/	Database access via the file system.
Default	static/	Access to static server resources (HTML, JavaScript, CSS, images, ...).

The [DBA](#) is a web-based database administration interface written in RESTXQ. It allows you to create and administrate databases, evaluate queries in realtime, view log files, manage users, etc. It is embedded in the full distributions of BaseX, and it can be accessed after startup via <http://localhost:8080/dba/>.

## Configuration

Unless BaseX is deployed as servlet, the location of the web application directory can be adjusted via the `WEBPATH` option, and compression of HTTP responses can be enabled via the `GZIP` option.

Further database options can be defined as context parameters in the `web.xml` file. The most important options for the web application context are:

Option	Default	Description
<code>USER</code>	<code>admin</code>	If a user is specified, no credentials must be passed on by the client.
<code>HTTPLOCAL</code>	<code>false</code>	Operation mode. By default, a database server instance will be started, as soon as the first HTTP service is called. The database server can be disabled by setting this flag to <code>true</code> .
<code>RESTXQPATH</code>	<code>.</code>	Relative or absolute directory referencing the <a href="#">RESTXQ</a> modules. By default, the option points to the standard web application directory.
<code>RESTPATH</code>	<code>.</code>	Relative or absolute directory referencing queries and command-scripts that can be invoked via the <a href="#">run operation</a> of REST. By default, the option points to the standard web application directory.
<code>AUTHMETHOD</code>	<code>Basic</code>	The default authentication method proposed by the server. The available methods are <code>Basic</code> and <code>Digest</code> .

All options are prefixed with `org.basex..` Local file paths in options may be absolute or relative. If a relative path is specified, its root will be the servlet's (`webapp`) path:

```
<context-param>
  <param-name>org.basex.dbpath</param-name>
  <!-- will be rewritten to .../webapp/WEB-INF/data -->
  <param-value>WEB-INF/data</param-value>
</context-param>
<context-param>
  <param-name>org.basex.repopath</param-name>
  <!-- will be kept as is -->
  <param-value>f:/basex/repository</param-value>
</context-param>
```

Context parameters can be requested from XQuery via [proc:property-names](#) and [proc:property](#). How to set these options is specific to the servlet container. For example, in Jetty it can be done by [overriding the web.xml](#) file. Another option is to directly edit the `WEB-INF/web.xml` file in the WAR archive (WAR files are simple ZIP files). Refer to the sample [web.xml](#) of the `basex-api` package.

To enable or disable a specific service, the corresponding servlet entry in the `web.xml` file needs to be removed/commented.

## Authentication

No credentials need to be supplied if a default user is assigned to a service in the `web.xml` file. In the following example, the user `rest-user` is specified for the REST service:

```
<servlet>
  <servlet-name>REST</servlet-name>
  <servlet-class>org.basex.http.rest.RESTServlet</servlet-class>
  <init-param>
    <param-name>org.basex.user</param-name>
    <param-value>rest-user</param-value>
  </init-param>
</servlet>
```

If the HTTP server is started with no pre-defined user, the credentials must be passed on by the client via [Basic Authentication](#) or [Digest Authentication](#), depending on the chosen authentication method in the configuration.

With cURL, internet browsers, and other tools, you can specify basic authentication credentials within the request string as plain text, using the format `USER:PASSWORD@URL`:

```
http://admin:...@localhost:8080/
```

Users are specified in a `users.xml` file, which is stored in the database directory (see [User Management](#) for more information).

## Changelog

### Version 10.0

- Updated: The default admin password has been removed, and the default ports have been changed from 8984/8985 to 8080/8081.

### Version 9.0

- Updated: `jetty.xml` configuration file (required for Jetty 9).

### Version 8.6

- Updated: Authentication readded to RESTXQ.
- Updated: No password must be specified in the `web.xml` file anymore.
- Updated: Server-side user and authentication method is now enforced (cannot be overwritten by client).

Version 8.0

- Added: digest authentication
- Updated: user management
- Updated: default user/password disabled in web.xml

Version 7.7

- Added: service-specific permissions

Version 7.5

- Added: `jetty.xml`: configuration for Jetty Server
- Updated: `server` replaced with `httplocal` mode

Version 7.3

- Updated: `client` mode replaced with `server` mode

Version 7.2

- Web Application concept revised

---

# Chapter 10. DBA

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section.

The full distributions of BaseX are equipped with a browser-based database administration interface, the **DBA**. It allows you to create and administrate databases, evaluate queries in real time, view log files, monitor logged-in users, manage users, etc. The server-side code is completely written in [XQuery](#) and [RESTXQ](#).

These were our design goals:

- The code base is supposed to inspire and motivate you developing your own [RESTXQ](#) web applications.
- The XQuery DBA code is very lean; it consumes less than 150 KB. It uses plain and simple JavaScript and no framework.
- We tried to make the DBA features as self-explanatory as possible. All functionalities are also available via [Commands](#), [XQuery Modules](#) or the Java [GUI](#).
- The dba subdirectory can simply be copied and moved to any other place. All URL paths point to the same directory; it should be straightforward to adjust the [RESTXQ](#) path.

If you put DBA online along with your web page, please ensure at the very least...

- that you have chosen a strong password for your admin user, and
- that the BaseX process has not been started with admin privileges.

## Startup

- Download the [ZIP Archive](#) or the [Windows Installer](#) from the [download page](#)
- Start the [BaseX HTTP Server](#)
- Open a browser and visit the URL `http://localhost:8984/dba`

On the welcome page, you need to authenticate yourself by entering the name and password of a user with [admin permissions](#).

## Logs

All [database logs](#) are listed, ordered by creation time in descending order. The interactive filter allows you to search in the users and text columns via regular expressions. The found substrings are highlighted in the output.

For each day, a new log files is created. Old log files can be selected and deleted.

## Databases

The database panel contains a list of all databases. Databases can be created, optimized and dropped. If a database is selected, the database resources, backups and properties are listed. Queries can be run on single database resources.

## BaseX Database Administration

Logs · **Databases** · Queries · Files · Jobs · Users · Sessions · Settings

Query was successful.

dba (logout)



### Databases » NYT-1987

Add... Delete Copy... Rename... Optimize...

106104 Entries (Page: 1 2 ... 107 ... 1062)

<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME	CONTENT TYPE	RAW	SIZE
<input type="checkbox"/>	1987/01/01/0000000.xml	application/xml	-	260
<input type="checkbox"/>	1987/01/01/0000001.xml	application/xml	-	226
<input type="checkbox"/>	1987/01/01/0000002.xml	application/xml	-	184

1987/01/01/0000000.xml

Rename... Download Replace...

Enter your query...

//meta

```
<meta content="1" name="publication_day_of_month" />
<meta content="1" name="publication_month" />
<meta content="1987" name="publication_year" />
```

## Queries

XQuery expressions can be run in the Queries panel. If evaluation takes too long, or if it consumes too much memory, the execution will be interrupted. You can choose if your query is updating or not.

Inside the editor area, you can press Ctrl-Enter to execute the query. You can press Shift-Ctrl-Enter to run your XQuery expression as updating query (or non-updating, if "Updating" is chosen in the dropdown menu).

Existing queries can be opened, and saved for future operations. All files will be stored in the current DBA working directory.

## Files

Remote files can be downloaded, opened in the query editor or run as BaseX jobs, and new files can be uploaded. The chosen directory affects the Queries panel.

You can edit your RESTXQ code in real time by switching to the RESTXQ or repository directory and opening the corresponding modules.

## BaseX Database Administration

Logs · Databases · Queries · **Files** · Jobs · Users · Sessions · Settings

dba (logout)



### Directory

Current: F:\basex\webapp\dba

Delete

13 Entries

<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME	DATE	BYTES	ACTION
<input type="checkbox"/>	..	2020-06-16, 15:13:16	0 b	
<input type="checkbox"/>	databases	2018-01-18, 15:15:44	0 b	
<input type="checkbox"/>	files	2018-03-06, 14:06:02	0 b	

## Jobs

In the Jobs panel, all queries are listed that are currently being run or queued. You can view details on particular jobs, spot potential bottlenecks, or spot and terminate malicious requests. The panel will always list at least one job, which is the one that is currently preparing your HTTP response.

## Users

Existing users can be updated and new users can be created. Extra information can be viewed and modified both globally and locally (see [User Management](#) for more information).

## Sessions

The Web Sessions table lists all users that are currently registered in an application or the DBA. See the DBA RESTXQ code for information on how clients can be registered and logged out.

The Database Sessions table shows clients that are connected via the client/server architecture.

## Settings

In the settings, you can tweak some DBA options, enforce a garbage collection and view all current global and local databases options.

## Changelog

Version 9.4

- Updated: Logging was improved for millions of log entries

Version 8.6

- Updated: Always accessible, even if job queue is full
- Removed: Remote connections (to allow for better optimizations and less locking)

Version 8.4

- Added: Editor: Key combination 'Shift-Ctrl-Enter', real time mode removed.

Introduced with Version 8.0.

---

# Part III. Command Line

---

# Chapter 11. Command-Line Options

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article is part of the [Getting Started](#) Guide. Each BaseX [Startup](#) mode has one or more command-line options which are described in this article.

Command-line options can be specified multiple times. Please note that all options will be evaluated in the given order. The standard input can be parsed by specifying a single dash (-) as argument.

## Standalone

The following options are available for the standalone [Command-Line Client](#):

```
$ basex -h
BaseX [Standalone]
Usage: basex [-bcdiIoqrRstuvVwxz] [input]
 [input]      XQuery or command file, or query string
 -b<args>    Bind external query variables
 -c<input>   Execute commands from file or string
 -d          Toggle debugging output
 -i<input>   Bind file or database to context
 -I<input>   Bind input string to context
 -o<path>    Write output to local file
 -q<expr>   Execute XQuery expression
 -r<num>    Run query multiple times
 -R          Toggle query execution
 -s<args>   Set serialization parameters
 -t[path]   Run tests in file or directory
 -u         Toggle updates in original files
 -v         Toggle output of progress info
 -V         Toggle detailed query output
 -w         Toggle whitespace stripping
 -x         Toggle output of query plan
 -z         Toggle output of query result
```

Further details are listed in the following table. If an equivalent database option exists (which can be specified via the `SET` command), it is listed as well. For the examples to work, it might be necessary to escape some characters depending on your operating system.

Flag	Description	Option	Default	Examples
[ input ]	Evaluates the specified input: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The input string may point to an existing file. If the file suffix is <code>.bxs</code>, the file contents will be evaluated as <b>Command Script</b>; any other file content will be evaluated as XQuery expression.</li><li>Otherwise, the input string itself is evaluated as XQuery expression.</li></ul>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>"doc('X')//head",</code></li><li><code>query.xq,</code></li><li><code>commands.bxs,</code></li></ul>
-b<args>	Binds external variables to XQuery expressions. This flag may be specified multiple times. Variables names and their values are delimited by equality signs (=). The names may be optionally prefixed with dollar signs. If a variable uses a namespace different to the default namespace, it can be specified with the <b>Clark Notation</b> .	BINDINGS		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>-bv=example</code></li><li><code>"declare variable \$v external; \$v",</code></li><li><code>-b{URL}ln=value"declare namespace ns='URL';</code></li></ul>



## Command-Line Options

				declare variable \$ns:ln external; \$ns:ln"
- c<input>	Executes <b>commands</b> . If the specified input is a valid URI or file reference, this file will be evaluated as <b>Command Script</b> .			• -c list, • - c commands.txt, • -c "<info/ >"
-d	Toggles the debugging mode. Debugging information is output to <i>standard error</i> .	DEBUG	false	
- i<input>	Opens the specified XML file, directory with XML files, or database. The opened input can then be processed by a command or XQuery expression.			-i items.xml "//item"
- I<input>	Assigns an input string as item of type <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code> to the query context.			-I "Hello Universe" - q "."
-o<path>	All command and query output is written to the specified file.			-o output.txt
-q<expr>	Executes the specified string as XQuery expression.			- q"doc('input')// head"
-r<num>	Specifies how often a specified query will be evaluated.	RUNS	1	-V -r10 "1"
-R	Specifies if a query will be evaluated or parsed and compiled only.	RUNQUERY	true	-V -R "1"
-s<args>	Specifies parameters for serializing XQuery results; see <b>Serialization</b> for more details. This flag may be specified multiple times. Key and values are separated by the equality sign (=).	SERIALIZER		- smethod=text
-t[path]	Runs all <b>Unit tests</b> in the specified file or directory.			-t project/tests
-u	Propagates updates on input files back to disk.	WRITEBACK	false	
-v	Toggles the output of process and timing information.		false	
-V	Prints detailed query information to the <i>standard output</i> , including details on the compilation and profiling steps.	QUERYINFO	false	
-w	Toggles whitespace stripping of XML text nodes. By default, whitespaces will be preserved.	STRIPWS	false	
-x	Toggles the output of the query execution plan, formatted as XML.	XMLPLAN	false	
-z	Turns the serialization of XQuery results on/off. This flag is useful if the query is profiled or analyzed.	SERIALIZE	true	

## GUI

The following options are available for the standalone **Graphical User Interface**:

```
$ basexgui -h
BaseX [GUI]
Usage: basexgui [-d] [files]
       [files]  Open specified files
       -d      Enable debugging
```

You can pass one or more files as parameters. If an XML document is specified, a database instance can be created from this file. Other files are opened in the editor.

## Server

The following options are available for the **Database Server**:

```
$ basexserver -h
BaseX [Server]
Usage: basexserver [-cdnpSz] [stop]
       stop          Stop running server
       -c<input>    Execute commands from file or string
       -d           Enable debugging output
       -n<name>     Set host the server is bound to
       -p<port>    Set server port
       -S          Start as service
       -z          Suppress logging
```

Details on all options are listed in the following table (equivalent database options are shown in the table as well). For the examples to work, it might be necessary to escape some characters depending on your operating system.

Flag	Description	Option	Default	Examples
stop	Stops a local database server instance and quits.			
-c<input>	Executes <b>commands</b> . If the specified input is a valid URI or file reference, this file will be evaluated as <b>Command Script</b> .			-c "open database;info"
-d	Enables debugging output. Debugging information is output to <i>standard error</i> .	DEBUG	false	
-n<name>	Specifies the host the server will be bound to.	SERVERHOST		-p127.0.0.1
-p<port>	Specifies the port on which the server will be addressable.	SERVERPORT	1984	-p9999
-S	Starts the server as service (i.e., in the background). Use <b>YAJSW</b> , or start BaseX as an ordinary background process to get more options.			
-z	Prevents the generation of <b>log files</b> .	LOG	true	

Multiple **-c** and **-i** flags can be specified. All other options will be set before any other operation takes place. The specified inputs, query files, queries and commands will be subsequently evaluated after that in the given order. The standard input can be parsed by specifying a single dash (-) as argument.

## Client

If the **Database Client** is launched, you will be requested for a username and password.

```
$ basexclient -h
BaseX [Client]
```

```
Usage: basexclient [-bcdiInopPqrRsUvVwxz] [input]
[input]      XQuery or command file, or query string
-b<args>    Bind external query variables
-c<input>   Execute commands from file or string
-d          Toggle debugging output
-i<input>   Bind file or database to context
-I<input>   Bind input string to context
-n<name>    Set server (host) name
-o<path>    Write output to local file
-p<port>    Set server port
-P<pass>    Specify user password
-q<expr>   Execute XQuery expression
-r<num>    Run query multiple times
-R          Toggle query execution
-s<args>   Set serialization parameters
-U<name>    Specify username
-v          Toggle output of progress info
-V          Toggle detailed query output
-w          Toggle whitespace stripping
-x          Toggle output of query plan
-z          Toggle output of query result
```

See the following table for details (equivalent database options are shown in the table as well). For the examples to work, it might be necessary to escape some characters, depending on your operating system.

Flag	Description	Option	Default	Examples
[input]	Evaluates the specified input: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input string may point to an existing file. If the file suffix is <code>.bxs</code>, the file contents will be evaluated as <b>Command Script</b>; any other file content will be evaluated as XQuery expression.</li> <li>Otherwise, the input string itself is evaluated as XQuery expression.</li> </ul>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>"doc('X')//head",</code></li> <li><code>query.xq,</code></li> <li><code>commands.bxs,</code></li> </ul>
-b<args>	Binds external variables to XQuery expressions. This flag may be specified multiple times. Variables names and their values are delimited by equality signs (=). The names may be optionally prefixed with dollar signs. If a variable uses a namespace different to the default namespace, it can be specified with the <b>Clark Notation</b> or <b>Expanded QName Notation</b> .	BINDINGS		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>-b \$v=example</code></li> <li><code>"declare variable \$v external; \$v",</code></li> <li><code>-b{URL}ln=value"declare namespace ns='URL'; declare variable \$ns:ln external; \$ns:ln"</code></li> </ul>
-c<input>	Executes <b>commands</b> . If the specified input is a valid URI or file reference, its content will be executed instead. Empty lines and lines starting with the number sign # will be ignored.			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>-c list,-ccommands.txt,</code></li> <li><code>-c"&lt;info/&gt;"</code></li> </ul>
-d	Toggles the debugging mode. Debugging information is output to <i>standard error</i> .	DEBUG	false	
-i<input>	Opens the specified XML file, directory with XML files, or database. The opened input			<code>-iitems.xml</code> <code>"//item"</code>

## Command-Line Options

	can then be processed by a command or XQuery expression.			
-I<input>	Assigns an input string as item of type <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code> to the query context.			-I "Hello Universe" -q "."
-n<name>	Specifies the host name on which the server is running.	HOST	localhost	-nserver.basex.org
-o<path>	All command and query output is written to the specified file.			
-p<port>	Specifies the port on which the server is running.	PORT	1984	-p9999
-P<pass>	Specifies the user password. If this flag is omitted, the password will be requested on command line. <i>Warning:</i> When the password is supplied with this flag, it may end up in logs or the bash history.	PASSWORD		-Padmin -P...
-q<expr>	Executes the specified string as XQuery expression.			-q"1+2"
-r<num>	Specifies how often a specified query will be evaluated.	RUNS	1	-V -r10 "1"
-R	Specifies if a query will be executed or parsed only.	RUNQUERY	true	-V -R "1"
-s<args>	Specifies parameters for serializing XQuery results; see <a href="#">Serialization</a> for more details. This flag may be specified multiple times. Key and values are separated by the equality sign (=).	SERIALIZER		-smethod=text
-U<name>	Specifies the username. If this flag is omitted, the username will be requested on command line.	USER		-Uadmin
-v	Prints process and timing information to the <i>standard output</i> .		false	
-V	Prints detailed query information to the <i>standard output</i> , including details on the compilation and profiling steps.	QUERYINFO	false	
-w	Toggles whitespace stripping of XML text nodes. By default, whitespaces will be preserved.	STRIPWS	false	
-x	Toggles the output of the query execution plan, formatted as XML.	XMLPLAN	false	
-z	Turns the serialization of XQuery results on/off. This flag is useful if the query is profiled or analyzed.	SERIALIZE	true	

## HTTP Server

With Version 10, the default ports have been changed from 8984/8985 to 8080/8081.

The following options are available for the **HTTP Server**:

```
$ basexhttp -h
BaseX [HTTP]
Usage: basexhttp [-cdhlnpsSUz] [stop]
```

```

stop      Stop running server
-c

```

The meaning of all options is listed in the following table (equivalent database options are shown in the table as well). For the examples to work, it might be necessary to escape some characters depending on your Operating System.

Flag	Description	Option	Default	Examples
stop	Stops a local HTTP server and quits. The database server will be stopped as well, unless <code>-l</code> is specified.	pom.xml		
-c <input&gt;< td=""> <td>Executes <b>commands</b>. If the specified input is a valid URI or file reference, this file will be evaluated as <b>Command Script</b>.</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>-c "open database"</td> </input&gt;<>	Executes <b>commands</b> . If the specified input is a valid URI or file reference, this file will be evaluated as <b>Command Script</b> .			-c "open database"
-e	Enables debugging output. Debugging information is output to <i>standard error</i> .	DEBUG		
-g	Enables GZIP support in Jetty.	GZIP		
-h<port>	Specifies the port on which the HTTP server will be addressable.	jetty.xml	8080	-h9999
-l	Starts the server in <i>local mode</i> , and executes all commands in the embedded database context.	HTTPLOCAL		
-n<name>	Specifies the host name on which the server is running.	HOST	localhost	-nserver.basex.org
-p<port>	Specifies the port on which the database server will be addressable.	SERVERPORT	1984	-p9998
-s<port>	Specifies the port that will be used to stop the HTTP server.	STOPPORT orpom.xml	8081	
-S	Starts the server as service (i.e., in the background). Use <b>YAJSW</b> , or start BaseX as an ordinary background process to get more options.			
-U<name>	Specifies a username, which will be used by the HTTP services for opening a new session.	USER		-Uadmin
-z	Prevents the generation of <b>log files</b> .	LOG		

## Changelog

### Version 10.0

- Updated: Whitespaces are now preserved by default (see STRIPWS for more details).

### Version 9.0

- Added: BaseXHTTP, command-line option `-c`.

- Updated: BaseXHTTP, command-line option `-c`, additionally accepts valid URLs and file references.

Version 8.2

- Removed: Event ports, `-e`.

Version 8.1

- Added: Bind input strings to the query context with `-I`.

Version 8.0

- Removed: Command-line option `-L` (results will now be automatically separated by newlines).

Version 7.9

- Added: Runs tests in file or directory with `-t`.
- Removed: interactive server mode.

Version 7.8

- Added: Specify if a query will be executed or parsed only with `-R`.

Version 7.7

- Added: Bind host to the **BaseX Server** with `-n`.

Version 7.5

- Added: detection of **Command Scripts**.
- Removed: HTTP server flags `-R`, `-W`, and `-X`.

Version 7.3

- Updated: all options are now evaluated in the given order.
- Updated: Create main-memory representations for specified sources with `-i`.
- Updated: Options `-C/-c` and `-q/[input]` merged.
- Updated: Option `-L` also separates serialized items with newlines (instead of spaces).

Version 7.2

- Added: RESTXQ Service

Version 7.1.1

- Added: Options `-C` and `-L` in standalone and client mode.

Version 7.1

- Updated: Multiple query files and `-c/-i/-q` flags can be specified.

---

# Chapter 12. Start Scripts

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

BaseX can be [started in different ways](#). The [Windows and ZIP distributions](#) include various start scripts, which are presented in the following, and which can also be maintained separately.

- We recommend you to manually add the bin directory of your BaseX instance to the [PATH variable](#) of your environment.
- If you use the Windows installer, that's done automatically.
- You can copy the start scripts to another location in your file system. After that, you should edit the scripts and assign the BaseX directory to the MAIN variable.
- If you are compiling the source code with [Maven](#), you can launch BaseX via the scripts in the [basex-core/etc](#) and [basex-api/etc](#) subdirectories of the project.

If BaseX terminates with an Out of Memory or Java heap space error, you can assign more RAM via the `-Xmx` flag (see below). A conservative value was chosen in our distributions to ensure that BaseX will also run on older JVMs.

## Standalone

Use the following scripts to launch the standalone version of BaseX:

### Windows: `basex.bat`

```
@echo off
setLocal EnableDelayedExpansion

REM Path to core and library classes
set MAIN=%~dp0/..
set CP=%MAIN%/BaseX.jar;%MAIN%/lib/*;%MAIN%/lib/custom/*

REM Options for virtual machine
set BASEX_JVM=-Xmx1200m %BASEX_JVM%

REM Run code
java -cp "%CP%" %BASEX_JVM% org.basex.BaseX %*
```

### Linux/Mac: `basex`

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

# Path to this script
FILE="{BASH_SOURCE[0]}"
while [ -h "$FILE" ] ; do
  SRC="{readlink "$FILE"}"
  FILE="{ cd -P "$(dirname "$FILE")" && \
    cd -P "$(dirname "$SRC")" && pwd )/$(basename "$SRC")"
done
MAIN="{ cd -P "$(dirname "$FILE")/.." && pwd }"

# Core and library classes
CP=$MAIN/BaseX.jar:$MAIN/lib/*:$MAIN/lib/custom/*:$CLASSPATH

# Options for virtual machine (can be extended by global options)
BASEX_JVM="-Xmx2g $BASEX_JVM"

# Run code
```

```
java -cp "$CP" $BASEX_JVM org.baseX.BaseX "$@"
```

## GUI, Server, Client

If you would like to launch the GUI, Server or Client version of BaseX, please replace the class name in `org.baseX.BaseX` with either `BaseXGUI`, `BaseXServer` or `BaseXClient`.

## HTTP Server

The scripts for running [Web Applications](#) can be found below:

### Windows: `basexhttp.bat`

```
@echo off
setLocal EnableDelayedExpansion

REM Path to core and library classes
set MAIN=%~dp0/..
set CP=%MAIN%/BaseX.jar;%MAIN%/lib/*;%MAIN%/lib/custom/*

REM Options for virtual machine
set BASEX_JVM=-Xmx1200m %BASEX_JVM%

REM Run code
java -cp "%CP%" %BASEX_JVM% org.baseX.BaseXHTTP %*
```

### Linux/Mac: `basexhttp`

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

# Path to this script
FILE="${BASH_SOURCE[0]}"
while [ -h "$FILE" ] ; do
  SRC="$(readlink "$FILE")"
  FILE="$( cd -P "$(dirname "$FILE")" && \
    cd -P "$(dirname "$SRC")" && pwd )/$(basename "$SRC")"
done
MAIN="$( cd -P "$(dirname "$FILE")/.." && pwd )"

# API, core, and library classes
CP=$MAIN/BaseX.jar:$MAIN/lib/*:$MAIN/lib/custom/*:$CLASSPATH

# Options for virtual machine (can be extended by global options)
BASEX_JVM="-Xmx2g $BASEX_JVM"

# Run code
java -cp "$CP" $BASEX_JVM org.baseX.BaseXHTTP "$@"
```

## Included Start Scripts

The BaseX [Windows](#) and [ZIP distributions](#) include the following start scripts:

Windows	Linux/Mac	Description
<code>basex.bat</code>	<code>basex</code>	Launches the BaseX standalone mode.
<code>basexclient.bat</code>	<code>basexclient</code>	Starts a BaseX client.
<code>basexgui.bat</code>	<code>basexgui</code>	Starts the BaseX GUI.
<code>basexhttp.bat</code>	<code>basexhttp</code>	Starts the BaseX HTTP Server.
<code>basexserver.bat</code>	<code>basexserver</code>	Starts the BaseX database server.



For the BaseX HTTP and database server, additional stop scripts are available:

<b>Windows</b>	<b>Linux/Mac</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>basexhttpstop.bat</code>	<code>basexhttpstop</code>	Stops the BaseX HTTP Server.
<code>basexserverstop.bat</code>	<code>basexserverstop</code>	Stops the BaseX database server.

## Changelog

Version 7.5

- Updated: Static dependencies removed from Windows batch scripts.

Version 7.2

- Updated: The `BaseXHTTP` start class moved from `org.basex.api` to `org.basex`.

Version 7.0

- Updated: The `basexjaxrx` scripts have been replaced with the `basexhttp` scripts.

---

## **Part IV. General Info**

---

---

# Chapter 13. Databases

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section.

In BaseX, a *database* is a pretty light-weight concept. It may contain one or more **resources**, which are addressed by a unique database path. There is no explicit layer for collections: Instead, collections are implicitly created and deleted, and collections result from the existence of documents in specific paths.

As a single database is restricted to 2 billion XML nodes (see [Statistics](#)), but resources can easily be distributed across multiple database instances. Multiple databases can be addressed (queried, updated) by a single XQuery expression.

Three different resource types exist:

Resource Type	Description
XML Documents	The default resource type. The storage and index features are optimized for XML contents, or any other contents stored in an XML representation.
Binary Data	Binary data: Raw data of any type, stored in its binary representation. See <a href="#">Binary Data</a> for more information.
XQuery Values	Introduced with <i>Version 10</i> : Results of XQuery expressions, stored in a binary representation for fast retrieval. All value types are supported, including maps and arrays, but excluding any other <a href="#">function items</a> .

## Create Databases

Databases can be created via [Commands](#), via [XQuery](#), in the [GUI](#), and with various [APIs](#). If an initial input is specified with a create operation, some time can be saved, as the specified resources will be added to the database in a bulk operation:

- **Command-Line**: `CREATE DB documents /path/to/resources`: Add resources in the specified path to a database named `documents`.
- **GUI**: Go to *Database* → *New*, press *Browse...* to choose an initial file or directory, and press *OK*.

The database name is composed of a restricted set of characters (see [Valid Names](#)). Various [Parsers](#) can be selected to control the import process, or to convert data of different input type to XML.

## Access Resources

Stored resources and external documents can be accessed in different ways:

### XML Documents

Various XQuery functions exist to access XML documents in databases:

Function	Example	Description
<code>db:get</code>	<code>db:get("db", "path/to/docs")</code>	Returns all documents that are found in the database <code>db</code> at the (optional) path <code>path/to/docs</code> .
<code>fn:collection</code>	<code>collection("db/path/to/docs")</code>	Returns all documents at the location <code>path/to/docs</code> in the database

		db.If no path is specified after the database, all documents in the database will be returned.If no argument is specified, all documents of the database will be returned that has been opened in the global context.
fn:doc	doc("db/path/to/doc.xml")	Returns the document at the location path/to/docs in the database db.An error is raised if the specified yields zero or more than one document.

You can access multiple databases in a single query:

```
for $i in 1 to 100
return db:get('books' || $i)//book/title
```

If the DEFAULTTDB option is turned on, the path argument of the fn:doc or fn:collection functions will first be resolved against the globally opened database.

Two more functions are available for retrieving information on database nodes:

Function	Example	Description
db:name	db:name(\$node)	Returns the name of the database in which the specified \$node is stored.
db:path	db:path(\$node)	Returns the path of the database document in which the specified \$node is stored.

The fn:document-uri and fn:base-uri functions return URIs that can also be reused as arguments for the fn:doc and fn:collection functions. As a result, the following example query always returns true:

```
every $c in collection('anyDB')
satisfies doc-available(document-uri($c))
```

If the argument of fn:doc or fn:collection does not start with a valid database name, or if the addressed database does not exist, the string is interpreted as URI reference, and the documents found at this location will be returned. Examples:

- doc("http://web.de") : retrieves the addressed URI and returns it as a main-memory document node.
- doc("myfile.xml") : retrieves the given file from the file system and returns it as a main-memory document node. Note that updates to main-memory nodes are not automatically written back to disk unless the WRITEBACK option is set.
- collection("/path/to/docs") : returns a main-memory collection with all XML documents found at the addressed file path.

## Binary Data

The BINARY GET command and the db:get-binary function can be used to return files in their native byte representation.

If the API you use does not support binary output (which is e.g. the case for various **Client** language bindings), you can convert your binary data to its string representation before returning it to the client:

```
string(db:get-binary('multimedia', 'sample.avi'))
```

## XQuery Values

With `db:get-value`, XQuery values can be retrieved. In the following example, we assume that an XQuery map `cities` was stored in an `indexes` database:

```
let $city-map := db:get-value('indexes', 'cities')
return $city-map?Chile
```

## Update Resources

### Commands

Once you have created a database, additional commands exist to modify its contents:

- XML documents can be added with the `PUT` and `ADD` commands.
- Binary data is stored with `BINARY PUT`.
- Resources of all types can be deleted via `DELETE`.

`AUTOFLUSH` can be turned off before *bulk operations* (i.e., before numerous new resources are added to the database).

If `ADDCACHE` is enabled, the input will be cached before it is added to the database. This is helpful when the input documents are expected to consume too much main-memory.

With the following **command script**, an empty database is created, two resources are added (one directly, another one cached), and all data is exported to the file system:

```
CREATE DB example
SET AUTOFLUSH false
ADD example.xml
SET ADDCACHE true
ADD /path/to/xml/documents
BINARY PUT TO images/ 123.jpg
EXPORT /path/to/file-system/
```

## XQuery

You can also use functions from the **Database Module** to add, replace, or delete XML documents:

```
db:add('documents', '/path/to/xml/resources/')
```

Function from other modules, such as the **File Module**, can be utilized to filter the input. With the following code, all files that contain numbers in the filename are selected, and stored as XML. If an input file contains no well-formed XML, it is stored as binary resource, and the error message is stored as a string value:

```
let $db := 'documents'
let $root := '/path/to/resources/'
for $path in file:list($root)
where matches($path, '\d+')
return try {
  db:put($db, fetch:doc($root || $path), $path)
} catch * {
  db:put-binary($db, $root || $path, $path),
  db:put-value($db, $err:description, $path || '.error')
}
```

The error messages can e.g. be analyzed in a second step:

```
let $errors := db:get-value('documents')
for $filename in map:keys($errors)
where ends-with($filename, '.error')
```

```
return $filename || ': ' || $errors?($filename)
```

## Export Database

All resources stored in a database can be *exported*, i.e., written back to disk, e.g., as follows:

- Commands: EXPORT writes all resources to the specified target directory.
- GUI: Go to *Database* → *Export*, choose the target directory and press *OK*.
- XQuery: Use `db:export`.
- WebDAV: Locate the database directory (or a subdirectory of it) and copy all contents to another location.

## Main-Memory Databases

A database can be created in main-memory by enabling the MAINMEM option. Next, in the standalone context, a main-memory database can be created, which can then be accessed by subsequent commands.

If a BaseX server is started, and if a database is created in its context at startup time, e.g., with the **command-line option -c** and a CREATE DB call, BaseX clients can then access and update this database:

```
# Server
basexserver -c"SET mainmem on" -c"CREATE DB mainmem document.xml"
BaseX [Server]
Server was started (port: 1984).
MAINMEM: true
Database 'mainmem' created in 1782.80 ms.

# Client
basexclient
Username: ...
Password: ...
BaseX [Client]
Try 'help' to get more information.
> XQUERY count(db:get('mainmem')//*)
1876462
Query executed in 0.97 ms.
```

Additional notes:

- You can force an ordinary database, or parts of it, to being temporarily copied to memory by applying an empty **main-memory update** on a database node: `db:get('some-db') update { }`
- If you open local or remote documents with `fn:doc` or `fn:collection`, the resulting internal representation is identical to those of main-memory database instances (regardless of which value is set for MAINMEM).

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Added: New resource type for XQuery values.

Version 8.4

- Updated: Items of binary type can be output without specifying the obsolete raw serialization method.

Version 7.2.1

- Updated: `fn:document-uri` and `fn:base-uri` now return strings that can be reused with `fn:doc` or `fn:collection` to reopen the original document.

---

# Chapter 14. Commands

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It lists all database commands supported by BaseX.

Commands can be executed from the [Command Line](#), as part of [Scripts](#), via the [Clients](#), [REST](#), the input field in the [GUI](#), and other ways. If the GUI is used, all commands that are triggered by the GUI itself will show up in the [Info View](#). The [Permission](#) fields indicate which rights are required by a user to perform a command in the client/server architecture.

## Basics

### Command Scripts

On command line, multiple commands can be written down in a single line (separated by semicolons). You can also put them into a command script: Database commands in both string and XML syntax can be placed in a text file and stored as file with the BaseX command script suffix `.bxs`. If the path to a script file is passed on to BaseX on command-line, or if it is opened in the GUI editor, it will be recognized and evaluated as such.

### String Syntax

Lines starting with `#` are interpreted as comments and are skipped. With the following script, a database is created, two documents are added to it, and a query is performed:

```
CREATE DB test
ADD TO embedded.xml <root>embedded</root>
# run query
XQUERY <hits>{ count(//text()) }</hits>
CLOSE
```

### XML Syntax

The string syntax is limited when XML snippets need to be embedded in a command, or when complex queries are to be specified.

The XML syntax provides more flexibility here. Multiple commands can be enclosed by a `<commands/>` root element. Some commands, such as `ADD`, allow you to directly embed XML documents. If you want to embed XML in XQuery expressions, entities should be encoded, or the `CDATA` syntax should be used:

```
<commands>
  <create-db name='test' />
  <add path='embedded.xml'><root>embedded</root></add>
  <!-- run query -->
  <xquery><![CDATA[
    <hits>{ count(//text()) }</hits>
  ]]></xquery>
  <close/>
</commands>
```

### Glob Syntax

Some commands support the glob syntax to address more than one database or user. Question marks and asterisks can be used to match one or more characters, and commas can be used to separate multiple patterns. Some examples:

- `AB?` addresses all names with the characters `AB` and one more character.
- `*AB` addresses all names ending with the characters `AB`.

- `X*`, `Y*`, `Z*` addresses all names starting with the characters X, Y, or Z.

## Valid Names

Names of databases and users follow the same constraints: Names must at least have one printable character, including letters, numbers, and any of the special characters `!#$%&'()+-=[ ]^_`{ }~`. The following characters are disallowed:

- `,?*`: [glob syntax](#)
- `;`: Separator for multiple database commands on the [command line](#)
- `\`/`/`: Directory path separators
- `"<>|`: invalid filename characters on Windows
- Names starting or ending with `.`: hidden folders (e.g. the [.logs directory](#))

## Aliases

In all commands, the `DB` keyword can be replaced by `DATABASE`.

## Database Operations

### CREATE DB

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>CREATE DB [name] ([input])</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;create-db name='...'&gt;([input])&lt;/create-db&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<code>CREATE</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Creates a new database with the specified name and, optionally, an initial <code>input</code>, and opens it. An existing database will be overwritten. The <code>input</code> can be a file or directory path to XML documents, a remote URL, or a string containing XML:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>name</code> must be a <a href="#">valid database name</a></li> <li>• database creation can be controlled by setting <a href="#">Create Options</a></li> </ul> <p>If you need to add initial resources, it is always faster to supply them at creation time than adding them in a subsequent step via <code>ADD</code>.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if a database with the specified name is currently used by another process, if one of the documents to be added is not well-formed or if it cannot be parsed for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>CREATE DB input</code>, creates an empty database <code>input</code>.</li> <li>• <code>CREATE DB xmark http://files.basex.org/xml/xmark.xml</code>, creates the database <code>xmark</code>, containing a single initial document called <code>xmark.xml</code>.</li> <li>• <code>CREATE DATABASE coll /path/to/input</code>, creates the database <code>coll</code> with all documents found in the <code>input</code> directory.</li> <li>• <code>SET INTPARSE false</code> and <code>CREATE DB input input.xml</code>, creates a database <code>input</code> with <code>input.xml</code> as initial document, which will be parsed with Java's <a href="#">default XML parser</a>.</li> <li>• <code>&lt;create-db name='simple'&gt;&lt;hello&gt;Universe&lt;/hello&gt;&lt;/create-db&gt;</code>, creates a database named <code>simple</code> with an initial document <code>&lt;hello&gt;Universe&lt;/hello&gt;</code>.</li> </ul>

## OPEN

Updated with Version 10: `path` argument dropped.



<b>Syntax</b>	OPEN [name]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<open name='...' />
<b>Permission</b>	READ
<b>Summary</b>	Opens the database specified by name.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified database does not exist, is currently being updated by another process, or cannot be opened for some other reason.

## CHECK

<b>Syntax</b>	CHECK [input]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<check input='...' />,
<b>Permission</b>	READ/CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	This convenience command combines OPEN and CREATE DB: If a database with the name <code>input</code> exists, and if there is no existing file or directory with the same name that has a newer timestamp, the database is opened. Otherwise, a new database is created; if the specified input points to an existing resource, it is stored as initial content.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the addressed database could neither be opened nor created.

## CLOSE

<b>Syntax</b>	CLOSE
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<close/>,
<b>Permission</b>	READ
<b>Summary</b>	Closes the currently opened database.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the database files could not be closed for some reason.

## LIST

<b>Syntax</b>	LIST ([name] ([path]))
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<list (name='...' (path='...'))/>,
<b>Permission</b>	NONE
<b>Summary</b>	Lists all available databases. If <code>name</code> is specified, the resources of a database are listed. The output can be further restricted to the resources matching the specified <code>path</code> . If database resources are listed, the size is either the number of nodes (for XML resources) or the number of bytes (for binary resources).
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the optional database cannot be opened, or if the existing databases cannot be listed for some other reason.

## DIR

*Introduced with Version 10.*

<b>Syntax</b>	DIR ([path])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<dir (path='...')/>,
<b>Permission</b>	READ
<b>Summary</b>	Lists directories and resources of the currently opened database and the specified <code>path</code> . If database resources are listed, the size is either the number of nodes (for XML resources) or the number of bytes (for binary resources).

## EXPORT

<b>Syntax</b>	EXPORT [path]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<export path='...' />,
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Exports all documents in the database to the specified file path, using the serializer options specified by the EXPORTER option.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, if the target path points to a file or is invalid, if the serialization parameters are invalid, or if the documents cannot be serialized for some other reason.

## CREATE INDEX

<b>Syntax</b>	CREATE INDEX [TEXT ATTRIBUTE TOKEN FULLTEXT]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<create-index type='text attribute token fulltext' />,
<b>Permission</b>	WRITE
<b>Summary</b>	Creates the specified <b>Value Index</b> . The current <b>Index Options</b> will be considered when creating the index.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, if the specified index is unknown, or if indexing fails for some other reason.

## DROP INDEX

<b>Syntax</b>	DROP INDEX [TEXT ATTRIBUTE TOKEN FULLTEXT]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<drop-index type='text attribute token fulltext' />,
<b>Permission</b>	WRITE
<b>Summary</b>	Drops the specified <b>Value Index</b> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, if the specified index is unknown, or if it could not be deleted for some other reason.

## ALTER DB

<b>Syntax</b>	ALTER DB [name] [newname]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<alter-db name='...' newname='...' />,
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Renames the database specified by name to newname. newname must be a <b>valid database name</b> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the source database does not exist or is currently locked, or if it could not be renamed for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALTER DB db tempdb , renames the database db into tempdb.</li> </ul>

## DROP DB

<b>Syntax</b>	DROP DB [name]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<drop-db name='...' />,
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Drops the database with the specified name. The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one database.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified database does not exist or is currently locked, or if the database could not be deleted for some other reason.

## COPY

<b>Syntax</b>	COPY [name] [newname]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<copy name='...' newname='...'/>
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a copy of the database specified by name. newname must be a <b>valid database name</b> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the source database does not exist.

## INSPECT

<b>Syntax</b>	INSPECT
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<inspect/>
<b>Permission</b>	READ
<b>Summary</b>	Performs some integrity checks on the opened database and returns a brief summary.

## Backups

Introduced with Version 10: Support for general data (registered users, scheduled services and key-value stores).

## CREATE BACKUP

Updated with Version 10: Support for comments.

<b>Syntax</b>	CREATE BACKUP ([name] ([comment]))
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<create-backup (name='...') (comment='...')/>
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a backup of the database specified by name, with an optional comment. If no name is supplied, general data will be backed up. The backup file will be suffixed with the current timestamp and stored in the database directory. The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one database.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified database does not exist, or if it could not be zipped for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>BACKUP db</code> , creates a zip archive of the database db (e.g. <code>db-2014-04-01-12-27-28.zip</code>) in the <b>database directory</b>.</li> </ul>

## DROP BACKUP

<b>Syntax</b>	DROP BACKUP ([name])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<drop-backup (name='...')/>
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Drops all backups of the database with the specified name, or a specific backup file if the name ends with its timestamp. If no name is supplied, backups with general data are addressed. The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one database.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>DROP BACKUP abc*</code> , deletes the backups of all databases starting with the characters abc.</li> <li>• <code>DROP BACKUP factbook-2021-05-16-13-13-10</code> , deletes a specific backup file.</li> </ul>

## ALTER BACKUP

<b>Syntax</b>	ALTER BACKUP [name] [newname]
---------------	-------------------------------

<b>XML Syntax</b>	<alter-backup name='...' newname='...' />,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>CREATE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Renames all backups of the database with the specified name to newname. If the name ends with a timestamp, only the specified backup file will be renamed. The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one database.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALTER BACKUP logs logs-backup , renames the backups of the logs database to logs-backup.</li> </ul>

## RESTORE

<b>Syntax</b>	RESTORE ([name])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<restore (name='...') />,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>CREATE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Restores a database with the specified name. The name may include the timestamp of the backup file. If no name is supplied, general data will be restored. If general data is restored, it will only be available after BaseX has been restarted.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified backup does not exist, if the database to be restored is currently locked, or if it could not be restored for some other reason.

## SHOW BACKUPS

<b>Syntax</b>	SHOW BACKUPS
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<show-backups />,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>CREATE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows all database backups.

## Querying

### XQUERY

<b>Syntax</b>	XQUERY [query]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<xquery>[query]</xquery>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>depends on query</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Runs the specified query and prints the result.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified query is invalid.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>XQUERY 1 to 10 , returns the sequence (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10).</li> <li>SET RUNS 10 and XQUERY 1 to 10, returns the results after having run the query 10 times.</li> <li>SET XMLPLAN true and XQUERY 1 to 10, returns the result and prints the query plan as XML.</li> </ul>

### GET

*Introduced with Version 10.* The old GET command has been renamed to SHOW OPTIONS.

<b>Syntax</b>	GET [path]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<get path='...' />,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>

<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves an XML document from the opened database at the specified <code>path</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened or if the source path is invalid.

## BINARY GET

Updated with Version 10: Renamed (before: RETRIEVE).

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>BINARY GET [path]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;binary-get path='...' /&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves a <b>binary resource</b> from the opened database at the specified <code>path</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened or if the source path is invalid.

## FIND

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>FIND [query]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;find&gt;[query]&lt;/find&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Builds and runs a query for the specified <code>query</code> terms. Keywords can be enclosed in quotes to look for phrases. The following modifiers can be used to further limit search: = looks for exact text nodes~ looks for approximate hits@= looks for exact attribute values@ looks for attributes
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened.

## TEST

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>TEST [path]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;test path='...' /&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Runs all <b>XQUnit tests</b> in the specified <code>path</code> . The path can point to a single file or a directory. Unit testing can also be triggered via <code>-t</code> on <b>command line</b> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if at least one test fails.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TEST project/tests</code> , runs all tests in the directory <code>project/tests</code>.</li> </ul>

## REPO INSTALL

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>REPO INSTALL [path]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;repo-install path='...' /&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>CREATE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Installs the package with path <code>path</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<p>The command fails in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The package to be installed is not a xar file.</li> <li>• The package to be installed does not exist or is already installed.</li> <li>• The package descriptor is with invalid syntax.</li> <li>• The package to be installed depends on a package which is not installed.</li> <li>• The package is not supported by the current version of BaseX.</li> </ul>

- A component of the package is already installed as part of another package.

## REPO LIST

<b>Syntax</b>	REPO LIST
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<repo-list/>,
<b>Permission</b>	READ
<b>Summary</b>	Lists all installed packages.

## REPO DELETE

<b>Syntax</b>	REPO DELETE [name]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<repo-delete name='...'/>,
<b>Permission</b>	CREATE
<b>Summary</b>	Deletes the specified package with the specified name. What is called "name" can also be the id (which is the name followed by the version) or the directory of the package.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the package to be deleted is required by another package.

## Updates

### ADD

<b>Syntax</b>	ADD (TO [path]) [input]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<add (path='...')>[input]</add>,
<b>Permission</b>	WRITE
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Adds a file, directory or XML string specified by <code>input</code> to the currently opened database at the specified path:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>input</code> may either be a single XML document, a directory, a remote URL or a plain XML string.</li> <li>• A document with the same path may occur than once in a database. If this is unwanted, the <code>PUT</code> command can be used.</li> <li>• If a file is too large to be added in one go, its data structures will be cached to disk first. Caching can be enforced by turning the <code>ADDCACHE</code> option on.</li> </ul> <p>If files are to be added to an empty database, it is usually faster to use the <code>CREATE DB</code> command and specify the initial input as argument.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, if one of the documents to be added is not well-formed, or if it could not be parsed for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ADD input.xml</code> , adds the file <code>input.xml</code> to the database.</li> <li>• <code>ADD TO temp/one.xml input.xml</code> , adds <code>input.xml</code> to the database and moves it to <code>temp/one.xml</code>.</li> <li>• <code>ADD TO target/ xmldir</code> , adds all files from the <code>xmldir</code> directory to the database in the <code>target</code> path.</li> </ul>

### DELETE

<b>Syntax</b>	DELETE [path]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<delete path='...'/>,

<b>Permission</b>	<i>WRITE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Deletes all documents from the currently opened database that start with the specified <code>path</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened.

## RENAME

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>RENAME [path] [newpath]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;rename path='...' newpath='...' /&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>WRITE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Renames all document paths in the currently opened database that start with the specified <code>path</code> . The command may be used to either rename single documents or directories.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, or if the target path is empty.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>RENAME one.xml two.xml</code> , renames the document <code>one.xml</code> to <code>two.xml</code>.</li> <li>• <code>RENAME / TOP</code> , moves all documents to a <code>TOP</code> root directory.</li> </ul>

## PUT

*Updated with Version 10: Renamed (before: REPLACE).*

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>PUT [path] [input]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;put path='...'&gt;[input]&lt;/put&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>WRITE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Adds or replaces resources in the currently opened database, addressed by <code>path</code> , with the file, directory or XML string specified by <code>input</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened or if the specified path is invalid.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>PUT one.xml input.xml</code> , replaces <code>one.xml</code> with the contents of the file <code>input.xml</code>.</li> <li>• <code>PUT top.xml &lt;xml/&gt;</code> , replaces <code>top.xml</code> with the XML document <code>&lt;xml/&gt;</code>.</li> </ul>

## BINARY PUT

*Updated with Version 10: Renamed (before: STORE).*

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>BINARY PUT (TO [path]) [input]</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;binary-put (path='...')&gt;[input]&lt;/store&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>WRITE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Stores a <b>binary resource</b> specified via <code>input</code> in the opened database to the specified <code>path</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The input may either be a file reference, a remote URL, or a plain string.</li> <li>• If the path denotes a directory, it needs to be suffixed with a slash (/).</li> <li>• An existing resource will be replaced.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, if the specified resource is not found, if the target path is invalid or if the data cannot not be written for some other reason.

## OPTIMIZE

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>OPTIMIZE (ALL)</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;optimize/&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;optimize-all/&gt;</code> ,

<b>Permission</b>	<i>WRITE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Optimizes the index structures, metadata and statistics of the currently opened database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If <i>ALL</i> is specified, all database structures are completely reconstructed. The database size will be reduced, and all orphaned data will be deleted.</li> <li>• Without <i>ALL</i>, only the outdated index structures and database statistics will be updated. If the database is completely up-to-date, nothing will be done.</li> <li>• Database options will be adopted from the original database. Only <i>AUTOOPTIMIZE</i> and (if <i>ALL</i> is specified) <i>UPDINDEX</i> will be adopted from the current options.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, or if the currently opened database is a main-memory instance.

## FLUSH

<b>Syntax</b>	FLUSH
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<flush/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>WRITE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Explicitly flushes the buffers of the currently opened database to disk. This command is applied if <i>AUTOFLUSH</i> has been set to <i>false</i> .
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened.

## User Management

### CREATE USER

<b>Syntax</b>	CREATE USER [name] ([password])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<create-user name='...'>([password])</create-user>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a user with the specified name and password. If no password is specified, it is requested via the chosen frontend (GUI or bash).
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified user already exists.

### ALTER USER

<b>Syntax</b>	ALTER USER [name] ([newname])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<alter-user name='...' newname='...'/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Renames the user with the specified name to newname.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified user does not exist, or if the new user already exists.

### ALTER PASSWORD

<b>Syntax</b>	ALTER PASSWORD [name] ([password])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<alter-password name='...'>([password])</alter-password>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Alters the password of the user with the specified name. If no password is specified, it is requested via the chosen frontend (GUI or bash).
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified user does not exist.



## DROP USER

<b>Syntax</b>	DROP USER [name] (ON [pattern]):
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<drop-user name='...' (pattern='...')/>,
<b>Permission</b>	ADMIN
<b>Summary</b>	Drops the user with the specified name. The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one database or user. If a glob pattern is specified, only the assigned database pattern will be removed.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if admin is specified as username, or if the specified user does not exist or is currently logged in.

## GRANT

<b>Syntax</b>	GRANT [NONE READ WRITE CREATE ADMIN] (ON [pattern]) TO [user]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<grant name='...' permission='none read write create admin' (pattern='...')/>,
<b>Permission</b>	ADMIN
<b>Summary</b>	Grants the specified <b>permission</b> to the specified user. The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one user. If a glob pattern is specified, the permission will be applied to all databases that match this pattern.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if admin is specified as username or if the specified user does not exist.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>GRANT READ TO JoeWinson , grants READ permission to the user JoeWinson.</li> <li>GRANT WRITE ON Wiki TO editor* , grants WRITE permissions on the Wiki database to all users starting with the characters editor*.</li> </ul>

## PASSWORD

<b>Syntax</b>	PASSWORD ([password])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<password>([password])</password>,
<b>Permission</b>	NONE
<b>Summary</b>	Changes the password of the current user. If the command is run on command-line or in the GUI, the password can be omitted and entered interactively.

## Administration

### SHOW OPTIONS

Updated with Version 10: Renamed (before: GET).

<b>Syntax</b>	SHOW OPTIONS [name]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<show-options (name='...')/>,
<b>Permission</b>	NONE
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the current values of all <b>Options</b> , or a single option with the specified name. Global options can only be requested by users with ADMIN permissions.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified option is unknown.

### SHOW SESSIONS

<b>Syntax</b>	SHOW SESSIONS
---------------	---------------

<b>XML Syntax</b>	<show-sessions/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows all sessions that are connected to the current server instance.

## SHOW USERS

<b>Syntax</b>	SHOW USERS (ON [database])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<show-users (database='...')/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows all users that are visible to the current user. If a database is specified, only those users will be shown for which a pattern was specified that matches the database name.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the optional database could not be opened.

## KILL

<b>Syntax</b>	KILL [target]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<kill target='...'/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>ADMIN</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Kills sessions of a user or an IP:port combination, specified by <code>target</code> . The <b>Glob Syntax</b> can be used to address more than one user.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if a user tried to kill his/her own session.

## INFO DB

<b>Syntax</b>	INFO DB
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<info-db/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows general information and metadata on the currently opened database.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened.

## INFO INDEX

<b>Syntax</b>	INFO INDEX ([ELEMNAME   ATTRNAME   PATH   TEXT   ATTRIBUTE   TOKEN   FULLTEXT])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<info-index type='elemname   attrname   path   text   attribute   token   fulltext' />,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows information on the existing <b>index</b> structures. The output can be optionally limited to the specified index.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if no database is opened, or if the specified index is unknown.

## INFO STORAGE

<b>Syntax</b>	INFO STORAGE [start end]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<info-storage (start='...') (end='...')/>,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows the internal main table of the currently opened database. An integer range may be specified as argument.

**Errors** | The command fails if no database is opened, or if one of the specified arguments is invalid.

## General Commands

### RUN

<b>Syntax</b>	RUN [file]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<run file='...' />
<b>Permission</b>	<i>depends on input</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Evaluates the contents of file as XQuery expression. If the file ends with the suffix .bxs, the file contents will be evaluated as <b>command script</b> . This command can be used to run several commands in a row, with no other transaction intervening the execution.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified file does not exist, or if the retrieved input is invalid. It will be canceled as soon as one of the executed commands fails.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RUN query.xq , will evaluate the specified file as XQuery expression</li> <li>• RUN commands.bxs , will evaluate the specified file as command script</li> </ul>

### EXECUTE

<b>Syntax</b>	EXECUTE [input]
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<execute>[input]</execute>
<b>Permission</b>	<i>depends on input</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Evaluates the specified input as <b>command script</b> . This command can be used to run several commands in a row, with no other transaction intervening the execution.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the syntax of the specified input is invalid. It will be canceled as soon as one of the executed commands fails.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EXECUTE "&lt;commands&gt;&lt;create-db name='db1' /&gt;&lt;create-db name='db2' /&gt;&lt;/commands&gt;" , Two databases will be created in a single transaction.</li> </ul>

### SET

<b>Syntax</b>	SET [option] ([value])
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<set option='...'>([value])</set> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>NONE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Sets the <b>Option</b> specified by option to a new value. Only local options can be modified. If no value is specified, and if the value is boolean, it will be inverted.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified option is unknown or if the specified value is invalid.

### INFO

<b>Syntax</b>	INFO
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<info/> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>READ</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Shows global information.

### HELP

<b>Syntax</b>	HELP ([command])
---------------	------------------

<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;help&gt; ( [ command ] ) &lt;/help&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>NONE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	If <code>command</code> is specified, information on the specific command is printed; otherwise, all commands are listed.
<b>Errors</b>	The command fails if the specified command is unknown.

## EXIT

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>EXIT</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;exit /&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>NONE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Exits the console mode.

## QUIT

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>QUIT</code>
<b>XML Syntax</b>	<code>&lt;quit /&gt;</code> ,
<b>Permission</b>	<i>NONE</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Exits the console mode (alias of <code>EXIT</code> ).

## Changelog

### Version 10

- Added: **Backups**: Support for general data (**registered users**, **scheduled services** and **key-value stores**).
- Added: `DIR`, `GET`
- Updated: `SHOW OPTIONS`: Renamed (before: `GET`).
- Updated: `BINARY GET`: Renamed (before: `RETRIEVE`).
- Updated: `BINARY PUT`: Renamed (before: `STORE`).
- Updated: `PUT`: Renamed (before: `REPLACE`).
- Updated: `CREATE BACKUP`: Support for comments.
- Updated: `OPEN`: `path` argument dropped.
- Removed: `JOBS LIST`, `JOBS RESULT`, `JOBS STOP`

### Version 9.7

- Updated: `ALTER DB`, `COPY`: Overwrite existing databases.

### Version 9.3

- Added: `ALTER BACKUP`

### Version 8.6

- Updated: `SHOW USERS`: If called by non-admins, will only return the current user

### Version 8.5

- Added: `JOBS LIST`, `JOBS RESULT`, `JOBS STOP`

- Updated: **Valid Names**: allow dots (except as first and last character)

Version 8.4

- Updated: `CREATE INDEX`, `DROP INDEX`, `INFO INDEX`: token index added
- Updated: `INFO STORAGE`: Query argument removed, start/end added to XML syntax.
- Updated: `INFO INDEX`: Token index added; index `TAG` renamed to `ELEMNAME`; index `ATTNAME` renamed to `ATTRNAME`
- Updated: `OPTIMIZE`: adopt original index options

Version 8.2

- Removed: `CREATE EVENT`, `DROP EVENT` and `SHOW EVENTS` command

Version 8.0

- Updated: commands for **User Management**
- Updated: `OPEN`: path argument added
- Removed: `CS` command
- Added: `QUIT`

Version 7.9

- Added: `TEST` runs XUnit tests.

Version 7.7

- Updated: syntax of **valid names**.

Version 7.5

- Added: `EXECUTE` executes a command script.
- Added: `INSPECT` performs integrity checks.
- Added: automatic detection of **Command Scripts**.
- Removed: `SHOW DATABASES`; information is also returned by `SHOW SESSIONS`.
- Removed: `OPEN`: path argument.

Version 7.3

- Added: **XML Syntax** added.
- Updated: `CHECK` can now be used to create empty databases.
- Updated: Names and paths in `OPEN` and `LIST` are now specified as separate arguments.

Version 7.2.1

- Updated: permissions for `GET` and `SET` changed from `READ` to `NONE`.

Version 7.2

- Updated: `CREATE INDEX`, `DROP INDEX` (`PATH` argument removed. Path summary is always available now and updated with `OPTIMIZE`).

- Updated: permissions for REPO DELETE, REPO INSTALL and REPO LIST.

Version 7.1

- Updated: KILL (killing sessions by specifying IP:port)

Version 7.0

- Added: FLUSH, RETRIEVE, STORE.
- Updated: ADD: simplified arguments.

---

# Chapter 15. Options

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is linked from the [Getting Started](#) Section.

The options listed on this page influence the way how database [commands](#) are executed and XQuery expressions are evaluated. Two kinds of options exist:

- **Global Options** are valid for all BaseX instances in the same JVM. This is particularly relevant if you are working with the client/server architecture.
- **Local options** (all remaining ones) are specific to a client or session.

Values of options are either *strings*, *numbers* or *booleans*. Options are *static* and not bound to a single operation (for example, the next command). Various ways exist to access and change options:

- The current value of an option can be requested with the `SHOW OPTIONS` command. Local options can be changed via `SET` (all global options, except for `DEBUG`, can only be changed at startup time). If an option is of type *boolean*, and if no value is specified, its current value will be inverted.
- The [.basexconfiguration file](#) is parsed by every new local BaseX instance. It contains all global options. Local options can be specified at the end of the file after the `Local Options` comment:

```
# General Options
DEBUG = false
...
# Local Options
CATALOG = etc/w3-catalog.xml
```

- Initial values for global options can also be specified via system properties, which can e.g. be passed on with the `-D` flag on command line, or using `System.setProperty()` before creating a BaseX instance. The specified keys need to be prefixed with `org.basex..` An example:

```
java -Dorg.basex.CATALOG=etc/w3-catalog.xml -cp basex.jar org.basex.BaseX -c"SHOW
OPTIONS catalog"
CATALOG: etc/w3-catalog.xml
```

- If the Mac OS X packaged application is used, global options can be set within the `Info.plist` file within the Contents folder of the application package. For example:

```
<key>JVMOptions</key>
<array>
  <string>-Dorg.basex.CATALOG=etc/w3-catalog.xml</string>
</array>
```

- In a [Web Application](#), the default can be adjusted in the `web.xml` file as follows:

```
<context-param>
  <param-name>org.basex.catalog</param-name>
  <param-value>etc/w3-catalog.xml</param-value>
</context-param>
```

- In XQuery, local options can be set via option declarations and [pragmas](#).

If options are changed by operations in the [GUI](#), the underlying commands will be listed in the [Info View](#).

## Global Options

Global options are constants. They can only be set in the configuration file or via system properties (see above). One exception is the `DEBUG` option, which can also be changed at runtime by users with [admin permissions](#).

## General Options

### DEBUG

<b>Signature</b>	DEBUG [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Sends internal debug info to STDERR. This option can be turned on to get additional information for development and debugging purposes. It can also be triggered on <b>command line</b> via <code>-d</code> .

### DBPATH

<b>Signature</b>	DBPATH [path]
<b>Default</b>	{home}/data
<b>Summary</b>	Points to the directory in which all databases are located.

### LOGPATH

<b>Signature</b>	LOGPATH [path]
<b>Default</b>	.logs
<b>Summary</b>	Points to the directory in which all <b>log files</b> are stored. Relative paths will be resolved against the DBPATH directory.

### REPOPATH

<b>Signature</b>	REPOPATH [path]
<b>Default</b>	{home}/repo
<b>Summary</b>	Points to the <b>Repository</b> , in which all XQuery modules are located.

### LANG

<b>Signature</b>	LANG [language]
<b>Default</b>	English
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the interface language. Currently, seven languages are available: 'English', 'German', 'French', 'Dutch', 'Italian', 'Japanese', and 'Vietnamese'.

### LANGKEY

<b>Signature</b>	LANGKEY [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Prefixes all texts with the internal language keys. This option is helpful if BaseX is translated into another language, and if you want to see where particular texts are displayed.

### FAIRLOCK

<b>Signature</b>	FAIRLOCK [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Defines the locking strategy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By default, non-fair is used. Read transactions will be favored, and transactions that access no databases can be evaluated even if the limit of parallel transactions (specified via PARALLEL) has been reached. This prevents update operations from blocking all other requests. For example, the DBA can further be used to see which jobs are running, even if the queue is full.</li> </ul>



- If fair locking is enabled, read and write transactions will be treated equally (first in, first out). This avoids starvation of update operations, and it should be used if the prompt evaluation of update operations is critical.

## CACHETIMEOUT

<b>Signature</b>	CACHETIMEOUT [seconds]
<b>Default</b>	3600
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies how many seconds the results of queries, which have been queued by the <b>asynchronously executed</b> , will be cached in main memory.

## Client/Server Architecture

### HOST

<b>Signature</b>	HOST [host]
<b>Default</b>	localhost
<b>Summary</b>	This host name is used by the client when connecting to a server. This option can also be changed when running the client on <b>command line</b> via <code>-n</code> .

### PORT

<b>Signature</b>	PORT [port]
<b>Default</b>	1984
<b>Summary</b>	This port is used by the client when connecting to a server. This option can also be changed when running the client on <b>command line</b> via <code>-p</code> .

### SERVERPORT

<b>Signature</b>	SERVERPORT [port]
<b>Default</b>	1984
<b>Summary</b>	This is the port the database server will be listening to. This option can also be changed when running the server on <b>command line</b> via <code>-p</code> .

### USER

<b>Signature</b>	USER [name]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Represents a username, which is used for accessing the server or an HTTP service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default value will be overwritten if a client specifies its own credentials.</li> <li>• If the default value is empty, login will only be possible if the client specifies credentials.</li> <li>• The option can also be changed on <b>command line</b> via <code>-U</code>.</li> </ul>

### PASSWORD

<b>Signature</b>	PASSWORD [password]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Represents a password, which is used for accessing the server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default value will be overwritten if a client specifies its own credentials.</li> </ul>

- If the default value is empty, authentication will only be possible if the client supplies credentials.
- The option can also be changed on **command line** via `-P`.
- Please note that it is a security risk to specify your password in plain text.

## AUTHMETHOD

<b>Signature</b>	AUTHMETHOD [method]
<b>Default</b>	<i>Basic</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the default authentication method, which will be used by the <b>HTTP server</b> for negotiating credentials. Allowed values are <code>Basic</code> , <code>Digest</code> , and <code>Custom</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If basic access is chosen, the client can still request digest authentication.</li> <li>• This is different for digest access, which cannot be overwritten.</li> <li>• With custom authentication, the server will not do any authentication.</li> </ul>

## SERVERHOST

<b>Signature</b>	SERVERHOST [host   ip]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	This is the host name or IP address the server is bound to. If the option is set to an empty string (which is the default), the server will be open to all clients.

## PROXYHOST

<b>Signature</b>	PROXYHOST [host]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	This is the host name of a proxy server. If the value is an empty string, it will be ignored.

## PROXYPORT

<b>Signature</b>	PROXYPORT [port]
<b>Default</b>	0
<b>Summary</b>	This is the port number of a proxy server. If the value is set to 0, it will be ignored.

## NONPROXYHOSTS

<b>Signature</b>	NONPROXYHOSTS [hosts]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	This is a list of hosts that should be directly accessed. If the value is an empty string, it will be ignored.

## IGNORECERT

*Updated with Version 10:* Additionally disable hostname verification.

<b>Signature</b>	IGNORECERT [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	<i>false</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Disable SSL hostname verification and ignore untrusted certificates when connecting to servers.

## TIMEOUT

<b>Signature</b>	TIMEOUT [seconds]
<b>Default</b>	30
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the maximum time a transaction triggered by a client may take. If an operation takes longer than the specified number of seconds, it will be aborted. Active update operations will not be affected by this timeout, as this would corrupt the integrity of the database. The timeout is deactivated if the timeout is set to 0. It is ignored for operations with <b>admin permissions</b> .

## KEEPALIVE

<b>Signature</b>	KEEPALIVE [seconds]
<b>Default</b>	600
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the maximum time a client will be remembered by the server. If there has been no interaction with a client for a longer time than specified by this timeout, it will be disconnected. Running operations will not be affected by this option. The keepalive check is deactivated if the value is set to 0.

## PARALLEL

<b>Signature</b>	PARALLEL [number]
<b>Default</b>	8
<b>Summary</b>	Denotes the maximum allowed number of parallel <b>transactions</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If FAIRLOCK is enabled, the number of parallel transactions will never exceed the specified value.</li> <li>• If the option is disabled (which is the default), the limit only applies to transactions that access databases.</li> <li>• The main reason for allowing parallel operations is to prevent slow transactions from blocking all other operations. A higher number of parallel operations may increase disk activity and thus slow down queries. In some cases, a single transaction may even give you better results than any parallel activity.</li> </ul>

## LOG

<b>Signature</b>	LOG [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Turns <b>Logging</b> of server operations and HTTP requests on/off. This option can also be changed when running the server on <b>command line</b> via <b>-z</b> .

## LOGMSGMAXLEN

<b>Signature</b>	LOGMSGMAXLEN [length]
<b>Default</b>	1000
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the maximum length of a single <b>log message</b> .

## LOGTRACE

<b>Signature</b>	LOGTRACE [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true

<b>Summary</b>	If BaseX is running as <b>Web Application</b> , trace output (generated via <code>fn:trace</code> , <code>prof:dump</code> and similar functions) is written to the <b>database logs</b> . If this option is disabled, trace output will be redirected to standard error, as it is known from the standalone version of BaseX.
----------------	--

## HTTP Services

Most HTTP options are defined in the `jetty.xml` and `web.xml` configuration files in the `webapp/WEB-INF` directory. Some additional BaseX-specific options exist that will be set before the web server is started:

### WEBPATH

<b>Signature</b>	WEBPATH [path]
<b>Default</b>	{home}/webapp
<b>Summary</b>	Points to the directory in which all the <b>Web Application</b> contents are stored, including XQuery, Script, <b>RESTXQ</b> and configuration files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The option is ignored if BaseX is deployed as <b>web servlet</b>.</li> <li>• It cannot be assigned via the <code>web.xml</code> file, as it will be evaluated before the configuration files are parsed.</li> </ul>

### GZIP

<b>Signature</b>	GZIP [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Jetty provides a <b>Gzip handler</b> for dynamically uncompressing requests and compressing responses. This feature can be enabled if Jetty is started via the <b>BaseX HTTP Server</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The option can also be enabled on <b>command line</b> via <code>-g</code>.</li> <li>• It cannot be assigned via the <code>web.xml</code> file, as it will be evaluated before the configuration files are parsed.</li> <li>• In addition to the <b>Jetty defaults</b> (GET requests, exclusion of binaries, MSIE 6.0, etc.), POST and PUT requests are supported.</li> </ul>

### RESTXQPATH

<b>Signature</b>	RESTXQPATH [path]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Points to the directory which contains the <b>RESTXQ</b> modules of a web application. Relative paths will be resolved against the <code>WEBPATH</code> directory.

### PARSERESTXQ

<b>Signature</b>	PARSERESTXQ
<b>Default</b>	3
<b>Summary</b>	Timeout after which the <code>RESTXQ</code> directory will be parsed for changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If 0 is specified, the directory will be parsed every time a <code>RESTXQ</code> function is called.</li> <li>• A positive value defines the idle time in seconds after which parsing will be enforced. The default value is 3: Changes in the <code>RESTXQ</code> directory will be detected after 3 seconds without <code>RESTXQ</code> function calls.</li> <li>• Monitoring is completely disabled if a negative value is specified.</li> </ul>

See [RESTXQ Preliminaries](#) for more details.

## RESTXQERRORS

<b>Signature</b>	RESTXQERRORS
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Reports parsing errors in XQuery modules in the RESTXQ directory and returns the full error message and stack trace to the client. By default, this option is enabled. In a production environment, it can be disabled to suppress errors that should not be seen by the user of an API (the full error information can still be looked up in the database logs). See <a href="#">RESTXQ Error Handling</a> for more details.

## RESTPATH

<b>Signature</b>	RESTPATH [path]
<b>Default</b>	empty
<b>Summary</b>	Points to the directory which contains XQuery files and command scripts, which can be evaluated via the <a href="#">REST run operation</a> . Relative paths will be resolved against the WEBPATH directory.

## HTTPLOCAL

<b>Signature</b>	HTTPLOCAL [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	By default, if BaseX is run as <a href="#">Web Application</a> , the database server instance will be started in addition, which can then be addressed by <a href="#">Clients</a> via the database port (see <code>PORT</code> ). If the option is set to true, no database server will be launched.

## STOPPORT

<b>Signature</b>	STOPPORT [port]
<b>Default</b>	8081
<b>Summary</b>	This is the port on which the <a href="#">HTTP Server</a> can be locally closed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The listener for stopping the web server will only be started if the specified value is greater than 0.</li> <li>• The option is ignored if BaseX is used as a <a href="#">Web Application</a> or started via <a href="#">Maven</a>.</li> <li>• This option can also be changed when running the HTTP server on <a href="#">command line</a> via <code>-s</code>.</li> </ul>

## Create Options

### General

#### MAINMEM

<b>Signature</b>	MAINMEM [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	If this option is turned on, new databases will be created in main memory: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most queries will be evaluated faster in main-memory mode, but all data is lost if the BaseX instance in which the database was created is shut down.</li> <li>• It is not possible to store binary resources in a main-memory database.</li> </ul>

- A main-memory database will have no disk representation. However, it is possible to export the database via the `EXPORT` command, and create a new database from the exported file in a second step.
- This option will not be available for `db:create`, because the database would not be accessible anymore after database creation, i. e., outside the query scope.

## ADDCACHE

<b>Signature</b>	<code>ADDCACHE [boolean]</code>
<b>Default</b>	<code>false</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If this option is activated, data structures of documents will first be cached to disk before being added to the final database. This option is helpful when larger documents need to be added, and if the existing heuristics cannot estimate the input size (e.g. when adding directories or sending input streams).

## Parsing

### CREATEFILTER

<b>Signature</b>	<code>CREATEFILTER [filter]</code>
<b>Default</b>	<code>*.xml</code>
<b>Summary</b>	File filter in the <b>Glob Syntax</b> , which is applied whenever new databases are created, or resources are added to a database.

### ADDARCHIVES

<b>Signature</b>	<code>ADDARCHIVES [boolean]</code>
<b>Default</b>	<code>true</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If this option is set to <code>true</code> , files within archives (ZIP, GZIP, TAR, TGZ, DOCX, etc.) are parsed whenever new databases are created or resources are added to a database.

### ARCHIVENAME

<b>Signature</b>	<code>ARCHIVENAME [boolean]</code>
<b>Default</b>	<code>false</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If this option is set to <code>true</code> , the file name of parsed archives will be included in the document paths.

### SKIPCORRUPT

<b>Signature</b>	<code>SKIPCORRUPT [boolean]</code>
<b>Default</b>	<code>false</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Skips corrupt (i.e., not well-formed) files while creating a database or adding new documents. If this option is activated, document updates are slowed down, as all files will be parsed twice. Next, main memory consumption will be higher as parsed files will be cached in main memory.

### ADDRAW

<b>Signature</b>	<code>ADDRAW [boolean]</code>
<b>Default</b>	<code>false</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If this option is enabled, all resources that are filtered out by the <code>CREATEFILTER</code> option while being added to a database will be stored as <b>raw files</b> instead (i.e., in their binary representation).

## PARSER

<b>Signature</b>	PARSER [type]
<b>Default</b>	XML
<b>Summary</b>	Defines a <b>parser</b> for importing new files to the database. Available parsers are XML, JSON, CSV, TEXT, HTML, and RAW. HTML input will be parsed as XML documents if <b>Tagsoup</b> is not found in the classpath.

## CSVPARSER

<b>Signature</b>	CSVPARSER [options]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the way how CSV data will be parsed. Keys and values are delimited with =, and multiple options are delimited with . The available options (except for the additional encoding option) are described in the <b>CSV Module</b> .
<b>Examples</b>	encoding=CP1252,header=true parses the input as CP1252 and the first line as header.

## JSONPARSER

<b>Signature</b>	JSONPARSER [options]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the way how JSON data will be parsed. Keys and values are delimited with =, and multiple options are delimited with . The available options (except for the additional encoding option) are described in the <b>JSON Module</b> .
<b>Examples</b>	format=jsonml,lax=yes interprets the input as JSONML and uses lax parsing.

## HTMLPARSER

<b>Signature</b>	HTMLPARSER [options]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the way how HTML data will be parsed. Keys and values are delimited with =, and multiple options are delimited with . The available options are described in the <b>Parsers</b> article.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• encoding=Shift-JIS,nons=true parses the input as Shift-JIS and suppresses namespaces.</li> <li>• lexical=true preserves comments.</li> </ul>

## TEXTPARSER

<b>Signature</b>	TEXTPARSER [options]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the way how TEXT data will be parsed. Keys and values are delimited with =, and multiple options are delimited with . The available options are listed in the <b>Parsers</b> article.
<b>Examples</b>	lines=true creates a single element for each line of text.

## XML Parsing

### STRIPWS

Updated with Version 10: Renamed (before: CHOP), new default: false.

<b>Signature</b>	STRIPWS [boolean]
------------------	-------------------

<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Many XML documents include whitespaces that have been added to improve readability. This option controls the <b>white-space processing mode</b> of the XML parser:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the option is set to <code>true</code>, leading and trailing whitespaces from text nodes will be stripped, and empty text nodes will be discarded.</li> <li>• The flag should be disabled if a document contains <b>mixed content</b>.</li> <li>• The flag can also be turned on via the <b>command line</b> and <code>-w</code>.</li> <li>• If the option is enabled, whitespaces of an element and its descendants can locally be preserved with the <code>xml:space="preserve"</code> attribute:</li> </ul> <pre>&lt;xml&gt;   &lt;title&gt;     Demonstrating the STRIPWS flag   &lt;/title&gt;   &lt;text xml:space="preserve"&gt;To &lt;b&gt;be&lt;/b&gt;, or not to &lt;b&gt;be&lt;/b&gt;, that is   the question.&lt;/text&gt; &lt;/xml&gt;</pre> <p>If whitespaces are stripped, <code>indent=yes</code> can be assigned to the <code>SERIALIZER</code> option to get properly indented XML output.</p>

## STRIPNS

<b>Signature</b>	STRIPNS [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Strips all namespaces from an XML document while parsing.

## INTPARSE

<b>Signature</b>	INTPARSE [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Uses the internal XML parser instead of the standard Java XML parser. Here are some reasons for using the internal parser:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performance: Documents (in particular small ones) will be parsed faster</li> <li>• Fault tolerance: invalid characters will automatically be replaced with the Unicode replacement character FFFD (#)</li> <li>• Entities: around 250 HTML entities will be detected and decoded</li> </ul> <p>You will be able to correctly parse most XML documents with the internal parser. Java's Xerces parser is still used as default, however, because it supports all features of the XML standard and advanced DTD features, such as recursive entity expansion.</p>

## DTD

<b>Signature</b>	DTD [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Parses referenced DTDs and resolves XML entities. By default, this option is switched to <code>false</code> , as many DTDs are located externally, which may completely block the process of creating new databases. The <code>CATALOG</code> option can be changed to locally resolve DTDs.



## XINCLUDE

<b>Signature</b>	XINCLUDE [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Resolves XInclude inclusion tags and merges referenced XML documents. By default, this option is switched to <code>true</code> . This option is only available if the standard Java XML Parser is used (see <code>INTPARSE</code> ).

## CATALOG

*Updated with Version 10:* Renamed from `CATFILE`.

<b>Signature</b>	CATALOG [path]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Semicolon-separated list of XML catalog files to resolve URIs. See <a href="#">Catalog Resolvers</a> for more details.

## Indexing

The following options control the creation of index structures. The current values will be considered if a new database is created. See [Indexes](#) for more details.

### TEXTINDEX

<b>Signature</b>	TEXTINDEX [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a text index whenever a new database is created. A text index speeds up queries with equality comparisons on text nodes. See <a href="#">Text Index</a> for more details.

### ATTRINDEX

<b>Signature</b>	ATTRINDEX [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Creates an attribute index whenever a new database is created. An attribute index speeds up queries with equality comparisons on attribute values. See <a href="#">Attribute Index</a> for more details.

### TOKENINDEX

<b>Signature</b>	TOKENINDEX [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a token index whenever a new database is created. A token index speeds up searches for single tokens in attribute values. See <a href="#">Token Index</a> for more details.

### FTINDEX

<b>Signature</b>	FTINDEX [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a full-text index whenever a new database is created. A full-text index speeds up queries with full-text expressions. See <a href="#">Full-Text Index</a> for more details.

### TEXTINCLUDE

<b>Signature</b>	TEXTINCLUDE [names]
------------------	---------------------

<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Defines name patterns for the parent elements of texts that are indexed. By default, all text nodes will be indexed. Name patterns are separated by commas. See <a href="#">Selective Indexing</a> for more details.

## ATTRINCLUDE

<b>Signature</b>	ATTRINCLUDE [names]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Defines name patterns for the attributes to be indexed. By default, all attribute nodes will be indexed. Name patterns are separated by commas. See <a href="#">Selective Indexing</a> for more details.

## TOKENINCLUDE

<b>Signature</b>	TOKENINCLUDE [names]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Defines name patterns for the attributes to be indexed. By default, tokens in all attribute nodes will be indexed. Name patterns are separated by commas. See <a href="#">Selective Indexing</a> for more details.

## FTINCLUDE

<b>Signature</b>	FTINCLUDE [names]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Defines name patterns for the parent elements of texts that are indexed. By default, all text nodes will be indexed. Name patterns are separated by commas. See <a href="#">Selective Indexing</a> for more details.

## MAXLEN

<b>Signature</b>	MAXLEN [int]
<b>Default</b>	96
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the maximum length for strings to be stored in <a href="#">index structures</a> . The value of this option will be assigned once to a new database, and can only be changed by creating a new database or doing a <a href="#">full optimization</a> .

## MAXCATS

<b>Signature</b>	MAXCATS [int]
<b>Default</b>	100
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the maximum number of distinct values (categories) that will be stored together with the element/attribute names or unique paths in the <a href="#">Name Index</a> or <a href="#">Path Index</a> . The value of this option will be assigned once to a new database, and cannot be changed after that.

## UPDINDEX

<b>Signature</b>	UPDINDEX [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	<i>false</i>
<b>Summary</b>	If turned on, incremental indexing will be enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current value of this option will be assigned to new databases. It can be changed for existing databases by running <code>OPTIMIZE</code> with the <code>ALL</code> keyword or <code>db:optimize</code> and <code>true()</code> as second argument.</li> </ul>

- After each update, the value indexes will be refreshed as well. Incremental updates are currently not available for the full-text index and database statistics.
- Find more details in the article on [Index Structures](#).

## AUTOOPTIMIZE

<b>Signature</b>	AUTOOPTIMIZE [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>If turned on, auto optimization will be applied to new databases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With each update, outdated indexes and database statistics will be recreated.</li> <li>• As a result, the index structures will always be up-to-date.</li> <li>• However, updates can take much longer, so this option should only be activated for medium-sized databases.</li> <li>• The value of this option will be assigned once to a new database. It can be reassigned by running OPTIMIZE or <code>db:optimize</code>.</li> </ul>

## SPLITSIZE

<b>Signature</b>	SPLITSIZE [num]
<b>Default</b>	0
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This option affects the <b>construction</b> of new value indexes. It controls the number of index build operations that are performed before writing partial index data to disk:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By default, if the value is set to 0, some heuristics are applied, based on the current memory consumption. Usually, this works fine.</li> <li>• If explicit garbage collection is disabled when running Java (e.g. via the JVM option <code>-XX:+DisableExplicitGC</code>), you may need to choose a custom split size.</li> <li>• You can e. g. start with 1000000 (one million) index operations and adjust this value in the next steps.</li> <li>• The larger the assigned value is, the less splits will take place, and the more main memory will be required.</li> </ul>

## Full-Text Indexing

### STEMMING

<b>Signature</b>	STEMMING [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>If <code>true</code>, all tokens will be stemmed during full-text indexing, using a language-specific stemmer implementation. By default, tokens will not be stemmed. See <a href="#">Full-Text Index</a> for more details.</p>

### CASESENS

<b>Signature</b>	CASESENS [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>If <code>true</code>, the case of tokens will be preserved during full-text indexing. By default, case will be ignored (all tokens will be indexed in lower case). See <a href="#">Full-Text Index</a> for more details.</p>

## DIACRITICS

<b>Signature</b>	DIACRITICS [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	If set to <code>true</code> , diacritics will be preserved during full-text indexing. By default, diacritics will be removed. See <a href="#">Full-Text Index</a> for more details.

## LANGUAGE

<b>Signature</b>	LANGUAGE [lang]
<b>Default</b>	en
<b>Summary</b>	The specified language will influence the way how texts will be tokenized and stemmed. It can be the name of a language or a language code. See <a href="#">Full-Text Index</a> for more details.

## STOPWORDS

<b>Signature</b>	STOPWORDS [path]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	If a text file with stop words is specified, frequently used terms contained in that file will be ignored when a full-text index is created. A stopword list may decrease the size of the full text index and speed up your queries. See <a href="#">Full-Text Index</a> for more details.

## Query Options

### QUERYINFO

<b>Signature</b>	QUERYINFO [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Prints more information on internal query rewritings, optimizations, and performance. By default, this info is shown in the <a href="#">Info View</a> in the GUI. It can also be activated on <a href="#">command line</a> via <code>-v</code> .

### MIXUPDATES

<b>Signature</b>	MIXUPDATES
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Allows queries to both contain updating and non-updating expressions. All updating constraints will be turned off, and nodes to be returned will be copied before they are modified by an updating expression. By default, in compliance with the XQuery Update Facility, this option is set to <code>false</code> . See <a href="#">Returning Results</a> for more details.

### BINDINGS

<b>Signature</b>	BINDINGS [vars]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Contains external variables to be bound to a query. The string must comply with the following rules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Variable names and values must be separated by equality signs.</li> <li>• Multiple variables must be delimited by commas.</li> <li>• Commas in values must be duplicated.</li> <li>• Variables may optionally be introduced with a leading dollar sign.</li> </ul>

- If a variable uses a namespace different to the default namespace, it can be specified with the [Clark Notation](#) or [Expanded QName Notation](#).

This option can also be used on [command line](#) with the flag `-b`.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\$a=1, \$b=2</code> binds the values 1 and 2 to the variables \$a and \$b</li> <li>• <code>a=1, , 2</code> binds the value 1, 2 to the variable \$a</li> <li>• <code>{URI}a=x</code> binds the value x to the variable \$a with the namespace URI.</li> <li>• In the following <a href="#">Command Script</a>, the value <code>hello world!</code> is bound to the variable <code>\$GREETING</code>:</li> </ul>
-----------------	--

```
SET BINDINGS GREETING="hello world!"
XQUERY declare variable $GREETING external; $GREETING
```

## INLINELIMIT

<b>Signature</b>	INLINELIMIT
<b>Default</b>	50
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This option controls inlining of XQuery functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The XQuery compiler inlines functions to speed up query evaluation.</li> <li>• Inlining will only take place if a function body is not too large (i.e., if it does not contain too many expressions).</li> <li>• With this option, this maximum number of expressions can be specified.</li> <li>• Function inlining can be turned off by setting the value to 0.</li> <li>• The limit can be locally overwritten via the <a href="#">%base:inline</a> annotation (follow the link to get more information on function inlining).</li> </ul>

## UNROLLLIMIT

<b>Signature</b>	UNROLLLIMIT
<b>Default</b>	5
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This option controls the unroll limit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Loops with few iterations are <i>unrolled</i> by the XQuery compiler to enable further optimizations.</li> <li>• If the limit is increased, more optimizations will take place, but the memory consumption and compile time will increase.</li> <li>• See <a href="#">Loop Unrolling</a> for more details.</li> </ul>

## ENFORCEINDEX

<b>Signature</b>	ENFORCEINDEX [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	Enforces index rewritings in path expressions. See <a href="#">Enforce Rewritings</a> for details.

## COPYNODE

<b>Signature</b>	COPYNODE [boolean]
------------------	--------------------

<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	<p>When creating new nodes in XQuery via <a href="#">Node Constructors</a>, copies of all enclosed nodes will be created, and the copied nodes get new node identities. As a result, the following query yields false:</p> <pre>let \$a := &lt;a/&gt; let \$b := &lt;b&gt;{ \$a }&lt;/b&gt; return \$b/a is \$a</pre> <p>This step can be very expensive and memory consuming. If the option is disabled, child nodes will only be linked to the new parent nodes, and the upper query returns <code>true</code>. The option should be used carefully as it changes the semantics of XQuery. It should preferably be used in <a href="#">Pragmas</a>.</p>

## TAILCALLS

<b>Signature</b>	TAILCALLS
<b>Default</b>	256
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Specifies how many stack frames of <a href="#">tail-calls</a> are allowed on the stack at any time. When this limit is reached, tail-call optimization takes place and some call frames are eliminated. The feature can be turned off by setting the value to <code>-1</code>.</p>

## WITHDB

<b>Signature</b>	WITHDB
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	<p>By default, resources specified via <code>fn:doc</code> and <code>fn:collection</code> are looked up both in the database and in the file system. If you always use <code>db:get</code> to access databases, it is recommendable to disable this option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No locks will be created for the two functions (see <a href="#">limitations of database locking</a> for more details).</li> <li>• Access to local and external resources will be faster, as the database lookup will be skipped.</li> </ul>

## DEFAULTDB

<b>Signature</b>	DEFAULTDB
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>If this option is turned on, paths specified in the <code>fn:doc</code> and <code>fn:collection</code> functions will first be resolved against a database that has been opened in the global context outside the query (e.g. by the <code>OPEN</code> command). If the path does not match any existing resources, it will be resolved as described in the article on <a href="#">accessing database resources</a>.</p>

## FORCECREATE

<b>Signature</b>	FORCECREATE [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	false
<b>Summary</b>	<p>By activating this option, database instances will be created with the XQuery functions <code>fn:doc</code> and <code>fn:collection</code>.</p>

## CHECKSTRINGS

<b>Signature</b>	CHECKSTRINGS [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true

<b>Summary</b>	By default, characters from external sources that are invalid in XML will trigger an error. If the option is set to <code>false</code> , these characters will be replaced with the Unicode replacement character FFFD (#). The option affects <b>Java Bindings</b> and string conversion and input functions such as <code>archive:create</code> , <code>archive:extract-text</code> , and <code>archive:update</code> .
----------------	---

## WRAPJAVA

<b>Signature</b>	WRAPJAVA [mode]
<b>Default</b>	some
<b>Summary</b>	Defines the way how values that result from Java code invocation will be converted to XQuery items. Allowed values: <code>none</code> , <code>all</code> , <code>some</code> , <code>instance</code> , and <code>void</code> . See <b>Java Bindings</b> for further details.

## LSERROR

<b>Signature</b>	LSERROR [error]
<b>Default</b>	0
<b>Summary</b>	This option specifies the maximum Levenshtein error for fuzzy full-text matching. By default, if 0 is assigned, the error value is calculated dynamically. See <b>Fuzzy Querying</b> for more details.

## RUNQUERY

<b>Signature</b>	RUNQUERY [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies if a query will be executed or parsed only. This option can also be changed on <b>command line</b> via <code>-R</code> .

## RUNS

<b>Signature</b>	RUNS [num]
<b>Default</b>	1
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies how often a query will be evaluated. The result is serialized only once, and the measured times are averages of all runs. This option can also be changed on <b>command line</b> via <code>-r</code> .

## Serialization Options

### SERIALIZE

<b>Signature</b>	SERIALIZE [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	true
<b>Summary</b>	Results of XQuery expressions will be serialized if this option is turned on. For debugging purposes and performance measurements, this option can be set to <code>false</code> . It can also be turned off on <b>command line</b> via <code>-z</code> .

### SERIALIZER

<b>Signature</b>	SERIALIZER [params]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Parameters for <b>serializing</b> query results: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Variable names and values are separated by equality signs.</li> </ul>

- Multiple variables are delimited by commas.
- Commas must be duplicated if they appear as literals in values.

The option can also be used on **command line** with the flag `-s`.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>indent=yes</code> : enables automatic indentation of XML nodes. This is recommended if whitespaces have been stripped from a document (see <a href="#">Template:Options</a>).</li> <li>• <code>encoding=US-ASCII,omit-xml-declaration=no</code> : sets the encoding to <code>US-ASCII</code> and prints the XML declaration.</li> <li>• <code>item-separator=, ,</code> : separates serialized items by a single comma.</li> </ul>
-----------------	---

## EXPORTER

<b>Signature</b>	EXPORTER [params]
<b>Default</b>	<i>empty</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Contains parameters for exporting resources of a database and writing files after updates via the <code>WRITEBACK</code> option. Keys and values are separated by equality signs, multiple parameters are delimited by commas. See <a href="#">Serialization</a> for more details.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>indent=no,omit-xml-declaration=no</code> : disables automatic indentation of XML nodes, outputs the XML declaration.</li> </ul>

## XMLPLAN

<b>Signature</b>	XMLPLAN [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	<i>false</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Prints the execution plan of an XQuery expression in its XML representation. This option can also be activated on <b>command line</b> via <code>-x</code> .

## FULLPLAN

<b>Signature</b>	FULLPLAN [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	<i>false</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Attaches the file path, line and column of the expressions in the original query string to the query plan. Values (items and sequences) have no input information attached.

## Other Options

### AUTOFLUSH

<b>Signature</b>	AUTOFLUSH [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	<i>true</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Flushes database buffers to disk after each update. If this option is set to <i>false</i> , bulk operations (multiple single updates) will be evaluated faster. As a drawback, the chance of data loss increases if the database is not explicitly flushed via the <code>FLUSH</code> command.

### WRITEBACK

<b>Signature</b>	WRITEBACK [boolean]
<b>Default</b>	<i>false</i>
<b>Summary</b>	Propagates updates on main-memory instances of files that have been retrieved via <code>fn:doc</code> and <code>fn:collection</code> back to disk:



- This option can also be activated on **command line** via `-u`.
- Please take in mind that no backup will be created from your original files.
- The serialization options can be controlled via the `EXPORTER` option.

## MAXSTAT

<b>Signature</b>	MAXSTAT [num]
<b>Default</b>	30
<b>Summary</b>	Specifies the maximum number of index occurrences printed by the <code>INFO INDEX</code> command.

## Changelog

### Version 10.0

- Removed: `COMPPLAN`, `IGNOREHOSTNAME`
- Updated: `IGNORECERT`: Additionally disable hostname verification.
- Updated: `CATALOG`: Renamed (before: `CATFILE`).
- Updated: `STRIPWS`: Renamed (before: `CHOP`), new default: `false`.

### Version 9.7

- Updated: `GZIP`: Support for `POST` and `PUT` requests.

### Version 9.6

- Added: `UNROLLLIMIT`, `WRAPJAVA`

### Version 9.5

- Updated: `INLINELIMIT`: default reduced to 50.
- Updated: `RESTXQERRORS`: additionally suppress stack trace in `HTTP` response

### Version 9.4

- Added: `LOGTRACE`

### Version 9.3

- Added: `WITHDB`, `GZIP`

### Version 9.2

- Added: `RESTXQERRORS`, `FULLPLAN`
- Removed: `DOTPLAN`, `DOTCOMPACT`

### Version 9.0

- Added: `ENFORCEINDEX`, `COPYNODE`, `IGNOREHOSTNAME`

### Version 8.6

- Added: `FAIRLOCK`, `PARSERESTXQ`
- Removed: `GLOBALLOCK` (exclusive use of database lock)

- Removed: QUERYPATH (will now be internally assigned)
- Removed: CACHERESTXQ (replaced with PARSEESTXQ)

Version 8.5

- Added: CACHETIMEOUT, LOGPATH
- Updated: AUTHMETHOD: custom value added.

Version 8.4

- Added: TOKENINDEX, TOKENINCLUDE
- Added: SPLITSIZE (replacing INDEXSPLITSIZE and FTINDEXSPLITSIZE)
- Removed: INDEXSPLITSIZE, FTINDEXSPLITSIZE

Version 8.3

- Added: CACHERESTXQ, TEXTINCLUDE, ATTRINCLUDE, FTINCLUDE, ARCHIVENAME

Version 8.2

- Removed: EVENTPORT, CACHEQUERY

Version 8.1

- Added: IGNORECERT, RESTPATH

Version 8.0

- Added: MIXUPDATES, AUTOOPTIMIZE, AUTHMETHOD, XINCLUDE
- Updated: PROXYPORT: default set to 0; will be ignored. PROXYHOST, NONPROXYHOSTS: empty strings will be ignored.

Version 7.8.1

- Updated: ADDARCHIVES: parsing of TAR and TGZ files.

Version 7.8

- Added: CSVPARSER, JSONPARSER, TEXTPARSER, HTMLPARSER, INLINELIMIT, TAILCALLS, DEFAULTTDB, RUNQUERY
- Updated: WRITEBACK only applies to main-memory document instances.
- Updated: DEBUG option can be changed at runtime by users with admin permissions.
- Updated: default of INTPARSE is now `false`.
- Removed: HTMLOPT (replaced with HTMLPARSER), PARSEOPT (replaced with parser-specific options), DOTDISPLAY, DOTTY

Version 7.7

- Added: ADDCACHE, CHECKSTRINGS, FTINDEXSPLITSIZE, INDEXSPLITSIZE

Version 7.6

- Added: GLOBALLOCK
- Added: store local options in configuration file after `# Local Options` comments.

### Version 7.5

- Added: options can now be set via system properties
- Added: a pragma expression can be used to locally change database options
- Added: USER, PASSWORD, LOG, LOGMSGMAXLEN, WEBPATH, RESTXQPATHHTTPLOCAL, CREATEONLY, STRIPNS
- Removed: HTTPPATH; HTTPPORT: jetty.xml configuration file is used instead
- Removed: global options cannot be changed anymore during the lifetime of a BaseX instance

### Version 7.3

- Updated: KEEPALIVE, TIMEOUT: default values changed
- Removed: WILDCARDS; new index supports both fuzzy and wildcard queries
- Removed: SCORING; new scoring model will focus on lengths of text nodes and match options

### Version 7.2

- Added: PROXYHOST, PROXYPORT, NONPROXYHOSTS, HTMLOPT
- Updated: TIMEOUT: ignore timeout for admin users

### Version 7.1

- Added: ADDRAW, MAXLEN, MAXCATS, UPDINDEX
- Updated: BINDINGS

### Version 7.0

- Added: SERVERHOST, KEEPALIVE, AUTOFLUSH, QUERYPATH

---

# Chapter 16. Configuration

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It gives some insight into the configuration of BaseX.

## Configuration Files

BaseX maintains some configuration files, which are stored in the project's [Home Directory](#):

- `.basex` contains all options that are relevant for running the server or standalone versions of BaseX.
- `.basexgui` defines all options relevant to the BaseX GUI.
- `.basexhistory` contains commands that have been typed in most recently.
- An empty `.basexhome` file can be added to a directory to mark it as [home directory](#).

Note that:

- Depending on your OS and configuration, files and folders with a `'.'` prefix may be hidden.
- In the [Web Application](#) context, options can be defined in the `web.xml` file.

## Home Directory

As BaseX is distributed in different flavors, and as it may be started from different locations, it dynamically determines its home directory:

- First, the **Java system property** `org.basex.path` is checked. If it contains a value, it is chosen as directory path.
- If not, the **current user directory** (defined by the system property `user.dir`) is selected if the `.basex` or `.basexhome` file is found in this directory.
- If not, the **application directory** (the folder in which BaseX is located) is chosen if one of these two files is found in that directory.
- In all other cases, a `basex` subdirectory in the **user home directory** will be returned. The user home directory is retrieved via the `HOME` environment variable, or (if unassigned) the Java system property `user.home`.

If BaseX is used in an embedded environment (such as a servlet in a [Web Application](#)), it may not immediately be clear which directory was picked. You can run the XQuery expression `Q{java:org.basex.util.Prop}HOMEDIR()` to find out.

## Database Directory

[Databases](#) consists of several binary files. These are located in a directory named by the name of the database. The database root directory is named `data`.

The database path can be changed as follows:

- GUI: Choose *Options* → *Preferences* and choose a new database path.
- General: edit the `DBPATH` option in the `.basex` configuration file

**Note:** Existing databases will not automatically be moved to the new destination.

## Log Files

Log files are stored in text format in a `.logs` subdirectory of the database folder (see [Logging](#) for more information).

## Changelog

### Version 9.0

- Updated: Detection and configuration of home directory and subdirectories.

### Version 8.0

- Updated: `.basexperm` is obsolete. Users are now stored in `users.xml` in the database directory (see [User Management](#) for more information).

### Version 7.7

- Updated: The `.basexhome` file marks a folder as [home directory](#).

---

# Part V. Integration

---

---

# Chapter 17. Integrating oXygen

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This tutorial is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It describes how to access BaseX from the [oXygen XML Editor](#). Currently, there are two alternatives how to use BaseX in oXygen:

- Resources in BaseX [databases](#) can be opened and modified.
- XPath/XQuery 1.0 expressions can be run by the [query processor](#) of BaseX.
- **Note:** BaseX itself is a highly compliant XQuery 3.1 processor. The restriction to XQuery 1.0 arises from the XQJ Interface which is used to establish the connection between oXygen and BaseX. We strongly encourage you to use the [XML editor](#) integrated into the BaseX GUI to edit and query your XML data!

## Access Database Resources

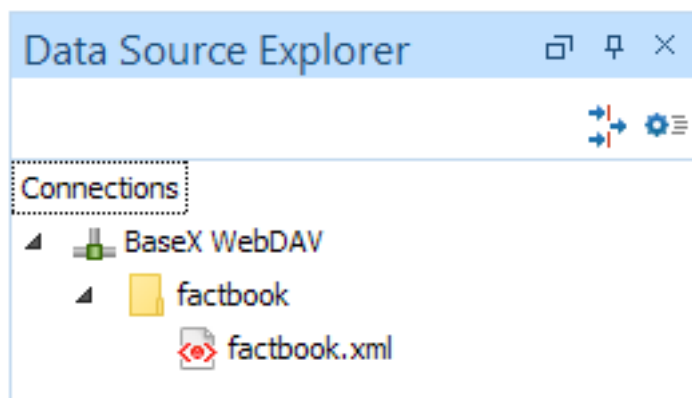
### Preparations

1. Download one of the [BaseX distributions](#).
2. Start BaseX (see [Startup](#)).
3. Create a BaseX database, if necessary (see [Databases](#)).
4. Start the BaseX [WebDAV](#) service.

### Configuration

1. In oXygen, go to menu *Options* → *Preferences* → *Data Sources*.
2. In the Connections panel (in the lower half of the screen), click the *New* button (+).
3. Enter "BaseX WebDAV" as connection name.
4. Select "WebDAV (S)FTP" in the Data Source dropdown box.
5. Fill in the appropriate connection details as follows:
  - Set the WebDAV/FTP URL to `http://localhost:8984/webdav`.
  - Set the username to `admin` and enter your password.
6. Now press *OK*, and your Data Source is ready for use.

You can then access your database file(s) via the Data Source Explorer: *Window* → *Show View* → *Data Source Explorer*.



## Perform Queries

### One-Time Setup

#### Preparations

1. Download one of the complete **BaseX distributions** (ZIP, EXE), if necessary.
2. Start BaseX (see **Startup**). **Note:** Charles Foster's XQJ implementation provides a default (client/server) and a local driver. If you want to use the first flavor, you need to start a **BaseX Server** instance.

#### Configure Data Source

1. In oXygen, select *Options* → *Preferences* → *Data Sources*.
2. In the Data Sources panel, add a new data source using the *New* button (+).
3. Enter "BaseX" as name and select *XQuery API for Java(XQJ)* from the *Type* dropdown box.
4. Add the following JAR files (downloaded in Preparations procedure) with the *Add Files* Button. The versions of the JAR files may differ.
  - `basex/lib/xqj-api-1.0.jar`
  - `basex/lib/xqj2-0.2.0.jar`
  - `basex/lib/basex-xqj-9.0.jar`
  - `basex/BaseX.jar` , if you want to use BaseX embedded
5. Under "Driver class", choose the preferred driver class:
  - Client/server communication: `net.xqj.basex.BaseXXQDataSource`
  - Embedded use (standalone): `net.xqj.basex.local.BaseXXQDataSource`
6. Click *OK*.

#### Configure Connection

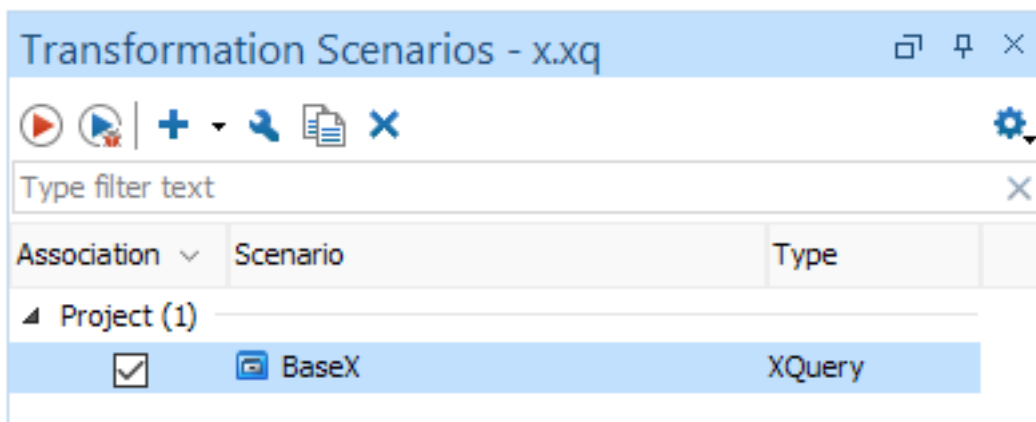
1. In the Connections section (in the lower half of the Data Source dialog), click *New* (+).
2. Enter "BaseX XQJ" as name and select "BaseX" as data source.
3. If you use the default driver, enter the following values in the Connection Details section:
  - port: 1984
  - serverName: localhost
  - user: admin
  - password: *your password*
4. Click *OK* to complete the connection configuration.
5. Click *OK* again to close the Preferences dialog.

#### Configure New Transformation Scenario

1. Select *Window* → *Show View* → *Transformation Scenarios*.



2. In the *Transformation Scenarios* panel, click + and select *XQuery transformation* in the lower part of the dropdown list.
3. Enter a name for your transformation, e.g. "BaseX" like in the screenshot below.
4. Specify an optional XML and XQuery URL.
  - If you would like to query the BaseX database you connected to via WebDAV, leave the *XML URL* field empty. To access your database, you can use the following function from the BaseX **Database Module** in your *XQuery URL* file:
  - If you specify an XML document in the *XML URL* field, you can query its content using `.` (dot operator) in your *XQuery URL* file.
5. Choose "BaseX XQJ" as Transformer from the combo box.
6. Click *OK* to complete the scenario configuration.



## Execute Query

After the one-time setup steps are complete, you can execute your query using the new transformation scenario. Start the transformation by clicking the red Run button (*Apply associated scenarios*) in the Transformation Scenarios window, while your scenario is selected. The results should be immediately displayed in the result panel.

---

# Chapter 18. Integrating Eclipse

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This tutorial is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It describes how to access BaseX from [Eclipse](#) via the [oXygen XML Editor plugin](#). The plugin offers the same features as specified in [Integrating oXygen](#). However, the way to get there from within Eclipse is a little bit different.

Currently, there are two alternatives how to use BaseX in oXygen:

- Resources in BaseX [databases](#) can be opened and modified.
- XPath/XQuery 1.0 expressions can be run by the [query processor](#) of BaseX.
- **Note:** BaseX itself is a highly compliant XQuery 3.1 processor. The restriction to XQuery 1.0 arises from the XQJ Interface which is used to establish the connection between oXygen and BaseX. We strongly encourage you to use the [XML editor](#) integrated into the BaseX GUI to edit and query your XML data!

## Preparations

1. Download and install Eclipse. **Note:** The current version of the oXygen XML Editor plugin was tested for Eclipse Version 4.8. Please also note that you will require an oXygen license to use the plugin.
2. Follow the instructions in the [oXygen Manual](#) to install the plugin.
3. In Eclipse, click on the oXygen icon in the upper right corner to open the plugin. The XML Project you created during the installation of the plugin should be displayed in the *Navigator* panel. In this example, it is called *BaseXProject*.

## Access Database Resources

### Preparations

1. Download one of the [BaseX distributions](#).
2. Start BaseX (see [Startup](#)).
3. Create a BaseX database, if necessary (see [Databases](#)).
4. Start the BaseX [WebDAV](#) service.

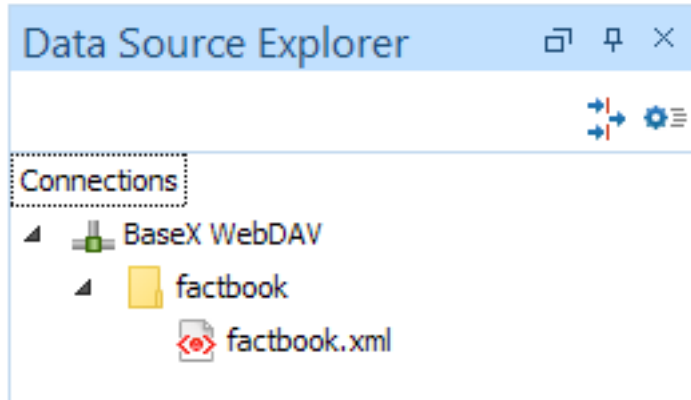
### Configuration

**Note:** If you have already integrated BaseX into the oXygen XML Editor itself as described in [Integrating oXygen](#), your BaseX WebDAV connection will already be available in the plugin.

1. In Eclipse, go to menu *Eclipse* → *Preferences*. In the *Preferences* dialog, chose the *oXygen XML Editor* item, and then the *Data Sources* subitem.
2. In the *Connections* panel (in the lower half of the screen), click the *New* button (+).
3. Enter "BaseX WebDAV" as connection name.
4. Select "WebDAV (S)FTP" in the *Data Source* dropdown box.
5. Fill in the appropriate connection details as follows:
  - Set the WebDAV/FTP URL to `http://localhost:8984/webdav`.
  - Set the username to `admin` and enter your password.

6. Press *OK* to close the dialog.
7. Click *Apply and Close* to close the *Preferences* dialog.
8. If prompted, restart Eclipse to activate all changes.

You can then access your database file(s) via the Data Source Explorer: *Windows* → *Show View* → *Data Source Explorer*.



## Perform Queries

### One-Time Setup

**Note:** If you have already integrated BaseX into the oXygen XML Editor itself as described in [Integrating oXygen](#), your data sources and connections will already be available in the plugin.

### Configuration

1. In Eclipse, go to menu *Eclipse* → *Preferences*. In the *Preferences* dialog, chose the *oXygen XML Editor* item, and then the *Data Sources* subitem.
2. In the Data Sources panel, add a new data source using the *New* button (+).
3. Enter "BaseX" as name and select *XQuery API for Java(XQJ)* from the *Type* dropdown box.
4. Add the following JAR files (downloaded in Preparations procedure) with the *Add Files* Button. The versions of the JAR files may differ.
  - `basex/lib/xqj-api-1.0.jar`
  - `basex/lib/xqj2-0.2.0.jar`
  - `basex/lib/basex-xqj-9.0.jar`
  - `basex/BaseX.jar` , if you want to use BaseX embedded
5. Under "Driver class", choose the preferred driver class:
  - Client/server communication: `net.xqj.basex.BaseXXQDataSource`
  - Embedded use (standalone): `net.xqj.basex.local.BaseXXQDataSource`
6. Click *OK*.

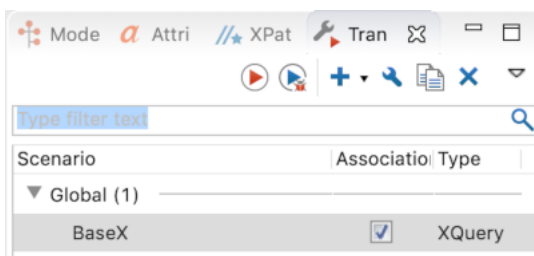
### Configure Connection

1. In the Connections section (in the lower half of the Data Source dialog), click *New* (+).

2. Enter "BaseX XQJ" as name and select "BaseX" as data source.
3. If you use the default driver, enter the following values in the Connection Details section:
  - port: 1984
  - serverName: localhost
  - user: admin
  - password: *your password*
4. Click *OK* to complete the connection configuration.
5. Click *Apply and Close* to close the *Preferences* dialog.
6. If prompted, restart Eclipse to activate all changes.

## Configure New Transformation Scenario

1. In Eclipse, choose *File* → *New* → *XQuery File*. Enter a filename and click *Finish*. Enter a query and save the file.
2. Select *Window* → *Show View* → *Transformation Scenarios*.
3. In the *Transformation Scenarios* panel on the right-hand side, click + and select *XQuery transformation* in the lower part of the dropdown list.
4. Enter a name for your transformation, e.g. "BaseX".
5. Specify an optional XML and XQuery URL.
  - If you would like to query the BaseX database you connected to via WebDAV, leave the *XML URL* field empty. To access your database, you can use the `db:get` function from the BaseX **Database Module** in your *XQuery URL* file.
  - If you specify an XML document in the *XML URL* field, you can query its content using `.` (dot operator) in your *XQuery URL* file.
6. Choose "BaseX XQJ" as Transformer from the combo box.
7. Click *OK* to complete the scenario configuration.



## Execute Query

After the one-time setup steps are complete, you can execute your query using the new transformation scenario. Start the transformation by clicking the red Run button (*Apply associated scenarios*) in the Transformation Scenarios window, while your scenario is selected. The results should be immediately displayed in the result panel.

---

# Chapter 19. Integrating IntelliJ IDEA

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article is part of the [Getting Started](#) Section. It describes how to run XPath/XQuery code from within the [IntelliJ IDEA IDE](#). There are currently two XQuery plugins for IntelliJ IDEA on the market:

- The [xquery-intellij-plugin](#) by Reece H. Dunn.
- The [XQuery Support](#) plugin by Grzegorz Ligas.
- Both plugins offer support for XQuery 3.1 and can be run as a client or standalone instance. Please note that the two plugins are mutually exclusive and cannot be activated at the same time in IntelliJ.
- **Note:** BaseX itself is a highly compliant XQuery 3.1 processor. We strongly encourage you to use the [XML editor](#) integrated into the BaseX GUI to edit and query your XML data!

## Preparations

The following steps apply to all operating systems and both plugins:

- Install either version of IntelliJ IDEA: [the Community or Ultimate edition](#).
- Download your favorite [BaseX distribution](#) (JAR, ZIP, EXE).
- Start BaseX (see [Startup](#)).
- Create a BaseX database (see [Databases](#)).

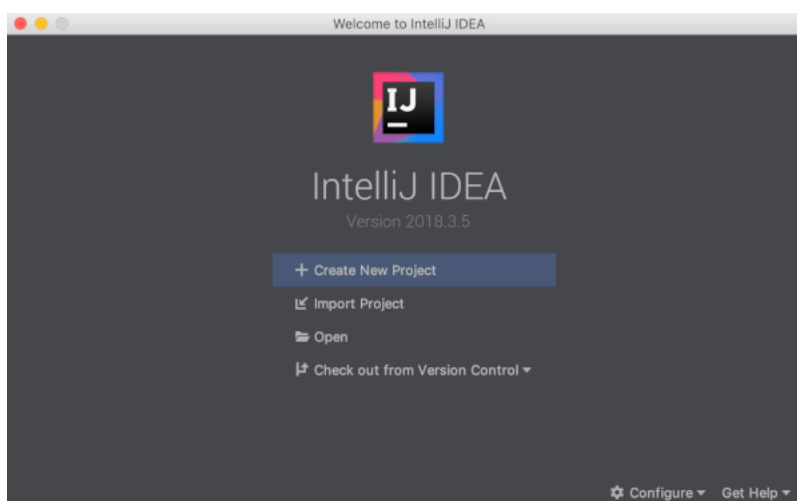
## xquery-intellij-plugin

This section focuses on Reece H. Dunn's [xquery-intellij-plugin](#).

## Installation

After installing IntelliJ IDEA and BaseX, install the [xquery-intellij-plugin](#) by one of the following methods:

### From the Start Screen



- Start IntelliJ IDEA and select *Configure* → *Plugins*.
- In the Plugins window, select the tab *Marketplace*.
- Type "XQuery" into the *Search plugins in marketplace* field.

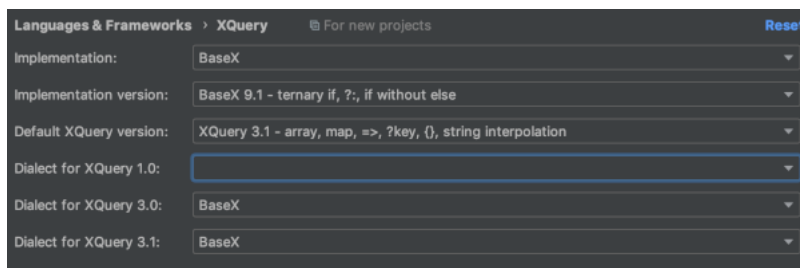
- Click the *Install* button below *xquery-intellij-plugin*.
- You will be prompted to restart IDEA to load the new plugin.

### From the IntelliJ IDEA Menu

- Select *Settings (Windows)/Preferences (macOS)* in the *IntelliJ IDEA* menu.
- In the *Settings/Preferences* window, select *Plugins*.
- In the *Plugins* window, select the tab *Marketplace*.
- Type "XQuery" into the *Search plugins in marketplace* field.
- Click the *Install* button below *xquery-intellij-plugin* plugin.
- You will be prompted to restart IDEA to load the new plugin.

## Configuring The Processor

- Start IntelliJ IDEA and navigate to *Settings (Windows)/Preferences (macOS)* either using the *Configure* button from the start screen or the *IntelliJ IDEA* menu.
- In the *Settings/Preferences* window, expand the *Languages & Frameworks* item and select *XQuery*.
- Make the choices for your system from the dropdown boxes, e.g.:
  - Implementation = BaseX
  - Implementation version = BaseX 9.1
  - Default XQuery version = XQuery 3.1
  - Dialect for XQuery 3.0 = BaseX
  - Dialect for XQuery 3.1 = BaseX



- Click *Apply* to store your XQuery settings and then *OK* to exit the dialog.

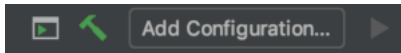
## Querying Your Data

### Create a New Project

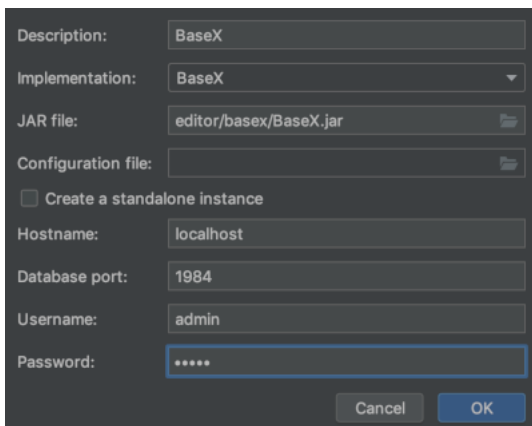
- To create a new project choose the *Create new project* option from the start screen or select *New → Project...* from the *File* menu.
- In the *New Project* dialog, choose *Empty Project* from the left-hand column and click the *Next* button.
- Enter a name and location for your project and click on the *Finish* button.

### Customize the XQuery Module

- Click the *Add Configuration* button below the IntelliJ IDEA menu bar.



- In the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog, expand the *Templates* list and choose the *XQuery* entry.
- Click on the three dots . . . next to the *Query Processor* dropdown box.
- In the *Manage Query Processors* dialog, click on the + button.
- In the *New Query Processor Instance* dialog, set the following preferences:
  - *Description* = BaseX (optional; if you leave this field blank, [Implementation] [Version] will be used as description)
  - *Implementation* = BaseX (should be preset!)
  - *JAR File* = BaseX.jar (name and location of the JAR file may differ depending on your BaseX distribution and version)
  - *Hostname* = localhost
  - *Database port* = 1984
  - *Username* = admin
  - *Password* = . . .
- If you tick the check box *Create a standalone instance*, the fields *Hostname*, *Database port*, *Username*, and *Password* remain empty.



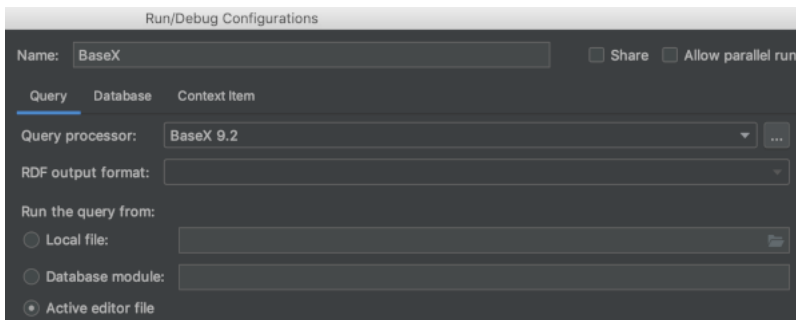
- Click *OK* to exit the *New Query Processor Instance* dialog.
- In the *Manage Query Processors* dialog, now choose the "BaseX [Version] (BaseX)" entry and click *OK*.
- The *Query Processor* dropdown box in the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog should now also display "BaseX [Version] (BaseX)". If not, select it from the dropdown box.
- Click *Apply* and then *OK* to close the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog.

### Create a Query File

- In the project view, create a new XQuery file, either by right-clicking on the project name and choosing *New → File* or by selecting *New → File* from the File menu. Enter a file name and click *OK*.
- Type in your query, e.g. `db:get ( " factbook " )`, and save your file.

### Create a New Configuration

- Click on the *Add Configuration* button once again.
- In the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog, click the + button to create a new configuration based on a template.
- Choose the "XQuery" template you configured earlier.
- Enter a name, e.g. "BaseX", into the *Name* field.
- The query processor should be preset to "BaseX [*Version*] (BaseX)".
- In the *Run the query from* area, either enter the path to your query file into the *Local file* field to limit the run configuration to that query or choose the *Active editor file* option to make the configuration run the script that is currently opened in the IntelliJ editor panel.



- Click *Apply* and then *OK* to close the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog.
- Now, the configuration should be set and the green *Run* button should be available below the IntelliJ IDEA menu bar.



## Execute Your Query

- If the configuration does not run as a standalone instance, make sure that BaseX is up and running.
- Click the *Run* button to execute your query.

## Conclusion

The plugin is very well maintained! It adds support for various XQuery Implementations to the IntelliJ IDEA (among them BaseX). It provides syntax highlighting for XQuery and XML, code completion and detects syntactical errors while you type offering a description for each error. Queries are executed using Run Configurations for which you can configure various query processors, e.g. BaseX.

BaseX's admin log can be accessed and displayed using the **Query Log** button on the bottom left corner of the IntelliJ IDEA project window.

The plugin contains some minor flaws regarding the use of functions declared in user-defined modules. Such functions are not included in the code completion list and marked as unknown in the code. However, query execution in the BaseX backend works fine nonetheless.

## XQuery Support Plugin

This section focuses on Grzegorz Ligas' [XQuery Support plugin](#).

### Installation

After installing IntelliJ IDEA and BaseX, install the XQuery Support plugin by one of the following methods:

#### From the Start Screen



- Start IntelliJ IDEA and select *Configure* → *Plugins*.
- In the *Plugins* window, select the tab *Marketplace*.
- Type "XQuery" into the *Search plugins in marketplace* field and press Enter.
- Click the *Install* button below the *XQuery Support* plugin or click on the *XQuery Support* link to get more information on the plugin before installing it.
- You will be prompted to restart IDEA to load the new plugin.

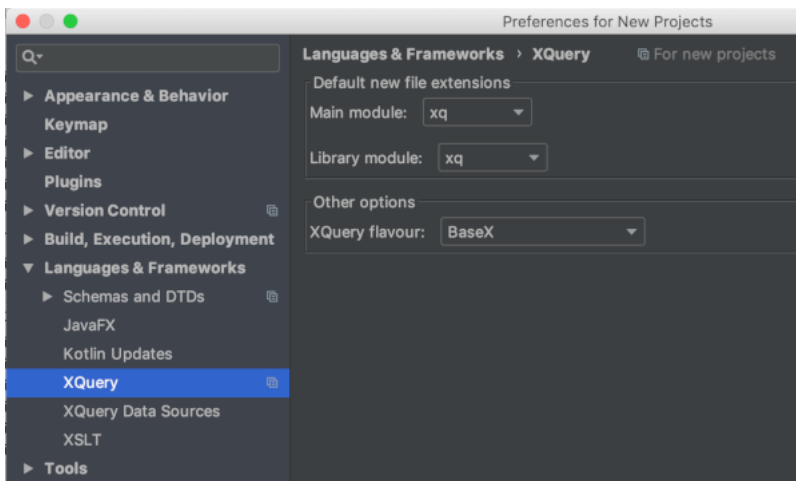
### From the IntelliJ IDEA Menu

- Select *Settings (Windows)/Preferences (macOS)* from the *IntelliJ IDEA* menu.
- In the *Settings/Preferences* window, select *Plugins*.
- In the *Plugins* panel, select the tab *Marketplace*.
- Type "XQuery" into the *Search plugins in marketplace* field and press Enter.
- Click the *Install* button below the *XQuery Support* plugin or click on the *XQuery Support* link to get more information on the plugin before installing it.
- You will be prompted to restart IDEA to load the new plugin.

## Setting Up

### File Extensions and XQuery Flavor

- Start IntelliJ IDEA and navigate to *Settings (Windows)/Preferences (macOS)* either using the *Configure* button on the start screen or the *IntelliJ IDEA* menu.
- In the *Settings/Preferences* window, expand the *Languages & Frameworks* item, select *XQuery* and choose which default file extensions and which XQuery flavor you would like to use.
- Click *Apply* to store your XQuery settings.



## Configuring The Processor

You can set up the plugin as a standalone processor or client.

### Standalone

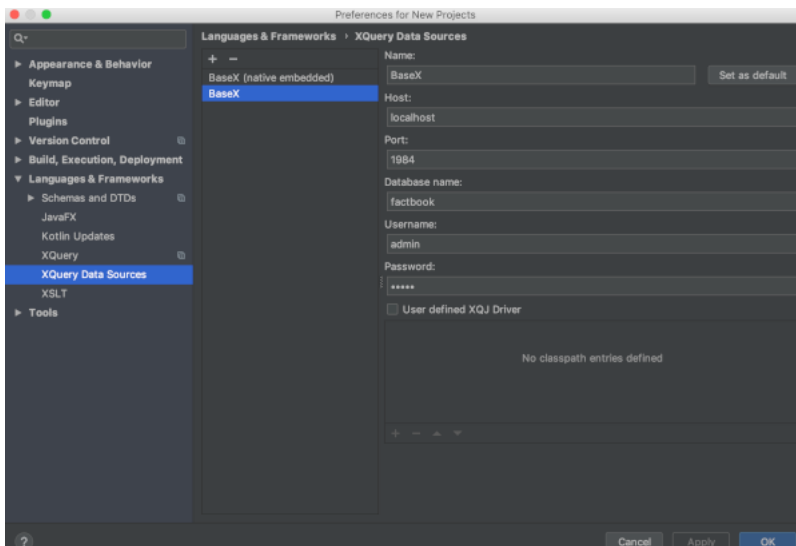
- In the *Settings (Windows)/Preferences (macOS)* window, expand the *Languages & Frameworks* item and select *XQuery Data Sources*.

- Click on the + button in the middle column to add a new data source.
- Select *BaseX (native embedded)* from the dropdown box.
- In the right-hand column, check the *User defined XQJ Driver* check box.
- Use the + button below the check box to add the following jars from your BaseX distribution:
  - `basex/BaseX.jar`
  - `basex/lib/basex-apj-9.1.2.jar`
  - `basex/lib/basex-xqj-9.0.jar`
  - `basex/lib/xqj2-0.2.0.jar`
- Click *Apply* to store your settings.

## Client

This assumes that you already have a BaseX database named `factbook`.

- In the *Settings (Windows)/Preferences (macOS)* window, expand the *Languages & Frameworks* item and select *XQuery Data Sources*.
- Click on the + button in the middle column to add a new data source.
- Select *BaseX* from the dropdown box.
- In the right-hand column, fill in the appropriate connection details, e.g. default values:
  - Host = `localhost`
  - Port = `1984`
  - Database name = `factbook`
  - Username = `admin`
  - Password = ...
- Select *Apply*, then *OK* and your BaseX `factbook` database is ready to query.



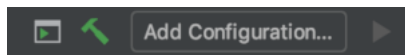
## Querying Your Data

### Create a New Project

- To create a new project choose the *Create new project* option from the start screen or select *New* → *Project...* from the *File* menu.
- In the *New Project* dialog, choose *Empty Project* from the left-hand column and click the *Next* button.
- Enter a name and location for your project and click on the *Finish* button.

### Customize the XQuery Module

- Click the *Add Configuration* button below the IntelliJ IDEA menu bar.



- In the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog, expand the *Templates* list and choose the *XQuery Main Module* entry.
- Click on the *Configure* button next to the *Data Source* field and either choose the previously configured standalone version (*BaseX (native embedded)* item) or the client version (*BaseX* item) from the list.
- Click *Apply* and then *OK* to close the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog.

### Create a Query File

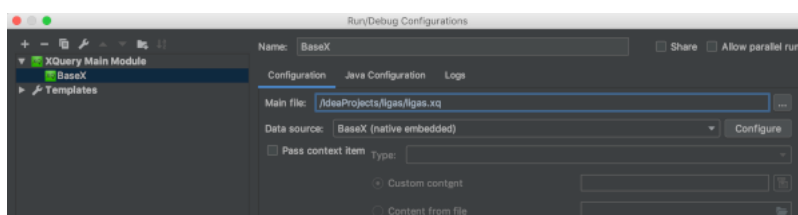
- In the project view, create a new XQuery file by right-clicking on the project name and choosing *New* → *XQuery File*. Enter a file name, select *Main Module* from the *Kind* dropdown and click *OK*.
- Type in your query and save your file.

```

1 xquery version "3.1";
2
3 {;~
4  : User: basex
5  : Date: 2019-03-08
6  : Time: 11:15
7  : To change this template use File | Settings | File Templates.
8  ;}
9
10 db:open("factbook")
  
```

### Create a New Configuration

- Click on the *Add Configuration* button once again.
- In the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog, click the + button to create a new configuration based on a template.
- Choose the "XQuery Main Module" template you configured earlier.
- Enter a name, e.g. "BaseX", into the *Name* field.
- The data source should be preset either to "BaseX (native embedded)" or *BaseX* depending on your processor configuration.
- In the *Main file* field, enter the path to your query file.



- Click *Apply* and then *OK* to close the *Run/Debug Configurations* dialog.
- Now, the configuration should be set and the green *Run* button should be available below the IntelliJ IDEA menu bar.



### Execute Your Query

- If the configuration does not run as a standalone instance, make sure that BaseX is up and running.
- Click the *Run* button to execute your query.

## Conclusion

The plugin adds support for various XQuery Implementations to the IntelliJ IDEA (among them BaseX). It provides syntax highlighting for XQuery and XML and detects syntactical errors while you type offering a description for each error. Queries are executed using Run Configurations for which you can configure various query processors, e.g. BaseX. The plugin offers code completion for XQuery functions, integrated library modules, such as FunctX or the BaseX Module Library, and user-defined modules. IntelliJ's Find Usages and Go To options seem to work fine for variables and functions, even across modules. Users can set XQuery-specific code style preferences.

This plugin also has a few minor drawbacks. If no path is specified, syntax highlighting marks user-defined modules as unknown, even if they reside in the designated BaseX module repository. However, the BaseX query processor, resolves them correctly during query execution. Error messages in the editor seem to be kept rather general and should be more specific. Parameter lists of code completion may be quite extensive and clog the screen. Leading tab space can be increased in user-defined steps, but neither decreased in single, nor user-defined steps.

---

# Part VI. XQuery Portal

---

---

# Chapter 20. XQuery

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

Welcome to the Query Portal, which is one of the [Main Sections](#) of this documentation. BaseX provides an implementation of the W3 [XPath](#) and [XQuery](#) languages, which are tightly coupled with the underlying database store. The processor is also a flexible general purpose processor, which can access and process local and remote sources and output results in various formats. BaseX is [highly compliant](#) with the official specifications. This section contains information on the query processor and its extensions:

## [XQuery 3.0 and XQuery 3.1](#)

Features of the new XQuery Recommendations.

## [XQuery Extensions and XQuery Optimizations](#)

Specifics of the BaseX XQuery processor.

## [Module Library](#)

Additional functions included in the internal modules.

## [Java Bindings](#)

Accessing and calling Java code from XQuery.

## [Repository](#)

Install and manage XQuery and Java modules.

## [Full-Text](#)

How to use BaseX as a full-fledged full-text processor.

## [Update](#)

Updating databases and local resources via XQuery Update.

## [Indexes](#)

Available index structures and their utilization.

## [Serialization](#)

Serialization parameters supported by BaseX.

## [Errors](#)

Errors raised by XQuery expressions.

---

# Chapter 21. XQuery 3.0

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It provides a summary of the most important features of the [XQuery 3.0 Recommendation](#).

## Enhanced FLWOR Expressions

Most clauses of FLWOR expressions can be specified in an arbitrary order: additional `let` and `for` clauses can be put after a `where` clause, and multiple `where`, `order by` and `group by` statements can be used. This means that many nested loops can now be rewritten to a single FLWOR expression.

### Example:

```
for $country in db:get('factbook')//country
where $country/@population > 100000000
for $city in $country//city[population > 1000000]
group by $name := $country/name[1]
count $id
return <country id='{ $id }' name='{ $name }'>{ $city/name }</country>
```

### group by

FLWOR expressions have been extended to include the [group by](#) clause, which is well-established in SQL. `group by` can be used to apply value-based partitioning to query results:

### XQuery:

```
for $ppl in doc('xmark')//people/person
let $ic := $ppl/profile/@income
let $income :=
  if($ic < 30000) then
    "challenge"
  else if($ic >= 30000 and $ic < 100000) then
    "standard"
  else if($ic >= 100000) then
    "preferred"
  else
    "na"
group by $income
order by $income
return element { $income } { count($ppl) }
```

This query is a rewrite of [Query #20](#) contained in the [XMark Benchmark Suite](#) to use `group by`. The query partitions the customers based on their income.

### Result:

```
<challenge>4731</challenge>
<na>12677</na>
<preferred>314</preferred>
<standard>7778</standard>
```

In contrast to the relational GROUP BY statement, the XQuery counterpart concatenates the values of all non-grouping variables that belong to a specific group. In the context of our example, all nodes in `//people/person` that belong to the `preferred` partition are concatenated in `$ppl` after grouping has finished. You can see this effect by changing the return statement to:

```
...
```

```
return element { $income } { $ppl }
```

**Result:**

```
<challenge>
  <person id="person0">
    <name>Kasidit Treweek</name>
    ...
  <person id="personX">
    ...
</challenge>
```

Moreover, a value can be assigned to the grouping variable. This is shown in the following example:

**XQuery:**

```
let $data :=
  <xml>
    <person country='USA' name='John' />
    <person country='USA' name='Jack' />
    <person country='Germany' name='Johann' />
  </xml>
for $person in $data/person
group by $country := $person/@country
return element persons {
  attribute country { $country },
  for $name in $person/@name
  return element name { data($name) }
}
```

**Result:**

```
<persons country="USA">
  <name>John</name>
  <name>Jack</name>
</persons>
<persons country="Germany">
  <name>Johann</name>
</persons>
```

**count**

The `count` clause enhances the FLWOR expression with a variable that enumerates the iterated tuples.

```
for $n in (1 to 10)[. mod 2 = 1]
count $c
return <number count="{ $c }" number="{ $n }"/>
```

**allowing empty**

The `allowing empty` provides functionality similar to outer joins in SQL:

```
for $n allowing empty in ()
return 'empty? ' || empty($n)
```

**window**

Window clauses provide a rich set of variable declarations to process sub-sequences of iterated tuples. An example:

```
for tumbling window $w in (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14)
  start at $s when fn:true()
  only end at $e when $e - $s eq 2
return <window>{ $w }</window>
```

More information on window clauses, and all other enhancements, can be found in the [specification](#).



## Function Items

One of the most distinguishing features added in *XQuery 3.0* are *function items*, also known as *lambdas* or *lambda functions*. They make it possible to abstract over functions and thus write more modular code.

### Examples:

Function items can be obtained in three different ways:

- Declaring a new *inline function*:

```
let $f := function($x, $y) { $x + $y }
return $f(17, 25)
```

**Result:**42

- Getting the function item of an existing (built-in or user-defined) XQuery function. The arity (number of arguments) has to be specified as there can be more than one function with the same name:

```
let $f := math:pow#2
return $f(5, 2)
```

**Result:**25

- *Partially applying* another function or function item. This is done by supplying only some of the required arguments, writing the placeholder ? in the positions of the arguments left out. The produced function item has one argument for every placeholder.

```
let $f := fn:substring(?, 1, 3)
return (
  $f('foo123'),
  $f('bar456')
)
```

**Result:**foo bar

Function items can also be passed as arguments to and returned as results from functions. These so-called **Higher-Order Functions** like `fn:map` and `fn:fold-left` are discussed in more depth on their own Wiki page.

## Simple Map Operator

The **simple map** operator `!` provides a compact notation for applying the results of a first to a second expression: the resulting items of the first expression are bound to the context item one by one, and the second expression is evaluated for each item. The map operator may be used as replacement for FLWOR expressions:

### Example:

```
(: Simple map notation :)
(1 to 10) ! element node { . },
(: FLWOR notation :)
for $i in 1 to 10
return element node { $i }
```

In contrast to path expressions, the results of the map operator will not be made duplicate-free and returned in document order.

## Try/Catch

The **try/catch** construct can be used to handle errors at runtime:

### Example:

```
try {
```

```

1 + '2'
} catch err:XPTY0004 {
  'Typing error: ' || $err:description
} catch * {
  'Error [' || $err:code || ']: ' || $err:description
}

```

**Result:**Typing error: '+' operator: number expected, xs:string found.

Within the scope of the catch clause, a number of variables are implicitly declared, giving information about the error that occurred:

- `$err:code` error code
- `$err:description`: error message
- `$err:value`: value associated with the error (optional)
- `$err:module`: URI of the module where the error occurred
- `$err:line-number`: line number where the error occurred
- `$err:column-number`: column number where the error occurred
- `$err:additional`: error stack trace

## Switch

The **switch** statement is available in many other programming languages. It chooses one of several expressions to evaluate based on its input value.

### Example:

```

for $fruit in ("Apple", "Pear", "Peach")
return switch ($fruit)
  case "Apple" return "red"
  case "Pear"  return "green"
  case "Peach" return "pink"
  default     return "unknown"

```

**Result:**red green pink

The expression to evaluate can correspond to multiple input values.

### Example:

```

for $fruit in ("Apple", "Cherry")
return switch ($fruit)
  case "Apple"
  case "Cherry"
    return "red"
  case "Pear"
    return "green"
  case "Peach"
    return "pink"
  default
    return "unknown"

```

**Result:**red red

## Expanded QNames

A *QName* can be prefixed with the letter "Q" and a namespace URI in the **Clark Notation**.

**Examples:**

- `Q{http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math}pi()` returns the number  $\pi$
- `Q{java:java.io.FileOutputStream}new("output.txt")` creates a new Java file output stream

## Namespace Constructors

New namespaces can be created via so-called 'Computed Namespace Constructors'.

```
element node { namespace pref { 'http://url.org/' } }
```

## String Concatenations

Two vertical bars `||` (also named *pipe characters*) can be used to concatenate strings. This operator is a shortcut for the `fn:concat()` function.

```
'Hello' || ' ' || 'Universe'
```

## External Variables

Default values can be attached to external variable declarations. This way, an expression can also be evaluated if its external variables have not been bound to a new value.

```
declare variable $user external := "admin";
"User:", $user
```

## Serialization

**Serialization parameters** can be defined within XQuery expressions. Parameters are placed in the query prolog and need to be specified as option declarations, using the `output` prefix.

**Example:**

```
declare namespace output = "http://www.w3.org/2010/xslt-xquery-serialization";
declare option output:omit-xml-declaration "no";
declare option output:method "xhtml";
<html/>
```

**Result:**`<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><html></html>`

In BaseX, the output prefix is statically bound and can thus be omitted. Note that all namespaces need to be specified when using external APIs, such as **XQJ**.

## Context Item

The context item can be specified in the prolog of an XQuery expression:

**Example:**

```
declare context item := document {
  <xml>
    <text>Hello</text>
    <text>World</text>
  </xml>
};

for $t in ../text()
return string-length($t)
```

**Result:**5 5

## Annotations

XQuery 3.0 introduces annotations to declare properties associated with functions and variables. For instance, a function may be declared `%public`, `%private`, or `%updating`.

### Example:

```
declare %private function local:max($x1, $x2) {
  if($x1 > $x2) then $x1 else $x2
};

local:max(2, 3)
```

## Functions

The following functions have been added in the [XQuery 3.0 Functions and Operators Specification](#):

`fn:analyze-string*` `fn:available-environment-variables`, `fn:element-with-id`, `fn:environment-variable`, `fn:filter`, `fn:fold-left`, `fn:fold-right`, `fn:for-each`, `fn:for-each-pair`, `fn:format-date`, `fn:format-dateTime`, `fn:format-integer`, `fn:format-number`, `fn:format-time`, `fn:function-arity`, `fn:function-lookup`, `fn:function-name`, `fn:generate-id`, `fn:has-children`, `fn:head`, `fn:innermost`, `fn:outermost`, `fn:parse-xml`, `fn:parse-xml-fragment`, `fn:path`, `fn:serialize`, `fn:tail`, `fn:unparsed-text`, `fn:unparsed-text-available`, `fn:unparsed-text-lines`, `fn:uri-collection`

New signatures have been added for the following functions:

`fn:document-uri`, `fn:string-join`, `fn:node-name`, `fn:round`, `fn:data`

## Changelog

Version 8.4

- Added: `%non-deterministic`

Version 8.0

- Added: `%basex:inline`, `%basex:lazy`

Version 7.7

- Added: [Enhanced FLWOR Expressions](#)

Version 7.3

- Added: [Simple Map Operator](#)

Version 7.2

- Added: [Annotations](#)
- Updated: [Expanded QNames](#)

Version 7.1

- Added: [Expanded QNames](#), [Namespace Constructors](#)

Version 7.0

- Added: **String Concatenations**

---

# Chapter 22. Higher-Order Functions

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page present some *higher-order functions* of the XQuery specification. The BaseX-specific [Higher-Order Functions Module](#) contains some additional useful functions.

## Function Items

Probably the most important new feature in XQuery 3.0 are *function items*, i. e., items that act as functions, but can also be passed to and from other functions and expressions. This feature makes functions *first-class citizens* of the language. The [XQuery 3.0](#) page goes into details on how function items can be obtained.

## Function Types

Like every XQuery item, function items have a *sequence type*. It can be used to specify the *arity* (number of arguments the function takes) and the argument and result types.

The most general function type is `function(*)`. It's the type of all function items. The following query for example goes through a list of XQuery items and, if it is a function item, prints its arity:

```
for $item in (1, 'foo', fn:concat#3, function($a) { 42 * $a })
where $item instance of function(*)
return fn:function-arity($item)
```

*Result:* 3 1

The notation for specifying argument and return types is quite intuitive, as it closely resembles the function declaration. The XQuery function

```
declare function local:char-at(
  $str as xs:string,
  $pos as xs:integer
) as xs:string {
  fn:substring($str, $pos, 1)
};
```

for example has the type `function(xs:string, xs:integer) as xs:string`. It isn't possible to specify only the argument and not the result type or the other way round. A good place-holder to use when no restriction is wanted is `item()*`, as it matches any XQuery value.

Function types can also be nested. As an example we take `local:on-sequences`, which takes a function defined on single items and makes it work on sequences as well:

```
declare function local:on-sequences(
  $fun as function(item()) as item()*
) as function(item()* as item()* {
  fn:for-each($fun, ?)
};
```

We will see later how `fn:for-each(...)` works. The type of `local:on-sequences(...)` on the other hand is easily constructed, if a bit long:

```
function(function(item()) as item()* as function(item()* as item()*.
```

## Higher-Order Functions

A *higher-order function* is a function that takes other functions as arguments and/or returns them as results. `fn:for-each` and `local:on-sequences` from the last chapter are nice examples.

With the help of higher-order functions, one can extract common patterns of *behavior* and abstract them into a library function.

## Sequences

Some usage patterns on sequences are so common that the higher-order functions describing them are in the XQuery standard libraries. They are listed here, together with their possible XQuery implementation and some motivating examples.

### fn:for-each

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fn:for-each(\$seq as item()*, \$function as function(item()) as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Applies the specified <code>\$function</code> to every item of <code>\$seq</code> and returns all results as a single sequence.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Square all numbers from 1 to 10:           <pre>fn:for-each(1 to 10, math:pow(?, 2))</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 81 100</p> </li> <li>Apply a list of functions to a string:           <pre>let \$fs := (   fn:upper-case#1,   fn:substring(?, 4),   fn:string-length#1 ) return fn:for-each(\$fs, function(\$f) { \$f('foobar') })</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>FOOBAR bar 6</p> </li> <li>Process each item of a sequence with the arrow operator:           <pre>("one", "two", "three") =&gt; fn:for-each(fn:upper-case(?))</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>ONE TWO THREE</p> </li> </ul>
<b>XQuery 1.0</b>	At the core, for-each is nothing else than a simple FLWOR expression: <pre>declare function local:for-each(   \$seq as item()*,   \$fun as function(item()) as item()* ) as item()* {   for \$s in \$seq   return \$fun(\$s) };</pre>

### fn:filter

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fn:filter(\$seq as item()*, \$pred as function(item()) as xs:boolean) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Applies the boolean predicate <code>\$pred</code> to all elements of the sequence <code>\$seq</code> , returning those for which it returns <code>true()</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All even integers until 10:           <pre>fn:filter(1 to 10, function(\$x) { \$x mod 2 eq 0 })</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>2 4 6 8 10</p> </li> <li>Strings that start with an upper-case letter:           <pre>let \$first-upper := function(\$str) {</pre> </li> </ul>

```

let $first := fn:substring($str, 1, 1)
return $first eq fn:upper-case($first)
}
return fn:filter(('FooBar', 'foo', 'BAR'), $first-upper)

```

*Result:* FooBar BAR

- Inefficient prime number generator:

```

let $is-prime := function($x) {
  $x gt 1 and (every $y in 2 to ($x - 1) satisfies $x mod $y ne 0)
}
return filter(1 to 20, $is-prime)

```

*Result:* 2 3 5 7 11 13 17 19

**Note** `fn:filter` can be easily implemented with `fn:for-each`:

```

declare function local:filter($seq, $pred) {
  for-each(
    $seq,
    function($x) {
      if($pred($x)) then $x else ()
    }
  )
};

```

**XQuery 1.0** At the core, `for-each` is nothing else than a filter expression:

```

declare function local:filter(
  $seq as item()*,
  $pred as function(item()) as xs:boolean
) as item()* {
  $seq[$pred(.)]
};

```

## fn:for-each-pair

**Signatures** `fn:for-each-pair($seq1 as item()*, $seq2 as item()*, $function as function(item(), item()) as item()*) as item()*`

**Summary** Applies the specified `$function` to the successive pairs of items of `$seq1` and `$seq2`. Evaluation is stopped if one sequence yields no more items.

**Examples**

- Adding one to the numbers at odd positions:

```

fn:for-each-pair(
  fn:for-each(1 to 10, function($x) { $x mod 2 }),
  (1, 1, 1, 1, 1),
  function($a, $b) { $a + $b }
)

```

*Result:* 2 1 2 1 2

- Line numbering:

```

let $number-words := function($str) {
  fn:string-join(
    fn:for-each-pair(
      1 to 1000000000,
      tokenize($str, ' '),
      concat(?, ': ', ?)
    ),
    '&#xa;'
  )
}

```



```
return $number-words('how are you?')
```

*Result:*

```
1: how
2: are
3: you?
```

- Checking if a sequence is sorted:

```
let $is-sorted := function($seq) {
  every $b in
    fn:for-each-pair(
      $seq,
      fn:tail($seq),
      function($a, $b) { $a le $b }
    )
  satisfies $b
}
return (
  $is-sorted(1 to 10),
  $is-sorted((1, 2, 42, 4, 5))
)
```

*Result:*true false

```
XQuery 1.0 declare function local:for-each-pair(
  $seq1 as item()*,
  $seq2 as item()*,
  $fun as function(item(), item()) as item()*
) as item()* {
  for $pos in 1 to min((count($seq1), count($seq2)))
  return $fun($seq1[$pos], $seq2[$pos])
};
```

## Folds

A *fold*, also called *reduce* or *accumulate* in other languages, is a very basic higher-order function on sequences. It starts from a seed value and incrementally builds up a result, consuming one element from the sequence at a time and combining it with the aggregate of a user-defined function.

Folds are one solution to the problem of not having *state* in functional programs. Solving a problem in *imperative* programming languages often means repeatedly updating the value of variables, which isn't allowed in functional languages.

Calculating the *product* of a sequence of integers for example is easy in Java:

```
public int product(int[] seq) {
  int result = 1;
  for(int i : seq) {
    result = result * i;
  }
  return result;
}
```

Nice and efficient implementations using folds will be given below.

The *linear* folds on sequences come in two flavors. They differ in the direction in which they traverse the sequence:

### fn:fold-left

<b>Signatures</b>	fn:fold-left(\$seq as item()*, \$seed as item()*, \$function as function(item()*, item()) as item()*) as item()*
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	<p>The <i>left fold</i> traverses the sequence from the left. The query <code>fn:fold-left(1 to 5, 0, \$f)</code> for example would be evaluated as:</p> <pre>\$F(\$f(\$f(\$f(\$f(\$f(0, 1), 2), 3), 4), 5)</pre>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Product of a sequence of integers: <pre>fn:fold-left(1 to 5, 1,   function(\$result, \$curr) { \$result * \$curr } )</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>120</p> </li> <li>• Illustrating the evaluation order: <pre>fn:fold-left(1 to 5, '\$seed',   concat('\$f(', '?', ', ', '?', ')')) )</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>\$f(\$f(\$f(\$f(\$f(\$seed, 1), 2), 3), 4), 5)</p> </li> <li>• Building a decimal number from digits: <pre>let \$from-digits := fold-left(?, 0,   function(\$n, \$d) { 10 * \$n + \$d } ) return (   \$from-digits(1 to 5),   \$from-digits((4, 2)) )</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>12345 42</p> </li> </ul>
<b>XQuery 1.0</b>	<p>As folds are more general than <i>FLWOR</i> expressions, the implementation isn't as concise as the former ones:</p> <pre>declare function local:fold-left(   \$seq as item()*,   \$seed as item()*,   \$function as function(item()*, item()) as item()* ) as item()* {   if(empty(\$seq)) then \$seed   else local:fold-left(     fn:tail(\$seq),     \$function(\$seed, fn:head(\$seq)),     \$function   ) };</pre>

## fn:fold-right

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fn:fold-right(\$seq as item()*, \$seed as item()*, \$function as function(item(), item()*) as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>The <i>right fold</i> <code>fn:fold-right(\$seq, \$seed, \$fun)</code> traverses the sequence from the right. The query <code>fn:fold-right(1 to 5, 0, \$f)</code> for example would be evaluated as:</p> <pre>\$F(1, \$f(2, \$f(3, \$f(4, \$f(5, 0))))</pre>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Product of a sequence of integers: <pre>fn:fold-right(1 to 5, 1,   function(\$curr, \$result) { \$result * \$curr } )</pre> <p><i>Result:</i>120</p> </li> </ul>

- Illustrating the evaluation order:

```
fn:fold-right(1 to 5, '$seed',
  concat('$f(', '?', ', ', '?', ')')
)
```

*Result:*\$f(1, \$f(2, \$f(3, \$f(4, \$f(5, \$seed))))

- Reversing a sequence of items:

```
let $reverse := fn:fold-right(?, (),
  function($item, $rev) {
    $rev, $item
  }
)
return $reverse(1 to 10)
```

*Result:*10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

**XQuery 1.0** declare function local:fold-right(  
 \$seq as item()\*,  
 \$seed as item()\*,  
 \$function as function(item(), item()\*) as item()\*  
) as item()\* {  
 if(empty(\$seq)) then \$seed  
 else \$function(  
 fn:head(\$seq),  
 local:fold-right(tail(\$seq), \$seed, \$function)  
 )  
};

Note that the order of the arguments of \$fun are inverted compared to that in fn:fold-left(...).

---

# Chapter 23. XQuery 3.1

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It provides a summary of the most important features of the [XQuery 3.1 Recommendation](#).

## Maps

A *map* is a function that associates a set of keys with values, resulting in a collection of key/value pairs. Each key/value pair in a map is called an entry. A key is an arbitrary atomic value, and the associated value is an arbitrary sequence. Within a map, no two entries have the same key, when compared using the `eq` operator. It is not necessary that all the keys should be mutually comparable (for example, they can include a mixture of integers and strings).

Maps can be constructed as follows:

```
map { },                (: empty map :)
map { 'key': true(), 1984: (<a/>, <b/>) }, (: map with two entries :)
map:merge(              (: map with ten entries :)
  for $i in 1 to 10
  return map { $i: 'value' || $i }
)
```

The function corresponding to the map has the signature `function($key as xs:anyAtomicType) as item()*`. The expression `$map($key)` returns the associated value; the function call `map:get($map, $key)` is equivalent. For example, if `$books-by-isbn` is a map whose keys are ISBNs and whose associated values are book elements, then the expression `$books-by-isbn("0470192747")` returns the book element with the given ISBN. The fact that a map is a function item allows it to be passed as an argument to [Higher-Order Functions](#) that expect a function item as one of their arguments. As an example, the following query uses the higher-order function `fn:map($f, $seq)` to extract all bound values from a map:

```
let $map := map { 'foo': 42, 'bar': 'baz', 123: 456 }
return fn:for-each(map:keys($map), $map)
```

This returns some permutation of `(42, 'baz', 456)`.

Because a map is a function item, functions that apply to functions also apply to maps. A map is an anonymous function, so `fn:function-name` returns the empty sequence; `fn:function-arity` always returns 1.

Like all other values, maps are immutable. For example, the `map:remove` function creates a new map by removing an entry from an existing map, but the existing map is not changed by the operation. Like sequences, maps have no identity. It is meaningful to compare the contents of two maps, but there is no way of asking whether they are "the same map": two maps with the same content are indistinguishable.

Maps may be compared using the `fn:deep-equal` function. The [Map Module](#) describes the available set of map functions.

## Arrays

An *array* is a function that associates a set of positions, represented as positive integer keys, with values. The first position in an array is associated with the integer 1. The values of an array are called its members. In the type hierarchy, array has a distinct type, which is derived from function. In BaseX, arrays (as well as sequences) are based on an efficient [Finger Tree](#) implementation.

Arrays can be constructed in two ways. With the square bracket notation, the comma serves as delimiter:

```
[],                (: empty array :)
[ (1, 2) ],       (: array with single member :)
[ 1 to 2, 3 ]     (: array with two members; same as: [ (1, 2), 3 ] :)
```

With the `array` keyword and curly brackets, the inner expression is evaluated as usual, and the resulting values will be the members of the array:

```
array { },           (: empty array;           same as: array { () } :)
array { (1, 2) },   (: array with two members;  same as: array { 1, 2 } :)
array { 1 to 2, 3 } (: array with three members; same as: array { 1, 2, 3 } :)
```

The function corresponding to the array has the signature `function($index as xs:integer) as item()*`. The expression `$array($index)` returns an addressed member of the array. The following query returns the five array members 48 49 50 51 52 as result:

```
let $array := array { 48 to 52 }
for $i in 1 to array:size($array)
return $array($i)
```

Like all other values, arrays are immutable. For example, the `array:reverse` function creates a new array containing a re-ordering of the members of an existing array, but the existing array is not changed by the operation. Like sequences, arrays have no identity. It is meaningful to compare the contents of two arrays, but there is no way of asking whether they are "the same array": two arrays with the same content are indistinguishable.

## Atomization

If an array is *atomized*, all of its members will be atomized. As a result, an atomized item may now result in more than one item. Some examples:

```
fn:data([1 to 2])      (: returns the sequence 1, 2 :)
[ 'a', 'b', 'c' ] = 'b' (: returns true :)
<a>{ [ 1, 2 ] }</a>    (: returns <a>1 2</a> :)
array { 1 to 2 } + 3   (: error: the left operand returns two items :)
```

Atomization also applies to function arguments. The following query returns 5, because the array will be atomized to a sequence of 5 integers:

```
let $f := function($x as xs:integer*) { count($x) }
return $f([1 to 5])
```

However, the next query returns 1, because the array is already of the general type `item()`, and no atomization will take place:

```
let $f := function($x as item*) { count($x) }
return $f([1 to 5])
```

Arrays can be compared with the `fn:deep-equal` function. The [Array Module](#) describes the available set of array functions.

## Lookup Operator

The lookup operator provides some syntactic sugar to access values of maps or array members. It is introduced by the question mark (?) and followed by a specifier. The specifier can be:

1. A wildcard `*`,
2. The name of the key,
3. The integer offset, or
4. Any other parenthesized expression.

The following example demonstrates the four alternatives:

```
let $map := map { 'R': 'red', 'G': 'green', 'B': 'blue' }
return (
  $map?*          (: 1. returns all values; same as: map:keys($map) ! $map(.) :),
```

```

    $map?R      (: 2. returns the value associated with the key 'R'; same as:
    $map('R') :),
    $map?('G','B') (: 3. returns the values associated with the key 'G' and 'B' :)
  ),
let $array := [ 'one', 'two', 'three' ]
return (
  $array?*      (: 1. returns all values; same as: (1 to array:size($array)) !
  $array(.) :),
  $array?1      (: 2. returns the first value; same as: $array(1) :),
  $array?(2 to 3) (: 3. returns the second and third values; same as: (1 to 2) !
  $array(.) :)
)

```

The lookup operator can also be used without left operand. In this case, the context item will be used as input. This query returns Akureyri:

```

let $maps := (
  map { 'name': 'Guðrún', 'city': 'Reykjavík' },
  map { 'name': 'Hildur', 'city': 'Akureyri' }
)
return $maps[?name = 'Hildur'] ?city

```

## Arrow Operator

The arrow operator `=>` provides a convenient alternative syntax for passing on functions to a value. The expression that precedes the operator will be supplied as first argument of the function that follows the arrow. If `$v` is a value and `f()` is a function, then `$v => f()` is equivalent to `f($v)`, and `$v => f($j)` is equivalent to `f($v, $j)`:

```

(: Returns 3 :)
count(('A', 'B', 'C')),
('A', 'B', 'C') => count(),
('A', 'B', 'C') => (function( $sequence) { count( $sequence)})(()),

(: Returns W-E-L-C-O-M-E :)
string-join(tokenize(upper-case('w e l c o m e')), '-'),
'w e l c o m e' => upper-case() => tokenize() => string-join('-'),

(: Returns xfmdpnf :)
codepoints-to-string(
  for $i in string-to-codepoints('welcome')
  return $i + 1
),
(for $i in 'welcome' => string-to-codepoints()
return $i + 1) => codepoints-to-string()

```

The syntax makes nested function calls more readable, as it is easy to see if parentheses are balanced.

## String Constructor

The string constructor has been inspired by [here document](#) literals of the Unix shell and script languages. It allows you to generate strings that contain various characters that would otherwise be interpreted as XQuery delimiters.

The string constructors syntax uses two backticks and a square bracket for opening and closing a string:

```

(: Returns "This is a 'new' & 'flexible' syntax." :)
``["This is a 'new' & 'flexible' syntax." ]``

```

XQuery expressions can be embedded via backticks and a curly bracket. The evaluated results will be separated with spaces, and all strings will eventually be concatenated:

```

(: Returns »Count 1 2 3, and I will be there.« :)
let $c := 1 to 3

```

```
return ``[>Count `{ $c }`, and I will be there.<]``
```

## Serialization

Two **Serialization** methods have been added to the **Serialization spec**:

### Adaptive Serialization

The `adaptive` serialization provides an intuitive textual representation for all XDM types, including maps and arrays, functions, attributes, and namespaces. All items will be separated by the value of the `item-separator` parameter, which by default is a newline character. It is utilized by the functions `prof:dump` and `fn:trace`.

Example:

```
declare option output:method 'adaptive';
<element id='id0' />/@id,
xs:token("abc"),
map { 'key': 'value' },
true#0
```

Result:

```
id="id0"
xs:token("abc"),
map {
  "key": "value"
}
fn:true#0
```

### JSON Serialization

The new `json` serialization output method can be used to serialize XQuery maps, arrays, atomic values and empty sequences as JSON.

The `json` output method has been introduced in BaseX before it was added to the official specification. It complies with the standard serialization rules and, at the same time, preserves the existing semantics:

- If an XML node of type `element(json)` is found, it will be serialized following the serialization rules of the **JSON Module**.
- Any other node or atomic value, map, array, or empty sequence will be serialized according to the **rules in the specification**.

The following two queries will both return the JSON snippet `{ "key": "value" }`:

```
declare option output:method 'json';
map { "key": "value" }
```

```
declare option output:method 'json';
<json type='object'>
  <key>value</key>
</json>
```

## Functions

The following functions have been added in the **XQuery 3.1 Functions and Operators Specification**:

### Map Functions

`map:merge`, `map:size`, `map:keys`, `map:contains`, `map:get`, `map:entry`, `map:put`,  
`map:remove`, `map:for-each`

Please check out the [Map Module](#) for more details.

## Array Functions

`array:size`, `array:append`, `array:subarray`, `array:remove`, `array:insert-before`, `array:head`, `array:tail`, `array:reverse`, `array:join`, `array:flatten`, `array:for-each`, `array:filter`, `array:fold-left`, `array:fold-right`, `array:for-each-pair`

## JSON Functions

With XQuery 3.1, native support for JSON objects was added. Strings and resources can be parsed to XQuery items and, as [shown above](#), serialized back to their original form.

### fn:parse-json

Signatures

- `fn:parse-json($input as xs:string) as item()?`
- `fn:parse-json($input as xs:string, $options as map(*)) as item()?`

Parses the supplied string as JSON text and returns its item representation. The result may be a map, an array, a string, a double, a boolean, or an empty sequence. The allowed options can be looked up in the [specification](#).

```
parse-json('{ "name": "john" }') (: yields { "name": "john" } :),
parse-json('[ 1, 2, 4, 8, 16 ]') (: yields [ 1, 2, 4, 8, 16 ] :)
```

### fn:json-doc

Signatures

- `fn:json-doc($uri as xs:string) as item()?`
- `fn:json-doc($uri as xs:string, $options as map(*)) as item()?`

Retrieves the text from the specified URI, parses the supplied string as JSON text and returns its item representation (see `fn:parse-json` for more details).

```
json-doc("http://ip.jsontest.com/")( 'ip' ) (: returns your IP address :)
```

### fn:json-to-xml

Signatures

- `fn:json-to-xml($string as xs:string?) as node()?`

Converts a JSON string to an XML node representation. The allowed options can be looked up in the [specification](#).

```
json-to-xml('{ "message": "world" }')
(: result:
<map xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions">
  <string key="message">world</string>
</map> :)
```

### fn:xml-to-json

Signatures

- `fn:xml-to-json($node as node()?) as xs:string?`

Converts an XML node, whose format conforms to the results created by `fn:json-to-xml`, to a JSON string representation. The allowed options can be looked up in the [specification](#).



```
(: returns "JSON" :)
xml-to-json(<string xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions">JSON</string>)
```

## fn:sort

### Signatures

- `fn:sort($input as item(*) as item()*)`
- `fn:sort($input as item(*), $collation as xs:string?) as xs:anyAtomicType*) as item()*`
- `fn:sort($input as item(*), $collation as xs:string?, $key as function(item(*) as xs:anyAtomicType*)) as item()*`

Returns a new sequence with sorted `$input` items, using an optional `$collation`. If a `$key` function is supplied, it will be applied on all items. The items of the resulting values will be sorted using the semantics of the `lt` expression.

```
sort(reverse(1 to 3))           (: yields 1, 2, 3 :),
reverse(sort(1 to 3))         (: returns the sorted order in descending
order :),
sort((3,-2,1), (), abs#1)     (: yields 1, -2, 3 :),
sort((1,2,3), (), function($x) { -$x }) (: yields 3, 2, 1 :),
sort((1,'a'))                (: yields an error, as strings and
integers cannot be compared :)
```

## fn:contains-token

### Signatures

- `fn:contains-token($input as xs:string*, $token as string) as xs:boolean`
- `fn:contains-token($input as xs:string*, $token as string, $collation as xs:string) as xs:boolean`

The supplied strings will be tokenized at whitespace boundaries. The function returns `true` if one of the strings equals the supplied token, possibly under the rules of a supplied collation:

```
contains-token(('a', 'b c', 'd'), 'c')           (: yields true :)
<xml class='one two'/>/contains-token(@class, 'one') (: yields true :)
```

## fn:parse-ietf-date

### Signature

- `fn:parse-ietf-date($input as xs:string?) as xs:string?`

Parses a string in the IETF format (which is widely used on the Internet) and returns a `xs:dateTime` item:

```
fn:parse-ietf-date('28-Feb-1984 07:07:07')"     (: yields
1984-02-28T07:07:07Z :),
fn:parse-ietf-date('Wed, 01 Jun 2001 23:45:54 +02:00')" (: yields
2001-06-01T23:45:54+02:00 :)
```

## fn:apply

### Signatures

- `fn:apply($function as function(*), $arguments as array(*)) as item()*`

The supplied `$function` is invoked with the specified `$arguments`. The arity of the function must be the same as the size of the array.

Example:

```
fn:apply(concat#5, array { 1 to 5 })      (: 12345 :)
fn:apply(function($a) { sum($a) }, [ 1 to 5 ]) (: 15 :)
fn:apply(count#1, [ 1,2 ])                (: error. the array has two
members :)
```

## fn:random-number-generator

Signatures

- `fn:random-number-generator()` as `map(xs:string, item())`
- `fn:random-number-generator($seed as xs:anyAtomicType) as map(xs:string, item())`

Creates a random number generator, using an optional seed. The returned map contains three entries:

- `number` is a random double between 0 and 1
- `next` is a function that returns another random number generator
- `permute` is a function that returns a random permutation of its argument

The returned random generator is *deterministic*: If the function is called twice with the same arguments and in the same execution scope, it will always return the same result.

Example:

```
let $rng := fn:random-number-generator()
let $number := $rng('number')          (: returns a random number :)
let $next-rng := $rng('next')()        (: returns a new generator :)
let $next-number := $next-rng('number') (: returns another random number :)
let $permutation := $rng('permute')(1 to 5) (: returns a random permutation of
(1,2,3,4,5) :)
return ($number, $next-number, $permutation)
```

## fn:format-number

The function has been extended to support scientific notation:

```
format-number(1984.42, '00.0e0') (: yields 19.8e2 :)
```

## fn:tokenize

If no separator is specified as second argument, a string will be tokenized at whitespace boundaries:

```
fn:tokenize(" a b c d") (: yields "a", "b", "c", "d" :)
```

## fn:trace

The second argument can now be omitted:

```
fn:trace(<xml/>, "Node: ") / node() (: yields the debugging output "Node: <xml/>" :),
fn:trace(<xml/>) / node()           (: returns the debugging output "<xml/>" :)
```

## fn:string-join

The type of the first argument is now `xs:anyAtomicType*`, and all items will be implicitly cast to strings:

```
fn:string-join(1 to 3) (: yields the string "123" :)
```

## fn:default-language

Returns the default language used for formatting numbers and dates. BaseX always returns en.

## Appendix

The three functions `fn:transform`, `fn:load-xquery-module` and `fn:collation-key` may be added in a future version of BaseX as their implementation might require the use of additional external libraries.

## Binary Data

Items of type `xs:hexBinary` and `xs:base64Binary` can be compared against each other. The following queries all yield true:

```
xs:hexBinary('') < xs:hexBinary('bb'),
xs:hexBinary('aa') < xs:hexBinary('bb'),
max((xs:hexBinary('aa'), xs:hexBinary('bb'))) = xs:hexBinary('bb')
```

## Collations

XQuery 3.1 provides a default collation, which allows for a case-insensitive comparison of ASCII characters (A-Z = a-z). This query returns true:

```
declare default collation 'http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/collation/html-ascii-case-insensitive';
'HTML' = 'html'
```

If the [ICU Library](#) is downloaded and added to the classpath, the full [Unicode Collation Algorithm](#) features become available in BaseX:

```
(: returns 0 (both strings are compared as equal) :)
compare('a-b', 'ab', 'http://www.w3.org/2013/collation/UCA?alternate=shifted')
```

## Enclosed Expressions

*Enclosed expression* is the syntactical term for the expressions that are specified inside a function body, try/catch clauses, node constructors and some other expressions. In the following example expressions, its the empty sequence:

```
declare function local:x() { () };
try { () } catch * { () },
element x { () },
text { () }
```

With XQuery 3.1, the expression can be omitted. The following query is equivalent to the upper one:

```
declare function local:x() { };
try { } catch * { },
element x { }
text { }
```

## Changelog

### Version 8.6

- Updated: Collation argument was inserted between first and second argument.

### Version 8.4

- Added: [String Constructors](#), `fn:default-language`, [Enclosed Expressions](#)
- Updated: [Adaptive Serialization](#), `fn:string-join`

Version 8.2

- Added: `fn:json-to-xml`, `fn:xml-to-json`.

Version 8.1

- Updated: arrays are now based on a **Finger Tree** implementation.

Introduced with Version 8.0.

---

# Chapter 24. XQuery Extensions

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It lists extensions and optimizations that are specific to the BaseX XQuery processor.

## Expressions

Some of the extensions that have been added to BaseX may also be made available in other XQuery processors in the near future.

### Ternary If

The **ternary if** operator provides a short syntax for conditions. It is also called **conditional operator** or **ternary operator**. In most languages, the syntax is `a ? b : c`. As `?` and `:` have already been taken in XQuery, the syntax of Perl 6 is used:

```
$test ?? 'ok' !! 'fails'
```

The expression returns `ok` if the effective boolean value of `$test` is true, and it returns `fails` otherwise.

### Elvis Operator

The Elvis operator is also available in other languages. It is sometimes called **null-coalescing operator**. In XQuery, the value of the first operand will be returned if it is a non-empty sequence. Otherwise, the value of the second operand will be returned.

```
let $number := 123
return (
  (: if/then/else :)
  if (exists($number)) then $number else 0,
  (: elvis operator :)
  $number ?: 0
)
```

The behavior of the operator is equivalent to the `util:or` function.

### If Without Else

In XQuery 3.1, both branches of the `if` expression need to be specified. In many cases, only one branch is required, so the `else` branch was made optional in BaseX. If the second branch is omitted, an empty sequence will be returned if the effective boolean value of the test expression is false. Some examples:

```
if (doc-available($doc)) then doc($doc),
if (file:exists($file)) then file:delete($file),
if (permissions:valid($user)) then <html>Welcome!</html>
```

If conditions are nested, a trailing `else` branch will be associated with the innermost `if`:

```
if ($a) then if ($b) then '$a and $b is true' else 'only $a is true'
```

In general, if you have multiple or nested `if` expressions, additional parentheses can improve the readability of your code:

```
if ($a) then (
  if ($b) then '$a and $b is true' else 'only $a is true'
)
```

The behavior of the `if` expression is equivalent to the `util:if` function.

## Functions

### Regular Expressions

In analogy with Saxon, you can specify the flag `j` to revert to Java's default regex parser. For example, this allows you to use the word boundary option `\b`, which has not been included in the XQuery grammar for regular expressions:

#### Example:

```
(: yields "!Hi! !there!" :)
replace('Hi there', '\b', '!', 'j')
```

### Serialization

- `basex` is used as the default serialization method: nodes are serialized as XML, atomic values are serialized as string, and items of binary type are output in their native byte representation. Function items (including maps and arrays) are output just like with the `adaptive` method.
- With `csv`, you can output XML nodes as CSV data (see the [CSV Module](#) for more details).
- With `json`, items are output as JSON as described in the [official specification](#). If the root node is of type `element(json)`, items are serialized as described for the `direct` format in the [JSON Module](#).

For more information and some additional BaseX-specific parameters, see the article on [Serialization](#).

## Option Declarations

### Database Options

[Local database options](#) can be set in the prolog of an XQuery main module. In the option declaration, options need to be bound to the [Database Module](#) namespace. All values will be reset after the evaluation of a query:

```
declare option db:catalog 'etc/w3-catalog.xml';
doc('doc.xml')
```

### XQuery Locks

If locks are declared in the query prolog of a module via the `basex:lock` option, access to functions of this module locks will be controlled by the central transaction management. See [Transaction Management](#) for further details.

## Pragmas

### BaseX Pragmas

Many optimizations in BaseX will only be performed if an expression is *deterministic* (i. e., if it always yields the same output and does not have side effects). By flagging an expression as non-deterministic, optimizations and query rewritings can be suppressed:

```
sum( (# basex:non-deterministic #) {
  1 to 100000000
})
```

This pragma can be helpful when debugging your code.

In analogy with option declarations and function annotations, XQuery locks can also set via pragmas. See [Transaction Management](#) for details and examples.

```
(# basex:write-lock CONFIGLOCK #) {
  file:write('config.xml', <config/>)
}
```

## Database Pragmas

**Local database options** can also be assigned via pragmas:

- **Index access rewritings** can be enforced. This is helpful if the name of a database is not static (see [Enforce Rewritings](#) for more details):

```
(# db:enforceindex #) {
  for $db in ('persons1', 'persons2', 'persons3')
  return db:get($db)//name[text() = 'John']
}
```

- Node copying in node constructors can be disabled (see [COPYNODE](#) for more details). The following query will consume much less memory than without pragma as the database nodes will not be fully duplicated, but only attached to the xml parent element:

```
file:write(
  'wrapped-db-nodes.xml',
  (# db:copynode false #) {
    <xml>{ db:get('huge') }</xml>
  }
)
```

- An XML catalog can be specified for URI rewritings. See the [Catalog Resolver](#) section for an example.

## Annotations

### Function Inlining

`%basex:inline([limit])` controls if functions will be inlined.

If XQuery functions are *inlined*, the function call will be replaced by a FLWOR expression, in which the function variables are bound to let clauses, and in which the function body is returned. This optimization triggers further query rewritings that will speed up your query. An example:

#### Query:

```
declare function local:square($a) { $a * $a };
for $i in 1 to 3
return local:square($i)
```

#### Query after function inlining:

```
for $i in 1 to 3
return
  let $a := $i
  return $a * $a
```

#### Query after further optimizations:

```
for $i in 1 to 3
return $i * $i
```

By default, XQuery functions will be *inlined* if the query body is not too large and does not exceed a fixed number of expressions, which can be adjusted via the `INLINELIMIT` option.

The annotation can be used to overwrite this global limit: Function inlining can be enforced if no argument is specified. Inlining will be disabled if 0 is specified.

**Example:**

```
(: disable function inlining; the full stack trace will be shown... :)
declare %basex:inline(0) function local:e() { error() };
local:e()
```

**Result:**

```
Stopped at query.xq, 1/53:
[FOER0000] Halted on error().
```

```
Stack Trace:
- query.xq, 2/9
```

## Lazy Evaluation

`%basex:lazy` enforces lazy evaluation of a global variable. An example:

**Example:**

```
declare %basex:lazy variable $january := doc('does-not-exist.xml');
if(month-from-date(current-date()) = 1) then $january else ()
```

The annotation ensures that an error is only raised if the condition yields true. Without the annotation, the error is always raised if the referenced document is not found.

## XQuery Locks

In analogy with option declarations and pragmas, locks can also be set via annotations. See [Transaction Management](#) for details and examples.

## Non-Determinism

In [XQuery](#), *deterministic* functions are “guaranteed to produce identical results from repeated calls within a single execution scope if the explicit and implicit arguments are identical”. In BaseX, many extension functions are non-deterministic or side-effecting. If an expression is internally flagged as non-deterministic, various optimizations that might change their execution order will not be applied.

```
(: QUERY A... :)
let $n := 456
for $i in 1 to 2
return $n

(: ...will be optimized to :)
for $i in 1 to 2
return 456

(: QUERY B will not be rewritten :)
let $n := random:integer()
for $i in 1 to 2
return $n
```

In some cases, functions may contain non-deterministic code, but the query compiler may not be able to detect this statically. See the following example:

```
for $read in (file:read-text#1, file:read-binary#1)
let $ignored := non-deterministic $read('input.file')
return ()
```

Two non-deterministic functions will be bound to `$read`, and the result of the function call will be bound to `$ignored`. As the variable is not referenced in the subsequent code, the `let` clause would usually be discarded by the compiler. In the given query, however, execution will be enforced because of the BaseX-specific `non-deterministic` keyword.



## Namespaces

In XQuery, some namespaces are statically bound to prefixes. The following query requires no additional namespaces declarations in the query prolog:

```
<xml:abc xmlns:prefix='uri' local:fn='x' />,
fn:exists(1)
```

In BaseX, various other namespaces are predefined. Apart from the namespaces that are listed on the [Module Library](#) page, the following namespaces are statically bound:

Description	Prefix	Namespace URI
<a href="#">BaseX Annotations, Pragmas, ...</a>	basex	http://basex.org
<a href="#">RECTXQ: Input Options</a>	input	http://basex.org/modules/input
<a href="#">EXPath Packages</a>	pkg	http://expath.org/ns/pkg
<a href="#">XQuery Errors</a>	err	http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors
<a href="#">Serialization</a>	output	http://www.w3.org/2010/xslt-xquery-serialization

## Suffixes

In BaseX, files with the suffixes `.xq`, `.xqm`, `.xqy`, `.xql`, `.xqu` and `.xquery` are treated as XQuery files. In XQuery, there are main and library modules:

- Main modules have an expression as query body. Here is a minimum example:

```
'Hello World!'
```

- Library modules start with a module namespace declaration and have no query body:

```
module namespace hello = 'http://basex.org/examples/hello';

declare function hello:world() {
  'Hello World!'
};
```

We recommend `.xq` as suffix for for main modules, and `.xqm` for library modules. However, the actual module type will dynamically be detected when a file is opened and parsed.

## Miscellaneous

Various other extensions are described in the articles on [XQuery Full Text](#) and [XQuery Update](#).

## Changelog

Version 9.1

- Added: New [Expressions](#): Ternary if, elvis Operator, if without else
- Added: XQuery Locks via pragmas and function annotations.
- Added: [Regular Expressions](#), `j` flag for using Java's default regex parser.

---

# Chapter 25. XQuery Optimizations

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It presents some of the optimizations that speed up the execution and reduce memory consumption of queries.

## Introduction

Query execution encompasses multiple steps:

1. **Parsing** : The query input string is transformed to executable code. The result is a tree representation, called the *abstract syntax tree* (AST).
2. **Compilation** : The syntax tree is decorated with additional information (type information, expression properties). Expressions (nodes) in the tree are relocated, simplified, or pre-evaluated. Logical optimizations are performed that do not rely on external information.
3. **Optimization** : The dynamic context is incorporated: Referenced databases are opened and analyzed; queries are rewritten to use available indexes; accumulative and statistical operations (counts, summations, min/max, distinct values) are pre-evaluated; XPath expressions are simplified, based on the existence of steps.
4. **Evaluation** : The resulting code is executed.
5. **Printing** : The query result is serialized and presented in a format that is either human-readable, or can be further processed by an API.

Some rewritings are described in this article.

If you run a query on [command-line](#), you can use `-V` to output detailed query information. In the [GUI](#), you can enable the Info View panel.

## Compilation

### Pre-Evaluation

Parts of the query that are static and would be executed multiple times can already be evaluated at compile time:

```
for $i in 1 to 10
return 2 * 3

(: rewritten to :)
for $i in 1 to 10
return 6
```

### Variable Inlining

The value of a variable can be *inlined*: The variables references are replaced by the expression that is bound to the variable. The resulting expression can often be simplified, and further optimizations can be triggered:

```
declare variable $INFO := true();

let $nodes := //nodes
where $INFO
return 'Results: ' || count($nodes)

(: rewritten to :)
let $nodes := //nodes
where true()
return 'Results: ' || count($nodes)
```

```
(: rewritten to :)
let $nodes := //nodes
return 'Results: ' || count($nodes)

(: rewritten to :)
'Results: ' || count(//nodes)
```

As the example shows, variable declarations might be located in the query prolog and in FLWOR expressions. They may also occur (and be inlined) in try/catch, switch or typeswitch expressions.

## Function Inlining

Functions can be inlined as well. The parameters are rewritten to let clauses and the function is body is bound to the return clause.

```
declare function local:inc($i) { $i + 1 };
for $n in 1 to 5
return local:inc($n)

(: rewritten to :)
for $n in 1 to 5
return (
  let $_ := $n
  return $_ + 1
)

(: rewritten to :)
for $n in 1 to 5
return $n + 1
```

Subsequent rewritings might result in query plans that differ a lot from the original query. As this might complicate debugging, you can disable function inlining during development by setting INLINELIMIT to 0.

## Loop Unrolling

Loops with few iterations are *unrolled* by the XQuery compiler to enable further optimizations:

```
(1 to 2) ! (. * 2)

(: rewritten to :)
1 ! (. * 2), 2 ! (. * 2)

(: further rewritten to :)
1 * 2, 2 * 2

(: further rewritten to :)
2, 4
```

Folds are unrolled, too:

```
let $f := function($a, $b) { $a * $b }
return fold-left(2 to 5, 1, $f)

(: rewritten to :)
let $f := function($a, $b) { $a * $b }
return $f($f($f($f(1, 2), 3), 4), 5)
```

The standard unroll limit is 5. It can be adjusted with the UNROLLLIMIT option, e.g. via a pragma:

```
(# db:unrolllimit 10 #) {
  for $i in 1 to 10
  return db:get('db' || $i)//*[text() = 'abc']
}

(: rewritten to :)
```

```
db:get('db1')//*[text() = 'abc'],
db:get('db2')//*[text() = 'abc'],
...
db:get('db10')//*[text() = 'abc'],
```

The last example indicates that index rewritings might be triggered by unrolling loops with paths on database nodes.

The following expressions can be unrolled:

- Simple map expressions
- Simple FLWOR expressions
- Filter expressions
- `fn:fold-left`, `fn:fold-right`, `fn:fold-left1`

Care should be taken if a higher value is selected, as memory consumption and compile time will increase.

## Paths

Due to the compact syntax of XPath, it can make a big difference if a slash is added or omitted in a path expression. A classical example is the double slash `//`, which is a shortcut for `descendant-or-node()`. If the query is evaluated without optimizations, all nodes of a document are gathered, and for each of them, the next step is evaluated. This leads to a potentially huge number of duplicate node tree traversals, most of which are redundant, as all duplicate nodes will be removed at the end anyway.

In most cases, paths with a double slash can be rewritten to descendant steps...

```
(: equivalent queries, with identical syntax trees :)
doc('addressbook.xml')//city,
doc('addressbook.xml')/descendant-or-self::node()/child::city

(: rewritten to :)
doc('addressbook.xml')/descendant::city
```

...unless the last step does not contain a positional predicate:

```
doc('addressbook.xml')//city[1]
```

As the positional test refers to the city child step, a rewritten query would yield different steps.

Paths may contain predicates that will be evaluated again by a later axis step. Such predicates are either shifted down or discarded:

```
(: equivalent query :)
a[b]/b[c/d]/c

(: rewritten to :)
a/b/c[d]
```

Names of nodes can be specified via name tests or predicates. If names are e.g. supplied via external variables, the predicates can often be dissolved:

```
declare variable $name external := 'city';
db:get('addressbook')/descendant::*[name() = $name]

(: rewritten to :)
db:get('addressbook')/descendant::city
```

## FLWOR Rewritings

FLWOR expressions are central to XQuery and the most complex constructs the language offers. Numerous optimizations have been realized to improve the execution time:

- Nested FLWOR expressions are flattened.
- `for` clauses with single items are rewritten to `let` clauses.
- `let` clauses that are iterated multiple times are lifted up.
- Expressions of `let` clauses are inlined.
- Unused variables are removed.
- `where` clauses are rewritten to predicates.
- `if` expressions in the return clause are rewritten to `where` clauses.
- The last `for` clause is merged into the `return` clause and rewritten to a **simple map** expression.

Various of these rewriting are demonstrated in the following example:

```

for $a in 1 to 10
for $b in 2
where $a > 3
let $c := $a + $b
return $c

(: for is rewritten to let :)
for $a in 1 to 10
let $b := 2
where $a > 3
let $c := $a + $b
return $c

(: let is lifted up :)
let $b := 2
for $a in 1 to 10
where $a > 3
let $c := $a + $b
return $c

(: the where expression is rewritten to a predicate :)
let $b := 2
for $a in (1 to 10)[. > 3]
let $c := $a + $b
return $c

(: $b is inlined :)
for $a in (1 to 10)[. > 3]
let $c := $a + 2
return $c

(: $c is inlined :)
for $a in (1 to 10)[. > 3]
return $a + 2

(: the remaining clauses are merged and rewritten to a simple map :)
(1 to 10)[. > 3] ! (. + 2)

```

## Static Typing

If the type of a value is known at compile time, type checks can be removed. In the example below, the static information that `$i` will always reference items of type `xs:integer` can be utilized to simplify the expression:

```

for $i in 1 to 5
return typeswitch($i)
  case xs:numeric return 'number'

```

```

default return 'string'

(: rewritten to :)
for $i in 1 to 5
return 'number'

```

## Pure Logic

If expressions can often be simplified:

```

for $a in ('a', '')
return $a[boolean(if(.) then true() else false())]

(: rewritten to :)
for $a in ('a', '')
return $a[boolean(.)]

(: rewritten to :)
for $a in ('a', '')
return $a[.]

(: rewritten to :)
('a', '')[.]

```

Boolean algebra (and set theory) comes with a set of laws that can all be applied to XQuery expressions.

Expression	Rewritten expression	Rule
$\$a + 0, \$a * 1$	$\$a$	Identity
$\$a * 0$	0	Annihilator
$\$a \text{ and } \$a$	$\$a$	Idempotence
$\$a \text{ and } (\$a \text{ or } \$b)$	$\$a$	Absorption
$(\$a \text{ and } \$b) \text{ or } (\$a \text{ and } \$c)$	$\$a \text{ and } (\$b \text{ or } \$c)$	Distributivity
$\$a \text{ or not}(\$a)$	$\text{true}()$	Tertium non datur
$\text{not}(\$a) \text{ and not}(\$b)$	$\text{not}(\$a \text{ or } \$b)$	De Morgan

It is not sufficient to apply the rules to arbitrary input. Examples:

- If the operands are no boolean values, a conversion is enforced: `$string` and `$string` is rewritten to `boolean($string)`.
- `xs:double('NaN') * 0` yields NaN instead of 0
- `true#0` and `true#0` must raise an error; it cannot be simplified to `true#0`

## Optimization

Some physical optimizations are also presented in the article on [index structures](#).

## Database Statistics

In each database, metadata is stored that can be utilized by the query optimizer to speed up or even skip query evaluation:

Count element nodes

The number of elements that are found for a specific path need not be evaluated sequentially. Instead, the count can directly be retrieved from the database statistics:

```
count(/mondial/country)
```

```
(: rewritten to :)
231
```

### Return distinct values

The distinct values for specific names and paths can also be fetched from the database metadata, provided that the number does not exceed the maximum number of distinct values (see MAXCATS for more information):

```
distinct-values(//religions)

(: rewritten to :)
('Muslim', 'Roman Catholic', 'Albanian Orthodox', ...)
```

## Index Rewritings

A major feature of BaseX is the ability to rewrite all kinds of query patterns for **index access**.

The following queries are all equivalent. They will be rewritten to exactly the same query that will eventually access the text index of a factbook.xml database instance (the file included in our full distributions):

```
declare context item := db:get('factbook');
declare variable $DB := 'factbook';

//name[. = 'Shenzhen'],
//name[data() = 'Shenzhen'],
//name[./text() = 'Shenzhen'],
//name[text()[. = 'Shenzhen']],
//name[string() = 'Shenzhen'],
//name[string() = 'Shen' || 'zhen'],
//name[./data(text()/string()) = 'Shenzhen'],
//name[text() ! data() ! string() = 'Shenzhen'],

//name[. eq 'Shenzhen'],
//name[not(. ne 'Shenzhen')],
//name[not(. != 'Shenzhen')],
./name[. = 'Shenzhen'],
//*[local-name() = 'name'][data() = 'Shenzhen'],

db:get('factbook')//name[. = 'Shenzhen'],
db:get($DB)//name[. = 'Shenzhen'],

for $name in //name[text() = 'Shenzhen']
return $name,

for $name in //name
return $name[text() = 'Shenzhen'],

for $name in //name
return if($name/text() = 'Shenzhen') then $name else (),

for $name in //name
where $name/text() = 'Shenzhen'
return $name,

for $name in //name
where $name/text()[. = 'Shenzhen']
return $name,

for $node in //*
where data($node) = 'Shenzhen'
where name($node) = 'name'
return $node,
```

```
(: rewritten to :)
db:text('factbook', 'Shenzhen')/parent::name
```

Multiple element names and query strings can be supplied in a path:

```
//*[ (ethnicgroups, religions)/text() = ('Jewish', 'Muslim')]

(: rewritten to :)
db:text('factbook', ('Jewish', 'Muslim'))/(parent::*:ethnicgroups |
parent::*:religions)/parent::*
```

If multiple candidates for index access are found, the database statistics (if available) are consulted to choose the cheapest candidate:

```
/mondial/country
[religions = 'Muslim'] (: yields 77 results :)
[ethnicgroups = 'Greeks'] (: yields 2 results :)

(: rewritten to :)
db:text('factbook', 'Greeks')/parent::ethnicgroups/parent::country[religions =
'Muslim']
```

If index access is possible within more complex FLWOR expressions, only the paths will be rewritten:

```
for $country in //country
where $country/ethnicgroups = 'German'
order by $country/name[1]
return element { replace($country/@name, '', '') } {},

(: rewritten to :)
for $country in db:text('factbook', 'German')/parent::ethnicgroups/parent::country
order by $country/name[1]
return element { replace($country/@name, '', '') } {}
```

The **XMark XML Benchmark** comes with sample auction data and a bunch of queries, some of which are suitable for index rewritings:

#### XMark Query 1

```
let $auction := doc('xmark')
return for $b in $auction/site/people/person[@id = 'person0']
return $b/name/text()

(: rewritten to :)
db:attribute('xmark', 'person0')/self::attribute(id)/parent::person/name/text()
```

#### XMark Query 8

```
let $auction := doc('xmark')
return
  for $p in $auction/site/people/person
  let $a :=
    for $t in $auction/site/closed_auctions/closed_auction
    where $t/buyer/@person = $p/@id
    return $t
  return <item person="{ $p/name/text() }">{ count($a) }</item>,

(: rewritten to :)
db:get('xmark')/site/people/person !
  <item person='{ name/text() }'>{ count(
    db:attribute('xmark', @id)/self::attribute(person)/parent::buyer/
parent::closed_auction
  )
}</item>
```



If the accessed database is not known at compile time, or if you want to give a predicate preference to another one, you can **enforce index rewritings**.

## Evaluation

### Comparisons

In many cases, the amount of data to be processed is only known after the query has been compiled. Moreover, the data that is looped through expressions may change. In those cases, the best optimizations needs to be chosen at runtime.

If sequences of items are compared against each other, a dynamic hash index will be generated, and the total number of comparisons can be significantly reduced. In the following example, `count($input1) * count($input2)` comparisons would need to be made without the intermediate index structure:

```
let $input1 := file:read-text-lines('huge1.txt')
let $input2 := file:read-text-lines('huge2.txt')
return $input1[not(. = $input2)]
```

## Changelog

Version 9.6

- Added: UNROLLLIMIT

Introduced with Version 9.4.

---

# Chapter 26. Module Library

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#).

In addition to the standard [XQuery Functions](#), BaseX comes with hundreds of additional functions, which are packaged in various modules.

The namespaces of the built-in modules are statically bound to their prefix. This means that they need not (but may) be declared in the query prolog.

## Conventions

Module	Description	Prefix	Namespace URI
<a href="#">Admin</a>	Functions restricted to admin users.	admin	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/admin">http://basex.org/modules/admin</a>
<a href="#">Archive</a>	Creating and processing ZIP archives.	archive	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/archive">http://basex.org/modules/archive</a>
<a href="#">Array</a>	Functions for handling arrays.	array	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/array">http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/array</a>
<a href="#">Binary</a>	Processing binary data.	bin	<a href="http://expath.org/ns/binary">http://expath.org/ns/binary</a>
<a href="#">Client</a>	Executing commands and queries on remote BaseX servers.	client	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/client">http://basex.org/modules/client</a>
<a href="#">Conversion</a>	Converting data (binary, numeric) to other formats.	convert	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/convert">http://basex.org/modules/convert</a>
<a href="#">Cryptography</a>	Cryptographic functions, based on the <a href="#">EXPath Cryptographic</a> module.	crypto	<a href="http://expath.org/ns/crypto">http://expath.org/ns/crypto</a>
<a href="#">CSV</a>	Functions for processing CSV input.	csv	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/csv">http://basex.org/modules/csv</a>
<a href="#">Database</a>	Functions for accessing and updating databases.	db	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/db">http://basex.org/modules/db</a>
<a href="#">Fetch</a>	Functions for fetching resources identified by URIs.	fetch	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/fetch">http://basex.org/modules/fetch</a>
<a href="#">File</a>	File handling, based on the latest draft of the <a href="#">EXPath File</a> module.	file	<a href="http://expath.org/ns/file">http://expath.org/ns/file</a>
<a href="#">Full-Text</a>	Functions for performing full-text operations.	ft	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/ft">http://basex.org/modules/ft</a>
<a href="#">Hashing</a>	Cryptographic hash functions.	hash	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/hash">http://basex.org/modules/hash</a>
<a href="#">Higher-Order</a>	Additional higher-order functions that are not in the standard libraries.	hof	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/hof">http://basex.org/modules/hof</a>

## Module Library

<b>HTML</b>	Functions for converting HTML input to XML documents.	html	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/html">http://basex.org/modules/html</a>
<b>HTTP Client</b>	Sending HTTP requests, based on the <b>EXPath HTTP</b> module.	http	<a href="http://expath.org/ns/http-client">http://expath.org/ns/http-client</a>
<b>Index</b>	Functions for requesting details on database indexes.	index	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/index">http://basex.org/modules/index</a>
<b>Inspection</b>	Functions for extracting internal module information.	inspect	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/inspect">http://basex.org/modules/inspect</a>
<b>Job</b>	Organization of running commands and queries. <i>Updated with Version 10</i>	job	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/job">http://basex.org/modules/job</a>
<b>JSON</b>	Parsing and serializing <b>JSON</b> documents.	json	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/json">http://basex.org/modules/json</a>
<b>Lazy</b>	Functions for handling lazy items.	lazy	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/lazy">http://basex.org/modules/lazy</a>
<b>Map</b>	Functions for handling maps (key/value pairs).	map	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/map">http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/map</a>
<b>Math</b>	Mathematical operations, extending the <b>W3C Working Draft</b> .	math	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math">http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math</a>
<b>Process</b>	Executing system commands from XQuery.	proc	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/proc">http://basex.org/modules/proc</a>
<b>Profiling</b>	Functions for profiling code snippets.	prof	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/prof">http://basex.org/modules/prof</a>
<b>Random</b>	Functions for creating random numbers.	random	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/random">http://basex.org/modules/random</a>
<b>Repository</b>	Installing, deleting and listing packages.	repo	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/repo">http://basex.org/modules/repo</a>
<b>SQL</b>	JDBC bridge to access relational databases.	sql	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/sql">http://basex.org/modules/sql</a>
<b>Store</b>	Organize values in a main-memory key-value store. <i>Introduced with Version 10</i>	store	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/store">http://basex.org/modules/store</a>
<b>String</b>	Functions for performing string computations. <i>Updated with Version 10</i>	string	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/string">http://basex.org/modules/string</a>
<b>Unit</b>	Unit testing framework.	unit	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/unit">http://basex.org/modules/unit</a>
<b>Update</b>	Functions for performing updates.	update	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/update">http://basex.org/modules/update</a>
<b>User</b>	Creating and administering database users.	user	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/user">http://basex.org/modules/user</a>

## Module Library

<b>Utility</b>	Various utility and helper functions.	util	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/util">http://basex.org/modules/util</a>
<b>Validation</b>	Validating documents: DTDs, XML Schema, RelaxNG.	validate	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/validate">http://basex.org/modules/validate</a>
<b>Web</b>	Convenience functions for building web applications.	web	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/web">http://basex.org/modules/web</a>
<b>XQuery</b>	Evaluating new XQuery expressions at runtime.	xquery	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/xquery">http://basex.org/modules/xquery</a>
<b>XSLT</b>	Stylesheet transformations, based on Java's and Saxon's XSLT processor.	xslt	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/xslt">http://basex.org/modules/xslt</a>

The following modules are available if the `basex-api` library is included in the classpath. This is the case if you start BaseX with one of the startup scripts or links provided by our complete distributions (zip, exe, war).

<b>Request</b>	Server-side functions for handling HTTP Request data.	request	<a href="http://exquery.org/ns/request">http://exquery.org/ns/request</a>
<b>RESTXQ</b>	Helper functions for the RESTXQ API.	rest	<a href="http://exquery.org/ns/restxq">http://exquery.org/ns/restxq</a>
<b>Session</b>	Functions for handling server-side HTTP Sessions.	session	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/session">http://basex.org/modules/session</a>
<b>Sessions</b>	Functions for managing all server-side HTTP Sessions.	sessions	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/sessions">http://basex.org/modules/sessions</a>
<b>WebSocket</b>	Functions for handling WebSocket connections.	ws	<a href="http://basex.org/modules/ws">http://basex.org/modules/ws</a>

## Changelog

Version 10

- Removed: ZIP Module; Geo Module; Output Module (incorporated in String Module)

---

# Chapter 27. Java Bindings

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It demonstrates different ways to invoke Java code from XQuery, and it presents extensions to access the current query context from Java.

The Java Binding feature is an extensibility mechanism which enables developers to directly access Java variables and execute code from XQuery. Addressed Java code must either be contained in the Java classpath, or it must be located in the [Repository](#).

Please bear in mind that the execution of Java code may cause side effects that conflict with the functional nature of XQuery, or may introduce new security risks to your project.

Some more notes:

- With the middle dot notation, three adjacent dots can be used to specify array types.
- The path to the standard package `java.lang` can be omitted.
- Java objects are wrapped into function items.
- Results of constructor calls are always returned as function item.
- With `WRAPJAVA`, it can be controlled how Java values are converted to XQuery.

## Identification

### Classes

A Java class is identified by a namespace URI. The original URI is rewritten as follows:

1. The [URI Rewriting](#) steps are applied to the URI.
2. Slashes in the resulting URI are replaced with dots.
3. The last path segment of the URI is capitalized and rewritten to [CamelCase](#).

The normalization steps are skipped if the URI is prefixed with `java:`. The path to the standard package `java.lang` can be omitted:

- `http://basex.org/modules/meta-data`  $\rightarrow$  `org.basex.modules.MetaData`
- `java:java.lang.String`  $\rightarrow$  `java.lang.String`
- `StringBuilder`  $\rightarrow$  `java.lang.StringBuilder`

### Functions and Variables

Java constructors, functions and variables can be referenced and evaluated by the existing XQuery function syntax:

- The namespace of the function name identifies the Java class.
- The local part of the name, which is rewritten to camel case, identifies a variable or function of that class.
- The middle dot character `·` (`&#xB7;`, a valid character in XQuery names, but not in Java) can be used to append exact Java parameter types to the function name. Class types must be referenced by their full path. Three adjacent dots can be used to address an array argument.

Addressed code	XQuery	Java
----------------	--------	------

---

Variable	Q{Integer}MIN_VALUE()	Integer.MIN_VALUE
Function	Q{Object}hashCode(\$object)	object.hashCode()
Function with argument	Q{String}split·String·int ';', xs:int(3))	string.split(";", 3)
Constructor with array argument	Q{String}new·byte... (xs:hexBinary('414243'))	new String(new byte[] { 41, 42, 43 })

As XQuery and Java have different type systems, XQuery arguments must be converted to equivalent Java values, and the result of a Java function is converted back to an XQuery value (see [Data Types](#)).

If the Java function you want to address is not detected, you may need to cast your values to the target type. For example, if a Java function expects a primitive `int` value, you will need to convert your XQuery integers to `xs:int`.

## Namespace Declarations

In the following example, the Java `Math` class is referenced. When executed, the query returns the cosine of an angle by calling the static method `cos()`, and the value of  $\pi$  by addressing the static variable via `PI()`:

```
declare namespace math = "java:java.lang.Math";
math:cos(xs:double(0)), math:PI()
```

With the [Expanded QName](#) notation of XQuery 3.0, the namespace can directly be embedded in the function call:

```
Q{java:java.lang.Math}cos(xs:double(0))
```

The constructor of a class can be invoked by calling the virtual function `new()`. Instance methods can then called by passing on the resulting Java object as first argument. In the following example, 256 bytes are written to the file `output.txt`. First, a new `FileWriter` instance is created, and its `write()` function is called in the next step:

```
declare namespace fw = 'java:java.io.FileWriter';
let $file := fw:new('output.txt')
return (
  for $i in 0 to 255
  return fw:write($file, xs:int($i)),
  fw:close($file)
)
```

If the result of a Java call contains invalid XML characters, it will be rejected. The validity check can be disabled by setting `CHECKSTRINGS` to `false`. In the example below, a file with a single `00` byte is written, and this file will then be accessed by via Java functions:

```
declare namespace br = 'java:java.io.BufferedReader';
declare namespace fr = 'java:java.io.FileReader';

declare option db:checkstrings 'false';

(: write file :)
file:write-binary('00.bin', xs:hexBinary('00')),
(: read file :)
let $br := br:new(fr:new('00.bin'))
return (
  br:readLine($br),
  br:close($br)
)
```

The option can also be specified via a pragma:

```
(# db:checkstrings #) {
  br:new(fr:new('00.bin')) ! (br:readLine(.), br:close(.))
}
```

## Module Imports

A Java class can be instantiated by *importing* them as a module: A new instance of the addressed class will be constructed, which can then be referenced in the query body.

In the (side-effecting) example below, a `HashSet` instance is created, values are added, and the size of the set is returned. As `set:add()` returns boolean values, `prof:void` is used to swallow the values:

```
import module namespace set = "java:java.util.HashSet";
prof:void(
  for $s in ("one", "two", "one")
    return set:add($s)
),
set:size()
```

The execution of imported classes is more efficient than the execution of instances that have been created via `new()`. In turn, no arguments can be supplied in the import statement, and the construction will only be successful if the class can be instantiated without arguments.

## Integration

Java classes can be coupled more closely to BaseX. If a class inherits the abstract `QueryModule` class, the two variables `queryContext` and `staticContext` get available, which provide access to the global and static context of a query.

The `QueryResource` interface can be implemented to enforce finalizing operations, such as the closing of opened connections or resources in a module. Its `close()` method will be called after the XQuery expression has been fully evaluated.

## Annotations

The internal properties of functions can be assigned via annotations:

- Java functions can only be executed by users with **Admin permissions**. You can annotate a function with `@Requires(<Permission>)` to also make it accessible to users with fewer privileges.
- Java code is treated as *non-deterministic*, as its behavior cannot be predicted by the XQuery processor. You may annotate a function as `@Deterministic` if you know that it will have no side effects and will always yield the same result.
- Java code is treated as *context-independent*. If a function accesses the query context, it should be annotated as `@ContextDependent`
- Java code is treated as *focus-independent*. If a function accesses the current context item, position or size, it should be annotated as `@FocusDependent`

In the following code, information from the static query context is returned by the first function, and a query exception is raised by the second function:

```
import module namespace context = 'org.basex.examples.query.ContextModule';

element user {
  context:user()
},
try {
  element to-int { context:to-int('abc') }
} catch basex:error {
  element error { $err:description }
}
```

The imported Java class is shown below:

```
package org.basex.examples.query;
```

```

import org.basex.query.*;
import org.basex.query.value.item.*;
import org.basex.util.*;

/**
 * This example inherits the {@link QueryModule} class and
 * implements the QueryResource interface.
 */
public class ContextModule extends QueryModule implements QueryResource {
    /**
     * Returns the name of the logged-in user.
     * @return user string
     */
    @Requires(Permission.NONE)
    @Deterministic
    @ContextDependent
    public String user() {
        return queryContext.context.user.name;
    }

    /**
     * Converts the specified string to an integer.
     * @param value string to be converted
     * @return resulting integer
     * @throws QueryException query exception
     */
    @Requires(Permission.NONE)
    @Deterministic
    public int toInt(final String value) throws QueryException {
        try {
            return Integer.parseInt(value);
        } catch(NumberFormatException ex) {
            throw new QueryException("Integer conversion failed: " + value);
        }
    }

    @Override
    public void close() {
        // defined in QueryResource interface, will be called after query evaluation
    }
}

```

The result will look as follows:

```

<user>admin</admin>
<error>Integer conversion failed: abc</error>

```

Please visit the XQuery 3.0 specification if you want to get more insight into [function properties](#).

## Updates

The `@Updating` annotation can be applied to mark Java functions that perform write or update operations:

```

@Updating
public void backup() {
    // ...
}

```

An XQuery expression will be handled as an [updating expression](#) if it calls an updating Java function. In contrast to XQuery update operations, the Java code will immediately be executed, but the result will be cached as if `update:output` was called.

The annotation is particularly helpful if combined with a lock annotation.



## Locking

By default, a Java function will be executed in parallel with other code. If a Java function performs sensitive operations, it is advisable to explicitly lock the code.

### Java Locks

Java provides a handful of mechanism to control the execution of code. The concurrent execution of functions can be avoided with the `synchronized` keyword. For more complex scenarios, the `Lock`, `Semaphore` and `Atomic` classes can be brought into play.

### XQuery Locks

If you want to synchronize the execution of your code with BaseX locks, you can take advantage of the `@Lock` annotation:

```
@Lock("HEAVYIO")
public void read() {
    // ...
}

@Updating
@Lock("HEAVYIO")
public void write() {
    // ...
}
```

If an XQuery expression invokes `write()`, any other query that calls `write()` or `read()` needs to wait for the query to be finished. The `read()` function can be run in parallel; whereas queries will be queued if `write()` is called.

More details on concurrent querying can be found in the article on [Transaction Management](#).

## Data Types

### Conversion to Java

Before Java code is executed, the arguments are converted to Java values, depending on the addressed function or constructor parameters. The accepted Java types and the original XQuery types are depicted in the second and first column of the table below.

If a numeric value is supplied for which no exact matching is defined, it is cast to the appropriate type unless it exceeds its limits. The following two function calls are equivalent:

```
(: exact match :)
Q{String}codePointAt('ABC', xs:int(1)),
(: xs:byte and xs:integer casts :)
Q{String}codePointAt('ABC', xs:byte(1)),
Q{String}codePointAt('ABC', 1)
```

### Conversion to XQuery

By default, Java values with the most common types (as shown in the second and third column of the table) are converted to XQuery values. All other values are returned as *Java items*, which are function items with a wrapped Java value. The results of constructor calls are always returned as Java items.

The conversion of the wrapped Java value to XQuery is enforced by invoking the function item: Values in `Iterator` and `Iterable` instances (Lists, Sets and Collections) are converted to items, and maps are converted to XQuery maps:

```
declare namespace Scanner = 'java:java.util.Scanner';
```

```
let $scanner := Scanner:new("A B C") => Scanner:useDelimiter("")
return $scanner()
```

If no conversion is defined, a string is returned, resulting from the `toString()` method of the object. This method is also called if the string representation of a Java item is requested:

```
(: returns the string representations of a HashMap and an ArrayList instance :)
'Map: ' || Q{java.util.HashMap}new(),
string(Q{java:java.util.ArrayList}new())
```

The conversion can be further controlled with the `WRAPJAVA` option. The following values exist:

Value	Description
some	The default: Java values of the most common types are converted, others are wrapped into Java items.
none	All Java values are converted. If no conversion is defined, a string is returned, resulting from the <code>toString()</code> method.
all	Java values are wrapped into Java items (excluding those inheriting the internal type <code>org.basex.query.value.Value</code> ).
instance	If the method of a class instance was called, the Java value is ignored and the instance is wrapped into a Java item. Otherwise, the Java value is returned.
void	Java values are ignored, and an empty sequence is returned instead.

In the following example, the result of the first function – a char array – is wrapped and passed on to a `CharBuffer` function. Without the option, the single-value array would be converted to an `xs:unsignedShort` item and the second function call would fail:

```
(: Without the pragma, the result of toChars would be converted to an
xs:unsignedShort item, and the second function call would fail :)

(# db:wrapjava all #) {
  Q{Character}toChars(xs:int(33))
  => Q{java.nio.CharBuffer}wrap()
}
```

The next example demonstrates a use case for the `instance` option:

```
(: Thanks to the pragma, the function calls can be chained :)

declare namespace set = 'java:java.util.HashSet';
let $set := (# db:wrapjava instance #) {
  set:new()
  => set:add('1')
  => set:add('2')
}
return $set()
```

The `void` option is helpful if side-effecting methods return values that do not contribute to the final result:

```
(: Without the pragma, 100 booleans would be returned by the FLWOR expression :)

declare namespace set = 'java:java.util.HashSet';
let $set := set:new()
return (
  (# db:wrapjava void #) {
    for $i in 1 to 100
    return set:add($set, $i)
  }
)
```

```

    },
    $set()
)

```

The irrelevant results could also be swallowed with `prof:void`.

XQuery input	Expected or returned Java type	XQuery output
<code>item()*</code> (no conversion)	<code>org.basex.query.value.Value</code>	<code>item()*</code> (no conversion)
<code>empty-sequence()</code>	<code>null</code>	<code>empty-sequence()</code>
<code>xs:string</code> , <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code>	<code>String</code>	<code>xs:string</code>
<code>xs:unsignedShort</code>	<code>char</code> , <code>Character</code>	<code>xs:unsignedShort</code>
<code>xs:boolean</code>	<code>boolean</code> , <code>Boolean</code>	<code>xs:boolean</code>
<code>xs:byte</code>	<code>byte</code> , <code>Byte</code>	<code>xs:byte</code>
<code>xs:short</code>	<code>short</code> , <code>Short</code>	<code>xs:short</code>
<code>xs:int</code>	<code>int</code> , <code>Integer</code>	<code>xs:int</code>
<code>xs:integer</code> , <code>xs:long</code>	<code>long</code> , <code>Long</code>	<code>xs:integer</code>
<code>xs:unsignedLong</code>	<code>java.math.BigInteger</code>	<code>xs:unsignedLong</code> (lossy)
<code>xs:decimal</code>	<code>java.math.BigDecimal</code>	<code>xs:decimal</code>
<code>xs:float</code>	<code>float</code> , <code>Float</code>	<code>xs:float</code>
<code>xs:double</code>	<code>double</code> , <code>Double</code>	<code>xs:double</code>
<code>xs:QName</code>	<code>javax.xml.namespace.QName</code>	<code>xs:QName</code>
<code>xs:anyURI</code>	<code>java.net.URI</code> , <code>java.net.URL</code>	<code>xs:anyURI</code>
<code>xs:date</code>	<code>javax.xml.datatype.XMLGregorianCalendar</code>	<code>xs:date</code>
<code>xs:duration</code>	<code>javax.xml.datatype.Duration</code>	<code>xs:duration</code>
<code>node()</code>	<code>org.w3c.dom.Node</code>	<code>node()</code>
<code>array(xs:boolean)</code>	<code>boolean[]</code>	<code>xs:boolean*</code>
<code>array(xs:string)</code>	<code>String[]</code>	<code>xs:string*</code>
<code>array(xs:unsignedShort)</code>	<code>char[]</code>	<code>xs:unsignedShort*</code>
<code>array(xs:short)</code>	<code>short[]</code>	<code>xs:short*</code>
<code>array(xs:int)</code>	<code>int[]</code>	<code>xs:int*</code>
<code>array(xs:integer)</code> , <code>array(xs:long)</code>	<code>long[]</code>	<code>xs:integer*</code>
<code>array(xs:float)</code>	<code>float[]</code>	<code>xs:float*</code>
<code>array(xs:double)</code>	<code>double[]</code>	<code>xs:double*</code>
<code>Object[]</code> (others)	<code>item()*</code>	<code>array(*)</code> (others)
<code>map(*)</code>	<code>java.util.HashMap</code>	Wrapped Java object

## URI Rewriting

Before a Java class or module is accessed, its namespace URI will be normalized:

1. If the URI is a URL:
  - a. colons will be replaced with slashes,
  - b. in the URI authority, the order of all substrings separated by dots is reversed, and

- c. dots in the authority and the path are replaced by slashes. If no path exists, a single slash is appended.
2. Otherwise, if the URI is a URN, colons will be replaced with slashes.
3. Characters other than letters, dots and slashes will be replaced with dashes.
4. If the resulting string ends with a slash, the `index` string is appended.

If the resulting path has no file suffix, it may point to either an XQuery module or a Java archive:

- `http://basex.org/modules/hello/World` → `org/basex/modules/hello/World`
- `http://www.example.com` → `com/example/www/index`
- `a/little/example` → `a/little/example`
- `a:b:c` → `a/b/c`

## Changelog

### Version 9.6

- Updated: Java Bindings revised (new mappings, Java function items, WRAPJAVA option).

### Version 9.4

- Added: Annotation for **updating functions**.
- Updated: Single annotation for read and write locks.

### Version 8.4

- Updated: Rewriting rules

### Version 8.2

- Added: **URI Rewriting**: support for URNs

### Version 8.0

- Added: `QueryResource` interface, called after a query has been fully evaluated.

### Version 7.8

- Added: Java locking annotations
- Updated: `context` variable has been split into `queryContext` and `staticContext`.

### Version 7.2.1

- Added: import of Java modules, context awareness
- Added: **Packaging**, **URI Rewriting**

---

# Chapter 28. Repository

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It describes how external XQuery modules and Java code can be installed in the XQuery module repository, and how new packages are built and deployed.

## Introduction

One of the things that makes languages successful is the availability of external libraries. As XQuery comes with only 150 pre-defined functions, which cannot meet all requirements, additional library modules exist – such as [FunctX](#) – which extend the language with new features.

BaseX offers the following mechanisms to make external modules accessible to the XQuery processor:

1. The internal [Packaging](#) mechanism will install single XQuery and JAR modules in the repository.
2. The [EXPath Packaging](#) system provides a generic mechanism for adding XQuery modules to query processors. A package is defined as a `.xar` archive, which encapsulates one or more extension libraries.

## Accessing Modules

Library modules can be imported with the `import module` statement, followed by a freely choosable prefix and the namespace of the target module. The specified location may be absolute or relative; in the latter case, it is resolved against the location (i.e., *static base URI*) of the calling module. Import module statements must be placed at the beginning of a module:

**Main Module**`hello-universe.xq:`

```
import module namespace m = 'http://basex.org/modules/hello' at 'hello-world.xqm';
m:hello("Universe")
```

**Library Module**`hello-world.xqm` (in the same directory):

```
module namespace m = 'http://basex.org/modules/Hello';
declare function m:hello($world) {
  'Hello ' || $world
};
```

If no location is supplied, modules will be looked up in the repository. Repository modules are stored in the `repo` directory, which resides in your [home directory](#). XQuery modules can be manually copied to the repository directory or installed and deleted via [commands](#).

The following example calls a function from the [FunctX](#) module in the repository:

```
import module namespace functx = 'http://www.functx.com';
functx:capitalize-first('test')
```

## Commands

There are various ways to organize your packages:

- Execute BaseX REPO commands (listed below)
- Call XQuery functions of the [Repository Module](#)
- Use the GUI (*Options* → *Packages*)

You can even manually add and remove packages in the repository directory; all changes will automatically be detected by BaseX.

## Installation

A module or package can be installed with `REPO INSTALL`. The path to the file has to be given as a parameter:

```
REPO INSTALL https://files.basex.org/modules/expath/functx-1.0.xar
REPO INSTALL hello-world.xqm
```

The installation will only succeed if the specified file conforms to the constraints described below. If you know that your input is valid, you may as well copy the files directly to the repository directory, or edit its contents in the repository without deleting and reinstalling them.

## Listing

All currently installed packages can be listed with `REPO LIST`. The names of all packages are listed, along with their version, their package type, and the repository path:

Name	Version	Type	Path
http://www.functx.com	1.0	EXPath	http-www.functx.com-1.0

## Removal

A package can be deleted with `REPO DELETE` and an additional argument, containing its name or the name suffixed with a hyphen and the package version:

```
REPO DELETE http://www.functx.com
REPO DELETE http://www.functx.com-1.0
```

## Packaging

### XQuery

If an XQuery file is specified as input for the install command, it will be parsed as XQuery library module. If the file can successfully be parsed, the module URI will be **rewritten** to a file path and attached with the `.xqm` file suffix, and the original file will possibly be renamed and copied to that path into the repository.

#### Example:

Installation (the original file will be copied to the `org/basex/modules/Hello` subdirectory of the repository):

```
REPO INSTALL https://files.basex.org/modules/org/basex/modules/Hello/HelloWorld.xqm
```

Importing the repository module:

```
import module namespace m = 'http://basex.org/modules/Hello';
m:hello("Universe")
```

### Java

For general notes on importing Java classes, please read the Java Bindings article on [Module Imports](#).

Java archives (JARs) may contain one or more class files. One of them will be chosen as main class, which must be specified in a `Main-Class` entry in the manifest file (`META-INF/MANIFEST.MF`). This fully qualified Java class name will be rewritten to a file path by replacing the dots with slashes and attaching the `.jar` file suffix, and the original file will be renamed and copied to that path into the repository.

If the class will be imported in the prolog of the XQuery module, an instance of it will be created, and its public functions can then be addressed from XQuery. A class may extend the `QueryModule` class to get access to the current query context and to be enriched by some helpful annotations (see [Annotations](#)).

**Example:**

Structure of the HelloWorld.jar archive:

```
META-INF/
  MANIFEST.MF
org/basex/modules/
  Hello.class
```

Contents of the file MANIFEST.mf (the whitespaces are obligatory):

```
Manifest-Version: 1.0
Main-Class: org.basex.modules.Hello
```

Contents of the file Hello.java (comments removed):

```
package org.basex.modules;
public class Hello {
  public String hello(final String world) {
    return "Hello " + world;
  }
}
```

Installation (the file will be copied to org/basex/modules/Hello.jar):

```
REPO INSTALL HelloWorld.jar
```

XQuery file HelloUniverse.xq (same as above):

```
import module namespace m = 'http://basex.org/modules/Hello';
m:hello("Universe")
```

After having installed the module, all of the following URIs can be used in XQuery to import this module or call its functions (see [URI Rewriting](#) for more information):

```
http://basex.org/modules/Hello
org/basex/modules/Hello
org.basex.modules.Hello
```

**Additional Libraries**

A Java class may depend on additional libraries. The dependencies can be resolved by creating a fat JAR file, i.e., extracting all files of the library archives and producing a single, flat JAR package.

Another solution is to copy the libraries into a lib directory of the JAR package. When the package is installed, the additional library archives will be extracted and copied to a hidden subdirectory in the repository. If the package is deleted, the hidden subdirectory will be removed as well.

Exemplary contents of  
Image.jar

```
lib/
  Images.jar
META-INF/
  MANIFEST.MF
org/basex/modules/
  Image.class
```

Directory structure of the  
repository directory after installing  
the package

```
org/basex/modules/
  Image.class
```

```
.Images/
Images.jar
```

## Combined

It makes sense to combine the advantages of XQuery and Java packages:

- Instead of directly calling Java code, a wrapper module can be provided. This module contains functions that invoke the Java functions.
- These functions can be strictly typed. This reduces the danger of erroneous or unexpected conversions between XQuery and Java code.
- In addition, the entry functions can have properly maintained XQuery comments.

XQuery and Java can be combined as follows:

- First, a JAR package is created (as described above).
- A new XQuery wrapper module is created, which is named identically to the Java main class.
- The URL of the `import` module statement in the wrapper module must start with the `java:` prefix.
- The finalized XQuery module must be copied into the JAR file, and placed in the same directory as the Java main class.

If the resulting JAR file is installed, the embedded XQuery module will be extracted, and will be called first if the module will be imported.

Main Module `hello-universe.xq`

```
import module namespace m = 'http://basex.org/modules/Hello';
m:hello("Universe")
```

Wrapper Module `Hello.xqm`

```
module namespace hello = 'http://basex.org/modules/Hello';

(: Import JAR file :)
import module namespace java = 'java:org.basex.modules.Hello';

(:~
 : Say hello to someone.
 : @param $world the one to be greeted
 : @return welcome string
 :)
declare function hello:hello(
  $world as xs:string
) as xs:string {
  java:hello($world)
};
```

Java class `Hello.java`

```
package org.basex.modules;

public class Hello {
  public String hello(final String world) {
    return "Hello " + world;
  }
}
```

If the JAR file is installed, Combined will be displayed as type:



```
REPO INSTALL https://files.basex.org/modules/org/basex/modules/Hello.jar
REPO LIST
```

Name	Version	Type	Path
org.basex.modules.Hello	-	Combined	org/basex/modules/Hello.xqm

## EXPath Packaging

The **EXPath specification** defines the structure of a .xar archive. The package contains at its root a package descriptor named `expath-pkg.xml`. This descriptor presents some metadata about the package as well as the libraries which it contains and their dependencies on other libraries or processors.

## XQuery

Apart from the package descriptor, a .xar archive contains a directory which includes the actual XQuery modules. For example, the **FunctX XAR archive** is packaged as follows:

```
expath-pkg.xml
functx/
  functx.xql
  functx.xsl
```

## Java

If you want to package an EXPath archive with Java code, some additional requirements have to be fulfilled:

- Apart from the package descriptor `expath-pkg.xml`, the package has to contain a descriptor file at its root, defining the included jars and the binary names of their public classes. It must be named `basex.xml` and must conform to the following structure:

```
<package xmlns="http://expath.org/ns/pkg">
  <jar>...</jar>
  ....
  <class>...</class>
  <class>...</class>
  ....
</package>
```

- The jar file itself along with an XQuery file defining wrapper functions around the java methods has to reside in the module directory. The following example illustrates how java methods are wrapped with XQuery functions:

**Example:** Suppose we have a simple class `Printer` having just one public method `print()`:

```
package test;

public final class Printer {
  public String print(final String s) {
    return new Writer(s).write();
  }
}
```

We want to extend BaseX with this class and use its method. In order to make this possible we have to define an XQuery function which wraps the `print` method of our class. This can be done in the following way:

```
import module namespace j="http://basex.org/lib/testJar";

declare namespace p="java:test.Printer";

declare function j:print($str as xs:string) as xs:string {
  let $printer := p:new()
  return p:print($printer, $str)
};
```

As it can be seen, the class `Printer` is declared with its binary name as a namespace prefixed with "java" and the XQuery function is implemented using the [Java Bindings](#) offered by BaseX.

On our [file server](#), you can find some example libraries packaged as XML archives (xar files). You can use them to try our packaging API or just as a reference for creating your own packages.

## Performance

Importing XQuery modules that are located in the repository is just as fast as importing any other modules. Modules that are imported several times in a project will only be compiled once.

Imported Java archives will be dynamically added to the classpath and unregistered after query execution. This requires some constant overhead and may lead to unexpected effects in scenarios with highly concurrent read operations. If you want to get optimal performance, it is recommendable to move your JAR files into the `lib/custom` directory of BaseX. This way, the archive will be added to the classpath if BaseX is started. If you have installed a [Combined Package](#), you can simply keep your XQuery module in the repository, and the Java classes will be automatically detected.

## Changelog

Version 9.0

- Added: [Combined](#) XQuery and Java packages
- Added: [Additional Libraries](#)

Version 7.2.1

- Updated: [Installation](#): existing packages will be replaced without raising an error
- Updated: [Removal](#): remove specific version of a package

Version 7.1

- Added: [Repository Module](#)

Version 7.0

- Added: [EXPath Packaging](#)

---

# Chapter 29. Full-Text

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It summarizes the features of the [W3C XQuery Full Text Recommendation](#), and custom features of the implementation in BaseX.

Please read the separate [Full-Text Index](#) section in our documentation if you want to learn how to evaluate full-text requests on large databases within milliseconds.

## Introduction

The XQuery and XPath Full Text Recommendation (XQFT) is a feature-rich extension of the XQuery language. It can be used to both query XML documents and single strings for words and phrases. BaseX was the first query processor that supported all features of the specification.

This section gives you a quick insight into the most important features of the language.

This is a simple example for a basic full-text expression:

```
"This is YOUR World" contains text "your world"
```

It yields `true`, because the search string is *tokenized* before it is compared with the tokenized input string. In the tokenization process, several normalizations take place. Many of those steps can hardly be simulated with plain XQuery: as an example, upper/lower case and diacritics (umlauts, accents, etc.) are removed and an optional, language-dependent stemming algorithm is applied. Beside that, special characters such as whitespaces and punctuation marks will be ignored. Thus, this query also yields `true`:

```
"Well... Done!" contains text "well, done"
```

The `occurs` keyword comes into play when more than one occurrence of a token is to be found:

```
"one and two and three" contains text "and" occurs at least 2 times
```

Various range modifiers are available: `exactly`, `at least`, `at most`, and `from ... to ....`

## Combining Results

In the given example, curly braces are used to combine multiple keywords:

```
for $country in doc('factbook')//country
where $country//religions[text() contains text { 'Sunni', 'Shia' } any]
return $country/name
```

The query will output the names of all countries with a religion element containing `sunni` or `shia`. The `any` keyword is optional; it can be replaced with:

- `all` : all strings need to be found
- `any word` : any of the single words within the specified strings need to be found
- `all words` : all single words within the specified strings need to be found
- `phrase` : all strings need to be found as a single phrase

The keywords `ftand`, `ftor` and `ftnot` can also be used to combine multiple query terms. The following query yields the same result as the last one does:

```
doc('factbook')//country[descendant::religions contains text 'sunni' ftor 'shia']/name
```

The keywords `not in` are special: they are used to find tokens which are not part of a longer token sequence:

```
for $text in ("New York", "new conditions")
return $text contains text "New" not in "New York"
```

Due to the complex data model of the XQuery Full Text spec, the usage of `ftand` may lead to a high memory consumption. If you should encounter problems, simply use the `all` keyword:

```
doc('factbook')//country[descendant::religions contains text { 'Christian',
'Jewish' } all]/name
```

## Positional Filters

A popular retrieval operation is to filter texts by the distance of the searched words. In this query...

```
<xml>
  <text>There is some reason why ...</text>
  <text>For some good yet unknown reason, ...</text>
  <text>The reason why some people ...</text>
</xml>//text[. contains text { "some", "reason" } all ordered distance at most 3
words]
```

...the two first texts will be returned as result, because there are at most three words between `some` and `reason`. Additionally, the `ordered` keyword ensures that the words are found in the specified order, which is why the third text is excluded. Note that `all` is required here to guarantee that only those hits will be accepted that contain all searched words.

The `window` keyword is related: it accepts those texts in which all keyword occur within the specified number of tokens. Can you guess what is returned by the following query?

```
("A C D", "A B C D E")[. contains text { "A", "E" } all window 3 words]
```

Sometimes it is interesting to only select texts in which all searched terms occur in the same sentence or paragraph (you can even filter for different sentences/paragraphs). This is obviously not the case in the following example:

```
'Mary told me, "I will survive!".' contains text { 'will', 'told' } all words same
sentence
```

By the way: In some examples above, the `words` unit was used, but `sentences` and `paragraphs` would have been valid alternatives.

Last but not least, three specifiers exist to filter results depending on the position of a hit:

- `at start` expects tokens to occur at the beginning of a text
- `at end` expects tokens to occur at the text end
- `entire content` only accepts texts which have no other words at the beginning or end

## Match Options

As indicated in the introduction, the input and query texts are tokenized before they are compared with each other. During this process, texts are split into tokens, which are then normalized, based on the following matching options:

- If `case` is insensitive, no distinction is made between characters in upper and lower case. By default, the option is insensitive; it can also be set to sensitive:

```
"Respect Upper Case" contains text "Upper" using case sensitive
```

- If `diacritics` is insensitive, characters with and without diacritics (umlauts, characters with accents) are declared as identical. By default, the option is insensitive; it can also be set to sensitive:

```
"'Äpfel' will not be found..." contains text "Apfel" using diacritics sensitive
```

- If stemming is activated, words are shortened to a base form by a language-specific stemmer:

```
"catch" contains text "catches" using stemming
```

- With the `stop words` option, a list of words can be defined that will be ignored when tokenizing a string. This is particularly helpful if the full-text index takes too much space (a standard stopwords list for English texts is provided in the directory `etc/stopwords.txt` in the full distributions of BaseX, and available online at <http://files.basex.org/etc/stopwords.txt>):

```
"You and me" contains text "you or me" using stop words ("and", "or"),
"You and me" contains text "you or me" using stop words at "http://files.basex.org/
etc/stopwords.txt"
```

- Related terms such as synonyms can be found with the sophisticated **Thesaurus** option.

The `wildcards` option facilitates search operations similar to simple regular expressions:

- `.` matches a single arbitrary character.
- `.?` matches either zero or one character.
- `.*` matches zero or more characters.
- `.+` matches one or more characters.
- `{min,max}` matches *min–max* number of characters.

```
"This may be interesting in the year 2000" contains text { "interest.*", "2.
{3,3}" } using wildcards
```

This was a quick introduction to XQuery Full Text; you are invited to explore the numerous other features of the language!

## BaseX Features

### Languages

The chosen language determines how strings will be tokenized and stemmed. Either names (e.g. `English`, `German`) or codes (`en`, `de`) can be specified. A list of all language codes that are available on your system can be retrieved as follows:

```
declare namespace locale = "java:java.util.Locale";
distinct-values(locale:getAvailableLocales() ! locale:getLanguage())
```

By default, unless the languages codes `ja`, `ar`, `ko`, `th`, or `zh` are specified, a tokenizer for Western texts is used:

- Whitespaces are interpreted as token delimiters.
- Sentence delimiters are `.`, `!`, and `?`.
- Paragraph delimiters are newlines (`&#xa;`).

The basic JAR file of BaseX comes with built-in stemming support for English, German, Greek and Indonesian. Some more languages are supported if the following libraries are found in the **classpath**:

- **lucene-stemmers-3.4.0.jar** includes the Snowball and Lucene stemmers for the following languages: Arabic, Bulgarian, Catalan, Czech, Danish, Dutch, Finnish, French, Hindi, Hungarian, Italian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish.
- **igo-0.4.3.jar** : **An additional article** explains how Igo can be integrated, and how Japanese texts are tokenized and stemmed.

The JAR files are included in the ZIP and EXE distributions of BaseX.

The following two queries, which both return `true`, demonstrate that stemming depends on the selected language:

```
"Indexing" contains text "index" using stemming,
"häuser" contains text "haus" using stemming using language "German"
```

## Scoring

The XQuery Full Text Recommendation allows for the usage of scoring models and values within queries, with scoring being completely implementation-defined.

The scoring model of BaseX takes into consideration the number of found terms, their frequency in a text, and the length of a text. The shorter the input text is, the higher scores will be:

```
(: Score values: 1 0.62 0.45 :)
for $text in ("A", "A B", "A B C")
let score $score := $text contains text "A"
order by $score descending
return <hit score='{ format-number($score, "0.00") }'>{ $text }</hit>
```

This simple approach has proven to consistently deliver good results, in particular when little is known about the structure of the queried XML documents.

Scoring values can be further processed to compute custom values:

```
let $terms := ('a', 'b')
let $scores := ft:score($terms ! ('a b c' contains text { . }))
return avg($scores)
```

Scoring is supported within full-text expressions, by `ft:search`, and by simple predicate tests that can be rewritten to `ft:search`:

```
let $string := 'a b'
return ft:score($string contains text 'a' ftand 'b'),

for $n score $s in ft:search('factbook', 'orthodox')
order by $s descending
return $s || ': ' || $n,

for $n score $s in db:get('factbook')//text()[. contains text 'orthodox']
order by $s descending
return $s || ': ' || $n
```

## Thesaurus

One or more thesaurus files can be specified in a full-text expression. The following query returns `false`:

```
'hardware' contains text 'computers'
using thesaurus default
```

If a thesaurus is employed...

```
<thesaurus xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2007/xqftts/thesaurus">
  <entry>
    <term>computers</term>
    <synonym>
      <term>hardware</term>
      <relationship>NT</relationship>
    </synonym>
  </entry>
</thesaurus>
```

...the result will be `true`:

```
'hardware' contains text 'computers'
using thesaurus at 'thesaurus.xml'
```

Thesaurus files must comply with the [XSD Schema](#) of the XQFT Test Suite (but the namespace can be omitted). Apart from the relationship defined in [ISO 2788](#) (NT: narrower term, RT: related term, etc.), custom relationships can be used.

The type of relationship and the level depth can be specified as well:

```
(: BT: find broader terms; NT means narrower term :)
'computers' contains text 'hardware'
using thesaurus at 'x.xml' relationship 'BT' from 1 to 10 levels
```

More details can be found in the [specification](#).

## Fuzzy Querying

In addition to the official recommendation, BaseX supports a fuzzy search feature. The XQFT grammar was enhanced by the `fuzzy match` option to allow for approximate results in full texts:

**Document 'doc.xml':**

```
<doc>
  <a>house</a>
  <a>hous</a>
  <a>haus</a>
</doc>
```

**Query:**

```
//a[text() contains text 'house' using fuzzy]
```

**Result:**

```
<a>house</a>
<a>hous</a>
```

Fuzzy search is based on the Levenshtein distance. The maximum number of allowed errors is calculated by dividing the token length of a specified query term by 4. The query above yields two results as there is no error between the query term “house” and the text node “house”, and one error between “house” and “hous”.

A user-defined value can be adjusted globally via the `LSERROR` option or via an additional argument:

```
//a[text() contains text 'house' using fuzzy 3 errors]
```

## Mixed Content

When working with so-called narrative XML documents, such as HTML, [TEI](#), or [DocBook](#) documents, you typically have *mixed content*, i.e., elements containing a mix of text and markup, such as:

```
<p>This is only an illustrative <hi>example</hi>, not a <q>real</q> text.</p>
```

Since the logical flow of the text is not interrupted by the child elements, you will typically want to search across elements, so that the above paragraph would match a search for “real text”. For more examples, see [XQuery and XPath Full Text 1.0 Use Cases](#).

To enable this kind of searches, it is recommendable to:

- Keep *whitespace stripping* turned off when importing XML documents. This can be done by ensuring that `STRIPWS` is disabled. This can also be done in the GUI if a new database is created (*Database* → *New...* → *Parsing* → *Strip Whitespaces*).
- Keep automatic indentation turned off. Ensure that the `serialization parameter` `indent` is set to `no`.

A query such as `//p[. contains text 'real text']` will then match the example paragraph above. However, the full-text index will **not** be used in this query, so it may take a long time. The full-text index would be used for the query `//p[text() contains text 'real text']`, but this query will not find the example paragraph because the matching text is split over two text nodes.

Note that the node structure is ignored by the full-text tokenizer: The `contains text` expression applies all full-text operations to the *string value* of its left operand. As a consequence, the `ft:mark` and `ft:extract` functions will only yield useful results if they are applied to single text nodes, as the following example demonstrates:

```
(: Structure is ignored; no highlighting: :)
ft:mark(//p[. contains text 'real'])
(: Single text nodes are addressed: results will be highlighted: :)
ft:mark(//p[.//text() contains text 'real'])
```

BaseX does **not** support the *ignore option* (without `content`) of the [W3C XQuery Full Text 1.0 Recommendation](#). If you want to ignore descendant element content, such as footnotes or other material that does not belong to the same logical text flow, you can build a second database from and exclude all information you want to avoid searching for. See the following example (visit [XQuery Update](#) to learn more about updates):

```
let $docs := db:get('docs')
return db:create(
  'index-db',
  $docs update delete node (
    .//footnote
  ),
  $docs/db:path(.),
  map { 'ftindex': true() }
)
```

## Functions

Some additional [Full-Text Functions](#) have been added to BaseX to extend the official language recommendation with useful features, such as explicitly requesting the score value of an item, marking the hits of a full-text request, or directly accessing the full-text index with the default index options.

## Collations

See [XQuery 3.1](#) for standard collation features.

By default, string comparisons in XQuery are based on the Unicode codepoint order. The default namespace URI `http://www.w3.org/2003/05/xpath-functions/collation/codepoint` specifies this ordering. In BaseX, the following URI syntax is supported to specify collations:

```
http://basex.org/collation?lang=...;strength=...;decomposition=...
```

Semicolons can be replaced with ampersands; for convenience, the URL can be reduced to its *query string component* (including the question mark). All arguments are optional:

Argument	Description
lang	A language code, selecting a Locale. It may be followed by a language variant. If no language is specified, the system's default will be chosen. Examples: <code>de</code> , <code>en-US</code> .
strength	Level of difference considered significant in comparisons. Four strengths are supported: <code>primary</code> , <code>secondary</code> , <code>tertiary</code> , and <code>identical</code> . As an example, in German: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Ä" and "A" are considered primary differences,</li> <li>"Ä" and "ä" are secondary differences,</li> <li>"Ä" and "A&amp;#x308;" (see <a href="http://www.fileformat.info/info/unicode/char/308/index.htm">http://www.fileformat.info/info/unicode/char/308/index.htm</a>) are tertiary differences, and</li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "A" and "A" are identical.</li> </ul>
decomposition	Defines how composed characters are handled. Three decompositions are supported: none, standard, and full. More details are found in the <a href="#">JavaDoc</a> of the JDK.

### Some Examples:

- If a default collation is specified, it applies to all collation-dependent string operations in the query. The following expression yields true:

```
declare default collation 'http://basex.org/collation?lang=de;strength=secondary';
'Straße' = 'Strasse'
```

- Collations can also be specified in `order by` and `group by` clauses of FLWOR expressions. This query returns `à plutôt! bonjour!`:

```
for $w in ("bonjour!", "à plutôt!") order by $w collation "?lang=fr" return $w
```

- Various string function exists that take an optional collation as argument: The following functions give us a and 1 2 3 as results:

```
<nowiki>
distinct-values(("a", "á", "à"), "?lang=it-IT;strength=primary"),
index-of(("a", "á", "à"), "a", "?lang=it-IT;strength=primary")
</nowiki>
```

If the [ICU Library](#) is added to the classpath, the full [Unicode Collation Algorithm](#) features become available:

```
(: returns 0 (both strings are compared as equal) :)
compare('a-b', 'ab', 'http://www.w3.org/2013/collation/UCA?alternate=shifted')
```

## Changelog

### Version 9.6

- Updated: [Fuzzy Querying](#): Specify Levenshtein error

### Version 9.5

- Removed: Scoring propagation.

### Version 9.2

- Added: Arabic stemmer.

### Version 8.0

- Updated: [Scores](#) will be propagated by the `and` and `or` expressions and in predicates.

### Version 7.7

- Added: [Collations](#) support.

### Version 7.3

- Removed: Trie index, which was specialized on wildcard queries. The fuzzy index now supports both wildcard and fuzzy queries.
- Removed: TF/IDF scoring was discarded in favor of the internal scoring model.

---

# Chapter 30. XQuery Update

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It summarizes the update features of BaseX.

BaseX offers a complete implementation of the [XQuery Update Facility \(XQUF\)](#). This article aims to provide a very quick and basic introduction to the XQUF. First, some examples for update expressions are given. After that, the challenges are addressed that arise due to the functional semantics of the language. These are stated in the [Concepts](#) paragraph.

## Features

### Updating Expressions

There are five new expressions to modify data. While `insert`, `delete`, `rename` and `replace` are basically self-explanatory, the `transform` expression is different, as modified nodes are copied in advance and the original databases remain untouched.

An expression consists of a target node (the node we want to alter) and additional information like insertion nodes, a QName, etc. which depends on the type of expression. Optional modifiers are available for some of them. You can find a few examples and additional information below.

#### insert

```
insert node (attribute { 'a' } { 5 }, 'text', <e/>) into /n
```

Insert enables you to insert a sequence of nodes into a single target node. Several modifiers are available to specify the exact insert location: `insert into` as **first/as last**, `insert before/after` and `insert into`.

*Note:* in most cases, **as last** and **after** will be evaluated faster than **as first** and **before!**

#### delete

```
delete node //n
```

The example query deletes all `<n>` elements in your database. Note that, in contrast to other updating expressions, the delete expression allows multiple nodes as a target.

#### replace

```
replace node /n with <a/>
```

The target element is replaced by the DOM node `<a/>`. You can also replace the value of a node or its descendants by using the modifier **value of**.

```
replace value of node /n with 'newValue'
```

All descendants of `/n` are deleted and the given text is inserted as the only child. Note that the result of the insert sequence is either a single text node or an empty sequence. If the insert sequence is empty, all descendants of the target are deleted. Consequently, replacing the value of a node leaves the target with either a single text node or no descendants at all.

#### rename

```
for $n in //originalNode  
return rename node $n as 'renamedNode'
```

All `originalNode` elements are renamed. An iterative approach helps to modify multiple nodes within a single statement. Nodes on the descendant- or attribute-axis of the target are not affected. This has to be done explicitly as well.

## Main-Memory Updates

### copy/modify/return

```
copy $c := doc('example.xml')//originalNode[@id = 1]
modify rename node $c as 'copyOfNode'
return $c
```

The `originalNode` element with `@id=1` is copied and subsequently assigned a new QName using the `rename` expression. Note that the transform expression is the only expression which returns an actual XDM instance as a result. You can therefore use it to modify results and especially DOM nodes. This is an issue beginners are often confronted with. More on this topic can be found in the [XQUF Concepts](#) section.

The following example demonstrates a common use case:

Query:

```
copy $c :=
  <entry>
    <title>Transform expression example</title>
    <author>BaseX Team</author>
  </entry>
modify (
  replace value of node $c/author with 'BaseX',
  replace value of node $c/title with concat('Copy of:', $c/title),
  insert node <author>Joey</author> into $c
)
return $c
```

Result:

```
<entry>
  <title>Copy of: Transform expression example</title>
  <author>BaseX</author>
  <author>Joey</author>
</entry>
```

The `<entry>` element (here it is passed to the expression as a DOM node) can also be replaced by a database node, e.g.:

```
copy $c := (db:get('example')//entry)[1]
...
```

In this case, the original database node remains untouched as well, as all updates are performed on the node copy.

Here is an example where we return an entire document, parts modified and all:

```
copy $c := doc("zaokeng.kml")
modify (
  for $d in $c//*:Point
  return insert node (
    <extrude>1</extrude>,
    <altitudeMode>relativeToGround</altitudeMode>
  ) before $d/ *:coordinates
)
return $c
```

### update

*Updated with Version 10:* Curly braces are now mandatory.

The `update` expression is a BaseX-specific convenience operator for the `copy/modify/return` construct:

- Similar to the [XQuery 3.0 map operator](#), the value of the first

expression is bound as context item, and the second expression performs updates on this item. The updated item is returned as result:

```
for $item in db:get('data')//item
return $item update {
  delete node text()
}
```

- More than one node can be specified as source:

```
db:get('data')//item update {
  delete node text()
}
```

- If wrapped with curly braces, update expressions can be chained:

```
<root/> update {
  insert node <child/> into .
} update {
  insert node "text" into child
}
```

## transform with

The transform `with` expression was added to the current [XQuery Update 3.0](#) working draft. It is a simple version of the `update` expression and also available in BaseX:

```
<xml>text</xml> transform with {
  replace value of node . with 'new-text'
}
```

## Functions

### Built-in Functions

`fn:put()` can be used to serialize XDM instances to secondary storage:

- The function will be executed after all other updates.
- Serialized documents therefore reflect all changes made effective during a query.
- No files will be created if the addressed nodes have been deleted.
- Serialization parameters can be specified as third argument (more details are found in the [XQUF 3.0 Specification](#)).

Numerous additional [database functions](#) exist for performing updates on document and database level.

### User-Defined Functions

If an updating function item is called, the function call must be prefixed with the keyword `updating`. This ensures that the query compiler can statically detect if an invoked function item will perform updates or not:

```
let $node := <node>TO-BE-DELETED</node>
let $delete-text := %updating function($node) {
  delete node $node//text()
}
return $node update (
  updating $delete-text(.)
)
```

As shown in the example, user-defined and anonymous functions can additionally be annotated as `%updating`.

## Concepts

There are a few specialties around XQuery Update that you should know about. In addition to the **simple expression**, the XQUF adds the **updating expression** as a new type of expression. An updating expression returns only a Pending Update List (PUL) as a result which is subsequently applied to addressed databases and DOM nodes. A simple expression cannot perform any permanent changes and returns an empty or non-empty sequence.

## Pending Update List

*Updated with Version 10:* `db:put-binary` is executed before standard XQuery Update expressions.

The most important thing to keep in mind when using XQuery Update is the Pending Update List (PUL). Updating statements are not executed immediately, but are first collected as update primitives within a set-like structure. After the evaluation of the query, and after some consistency checks and optimizations, the update primitives will be applied in the following order:

- **Backups, Binary resources** : `db:alter-backup`, `db:create-backup`, `db:put`, `db:put-binary`
- **XQuery Update** : `insert before`, `delete`, `replace`, `rename`, `replace value`, `insert attribute`, `insert into first`, `insert into`, `insert into last`, `insert`, `insert after`, `fn:put`
- **Documents** : `db:add`, `db:put`, `db:rename`, `db:delete`, `db:optimize`, `db:flush`,
- **Users** : `user:grant`, `user:password`, `user:drop`, `user:alter`, `user:create`
- **Databases** : `db:copy`, `db:drop`, `db:alter`, `db:create`
- **Backups** : `db:restore`, `db:drop-backup`

If an inconsistency is found, an error message is returned and all accessed databases remain untouched (atomicity). For the user, this means that updates are only visible **after** the end of a snapshot.

It may be surprising to see `db:create` in the lower part of this list. This means that newly created database cannot be accessed by the same query, which can be explained by the semantics of updating queries: all expressions can only be evaluated on databases that already exist while the query is evaluated. As a consequence, `db:create` is mainly useful in the context of **Command Scripts**, or **Web Applications**, in which a redirect to another page can be triggered after having created a database.

## Example

The query...

```
insert node <b/> into /doc,
for $n in /doc/child::node()
return rename node $n as 'justRenamed'
```

...applied on the document...

```
<doc> <a/> </doc>
```

...results in the following document:

```
<doc> <justRenamed/><b/> </doc>
```

Despite explicitly renaming all child nodes of `<doc/>`, the former `<a/>` element is the only one to be renamed. The element is inserted within the same snapshot and is therefore not yet visible to the user.

## Returning Results

By default, it is not possible to mix different types of expressions in a query result. The root expression of a query must be a sequence of updating expressions. But there are two ways out:

- The BaseX-specific `update:output` function bridges this gap: it caches the results of its arguments at runtime and returns them after all updates have been processed. The following example performs an update and returns a success message:

```
update:output("Update successful."), insert node <c/> into doc('factbook')/mondial
```

- With `MIXUPDATES`, all updating constraints will be turned off. Returned nodes will be copied before they are modified by updating expressions. An error is raised if items are returned within a transform expression.

If you want to modify nodes in main memory, you can use the [transform expression](#).

## Effects

## Original Files

In BaseX, all updates are performed on database nodes or in main memory. By default, update operations do not affect the original input file (the info string "Updates are not written back" appears in the query info to indicate this). The following solutions exist to write XML documents and binary resources to disk:

- Updates on main-memory instances of files that have been retrieved via `fn:doc` or `fn:collection` will be propagated back to disk if `WRITEBACK` is turned on. This option can also be activated on [command line](#) via `-u`. Make sure you back up the original documents before running your queries.
- Functions like `fn:put` or `file:write` can be used to write single XML documents to disk. With `file:write-binary`, you can write binary resources.
- The `EXPORT` command can be used write all resources of a databases to disk.

## Indexes

Index structures are discarded after update operations when `UPDINDEX` is turned off (which is the default). More details are found in the article on [Indexing](#).

## Error Messages

Along with the Update Facility, a number of new error codes and messages have been added to the specification and BaseX. All errors are listed in the [XQuery Errors](#) overview.

Please remember that the collected updates will be executed after the query evaluation. All logical errors will be raised before the updates are actually executed.

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: `db:put-binary` is executed before XQuery Update expressions.
- Updated: `update`: Curly braces are now mandatory.

Version 9.0

- Updated: [Built-in Functions](#): serialization parameters

Version 8.5

- Added: [transform with](#)
- Updated: `update` was extended.

Version 8.0

- Added: MIXUPDATES option for **Returning Results** in updating expressions
- Added: information message if files are not written back

Version 7.8

- Added: **update** convenience operator

---

# Chapter 31. Indexes

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It contains information on the available index structures.

The query compiler tries to optimize and speed up queries by applying the index whenever it is possible, and seems promising. To see how a query is rewritten, and if an index is used, you can turn on the [Info View](#) in the GUI or use the `-V` flag on the command line:

- A message like `apply text index for "Japan"` indicates that the text index is applied to speed up the search of the shown string. The following message...
- `no index results` indicates that a string in a path expression will never yield results. Hence, the path does not need to be evaluated at all.
- If you cannot find any index optimization hints in the info output, it often helps if you rewrite and simplify your query.

Additional examples for index rewritings are presented in our article on [XQuery Optimizations](#).

## Structural Indexes

Structural indexes are automatically created and cannot be dropped by the user:

### Name Index

The name index contains references to the names of all elements and attributes in a database. It contains some basic statistical information, such as the number of occurrence of a name.

The name index is e.g. applied to discard location steps that will never yield results:

```
(: will be rewritten to an empty sequence :)  
/non-existing-name
```

The contents of the name indexes can be directly accessed with the XQuery functions `index:element-names` and `index:attribute-names`.

If a database is updated, new names will be added incrementally, but the statistical information will get out-dated.

### Path Index

The path index (which is also called *path summary* or *data guide*) stores all distinct paths of the documents in the database. It contains additional statistical information, such as the number of occurrence of a path, its distinct string values, and the minimum/maximum of numeric values. The maximum number of distinct values to store per name can be changed via `MAXCATS`. Distinct values are also stored for elements and attributes of numeric type.

Various queries will be evaluated much faster if an up-to-date path index is available (as can be observed when opening the [Info View](#)):

- Descendant steps will be rewritten to multiple child steps. Child steps are evaluated faster, as fewer nodes have to be traversed:

```
doc('factbook.xml')//province,  
(: ..will be rewritten to... :)  
doc('factbook.xml')/mondial/country/province
```

- The `fn:count` function will be pre-evaluated by looking up the number in the index:

```
count(doc('factbook')//country)
```



- The distinct values of elements or attributes can be looked up in the index as well:

```
distinct-values(db:get('factbook')//religions)
```

The contents of the path index can be directly accessed with the XQuery function `index:facets`.

If a database is updated, the statistics in the path index will be invalidated.

## Document Index

The document index contains references to all document nodes in a database. Once documents with specific paths are requested, the index will be extended to also contain document paths.

The index generally speeds up access to single documents and database paths. It will always be kept up-to-date.

## Value Indexes

Value indexes can be created and dropped by the user. Four types of values indexes are available: a text and attribute index, and an optional token and full-text index. By default, the text, and attribute index will automatically be created.

In the GUI, index structures can be managed in the dialog windows for creating new databases or displaying the database properties. On command-line, the commands `CREATE INDEX` and `DROP INDEX` are used to create and drop index structures. With `INFO INDEX`, you get some insight into the contents of an index structure, and `SET` allows you to change the index defaults for new databases:

- `OPEN factbook; CREATE INDEX fulltext : Open database; create full-text index`
- `OPEN factbook; INFO INDEX TOKEN : Open database; show info on token index`
- `SET ATTRINDEX true; SET ATTRINCLUDE id name; CREATE DB factbook.xml : Enable attribute index; only index 'id' and 'name' attributes; create database`

With XQuery, index structures can be created and dropped via `db:optimize`:

```
(: Optimize specified database, create full-text index for texts of the specified
elements :)
db:optimize(
  'factbook',
  false(),
  map { 'ftindex': true(), 'ftinclude': 'p div' }
)
```

## Text Index

### Exact Queries

This index references text nodes of documents. It will be utilized to accelerate string comparisons in path expressions. The following queries will all be rewritten for index access:

```
(: example 1 :)
//*[text() = 'Germany'],
(: example 2 :)
doc('factbook.xml')//name[. = 'Germany'],
(: example 3 :)
for $c in db:get('factbook')//country
where $c//city/name = 'Hanoi'
return $c/name
```

Before the actual index rewriting takes places, some preliminary optimizations are applied:

- In example 2, the context item expression `.` will be replaced with a `text()` step.

- In example 3, the where clause will be rewritten to a predicate and attached to the first path expression.

The indexed text nodes can be accessed directly with the XQuery function `db:text`. The indexed string values can be looked up via `index:text`.

The UPDINDEX option can be enabled to keep this index up-to-date:

```
db:optimize(
  'mydb',
  true(),
  map { 'updindex':true(), 'textindex': true(), 'textinclude':'id' }
)
```

## Range Queries

The text index also supports range queries based on string comparisons:

```
(: example 1 :)
db:get('Library')//Medium[Year >= '2011' and Year <= '2016'],
(: example 2 :)
let $min := '2014-04-16T00:00:00'
let $max := '2014-04-19T23:59:59'
return db:get('news')//entry[date-time > $min and date-time < $max]
```

With `db:text-range`, you can access all text nodes whose values are between a minimum and maximum value.

Please note that the index structures do not support queries for numbers and dates.

## Attribute Index

Similar to the text index, this index speeds up string and range comparisons on attribute values. Additionally, the XQuery function `fn:id` takes advantage of the index whenever possible. The following queries will all be rewritten for index access:

```
(: 1st example :)
//country[@car_code = 'J'],
(: 2nd example :)
//province[@* = 'Hokkaido']//name,
(: 3rd example :)
//sea[@depth > '2100' and @depth < '4000']
(: 4th example :)
fn:id('f0_119', db:get('factbook'))
```

*Attribute nodes* (which you can use as starting points of navigation) can directly be retrieved from the index with the XQuery functions `db:attribute` and `db:attribute-range`. The index contents (*strings*) can be accessed with `index:attributes`.

The UPDINDEX option can be activated to keep this index up-to-date.

## Token Index

In many XML dialects, such as HTML or DITA, multiple tokens are stored in attribute values. The token index can be created to speed up the retrieval of these tokens. The XQuery functions `fn:contains-token`, `fn:tokenize` and `fn:idref` are rewritten for index access whenever possible. If a token index exists, it will, e.g., be utilized for the following queries:

```
(: 1st example :)
//div[contains-token(@class, 'row')],
(: 2nd example :)
//p[tokenize(@class) = 'row'],
(: 3rd example :)
doc('graph.xml')/idref('edge8')
```

*Attribute nodes* with a matching value (containing at least one from a set of given tokens) can be directly retrieved from the index with the XQuery function `db:token`. The index contents (*token strings*) can be accessed with `index:tokens`.

## Full-Text Index

The **Full-Text** index contains the normalized tokens of text nodes of a document. It is utilized to speed up queries with the `contains text` expression, and it is capable of processing wildcard and fuzzy search operations. Three evaluation strategies are available: the standard sequential database scan, a full-text index-based evaluation and a hybrid one, combining both strategies (see [XQuery Full Text implementation in BaseX](#)).

If the full-text index exists, the following queries will all be rewritten for index access:

```
(: 1st example :)
//country[name/text() contains text 'and'],
(: 2nd example :)
//religions[./text() contains text { 'Catholic', 'Roman' }
  using case insensitive distance at most 2 words]
```

The index provides support for the following full-text features (the values can be changed in the GUI or via the SET command):

- **Stemming** : tokens are stemmed before being indexed (option: STEMMING)
- **Case Sensitive** : tokens are indexed in case-sensitive mode (option: CASESENS)
- **Diacritics** : diacritics are indexed as well (option: DIACRITICS)
- **Stopword List** : a stop word list can be defined to reduce the number of indexed tokens (option: STOPWORDS)
- **Language** : see [Languages](#) for more details (option: LANGUAGE)

The options that have been used for creating the full-text index will also be applied to the optimized full-text queries. However, the defaults can be overwritten if you supply options in your query. For example, if words were stemmed in the index, and if the query can be rewritten for index access, the query terms will be stemmed as well, unless stemming is not explicitly disabled. This is demonstrated in the following [Command Script](#):

```
<commands>
  <!-- Create database with stemmed full-text index -->
  <set option='stemming'>true</set>
  <set option='ftindex'>true</set>
  <create-db name='test-db'> <text>house</text> </create-db>
  <!-- Index access: Query term will be stemmed -->
  <xquery> /text[. contains text { 'houses' }] </xquery>
  <!-- Disable stemming (query will not be evaluated by the index) -->
  <xquery> /text[. contains text { 'houses' } using no stemming] </xquery>
</commands>
```

Text nodes can be directly requested from the index via the XQuery function `ft:search`. The index contents can be accessed with `ft:tokens`.

## Selective Indexing

Value indexing can be restricted to specific elements and attributes. The nodes to be indexed can be restricted via the `TEXTINCLUDE`, `ATTRINCLUDE`, `TOKENINCLUDE` and `FTINCLUDE` options. The options take a list of name patterns, which are separated by commas. The following name patterns are supported:

- `*` : all names
- `name` : elements or attributes called `name`, which are in the empty default namespace
- `*:name` : elements or attributes called `name`, no matter which namespace

- `Q{uri}* :` all elements or attributes in the `uri` namespace
- `Q{uri}name :` elements or attributes called `name` in the `uri` namespace

The options can either be specified via the `SET` command or via `XQuery`. With the following operations, an attribute index is created for all `id` and `name` attributes:

#### Commands

```
SET ATTRINCLUDE id,name
CREATE DB factbook http://files.basex.org/xml/factbook.xml'
# Restore default
SET ATTRINCLUDE
```

#### XQuery

```
db:create('factbook', 'http://files.basex.org/xml/factbook.xml', '',
  map { 'attrinclude': 'id,name' })
```

With `CREATE INDEX` and `db:optimize`, new selective indexing options will be applied to an existing database.

## Enforce Rewritings

In various cases, existing index structures will not be utilized by the query optimizer. This is usually the case if the name of the database is not a static string (e.g. because it is bound to a variable or passed on as an argument of a function call). Furthermore, several candidates for index rewritings may exist, and the query optimizer may decide for a rewriting that turns out to be suboptimal.

With the `ENFORCEINDEX` option, certain index rewritings can be enforced. While the option can be globally enabled, it is usually better to supply it as **Pragma**. Two examples:

- In the query below, 10 databases will be addressed. If it is known in advance that these databases contain an up-to-date text index, the index rewriting can be enforced as follows:

```
(# db:enforceindex #) {
  for $n in 1 to 10
  let $db := 'persons' || $n
  return db:get($db)//person[name/text() = 'John']
}
```

- The following query contains two predicates that may both be rewritten for index access. If the automatically chosen rewriting is known not to be optimal, another index rewriting can be enforced by surrounding the specific expression with the pragma:

```
db:get('factbook')//country
[(# db:enforceindex #) {
  @population > '10000000' and
  @population < '10999999'
}]
[religions/text() = 'Protestant']
```

The option can also be assigned to predicates with dynamic values. In the following example, the comparison of the first comparison will be rewritten for index access. Without the pragma expression, the second comparison is preferred and chosen for the rewriting because the statically known string allows for an exact cost estimation:

```
for $name in ('Germany', 'Italy')
for $country in db:get('factbook')//country
where (# db:enforceindex #) { $country/name = $name }
where $country/religions/text() = 'Protestant'
return $country
```

Please note that:

- The option should only be enabled if the addressed databases exist, have all required index structures and are up-to-date (otherwise, you will be given an error message).
- If you address the full-text index, and if you use non-default indexing options, you will have to specify them in your query (via `using stemming`, `using language 'de'`, etc).
- If you have more than one `enforce pragma` in a single path expression, only the first will be considered.
- In general, there are always expressions that cannot be rewritten for index access. If you enforce rewritings, you will have no guarantee that an index will be used.

## Custom Index Structures

With XQuery, it is comparatively easy to create your own, custom index structures. The following query demonstrates how you can create a `factbook-index` database, which contains all texts of the original database in lower case:

```
let $db := 'factbook'

let $index := <index>{
  for $nodes in db:get($db)//text()
  group by $text := lower-case($nodes)
  return <text string='{ $text }'>{
    for $node in $nodes
    return <id>{ db:node-id($node ) }</id>
  }</text>
}</index>

return db:create($db || '-index', $index, $db || '-index.xml')
```

In the following query, a text string is searched, and the text nodes of the original database are retrieved:

```
let $db := 'factbook'
let $text := 'italian'
for $id in db:get($db || '-index')/*[@string = $text]/id
return db:get-id($db, $id)/..
```

With some extra effort, and if `UPDINDEX` is enabled for both your original and your index database (see below), your index database will support updates as well (try it, it's fun!).

## Performance

If main memory runs out while creating a value index, the current index structures will be partially written to disk and eventually merged. If the memory heuristics fail for some reason (i.e. because multiple index operations run at the same time, or because the applied JVM does not support explicit garbage collections), a fixed index split sizes may be chosen via the `SPLITSIZE` option.

If `DEBUG` is enabled, the command-line output might help you find a good split size. The following example shows the output for creating a database for an XMark document with 1 GB, and with 128 MB assigned to the JVM:

```
> basex -d -c"SET FTINDEX ON; SET TOKENINDEX ON; CREATE DB xmark 1gb.xml"
Creating Database...
..... 76559.99 ms (29001 KB)
Indexing Text...
....|...|...|.....|. 9.81 M operations, 18576.92 ms (13523 KB). Recommended
SPLITSIZE: 20.
Indexing Attribute Values...
.....|..... 3.82 M operations, 7151.77 ms (6435 KB). Recommended SPLITSIZE:
20.
Indexing Tokens...
.....|..|.....|.. 3.82 M operations, 9636.73 ms (10809 KB). Recommended
SPLITSIZE: 10.
```



Version 8.0

- Added: AUTOOPTIMIZE option

Version 7.2.1

- Added: string-based range queries

---

# Chapter 32. Serialization

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [XQuery Portal](#).

Serialization parameters define how XQuery items and XML nodes will be *serialized* (i.e., returned to the client or an API, usually in textual form). The official parameters are defined in the [W3C XQuery Serialization 3.1](#) document. In BaseX, they can be:

- included in the [prolog of the XQuery expression](#);
- specified in XQuery functions (`file:write`, `db:export`, `fn:serialize()`);
- specified in [REST query parameters](#);
- specified in [RESTXQ output annotations](#);
- set via the `SERIALIZER` option before running a query;
- set via the `EXPORTER` option before exporting a database; or
- supplied with the `-s` flag of the BaseX [command-line](#) clients.

The namespace for serialization parameters is statically bound to the `output` prefix. This means that it need not (but may) be declared in the query prolog:

```
declare namespace output = 'http://www.w3.org/2010/xslt-xquery-serialization';
declare option output:method 'text';
<xml>Hi there</xml>
```

Due to the wide range of ways how parameters can be supplied, we deliberately ignored one rule of the specification, which requires non-official features to be defined in a non-null namespace URI. In the following, we will indicate which features are specific to our implementation.

## Parameters

The following serialization parameters are supported by BaseX (further details can be looked up in the official specification):

Parameter	Description	Allowed	Default
<code>method</code>	Specifies the serialization method. <code>xml</code> , <code>xhtml</code> , <code>html</code> , <code>json</code> , <code>adaptive</code> , <code>csv</code> , <code>text</code> and <code>adaptive</code> are part of the official specification. For more details on <code>basex</code> , <code>csv</code> and <code>json</code> , see <a href="#">XQuery Extensions</a> .	<code>xml</code> , <code>xhtml</code> , <code>html</code> , <code>text</code> , <code>json</code> , <code>adaptive</code> , <code>csv</code> , <code>basex</code>	<code>basex</code>
<code>version</code>	Specifies the version of the serialization method.	<code>xml/xhtml</code> : 1.0, 1.1, <code>html</code> : 1.0, 4.0, 4.01, 5.0,	1.0
<code>html-version</code>	Specifies the version of the HTML serialization method.	4.0, 4.01, 5.0	4.0
<code>item-separator</code>	Determines a string to be used as item separator. If a separator is specified, the default separation of atomic values with single whitespaces will be skipped.	<i>string</i>	



Serialization

encoding	Encoding to be used for outputting the data.	<i>all encodings supported by Java</i>	UTF-8
indent	Adds leading whitespaces to make the output more readable.	yes, no	noDefault <i>changed with Version 10</i>
cdata-section-elements	List of elements to be output as CDATA, separated by whitespaces. Example: <text><![CDATA[ < > ]]></text>	string	
omit-xml-declaration	Omits the XML declaration, which is serialized before the actual query result. Example: <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>	yes, no	yes
standalone	Prints or omits the standalone attribute in the XML declaration.	yes, no, omit	omit
doctype-system	Introduces the output with a document type declaration and the given system identifier. Example: <!DOCTYPE x SYSTEM "entities.dtd">	string	
doctype-public	If doctype-system is specified, adds a public identifier. Example: <!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd">	string	
undeclare-prefixes	Undeclares prefixes in XML 1.1.	yes, no	no
normalization-form	Specifies a normalization form. BaseX supports Form C (NFC).	NFC, none	NFC
media-type	Specifies the media type.	string	application/xml
parameter-document	Parses the value as XML document with additional serialization parameters (see the <a href="#">Specification</a> for more details and examples).	string	
use-character-maps	Defines character mappings. If mappings are supplied as single string, keys and values are separated by the equal sign, and multiple pairs are separated by commas. Separators that are to be defined as keys or values can be encoded as entities. Example: A=alpha, B=beta	string	

byte-order-mark	Prints a byte-order-mark before starting serialization.	yes, no	no
escape-uri-attributes	Escapes URI information in certain HTML attributes Example: <a href="%C3%A4%C3%B6%C3%BC">äöü<a>	yes, no	no
include-content-type	Inserts a meta content-type element into the head element if the result is output as HTML Example: <head><meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=UTF-8"></head>. The head element must already exist or nothing will be added. Any existing meta content-type elements will be removed.	yes, no	yes

BaseX provides some additional serialization parameters:

Parameter	Description	Allowed	Default
csv	Defines the way how data is serialized as CSV.	see <a href="#">CSV Module</a>	
json	Defines the way how data is serialized as JSON.	see <a href="#">JSON Module</a>	
tabulator	Uses tab characters (\t) instead of spaces for indenting elements.	yes, no	no
indents	Specifies the number of characters to be indented.	<i>positive number</i>	2
newline	Specifies the type of newline to be used as end-of-line marker.	\n, \r\n, \r	<i>system dependent</i>
limit	Stops serialization after the specified number of bytes has been serialized. If a negative number is specified, everything will be output.	<i>positive number</i>	-1
binary	Indicates if items of binary type are output in their native byte representation. Only applicable to the base serialization method.	yes, no	yes

The `csv` and `json` parameters are supplied with a list of options. Option names and values are combined with `=`, several options are separated by `,`:

```
declare option output:method "csv";
declare option output:csv "header=yes, separator=semicolon";
<csv>
  <record>
    <Name>John</Name>
    <City>Newton</City>
  </record>
</csv>
```

```
<Name>Jack</Name>
<City>Oldtown</City>
</record>
</csv>
```

If `fn:serialize` is called, output-specific parameters can be supplied via nested options:

```
serialize(
  <csv>
    <record>
      <Name>John</Name>
      <City>Newton</City>
    </record>
    <record>
      <Name>Jack</Name>
      <City>Oldtown</City>
    </record>
  </csv>,
  map {
    'method': 'csv',
    'csv': map { 'header': 'yes', 'separator': ';' }
  }
)
```

**Result:**

```
Name;City
John;Newton
Jack;Oldtown
```

## Character mappings

Character maps allow a specific character in the instance of the data model to be replaced with a specified string of characters during serialization. The string that is substituted is output “as is,” and the serializer performs no checks that the resulting document is well-formed. This may only occur in documents parsed with `parameter-document`. If a character is mapped, then it is not subjected to XML or HTML escaping. For details, refer to section 11 [Character maps](#) in the [W3C XQuery Serialization 3.1](#) document.

This example maps the Unicode U+00A0 NO-BREAK SPACE as `&#160;` (without the serialization parameter, the Unicode character would be output):

**Example query:**

```
declare option output:parameter-document "map.xml";
<x>&amp;#xA0;</x>
```

**Example parameter-document:**

```
<serialization-parameters
  xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2010/xslt-xquery-serialization">
  <use-character-maps>
    <character-map character="&amp;#160;" map-string="&amp;#160;" />
  </use-character-maps>
</serialization-parameters>
```

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: `indent`: Default changed from `yes` to `no`.

Version 9.2

- Updated: New default value for `include-content-type` is `yes`.

Version 8.4

- Added: Serialization parameter `binary`.
- Updated: New serialization method `base64`. By default, items of binary type are now output in their native byte representation. The method `raw` was removed.

Version 8.0

- Added: Support for `use-character-maps` and `parameter-document`.
- Added: Serialization method `adaptive`.
- Updated: `adaptive` is new default method (before: `xml`).
- Removed: `format`, `wrap-prefix`, `wrap-uri`.

Version 7.8.2

- Added: `limit`: Stops serialization after the specified number of bytes has been serialized.

Version 7.8

- Added: `csv` and `json` serialization parameters.
- Removed: `separator` option (use `item-separator` instead).

Version 7.7.2

- Added: `csv` serialization method.
- Added: temporary serialization methods `csv-header`, `csv-separator`, `json-unescape`, `json-spec`, `json-format`.

Version 7.5

- Added: official `item-separator` and `html-version` parameter.
- Updated: `method=html5` removed; serializers updated with the **latest version of the specification**, using `method=html` and `version=5.0`.

Version 7.2

- Added: `separator` parameter.

Version 7.1

- Added: `newline` parameter.

Version 7.0

- Added: Serialization parameters added to **REST API**; JSON/JsonML/raw methods.

---

# Chapter 33. XQuery Errors

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [XQuery Portal](#). It summarizes the codes of errors that are raised by the standard features and functions of XQuery. As the original specifications are pretty comprehensive, we tried our best to make this overview comprehensible to a wider range of readers.

The following tables list the error codes that are known to BaseX, a short description, and examples of queries raising that errors. Errors that are specific to BaseX can be found in the descriptions of the respective [modules](#).

Original definitions of the error codes are found in the [XQuery 3.0](#), [XQuery 3.0 Functions](#), [XQuery 1.0 Update](#), [XQuery 1.0 Full Text](#), and [EXPath HTTP Specifications](#).

## Static Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: `err`
- Codes: XPST, XQST

Code	Description	Examples
XPST0003	An error occurred while <i>parsing</i> the query string (i.e., before the query could be compiled and executed). This error is the most common one, and may be accompanied by a variety of different error messages.	<code>1+for i in //* return \$i</code>
XPST0005	An expression will never return any results, no matter what input is provided.	<code>doc('input')/..</code>
XPST0008	A variable or type name is used that has not been defined in the current scope.	<code>\$a---element(*, x)</code>
XPST0017	• The specified function is unknown,• it uses the wrong number of arguments, or, when calling Java functions:• there is more than one function with the same number of arguments.	<code>unknown()count(1,2,3)</code>
XPST0051	An unknown QName is used in a <i>sequence type</i> (e.g. in the target type of the <i>cast</i> expression).	<code>1 instance of x"test" cast as xs:itr</code>
XPST0080	<code>xs:NOTATION</code> or <code>xs:anyAtomicType</code> is used as target type of <i>cast</i> or <i>castable</i> .	<code>1 castable as xs:NOTATION</code>
XPST0081	• A QName uses a prefix that has not been bound to any namespace, or• a pragma or option declaration has not been prefixed.	<code>unknown:x(# pragma #) { 1 }</code>
XQST0009	The query imports a schema (schema import is not supported by BaseX).	<code>import schema "x"; ()</code>
XQST0022	Namespace values must be constant strings.	<code>&lt;elem xmlns="{ 'dynamic' }"/&gt;</code>
XQST0031	The specified XQuery version is not specified.	<code>xquery version "9.9"; ()</code>
XQST0032	The base URI was declared more than once.	<code>declare base-uri ...</code>
XQST0033	A namespace prefix was declared more than once.	<code>declare namespace a="a";declare namespace a="b"; ()</code>
XQST0034	A function was declared more than once.	<code>declare function local:a() { 1 };declare function local:a() { 2 }; local:a()</code>

XQuery Errors

XQST0038	The default collation was declared more than once.	<code>declare default collation ...</code>
XQST0039	Two or more parameters in a user-defined function have the same name.	<code>declare function local:fun(\$a, \$a) { \$a * \$a };local:fun(1,2)</code>
XQDY0040	Two or more attributes in an element have the same node name.	<code>&lt;elem a="1" a="12"/&gt;</code>
XQDY0045	A user-defined function uses a reserved namespace.	<code>declare function fn:fun() { 1 };()</code>
XQST0047	A module was defined more than once.	<code>import module ...</code>
XQST0048	A module declaration does not match the namespace of the specified module.	<code>import module namespace invalid="uri"; 1</code>
XQST0049	A global variable was declared more than once.	<code>declare variable \$a := 1;declare variable \$a := 1; \$a</code>
XQST0054	A global variable depends on itself. This may be triggered by a circular variable definition.	<code>declare variable \$a := local:a();declare function local:a() { \$a }; \$a</code>
XQST0055	The mode for copying namespaces was declared more than once.	<code>declare copy-namespaces ...</code>
XQST0057	The namespace of a schema import may not be empty.	<code>import schema "";()</code>
XQST0059	The schema or module with the specified namespace cannot be found or processed.	<code>import module "unknown";()</code>
XQST0060	A user-defined function has no namespace.	<code>declare default function namespace "";declare function x() { 1 }; 1</code>
XQST0065	The ordering mode was declared more than once.	<code>declare ordering ...</code>
XQST0065	The default namespace mode for elements or functions was declared more than once.	<code>declare default element namespace ...</code>
XQST0067	The construction mode was declared more than once.	<code>declare construction ...</code>
XQST0068	The mode for handling boundary spaces was declared more than once.	<code>declare boundary-space ...</code>
XQST0069	The default order for empty sequences was declared more than once.	<code>declare default order empty ...</code>
XQST0070	A namespace declaration overwrites a reserved namespace.	<code>declare namespace xml="";()</code>
XQST0071	A namespace is declared more than once in an element constructor.	<code>&lt;a xmlns="uri1" xmlns="uri2"/&gt;</code>
XQST0075	The query contains a validate expression (validation is not supported by BaseX).	<code>validate strict { () }</code>
XQST0076	A <code>group by</code> or <code>order by</code> clause specifies an unknown collation.	<code>for \$i in 1 to 10order by \$i collation "unknown"return \$i</code>
XQST0079	A pragma was specified without the expression that is to be evaluated.	<code>(# xml:a #) { }</code>
XQST0085	An empty namespace URI was specified.	<code>&lt;pref:elem xmlns:pref=""/&gt;</code>
XQST0087	An unknown encoding was specified. Note that the encoding declaration is currently ignored in BaseX.	<code>xquery version "1.0" encoding "a b";()</code>
XQST0088	An empty module namespace was specified.	<code>import module "";()</code>
XQST0089	Two variables in a <code>for</code> or <code>let</code> clause have the same name.	<code>for \$a at \$a in 1 return \$i</code>

XQST0090	A character reference specifies an invalid character.	"&#0;"
XQST0093	A module depends on itself. This may be triggered by a circular module definition.	import module ...
XQST0094	group by references a variable that has not been declared before.	for \$a in 1 group by \$b return \$a
XQST0097	A decimal-format property is invalid.	declare default decimal-format digit = "xxx"; 1
XQST0098	A single decimal-format character was assigned to multiple properties.	declare default decimal-format digit = "%"; 1
XQST0099	The context item was declared more than once.	declare context item ...
XQST0106	An annotation has been declared twice in a variable or function declaration.	declare %updating %updating function ...
XQST0108	Output declarations may only be specified in the main module.	Module: declare output ...
XQST0109	The specified serialization parameter is unknown.	declare option output:unknown "..."; 1
XQST0110	A serialization parameter was specified more than once in the output declarations.	declare option output:indent "no"; declare option output:indent "no"; 1
XQST0111	A decimal format was declared more than once.	declare decimal-format ...
XQST0113	Context item values may only be in the main module.	Module: declare context item := 1;
XQST0114	A decimal-format property has been specified more than once.	declare decimal-format EN NaN="!" NaN="?"; ()

## Type Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: err
- Codes: XPTY, XQTY

Code	Description	Examples
XPTY0004	This error is raised if an expression has the wrong type, or cannot be cast into the specified type. It may be raised both statically (during query compilation) or dynamically (at runtime).	1 + "A"abs("a")1 cast as xs:gYear
XPTY0018	The result of the last step in a path expression contains both nodes and atomic values.	doc('input.xml')/(*, 1)
XPTY0019	The result of a step (other than the last step) in a path expression contains an atomic values.	(1 to 10)/*
XQTY0024	An attribute node cannot be bound to its parent element, as other nodes of a different type were specified before.	<elem>text { attribute a { "val" } }</elem>
XQTY0105	A function item has been specified as content of an element.	<X>{ false#0 }</X>

## Dynamic Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: err

- Codes: XPDY, XQDY

Code	Description	Examples
XPDY0002	• No value has been defined for an external variable, or • no context item has been set before the query was executed.	declare variable \$x external; \$xdescendant::*
XPDY0050	• The operand type of a <code>treat</code> expression does not match the type of the argument, or • the root of the context item must be a document node.	"string" treat as xs:int"string"[/]
XQDY0025	Two or more attributes in a constructed element have the same node name.	element x { attribute a { " " } attribute a { " " } }
XQDY0026	The content of a computed processing instruction contains "?>".	processing-instruction pi { "?>" }
XQDY0041	The name of a processing instruction is invalid.	processing-instruction { "1" } { " " }
XQDY0044	The node name of an attribute uses reserved prefixes or namespaces.	attribute xmlns { "etc" }
XQDY0064	The name of a processing instruction equals "XML" (case insensitive).	processing-instruction xml { "etc" }
XQDY0072	The content of a computed comment contains "--" or ends with "-".	comment { "one -- two" }
XQDY0074	The name of a computed attribute or element is invalid, or uses an unbound prefix.	element { "x y" } { " " }
XQDY0095	A sequence with more than one item was bound to a <code>group by</code> clause.	let \$a := (1,2) group by \$a return \$a
XQDY0096	The node name of an element uses reserved prefixes or namespaces.	element { QName("uri", "xml:n") } { }
XQDY0101	Invalid namespace declaration.	namespace xmlns { 'x' }
XQDY0102	Duplicate namespace declaration.	element x { namespace a { 'b' }, namespace a { 'c' } }

## Functions Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: `err`
- Codes: FOAR, FOCA, FOCH, FODC, FODF, FODT, FOER, FOFD, FONS, FORG, FORX, FOTY, FOUT

Code	Description	Examples
FOAR0001	A value was divided by zero.	1 div 0
FOAR0002	A numeric declaration or operation causes an over- or underflow.	12345678901234567890xs:double("INF") idiv 1
FOCA0002	• A float number cannot be converted to a decimal or integer value, or • a function argument cannot be converted to a valid QName.	xs:int(xs:double("INF"))QName(" ", "el em")
FOCA0003	A value is too large to be represented as integer.	xs:integer(99e100)
FOCA0005	"NaN" is supplied to duration operations.	xs:yearMonthDuration("P1Y") * xs:double("NaN")



XQuery Errors

FOCH0001	A codepoint was specified that does not represent a valid XML character.	codepoints-to-string(0)
FOCH0002	A unsupported collation was specified in a function.	compare('a', 'a', 'unknown')
FOCH0003	A unsupported normalization form was specified in a function.	normalize-unicode('a', 'unknown')
FODC0001	The argument specified in fn:id() or fn:idref() must have a document node as root.	id("id0", <xml/>)
FODC0002	The specified document resource cannot be retrieved.	doc("unknown.xml")
FODC0004	The specified collection cannot be retrieved.	collection("unknown")
FODC0005	The specified URI to a document resource is invalid.	doc("<xml/>")
FODC0006	The string passed to fn:parse-xml() is not well-formed.	parse-xml("<x/")
FODC0007	The base URI passed to fn:parse-xml() is invalid.	parse-xml("<x/>", ":")
FODF1280	The name of the decimal format passed to fn:format-number() is invalid.	format-number(1, "0", "invalid")
FODF1310	The picture string passed to fn:format-number() is invalid.	format-number(1, "invalid")
FODT0001	An arithmetic duration operation causes an over- or underflow.	xs:date('2000-01-01') + xs:duration('P99999Y')
FODT0002	A duration declaration or operation causes an over- or underflow.	implicit-timezone() div 0
FODT0003	An invalid timezone was specified.	adjust-time-to-timezone(xs:time("01:01:01"), xs:dayTimeDuration("PT20H"))
FOER0000	Error triggered by the fn:error() function.	error()
FOFD1340	The picture string passed to fn:format-date(), fn:format-time() or fn:format-dateTime() is invalid.	format-date(current-date(), "[ ]")
FOFD1350	The picture string passed to fn:format-date(), fn:format-time() or fn:format-dateTime() specifies a non-available component.	format-time(current-time(), "[Y2]")
FONS0004	A function has a QName as argument that specifies an unbound prefix.	resolve-QName("x:e", <e/>)
FORG0001	A value cannot be cast to the required target type.	xs:integer("A")1 + <x>a</x>
FORG0002	The URI passed to fn:resolve-URI() is invalid.	resolve-URI(":")
FORG0003	fn:zero-or-one() was called with more than one item.	zero-or-one((1, 2))
FORG0004	fn:one-or-more() was called with zero items.	one-or-more(())
FORG0005	fn:exactly-one() was called with zero or more than one item.	exactly-one((1, 2))
FORG0006	A wrong argument type was specified in a function call.	sum((1, "string"))
FORG0008	The arguments passed to fn:dateTime() have different timezones.	dateTime(xs:date("2001-01-01+01:01"), current-time())
FORX0001	A function specifies an invalid regular expression flag.	matches('input', 'query', 'invalid')

FORX0002	A function specifies an invalid regular expression.	<code>matches('input', '[')</code>
FORX0003	A regular expression matches an empty string.	<code>tokenize('input', '?.?')</code>
FORX0004	The replacement string of a regular expression is invalid.	<code>replace("input", "match", "\\")</code>
FOTY0012	An item has no typed value.	<code>count#1</code>
FOTY0013	Functions items cannot be atomized, have no defined equality, and have no string representation.	<code>data(false#0)</code>
FOTY0014	Function items have no string representation.	<code>string(map {})</code>
FOTY0015	Function items cannot be compared.	<code>deep-equal(false#0, true#0)</code>
FOUT1170	Function argument cannot be used to retrieve a text resource.	<code>unparsed-text(':')</code>
FOUT1190	Encoding to retrieve a text resource is invalid or not supported.	<code>unparsed-text('file.txt', 'InvalidEncoding')</code>

## Serialization Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: `err`
- Codes: `SEPM`, `SERE`, `SESU`

Code	Description	Examples
SESU0007	The specified encoding is not supported.	<code>declare option output:encoding "xyz"; 1</code>
SEPM0009	<code>omit-xml-declaration</code> is set to <code>yes</code> , and <code>standalone</code> has a value other than <code>omit</code> .	
SEPM0010	<code>method</code> is set to <code>xml</code> , <code>undeclare-prefixes</code> is set to <code>yes</code> , and <code>version</code> is set to <code>1.0</code> .	
SERE0014	<code>method</code> is set to <code>html</code> , and an invalid HTML character is found.	
SERE0015	<code>method</code> is set to <code>html</code> , and a closing bracket ( <code>&gt;</code> ) appears inside a processing instruction.	
SEPM0016	A specified parameter is unknown or has an invalid value.	<code>declare option output:indent "nope"; 1</code>

## Update Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: `err`
- Codes: `FOUP`, `XUDY`, `XUST`, `XUTY`

Code	Description	Examples
FOUP0001	The first argument of <code>fn:put()</code> must be a document node or element.	<code>fn:put(text { 1 }, 'file.txt')</code>
FOUP0002	The second argument of <code>fn:put()</code> is not a valid URI.	<code>fn:put(&lt;a/&gt;, '//')</code>

XQuery Errors

XUDY0009	The target node of a replace expression needs a parent in order to be replaced.	<pre>replace node &lt;target/&gt; with &lt;new/&gt;</pre>
XUDY0014	The expression updated by the modify clause was not created by the copy clause.	<pre>let \$a := doc('a') return copy \$b := \$a modify delete node \$a/* return \$b</pre>
XUDY0015	In a rename expression, a target is renamed more than once.	<pre>let \$a := &lt;xml/&gt; return (rename node \$a as 'a', rename node \$a as 'b')</pre>
XUDY0016	In a replace expression, a target is replaced more than once.	<pre>let \$a := &lt;x&gt;x&lt;/x&gt;/node() return (replace node \$a with &lt;a/&gt;, replace node \$a with &lt;nullb/&gt;)&lt;/code&gt;</pre>
XUDY0017	In a replace value of expression, a target is replaced more than once.	<pre>let \$a := &lt;x/&gt; return (replace value of node \$a with 'a', replace value of node \$a with 'a')</pre>
XUDY0021	The resulting update expression contains duplicate attributes.	<pre>copy \$c := &lt;x a='a' /&gt; modify insert node attribute a {""} into \$c return \$c</pre>
XUDY0023	The resulting update expression conflicts with existing namespaces.	<pre>rename node &lt;a:ns xmlns:a='uri' /&gt; as QName('URI', 'a:ns')</pre>
XUDY0024	New namespaces conflict with each other.	<pre>copy \$n := &lt;x/&gt; modify (insert node attribute { QName('uri1', 'a') } { "" } into \$n, insert node attribute { QName('uri2', 'a') } { "" } into \$n) return \$n</pre>
XUDY0027	Target of an update expression is an empty sequence.	<pre>insert node &lt;x/&gt; into ()</pre>
XUDY0029	The target of an update expression has no parent node.	<pre>insert node &lt;new/&gt; before &lt;target/&gt;</pre>
XUDY0030	Attributes cannot be inserted before or after the child of a document node.	<pre>insert node &lt;e a='a' /&gt;/@a after document { &lt;e/&gt; }/*</pre>
XUDY0031	Multiple calls to fn:put() address the same URI.	<pre>for \$i in 1 to 3 return put(&lt;a/&gt;, 'file.txt')</pre>
XUST0001	No updating expression is allowed here.	<pre>delete node /, "finished."</pre>
XUST0002	An updating expression is expected in the modify clause or an updating function.	<pre>copy \$a := &lt;x/&gt; modify 1 return \$a</pre>
XUST0003	The revalidation mode was declared more than once.	<pre>declare revalidation ...</pre>
XUST0026	The query contains a revalidate expression (revalidation is not supported by BaseX).	<pre>declare revalidation ...</pre>
XUST0028	no return type may be specified in an updating function.	<pre>declare updating function local:x() as item() { () }; ()</pre>
XUTY0004	New attributes to be inserted must directly follow the root node.	<pre>insert node (&lt;a/&gt;, attribute a {""}) into &lt;a/&gt;</pre>
XUTY0005	A single element or document node is expected as target of an insert expression.	<pre>insert node &lt;new/&gt; into attribute a { "" }</pre>

XUTY0006	A single element, text, comment or processing instruction is expected as target of an insert before/after expression.	insert node <new/> after attribute a { " " }
XUTY0007	Only nodes can be deleted.	delete node "string"
XUTY0008	A single element, text, attribute, comment or processing instruction is expected as target of a replace expression.	replace node document { <a/> } with <nullb/></code>
XUTY0010	In a replace expression, in which no attributes are targeted, the replacing nodes must not be attributes as well.	replace node <a><nullb/></a>/b with attribute size { 1 }</code>
XUTY0011	In the replace expression, in which attributes are targeted, the replacing nodes must be attributes as well.	replace node <e a=""/>/@a with <a/>
XUTY0012	In a rename expression, the target nodes must be an element, attribute or processing instruction.	rename node text { 1 } as <x/>
XUTY0013	An expression in the copy clause must return a single node.	copy \$c := (<a/>, <nullb/>) modify () return \$c</code>
XUTY0022	An attribute must not be inserted into a document node.	insert node <e a=""/>/@a into document {'a'}

## Full-Text Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors>
- Namespace prefix: `err`
- Codes: FTDY, FTST

Code	Description	Examples
FTDY0016	The specified weight value is out of range.	'a' contains text 'a' weight { 1001 }
FTDY0017	The <code>not in</code> operator contains a <i>string exclude</i> .	'a' contains text 'a' not in (ftnot 'a')
FTDY0020	The search term uses an invalid wildcard syntax.	'a' contains text '.{' using wildcards
FTST0007	The full-text expression contains an ignore option (the ignore option is not supported by BaseX).	'a' contains text 'a' without content 'x'
FTST0008	The specified stop word file could not be opened or processed.	'a' contains text 'a' using stop words at 'unknown.txt'
FTST0009	The specified language is not supported.	'a' contains text 'a' using language 'aaa'
FTST0018	The specified thesaurus file could not be opened or processed.	'a' contains text 'a' using thesaurus at 'aaa'
FTST0019	A match option was specified more than once.	'a' contains text 'a' using stemming using stemming

## BaseX Errors

- Namespace URI: <http://basex.org>
- Namespace prefix: `basex`

Code	Description	Examples
------	-------------	----------

## XQuery Errors

annotation	Annotation errors.	<code>%basex:xyz function() { 123 }</code>
doc	The argument specified via <code>fn:doc</code> must yield a single document.	<code>doc('db-collection')</code>
error	Generic error, which is e.g. raised by <b>Java bindings</b> .	<code>import module namespace qm='java:org.basex.query.func.QueryModuleTest'</code>
function	Function items cannot be cached.	<code>db:output(true#0)</code>
http	The function was called outside an HTTP servlet context.	<code>session:get('abc')</code>
options	The specified database option is unknown.	<code>declare option db:xyz 'no'; 1</code>
overflow	Stack overflow.	<code>declare function local:a() { local:b() + 1 };declare function local:b() { local:a() + 2 };local:a()</code>
permissions	The current user has insufficient <b>permissions</b> to open a database, update nodes, etc.	<code>db:get('admin')</code>
restxq	Errors related to <b>RESTXQ</b> .	<code>%restxq:GET('x')</code>
update	BaseX-specific update errors.	<code>&lt;a/&gt; update db:output('bla')</code>

Additional, module-specific error codes are listed in the descriptions of the query modules.

---

# Part VII. XQuery Modules

---

---

# Chapter 34. Admin Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for performing admin-centric operations such as managing database users and log data.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/admin` namespace, which is statically bound to the `admin` prefix.

## Database Logs

### admin:logs

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>admin:logs() as element(file)*</code> , <code>admin:logs(\$date as xs:string) as element(entry)*</code> , <code>admin:logs(\$date as xs:string, \$merge as xs:boolean) as element(entry)*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns <b>Logging</b> data compiled by the database or HTTP server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If no argument is specified, a list of all log files will be returned, including the file size and date.</li><li>• If a <code>\$date</code> is specified, the contents of a single log file will be returned.</li><li>• If <code>\$merge</code> is set to true, related log entries will be merged. Please note that the merge might not be 100% successful, as log entries may be ambiguous.</li></ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>admin:logs()</code> may return <code>&lt;file size="834367"/&gt;2015-01-23&lt;/file&gt;</code> if a single log file exists.</li><li>• <code>admin:logs() ! admin:logs(.)</code> lists the contents of all log files.</li></ul>

### admin:write-log

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>admin:write-log(\$text as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>admin:write-log(\$text as xs:string, \$type as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Writes a string to the database logs, along with current user data (timestamp, username). An optional log <code>\$type</code> can be specified. If omitted, the log type is <code>INFO</code> . If the function is called from a database client, the IP will be logged. Otherwise, the string <code>SERVER</code> will be logged.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>type</code> : Type string contains whitespaces.

### admin:delete-logs

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>admin:delete-logs(\$date as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Deletes the log entries from the specified <code>\$date</code>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>today</code> : Today's log file cannot be deleted. <code>delete</code> : An error occurred while deleting a log file.

## Database Sessions

### admin:sessions

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>admin:sessions() as element(session)*</code>
-------------------	--

---

<b>Summary</b>	Returns an element sequence with all currently opened database sessions, including the username, address (IP:port) and an optionally opened database. The output of this function and the <code>SHOW SESSIONS</code> command is similar.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>admin:sessions()</code> may e.g. return <code>&lt;session user="admin" address="127.0.0.1:6286" database="factbook"/&gt;</code></li> </ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>delete</code>	An error occurred while deleting a log file.
<code>today</code>	Today's log file cannot be deleted.
<code>type</code>	Type string contains whitespaces.

## Changelog

### Version 9.2

- Updated: `admin:write-log`: type string may contain more characters

### Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.3

- Updated: `admin:write-log`: optional log type added

### Version 8.2

- Added: `admin:delete-logs`

### Version 8.0

- Added: `admin:write-log`
- Deleted: `admin:users` (renamed to `user:list-details`).

### Version 7.8.2

- Updated: `admin:users`: md5-encoded password added to output.
- Updated: `admin:logs`: represent name of log files as string value; `$merge` argument added.

The Module was introduced with Version 7.5.



---

# Chapter 35. Archive Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to handle archives (including ePub, Open Office, JAR, and many other formats). New ZIP and GZIP archives can be created, existing archives can be updated, and the archive entries can be listed and extracted. The `archive:extract-binary` function includes an example for writing the contents of an archive to disk.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/archive` namespace, which is statically bound to the `archive` prefix.

## Content Handling

### archive:entries

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>archive:entries(\$archive as xs:base64Binary) as element(archive:entry)*,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the entry descriptors of the specified <code>\$archive</code> . A descriptor contains the following attributes, provided that they are available in the archive format: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>size</code>: original file size</li><li><code>last-modified</code>: timestamp, formatted as <code>xs:dateTime</code></li><li><code>compressed-size</code>: compressed file size</li></ul> An example: <pre>&lt;archive:entry size="1840" last-modified="2009-03-20T03:30:32"   compressed-size="672"&gt;   doc/index.html &lt;/archive:entry&gt;</pre>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error: archive creation failed.</code>
<b>Examples</b>	Sums up the file sizes of all entries of a JAR file: <pre>sum(archive:entries(file:read-binary('zip.zip'))/@size)</pre>

### archive:options

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>archive:options(\$archive as xs:base64Binary) as map(*),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the options of the specified <code>\$archive</code> in the format specified by <code>archive:create</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>format: The archive format is not supported.</code> <code>error: archive creation failed.</code>
<b>Examples</b>	A standard ZIP archive will return the following options: <pre>map {   "format": "zip",   "algorithm": "deflate" }</pre>

### archive:extract-text

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>archive:extract-text(\$archive as xs:base64Binary) as xs:string*,</code> <code>archive:extract-text(\$archive as xs:base64Binary, \$entries</code> <code>as item(*) as xs:string*, archive:extract-text(\$archive as</code>
-------------------	---

	<code>xs:base64Binary, \$entries as item()*, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Extracts entries of the specified <code>\$archive</code> and returns them as texts. The returned entries can be limited via <code>\$entries</code> . The format of the argument is the same as for <code>archive:create</code> (attributes will be ignored). The encoding of the input files can be specified via <code>\$encoding</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>encode</code> : the specified encoding is invalid or not supported, or the string conversion failed. Invalid XML characters will be ignored if <code>CHECKSTRINGS</code> is turned off. <code>error</code> : archive creation failed.
<b>Examples</b>	The following expression extracts all <code>.txt</code> files from an archive: <pre>let \$archive := file:read-binary("documents.zip") for \$entry in archive:entries(\$archive)[ends-with(., '.txt')] return archive:extract-text(\$archive, \$entry)</pre>

## archive:extract-binary

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>archive:extract-binary(\$archive as xs:base64Binary) as xs:base64Binary*, archive:extract-binary(\$archive as xs:base64Binary, \$entries as item()*) as xs:base64Binary*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Extracts entries of the specified <code>\$archive</code> and returns them as binaries. The returned entries can be limited via <code>\$entries</code> . The format of the argument is the same as for <code>archive:create</code> (attributes will be ignored).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : archive creation failed.
<b>Examples</b>	This example unzips all files of an archive to the current directory: <pre>let \$archive := file:read-binary('archive.zip') let \$entries := archive:entries(\$archive) let \$contents := archive:extract-binary(\$archive) return for-each-pair(\$entries, \$contents, function(\$entry, \$content) {   file:create-dir(replace(\$entry, "[^/]+\$", "")),   file:write-binary(\$entry, \$content) })</pre>

## Updates

### archive:create

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>archive:create(\$entries as item(), \$contents as item()*) as xs:base64Binary, archive:create(\$entries as item(), \$contents as item()*, \$options as map(*)) as xs:base64Binary,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a new archive from the specified entries and contents. The <code>\$entries</code> argument contains meta information required to create new entries. All items may either be of type <code>xs:string</code> , representing the entry name, or <code>element(archive:entry)</code> , containing the name as text node and additional, optional attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>last-modified</code>: timestamp, specified as <code>xs:dateTime</code> (default: current time)</li> <li><code>compression-level</code>: 0-9, 0 = uncompressed (default: 8)</li> <li><code>encoding</code>: for textual entries (default: UTF-8)</li> </ul> <p>An example:</p> <pre>&lt;archive:entry last-modified='2011-11-11T11:11:11'   compression-level='8'   encoding='US-ASCII'&gt;hello.txt&lt;/archive:entry&gt;</pre> <p>The actual <code>\$contents</code> must be <code>xs:string</code> or <code>xs:base64Binary</code> items. The <code>\$options</code> parameter contains archiving options:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>format</code> : allowed values are <code>zip</code> and <code>gzip</code>. <code>zip</code> is the default.</li> <li>• <code>algorithm</code> : allowed values are <code>deflate</code> and <code>stored</code> (for the <code>zip</code> format). <code>deflate</code> is the default.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>number</code>: the number of entries and contents differs.  <code>format</code>: the specified option or its value is invalid or not supported.  <code>descriptor</code>: entry descriptors contain invalid entry names, timestamps or compression levels.  <code>encode</code>: the specified encoding is invalid or not supported, or the string conversion failed. Invalid XML characters will be ignored if <code>CHECKSTRINGS</code> is turned off.  <code>single</code>: the chosen archive format only allows single entries.  <code>error</code>: archive creation failed.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<p>The following one-liner creates an archive <code>archive.zip</code> with one file <code>file.txt</code>:</p> <pre>archive:create(&lt;archive:entry&gt;file.txt&lt;/archive:entry&gt;, 'Hello World')</pre> <p>The following function creates an archive <code>mp3.zip</code>, which contains all MP3 files of a local directory:</p> <pre>let \$path := 'audio/' let \$files := file:list(\$path, true(), '*.mp3') let \$zip := archive:create(\$files,     for \$file in \$files         return file:read-binary(\$path    \$file) ) return file:write-binary('mp3.zip', \$zip)</pre>

## archive:update

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre>archive:update(\$archive as xs:base64Binary, \$entries as item()*,     \$contents as item()*) as xs:base64Binary</pre>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Creates an updated version of the specified <code>\$archive</code> with new or replaced entries. The format of <code>\$entries</code> and <code>\$contents</code> is the same as for <code>archive:create</code>.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>number</code>: the number of entries and contents differs.  <code>descriptor</code>: entry descriptors contain invalid entry names, timestamps, compression levels or encodings.  <code>encode</code>: the specified encoding is invalid or not supported, or the string conversion failed. Invalid XML characters will be ignored if <code>CHECKSTRINGS</code> is turned off.  <code>modify</code>: the entries of the given archive cannot be modified.  <code>error</code>: archive creation failed.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<p>This example replaces texts in a Word document:</p> <pre>declare variable \$input := "HelloWorld.docx"; declare variable \$output := "HelloUniverse.docx"; declare variable \$doc := "word/document.xml";  let \$archive := file:read-binary(\$input) let \$entry :=     copy \$c := fn:parse-xml(archive:extract-text(\$archive, \$doc))     modify replace value of node \$c//*[text() = "HELLO WORLD!"] with     "HELLO UNIVERSE!"     return fn:serialize(\$c) let \$updated := archive:update(\$archive, \$doc, \$entry) return file:write-binary(\$output, \$updated)</pre>

## archive:delete

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre>archive:delete(\$archive as xs:base64Binary, \$entries as item()*) as xs:base64Binary</pre>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Deletes entries from an <code>\$archive</code>. The format of <code>\$entries</code> is the same as for <code>archive:create</code>.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>modify</code>: the entries of the given archive cannot be modified.  <code>error</code>: archive creation failed.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<p>This example deletes all HTML files in an archive and creates a new file:</p>

```
let $zip := file:read-binary('old.zip')
let $entries := archive:entries($zip)[matches(., '\.x?html?$', 'i')]
return file:write-binary('new.zip', archive:delete($zip, $entries))
```

## Convenience

### archive:create-from

<b>Signatures</b>	archive:create-from(\$path as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary, archive:create-from(\$path as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as xs:base64Binary,archive:create-from(\$path as xs:string, \$options as map(*), \$entries as item(*) as xs:base64Binary
<b>Summary</b>	This convenience function creates an archive from all files in the specified directory \$path.The \$options parameter contains archiving options, and the files to be archived can be limited via \$entries. The format of the two last arguments is identical to archive:create, but two additional options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• recursive: parse all files recursively (default: true; ignored if entries are specified via the last argument).</li> <li>• root-dir: use name of supplied directory as archive root directory (default: false).</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	file:no-dir: the specified path does not point to a directory.file:is-dir: one of the specified entries points to a directory.file:not-found: a specified entry does not exist.error: archive creation failed.
<b>Examples</b>	This example writes the files of a user's home directory to archive.zip: <pre>let \$zip := archive:create-from('/home/user/') return file:write-binary('archive.zip', \$zip)</pre>

### archive:extract-to

<b>Signatures</b>	archive:extract-to(\$path as xs:string, \$archive as xs:base64Binary) as empty-sequence(),archive:extract-to(\$path as xs:string, \$archive as xs:base64Binary, \$entries as item(*) as empty-sequence()
<b>Summary</b>	This convenience function writes files of an \$archive directly to the specified directory \$path.The archive entries to be written can be restricted via \$entries. The format of the argument is the same as for archive:create (attributes will be ignored).
<b>Errors</b>	error: archive creation failed.
<b>Examples</b>	The following expression unzips all files of an archive to the current directory: <pre>archive:extract-to('.', file:read-binary('archive.zip'))</pre>

### archive:write

<b>Signatures</b>	archive:write(\$path as xs:string, \$entries as item(), \$contents as item(*) as xs:base64Binary,archive:write(\$path as xs:string, \$entries as item(), \$contents as item(*) as xs:base64Binary, \$options as map(*)) as xs:base64Binary,
<b>Summary</b>	This convenience function creates a new archive from the specified \$entries and \$contents and writes it disk. See archive:create for more details.
<b>Errors</b>	number: the number of entries and contents differs.format: the specified option or its value is invalid or not supported.descriptor: entry descriptors contain invalid entry names, timestamps or compression levels.encode: the specified encoding is invalid or not supported, or the string conversion failed. Invalid XML characters will be ignored if CHECKSTRINGS is turned off.single: the chosen archive format only allows single entries.error: archive creation failed.

**Examples** | All mp3 files from a directory are zipped and written to a file, along with an info file:

```
let $files := file:children('music')[ends-with(., 'mp3')]
return archive:write(
  'music.zip',
  ('info.txt', $files ! file:name(.)),
  ('Archive with MP3 files', $files ! file:read-binary(.))
)
```

## Errors

Code	Description
descriptor	Entry descriptors contain invalid entry names, timestamps or compression levels.
encode	The specified encoding is invalid or not supported, or the string conversion failed. Invalid XML characters will be ignored if CHECKSTRINGS is turned off.
error	processing failed.
format	The archive format or the specified option is invalid or not supported.
modify	The entries of the given archive cannot be modified.
number	The number of specified entries and contents differs.
single	The chosen archive format only allows single entries.

## Changelog

Version 9.6

- Added: `archive:write`

Version 9.0

- Updated: `archive:create-from`: options added
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

Version 8.5

- Updated: `archive:options`: map returned instead of element

Version 8.3

- Added: `archive:create-from`, `archive:extract-to` (replaces `archive:write`)

The module was introduced with Version 7.3.

---

# Chapter 36. Array Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for manipulating arrays, which has been introduced with **XQuery 3.1**.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/array` namespace, which is statically bound to the `array` prefix.

## Functions

### array:size

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:size(\$input as array(*)) as xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the number of members in <code>\$array</code> . Note that because an array is an item, the <code>fn:count</code> function when applied to an array always returns 1.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>array:size(array { 1 to 10 })</code> returns 10.</li><li>• <code>array:size([1 to 10])</code> returns 1, because the array contains a single sequence with 10 integers.</li></ul>

### array:get

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:get(\$array as array(*), \$position as xs:integer) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <code>\$array</code> member at the specified <code>\$position</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: <code>\$position</code> is not in the range 1 to <code>array:size(\$array)</code> inclusive.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>array:get(array { reverse(1 to 5) }, 5)</code> returns the value 1.</li></ul>

### array:append

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:append(\$array as array(*), \$member as item()) as array(*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a copy of <code>\$array</code> with a new <code>\$member</code> attached.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>array:append([], 'member1')</code> returns the array <code>["member1"]</code>.</li></ul>

### array:subarray

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:subarray(\$array as array(*), \$position as xs:integer) as array(*)</code> , <code>array:subarray(\$array as array(*), \$position as xs:integer, \$length as xs:integer) as array(*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Constructs a new array with with <code>\$length</code> members of <code>\$array</code> beginning from the specified <code>\$position</code> . The two-argument version of the function returns the same result as the three-argument version when called with <code>\$length</code> equal to the value of <code>array:size(\$array) - \$position + 1</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: <code>\$position</code> is less than one, or if <code>\$position + \$length</code> is greater than <code>array:size(\$array) + 1</code> . FOAY0002: <code>\$length</code> is less than zero.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>array:subarray(["a", "b", "c"], 2)</code> returns the array <code>["b", "c"]</code>.</li></ul>

### array:put

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:put(\$array as array(*), \$position as xs:integer, \$member as item()) as array(*)</code>
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Returns a copy of \$array with \$member replaced at the specified \$position. Equivalent to \$array => array:remove(\$position) => array:insert-before(\$position, \$member).
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: \$position is not in the range 1 to array:size(\$array) inclusive.
<b>Examples</b>	• array:put(["a", "b", "c"], 2, "d") returns the array ["a", "d", "c"].

## array:remove

<b>Signatures</b>	array:remove(\$array as array(*), \$positions as xs:integer*) as array(*)
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a copy of \$array without the member at the specified \$positions.
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: A position is not in the range 1 to array:size(\$array) inclusive.
<b>Examples</b>	• array:append(["a"], 1) returns the array [1].

## array:insert-before

<b>Signatures</b>	array:insert-before(\$array as array(*), \$position as xs:integer, \$member as item(*) as array(*)
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a copy of \$array with one new \$member at the specified \$position. Setting \$position to the value array:size(\$array) + 1 yields the same result as array:append(\$array, \$insert).
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: \$position is not in the range 1 to array:size(\$array) + 1 inclusive.
<b>Examples</b>	• array:insert-before(["a"], 1, "b") returns the array ["b", "a"].

## array:head

<b>Signatures</b>	array:head(\$array as array(*)) as item(*)
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the first member of \$array. This function is equivalent to the expression \$array(1).
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: The array is empty.
<b>Examples</b>	• array:head(["a", "b"]) returns "a". • array:head(["a", "b"], ["c", "d"]) returns the array ["a", "b"].

## array:tail

<b>Signatures</b>	array:tail(\$array as array(*)) as array(*)
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a new array with all members except the first from \$array. This function is equivalent to the expression array:remove(\$array, 1).
<b>Errors</b>	FOAY0001: The array is empty.
<b>Examples</b>	• array:insert-before(["a"], 1, "b") returns the array ["b", "a"].

## array:reverse

<b>Signatures</b>	array:reverse(\$array as array(*)) as array(*)
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a new array with all members of \$array in reverse order.
<b>Examples</b>	• array:reverse(array { 1 to 3 }) returns the array [3, 2, 1].

## array:join

<b>Signatures</b>	array:join(\$arrays as array(*)*) as array(*)
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Concatenates the contents of several <code>\$arrays</code> into a single array.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>array:join()</code> returns the array <code>[]</code>.</li> <li>• <code>array:join((1 to 3) ! array { . })</code> returns the array <code>[1, 2, 3]</code>.</li> </ul>

## array:flatten

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:flatten(\$items as item(*)*) as item(*)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Recursively flattens all arrays that occur in the supplied <code>\$items</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>array:flatten(["a", "b"])</code> returns the sequence "a", "b".</li> <li>• <code>array:flatten([1, [2, 3], 4])</code> returns the sequence 1, 2, 3, 4.</li> </ul>

## array:for-each

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:for-each(\$array as array(*), \$function as function(item(*)*) as item(*)*) as array(*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a new array, in which each member is computed by applying <code>\$function</code> to the corresponding member of <code>\$array</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<p>The following query returns the array <code>[2, 3, 4, 5, 6]</code>:</p> <pre>array:for-each(   array { 1 to 5 },   function(\$i) { \$i + 1 } )</pre>

## array:filter

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:filter(\$array as array(*), \$function as function(item(*)*) as xs:boolean) as array(*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a new array with those members of <code>\$array</code> for which <code>\$function</code> returns <code>true</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<p>The following query returns the array <code>[0, 1, 3]</code>:</p> <pre>array:filter(   array { 0, 1, -2, 3, -4 },   function(\$i) { \$i &gt; 0 } )</pre>

## array:fold-left

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:fold-left(\$array as array(*), \$zero as item(*)*, \$function as function(item(*)*, item(*)*) as item(*)*) as item(*)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Evaluates the supplied <code>\$function</code> cumulatively on successive members of the supplied <code>\$array</code> from left to right and using <code>\$zero</code> as first argument.
<b>Examples</b>	<p>The following query returns 55 (the sum of the integers 1 to 10):</p> <pre>array:fold-left(   array { 1 to 10 },   0,   function(\$a, \$b) { \$a + \$b } )</pre>

## array:fold-right

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>array:fold-right(\$array as array(*), \$zero as item(*)*, \$function as function(item(*)*, item(*)*) as item(*)*) as item(*)*</code>
-------------------	--



**Summary** | Evaluates the supplied `$function` cumulatively on successive members of the supplied `$array` from right to left and using `$zero` as first argument.

**Examples** | The following query is equivalent to the expression `array:reverse(array { 1 to 5 })`:

```
array {
  array:fold-right(
    array { 1 to 5 },
    (),
    function($a, $b) { $b, $a }
  )
}
```

## array:for-each-pair

**Signatures** | `array:for-each-pair($array1 as array(*), $array2 as array(*), $function as function(item(*) as item(*) as array(*))`

**Summary** | Returns a new array obtained by evaluating the supplied `$function` for each pair of members at the same position in `$array1` and `$array2`.

**Examples** | The following query returns the array `[ 5, 7, 9 ]`:

```
array:for-each-pair(
  array { 1 to 3 },
  array { 4 to 6 },
  function($a + $b) { $a + $b }
)
```

## array:sort

**Signatures** | `array:sort($array as array(*)) as array(*), array:sort($array as array(*), $collation as xs:string?) as array(*), array:sort($array as array(*), $collation as xs:string?, $key as function(item(*) as xs:anyAtomicType*) as array(*))`

**Summary** | Returns a new array with sorted `$array` members, using an optional `$collation`. If a `$key` function is supplied, it will be applied on all array members. The items of the resulting values will be sorted using the semantics of the `lt` expression.

- Examples**
- `array:sort(array { reverse(1 to 3) })` returns `[1, 2, 3]`
  - `array:sort([3,-2,1], (), abs#1)` returns `[1, -2, 3]`
  - `array:sort([1,2,3], (), function($x) { -$x })` returns `[3, 2, 1]`
  - `array:sort((1, 'a'))` returns an error (strings and integers cannot be compared)

## Errors

Code	Description
FOAY0001	The specified index extends beyonds the bounds of an array.
FOAY0002	The specified length is less than zero.

## Changelog

Version 8.6

- Updated: `array:put` collation argument was inserted between first and second argument.

Version 8.5

- Added: `array:put`

Version 8.4

- Removed: `array:serialize` (use `fn:serialize` instead)

Introduced with Version 8.0.

---

# Chapter 37. Binary Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to process binary data, including extracting subparts, searching, basic binary operations and conversion between binary and structured forms.

This module is based on the **EXPath Binary Module**.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://expath.org/ns/binary` namespace, which is statically bound to the `bin` prefix.

## Constants and Conversions

### bin:hex

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:hex(\$in as xs:string?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the binary form of the set of octets written as a sequence of (ASCII) hex digits ([0-9A-Fa-f]). <code>\$in</code> will be effectively zero-padded from the left to generate an integral number of octets, i.e. an even number of hexadecimal digits. If <code>\$in</code> is an empty string, then the result will be an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> with no embedded data. Byte order in the result follows (per-octet) character order in the string. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>non-numeric-character</code> : the input cannot be parsed as a hexadecimal number.
<b>Examples</b>	<code>string(bin:hex('11223F4E'))</code> yields <code>ESI/Tg==</code> . <code>string(xs:hexBinary(bin:hex('FF')))</code> yields <code>FF</code> .

### bin:bin

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:bin(\$in as xs:string?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the binary form of the set of octets written as a sequence of (8-wise) (ASCII) binary digits ([01]). <code>\$in</code> will be effectively zero-padded from the left to generate an integral number of octets. If <code>\$in</code> is an empty string, then the result will be an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> with no embedded data. Byte order in the result follows (per-octet) character order in the string. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>non-numeric-character</code> : the input cannot be parsed as a binary number.
<b>Examples</b>	<code>string(bin:bin('1101000111010101'))</code> yields <code>0dU=</code> . <code>string(xs:hexBinary(bin:bin('1000111010101')))</code> yields <code>11D5</code> .

### bin:octal

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:octal(\$in as xs:string?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the binary form of the set of octets written as a sequence of (ASCII) octal digits ([0-7]). <code>\$in</code> will be effectively zero-padded from the left to generate an integral number of octets. If <code>\$in</code> is an empty string, then the result will be an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> with no embedded data. Byte order in the result follows (per-octet) character order in the string. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>non-numeric-character</code> : the input cannot be parsed as an octal number.
<b>Examples</b>	<code>string(xs:hexBinary(bin:octal('11223047')))</code> yields <code>252627</code> .

## bin:to-octets

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:to-octets(\$in as xs:base64Binary) as xs:integer*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns binary data as a sequence of octets. If <code>\$in</code> is a zero length binary data then the empty sequence is returned. Octets are returned as integers from 0 to 255.

## bin:from-octets

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:from-octets(\$in as xs:integer*) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts a sequence of octets into binary data. Octets are integers from 0 to 255. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns zero-sized binary data.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>octet-out-of-range</code> : one of the octets lies outside the range 0 - 255.

## Basic Operations

### bin:length

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:length(\$in as xs:base64Binary) as xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the size of binary data in octets.

### bin:part

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:part(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$offset as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?</code> , <code>bin:part(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$offset as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a section of binary data starting at the <code>\$offset</code> octet. If <code>\$size</code> is specified, the size of the returned binary data is <code>\$size</code> octets. If <code>\$size</code> is absent, all remaining data from <code>\$offset</code> is returned. The <code>\$offset</code> is zero based. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative. <code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset + size is out of range.
<b>Examples</b>	Test whether binary data starts with binary content consistent with a PDF file: <code>bin:part(\$data, 0, 4) eq bin:hex("25504446")</code> .

### bin:join

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:join(\$in as xs:base64Binary*) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> created by concatenating the items in the sequence <code>\$in</code> , in order. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns a binary item containing no data bytes.

### bin:insert-before

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:insert-before(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$offset as xs:integer, \$extra as xs:base64Binary?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns binary data consisting sequentially of the data from <code>\$in</code> up to and including the <code>\$offset - 1</code> octet, followed by all the data from <code>\$extra</code> , and then the remaining data from <code>\$in</code> . The <code>\$offset</code> is zero based. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset is out of range.

**bin:pad-left**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:pad-left(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?, bin:pad-left(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$size as xs:integer, \$octet as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> created by padding the input with <code>\$size</code> octets in front of the input. If <code>\$octet</code> is specified, the padding octets each have that value, otherwise they are zero. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative. <code>octet-out-of-range</code> : the specified octet lies outside the range 0-255.

**bin:pad-right**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:pad-right(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?, bin:pad-right(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$size as xs:integer, \$octet as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> created by padding the input with <code>\$size</code> octets after the input. If <code>\$octet</code> is specified, the padding octets each have that value, otherwise they are zero. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative. <code>octet-out-of-range</code> : the specified octet lies outside the range 0-255.

**bin:find**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:find(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$offset as xs:integer, \$search as xs:base64Binary) as xs:integer?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the first location of the binary search sequence in the input, or if not found, the empty sequence. The <code>\$offset</code> and the returned location are zero based. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset + size is out of range.

**Text Decoding and Encoding****bin:decode-string**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:decode-string(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string?, bin:decode-string(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$encoding as xs:string, \$offset as xs:integer) as xs:string?, bin:decode-string(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$encoding as xs:string, \$offset as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:string?,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Decodes binary data as a string in a given <code>\$encoding</code> . If <code>\$offset</code> and <code>\$size</code> are provided, the <code>\$size</code> octets from <code>\$offset</code> are decoded. If <code>\$offset</code> alone is provided, octets from <code>\$offset</code> to the end are decoded. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative. <code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset + size is out of range. <code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is unknown. <code>conversion-error</code> : an error or malformed input occurred during decoding the string.
<b>Examples</b>	Tests whether the binary data starts with binary content consistent with a PDF file: <code>bin:decode-string(\$data, 'UTF-8', 0, 4) eq '%PDF'</code> .

**bin:encode-string**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:encode-string(\$in as xs:string?, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Encodes a string into binary data using a given <code>\$encoding</code> . If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is unknown. <code>conversion-error</code> : an error or malformed input occurred during encoding the string.

## Packing and Unpacking of Numeric Values

The functions have an optional parameter `$octet-order` whose string value controls the order: Least-significant-first order is indicated by any of the values `least-significant-first`, `little-endian`, or `LE`. Most-significant-first order is indicated by any of the values `most-significant-first`, `big-endian`, or `BE`.

### `bin:pack-double`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:pack-double(\$in as xs:double) as xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>bin:pack-double(\$in as xs:double, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the 8-octet binary representation of a double value. Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown.

### `bin:pack-float`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:pack-float(\$in as xs:float) as xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>bin:pack-float(\$in as xs:float, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the 4-octet binary representation of a float value. Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown.

### `bin:pack-integer`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:pack-integer(\$in as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>bin:pack-integer(\$in as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the two-complement binary representation of an integer value treated as <code>\$size</code> octets long. Any 'excess' high-order bits are discarded. Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified. Specifying a <code>\$size</code> of zero yields an empty binary data.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown. <code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative.

### `bin:unpack-double`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:unpack-double(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer) as xs:double</code> , <code>bin:unpack-double(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:double</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Extracts the double value stored at the particular offset in binary data. Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified. The <code>\$offset</code> is zero based.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset is out of range. <code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown.

## bin:unpack-float

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:unpack-float(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer) as xs:float, bin:unpack-float(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:float</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Extracts the float value stored at the particular offset in binary data. Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified. The <code>\$offset</code> is zero based.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset + size is out of range. <code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown.

## bin:unpack-integer

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:unpack-integer(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:integer, bin:unpack-integer(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a signed integer value represented by the <code>\$size</code> octets starting from <code>\$offset</code> in the input binary representation. Necessary sign extension is performed (i.e. the result is negative if the high order bit is '1'). Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified. The <code>\$offset</code> is zero based. Specifying a <code>\$size</code> of zero yields the integer 0.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative. <code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset + size is out of range. <code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown.

## bin:unpack-unsigned-integer

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:unpack-unsigned-integer(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer) as xs:integer, bin:unpack-unsigned-integer(\$in as xs:base64Binary, \$offset as xs:integer, \$size as xs:integer, \$octet-order as xs:string) as xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an unsigned integer value represented by the <code>\$size</code> octets starting from <code>\$offset</code> in the input binary representation. Most-significant-octet-first number representation is assumed unless the <code>\$octet-order</code> parameter is specified. The <code>\$offset</code> is zero based. Specifying a <code>\$size</code> of zero yields the integer 0.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>negative-size</code> : the specified size is negative. <code>index-out-of-range</code> : the specified offset + size is out of range. <code>unknown-significance-order</code> : the specified octet order is unknown.

## Bitwise Operations

### bin:or

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:or(\$a as xs:base64Binary?, \$b as xs:base64Binary?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the "bitwise or" of two binary arguments. If either argument is the empty sequence, an empty sequence is returned.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>differing-length-arguments</code> : the input arguments are of differing length.

### bin:xor

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:xor(\$a as xs:base64Binary?, \$b as xs:base64Binary?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Returns the "bitwise xor" of two binary arguments.If either argument is the empty sequence, an empty sequence is returned.
<b>Errors</b>	differing-length-arguments: the input arguments are of differing length.

**bin:and**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:and(\$a as xs:base64Binary?, \$b as xs:base64Binary?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the "bitwise and" of two binary arguments.If either argument is the empty sequence, an empty sequence is returned.
<b>Errors</b>	differing-length-arguments: the input arguments are of differing length.

**bin:not**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:not(\$in as xs:base64Binary?) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the "bitwise not" of a binary argument.If the argument is the empty sequence, an empty sequence is returned.

**bin:shift**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>bin:shift(\$in as xs:base64Binary?, \$by as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Shifts bits in binary data.If <code>\$by</code> is zero, the result is identical to <code>\$in</code> . If <code>\$by</code> is positive then bits are shifted to the left. Otherwise, bits are shifted to the right. If the absolute value of <code>\$by</code> is greater than the bit-length of <code>\$in</code> then an all-zeros result is returned. The result always has the same size as <code>\$in</code> . The shifting is logical: zeros are placed into discarded bits. If the value of <code>\$in</code> is the empty sequence, the function returns an empty sequence.

**Errors**

Code	Description
differing-length-arguments	The arguments to a bitwise operation have different lengths.
index-out-of-range	An offset value is out of range.
negative-size	A size value is negative.
octet-out-of-range	An octet value lies outside the range 0-255.
non-numeric-character	Binary data cannot be parsed as number.
unknown-encoding	An encoding is not supported.
conversion-error	An error or malformed input during converting a string.
unknown-significance-order	An octet-order value is unknown.

**Changelog**

Introduced with Version 7.8.



---

# Chapter 38. Client Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to access BaseX server instances from XQuery. With this module, you can execute database commands and evaluate XQuery expressions.

Please note that the client module should always be used to address independent BaseX server instances. You can create deadlocks if you evaluate a query with a server instance, and if you are addressing the same server instance in your query. See the following example:

```
(: Retrieve documents from database :)
let $client-id := client:connect('localhost', 1984, 'admin', '...')
let $docs := client:query($client-id, 'db:get("conflict")')
(: Create database with same name :)
return db:create('conflict', $docs, $docs ! db:path(.))
```

The read-only query cannot be processed, because the `conflict` database is currently write-locked by the main query. See [Transaction Management](#) for more background information.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/client` namespace, which is statically bound to the `client` prefix.

## Functions

### client:connect

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>client:connect(\$host as xs:string, \$port as xs:integer, \$user as xs:string, \$password as xs:string) as xs:anyURI,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	This function establishes a connection to a remote BaseX server, creates a new client session, and returns a session id. The parameter <code>\$host</code> is the name of the database server, <code>\$port</code> specifies the server port, and <code>\$user</code> and <code>\$password</code> represent the login data.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>connect</code> : an error occurs while creating the session (possible reasons: server not available, access denied).

### client:execute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>client:execute(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$command as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	This function executes a <b>command</b> and returns the result as a string. The parameter <code>\$id</code> contains the session ID returned by <code>client:connect</code> . The <code>\$command</code> argument represents a single command, which will be executed by the server.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : an I/O error occurs while transferring data from or to the server. <code>command</code> : an error occurs while executing a command.
<b>Examples</b>	The following query creates a new database <code>TEST</code> on a remote BaseX server: <pre>client:connect('basex.server.org', 8080, 'admin', '...') !   client:execute(., 'create database TEST')</pre>

### client:info

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>client:info(\$id as xs:anyURI) as xs:string</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	This function returns an information string, created by the last call of <code>client:execute</code> . <code>\$id</code> specifies the session id.
----------------	--

## client:query

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>client:query(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$query as xs:string) as item()*</code> , <code>client:query(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$query as xs:string, \$bindings as map(*)) as item()*</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Evaluates a query and returns the result as sequence. The parameter <code>\$id</code> contains the session id returned by <code>client:connect</code> , and <code>\$query</code> represents the query string, which will be evaluated by the server. Variables and the context item can be declared via <code>\$bindings</code> . The specified keys must be QNames or strings:
----------------	---

- If a key is a QName, it will be directly adopted as variable name.
- If a key is a string, it may be prefixed with a dollar sign. A namespace can be specified using the **Clark Notation**. If the specified string is empty, the value will be bound to the context item.

<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : an I/O error occurs while transferring data from or to the server. <code>query</code> : an error occurs while evaluating a query, and if the original error cannot be extracted from the returned error string. <code>function</code> : function items (including maps and arrays) cannot be returned.
---------------	---

<b>Examples</b>	The following query sends a query on a local server instance, binds the integer 123 to the variable <code>\$n</code> and returns 246:
-----------------	---

```
let $c := client:connect('localhost', 1984, 'admin', '...')
return client:query($c, "declare variable $n external; $n * 2", map
{ 'n': 123 })
```

The following query performs a query on a first server, the results of which are passed on to a second server:

```
let $c1 := client:connect('basex1.server.org', 8080, 'jack',
'C0S19tt2X')
let $c2 := client:connect('basex2.server.org', 8080, 'john',
'465wFHe26')
for $it in client:query($c1, '1 to 10')
return client:query($c2, $it || '* 2')
```

## client:close

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>client:close(\$id as xs:anyURI) as empty-sequence()</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	This function closes a client session. <code>\$id</code> specifies the session id. Opened connections will automatically be closed after the XQuery expression has been evaluated, but it is recommendable to explicitly close them with this function if you open many connections.
----------------	--

<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : an I/O error occurs while transferring data from or to the server.
---------------	---

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>command</code>	An error occurred while executing a command.
<code>connect</code>	An error occurred while creating a new session (possible reasons: server not available, access denied).
<code>error</code>	An I/O error occurred while transferring data from or to the server.
<code>function</code>	Function items (including maps and arrays) cannot be returned.
<code>id</code>	The id with the specified session is unknown, or has already been closed.
<code>query</code>	An error occurred while evaluating a query. Will only be raised if the XQuery error cannot be extracted from the returned error string.

## Changelog

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

Version 8.0

- Updated: Bound values may now contain no or more than one item in `client:query`.

Version 7.5

- Added: `client:info`

The module was introduced with Version 7.3.

---

# Chapter 39. Conversion Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to convert data between different formats.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/convert` namespace, which is statically bound to the `convert` prefix.

## Strings

### convert:binary-to-string

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:binary-to-string(\$bytes as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:string,</code> <code>convert:binary-to-string(\$bytes as xs:anyAtomicType, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string,</code> <code>convert:binary-to-string(\$bytes as xs:anyAtomicType, \$encoding as xs:string, \$fallback as xs:boolean) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified <code>\$bytes</code> ( <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>xs:hexBinary</code> ) to a string: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The UTF-8 default encoding can be overwritten with the optional <code>\$encoding</code> argument.</li><li>• By default, invalid characters will be rejected. If <code>\$fallback</code> is set to <code>true</code>, these characters will be replaced with the Unicode replacement character <code>FFFD</code> (#).</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>string</code> : The input is an invalid XML string, or the wrong encoding has been specified. <code>BXC0002</code> : The specified encoding is invalid or not supported.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>convert:binary-to-string(xs:hexBinary('48656c6c66576f726c64'))</code> yields <code>HelloWorld</code>.</li></ul>

### convert:string-to-base64

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:string-to-base64(\$string as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary,</code> <code>convert:string-to-base64(\$string as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified <code>\$string</code> to an <code>xs:base64Binary</code> item. If the default encoding is chosen, conversion will be cheap, as strings and binaries are both internally represented as byte arrays. The UTF-8 default encoding can be overwritten with the optional <code>\$encoding</code> argument.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>binary</code> : The input cannot be represented in the specified encoding. <code>encoding</code> : The specified encoding is invalid or not supported.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>string(convert:string-to-base64('HelloWorld'))</code> yields <code>SGVsbG9Xb3JsZA==</code>.</li></ul>

### convert:string-to-hex

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:string-to-hex(\$string as xs:string) as xs:hexBinary,</code> <code>convert:string-to-hex(\$string as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:hexBinary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified <code>\$string</code> to an <code>xs:hexBinary</code> item. If the default encoding is chosen, conversion will be cheap, as strings and binaries are both internally represented as byte arrays. The UTF-8 default encoding can be overwritten with the optional <code>\$encoding</code> argument.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>binary</code> : The input cannot be represented in the specified encoding. <code>encoding</code> : The specified encoding is invalid or not supported.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>string(convert:string-to-hex('HelloWorld'))</code> yields <code>48656C6C6F576F726C64</code>.</li> </ul>
-----------------	--

## Binary Data

### convert:integers-to-base64

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:integers-to-base64(\$integers as xs:integer*) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Converts the specified <code>\$integers</code> to an item of type <code>xs:base64Binary</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only the first 8 bits of the supplied integers will be considered.</li> <li>Conversion of byte sequences is very efficient, as items of binary type are internally represented as byte arrays.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:integers-to-base64(Q{java:java.lang.String}get-bytes('abc'))</code> converts a byte sequence to a <code>xs:base64Binary</code> item.</li> </ul>

### convert:integers-to-hex

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:integers-to-hex(\$integers as xs:integer*) as xs:hexBinary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Converts the specified <code>\$integers</code> to an item of type <code>xs:hexBinary</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only the first 8 bits of the supplied integers will be considered.</li> <li>Conversion of byte sequences is very efficient, as items of binary type are internally represented as byte arrays.</li> </ul>

### convert:binary-to-integers

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:binary-to-integers(\$binary as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:integer*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the specified <code>\$binary</code> ( <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>xs:hexBinary</code> ) as a sequence of unsigned integers (octets).
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:binary-to-integers(xs:hexBinary('FF'))</code> yields 255.</li> </ul>

### convert:binary-to-bytes

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:binary-to-bytes(\$binary as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:byte*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the specified <code>\$binary</code> ( <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>xs:hexBinary</code> ) as a sequence of bytes. The conversion is very cheap and takes no additional memory, as items of binary type are internally represented as byte arrays.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:binary-to-bytes(xs:base64Binary('QmFzZVggaXMgY29vbA=='))</code> yields the sequence (66, 97, 115, 101, 88, 32, 105, 115, 32, 99, 111, 111, 108).</li> <li><code>convert:binary-to-bytes(xs:hexBinary("4261736558"))</code> yields the sequence (66 97 115 101 88).</li> </ul>

## Numbers

### convert:integer-to-base

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:integer-to-base(\$number as xs:integer, \$base as xs:integer) as xs:string,</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Converts \$number to a string, using the specified \$base, interpreting it as a 64-bit unsigned integer. The first base elements of the sequence '0', ..., '9', 'a', ..., 'z' are used as digits. Valid bases are 2, ..., 36.
<b>Errors</b>	base: The specified base is not in the range 2-36.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>convert:integer-to-base(-1, 16)</code> yields 'ffffffffffffffff'.</li> <li>• <code>convert:integer-to-base(22, 5)</code> yields '42'.</li> </ul>

### convert:integer-from-base

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:integer-from-base(\$string as xs:string, \$base as xs:integer) as xs:integer,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Decodes an integer from \$string, using the specified \$base. The first base elements of the sequence '0', ..., '9', 'a', ..., 'z' are allowed as digits; case does not matter. Valid bases are 2 - 36. If the supplied string contains more than 64 bits of information, the result will be truncated.
<b>Errors</b>	base: The specified base is not in the range 2-36. integer: The specified digit is not valid for the given range.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>convert:integer-from-base('ffffffffffffffff', 16)</code> yields -1.</li> <li>• <code>convert:integer-from-base('CAFEBABE', 16)</code> yields 3405691582.</li> <li>• <code>convert:integer-from-base('42', 5)</code> yields 22.</li> <li>• <code>convert:integer-from-base(convert:integer-to-base(123, 7), 7)</code> yields 123.</li> </ul>

## Dates and Durations

### convert:integer-to-dateTime

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:integer-to-dateTime(\$milliseconds as xs:integer) as xs:dateTime,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified number of \$milliseconds since 1 Jan 1970 to an item of type xs:dateTime.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>convert:integer-to-dateTime(0)</code> yields 1970-01-01T00:00:00Z.</li> <li>• <code>convert:integer-to-dateTime(1234567890123)</code> yields 2009-02-13T23:31:30.123Z.</li> <li>• <code>convert:integer-to-dateTime(prof:current-ms())</code> returns the current milliseconds in the xs:dateTime format.</li> </ul>

### convert:dateTime-to-integer

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:dateTime-to-integer(\$dateTime as xs:dateTime) as xs:integer,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified \$dateTime item to the number of milliseconds since 1 Jan 1970.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>convert:dateTime-to-integer(xs:dateTime('1970-01-01T00:00:00Z'))</code> yields 0.</li> </ul>

### convert:integer-to-dayTime

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:integer-to-dayTime(\$milliseconds as xs:integer) as xs:dayTimeDuration,</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified number of <code>\$milliseconds</code> to an item of type <code>xs:dayTimeDuration</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:integer-to-dayTime(1234)</code> yields <code>PT1.234S</code>.</li> </ul>

## convert:dayTime-to-integer

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:dayTime-to-integer(\$dayTime as xs:dayTimeDuration) as xs:integer,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the specified <code>\$dayTime</code> duration to milliseconds represented by an integer.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:dayTime-to-integer(xs:dayTimeDuration('PT1S'))</code> yields <code>1000</code>.</li> </ul>

## Keys

### convert:encode-key

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:encode-key(\$key as xs:string) as xs:string,convert:encode-key(\$key as xs:string, \$lax as xs:boolean) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Encodes the specified <code>\$key</code> (with the optional <code>\$lax</code> conversion method) to a valid NCName representation, which can be used to create an element node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An empty string is converted to a single underscore (<code>_</code>).</li> <li>Existing underscores are rewritten to two underscores (<code>__</code>).</li> <li>Characters that are no valid NCName characters are rewritten to an underscore and the character's four-digit Unicode. For example, the exclamation mark <code>!</code> is transformed to <code>_003f</code>.</li> <li>If lax conversion is chosen, invalid characters are replaced with underscores or (when invalid as first character of an element name) prefixed with an underscore. The resulting string may be better readable, but it cannot necessarily be converted back to the original form.</li> </ul> <p>This encoding is employed by the <code>direct</code> conversion format in the <a href="#">JSON Module</a> and the <a href="#">CSV Module</a>.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>element { convert:encode-key("!") } { }</code> creates a new element with an encoded name: <code>&lt;_0021/&gt;</code>.</li> </ul>

### convert:decode-key

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>convert:decode-key(\$key as xs:string) as xs:string,convert:decode-key(\$key as xs:string, \$lax as xs:boolean) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Decodes the specified <code>\$key</code> (with the optional <code>\$lax</code> conversion method) to the original string representation. Keys supplied to this function are usually element names from documents that have been created with the <a href="#">JSON Module</a> or <a href="#">CSV Module</a> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:decode-key(name(&lt;_0021/&gt;))</code> yields <code>!</code>.</li> <li><code>json:doc("doc.json")//* ! convert:decode-key(name())</code> yields the original string representation of all names of a JSON document.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>key</code> : The specified key cannot be decoded to its original representation.

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>base</code>	The specified base is not in the range 2-36.
<code>binary</code>	The input cannot be converted to a binary representation.

<code>encoding</code>	The specified encoding is invalid or not supported.
<code>integer</code>	The specified digit is not valid for the given range.
<code>key</code>	The specified key cannot be decoded to its original representation.
<code>string</code>	The input is an invalid XML string, or the wrong encoding has been specified.

## Changelog

### Version 9.4

- Added: `convert:encode-key`, `convert:decode-key`.

### Version 9.0

- Added: `convert:binary-to-integers`.
- Updated: `convert:integers-to-base64`, `convert:integers-to-hex`: Renamed from `convert:bytes-to-base64`; argument type relaxed from `xs:byte` to `xs:integer`.
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.5

- Updated: `convert:binary-to-string`: `$fallback` argument added.

### Version 7.5

- Added: `convert:integer-to-dateTime`, `convert:dateTime-to-integer`, `convert:integer-to-dayTime`, `convert:dayTime-to-integer`.

The module was introduced with Version 7.3. Some of the functions have been adopted from the obsolete Utility Module.



---

# Chapter 40. Cryptographic Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to perform cryptographic operations in XQuery. The cryptographic module is based on an early draft of the **EXPath Cryptographic Module** and provides the following functionality: creation of message authentication codes (HMAC), encryption and decryption, and creation and validation of XML Digital Signatures.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://expath.org/ns/crypto` namespace, which is statically bound to the `crypto` prefix. All errors are assigned to the `http://expath.org/ns/error` namespace, which is statically bound to the `experr` prefix.

## Message Authentication

### crypto:hmac

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>crypto:hmac(\$data as xs:anyAtomicType, \$key as xs:anyAtomicType, \$algorithm as xs:string) as xs:string, crypto:hmac(\$data as xs:anyAtomicType, \$key as xs:anyAtomicType, \$algorithm as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates an authentication code for the specified <code>\$data</code> via a cryptographic hash function: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>\$key</code> must not be empty.</li><li>• <code>\$algorithm</code> describes the hash algorithm which is used for encryption. Currently supported are <code>md5</code>, <code>sha1</code>, <code>sha256</code>, <code>sha384</code>, <code>sha512</code>. Default is <code>md5</code>.</li><li>• <code>\$encoding</code> must either be <code>hex</code> or <code>base64</code>; it specifies the encoding of the returned authentication code. Default is <code>base64</code>.</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>CX0013</code> : the specified hashing algorithm is not supported. <code>CX0014</code> : the specified encoding method is not supported. <code>CX0019</code> : the specified secret key is invalid.
<b>Example</b>	Return message authentication code (MAC) for a given string: <b>Query:</b> <pre>crypto:hmac('message', 'secretkey', 'md5', 'hex')</pre> <b>Result:</b> <pre>34D1E3818B347252A75A4F6D747B21C2</pre>

## Encryption & Decryption

The encryption and decryption functions underlie several limitations:

- Cryptographic algorithms are currently limited to symmetric algorithms. This means that the same secret key is used for encryption and decryption.
- Available algorithms are DES and AES.
- Padding is fixed to PKCS5Padding.
- The result of an encryption using the same message, algorithm and key looks different each time it is executed. This is due to a random initialization vector (IV) which is appended to the message and simply increases security.
- As the IV has to be passed along with the encrypted message somehow, data which has been encrypted by the `crypto:encrypt` function in BaseX can only be decrypted by calling the `crypto:decrypt` function.

## crypto:encrypt

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>crypto:encrypt(\$data as xs:anyAtomicType, \$type as xs:string, \$key as xs:anyAtomicType, \$algorithm as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Encrypts data with the specified key:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\$data</code> must be a string or binary item.</li> <li>• <code>\$type</code> must be <code>symmetric</code>.</li> <li>• <code>\$key</code> is the secret key which is used for both encryption and decryption of input data. It must be a string or binary item. Its length is fixed and depends on the chosen algorithm: 8 bytes for DES, 16 bytes for AES.</li> <li>• <code>\$algorithm</code> must either be <code>DES</code> or <code>AES</code>. Default is <code>DES</code>.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	CX0016: padding problems arise.CX0017: padding is incorrect.CX0018: the encryption type is not supported.CX0019: the secret key is invalid.CX0020: the block size is incorrect.CX0021: the specified encryption algorithm is not supported.
<b>Example</b>	<p>Encrypt input data:</p> <pre>crypto:encrypt('message', 'symmetric', 'keykeyke', 'DES')</pre>

## crypto:decrypt

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>crypto:decrypt(\$data as xs:anyAtomicType, \$type as xs:string, \$key as xs:anyAtomicType, \$algorithm as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Encrypts data with the specified key:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\$data</code> must be a string or binary item.</li> <li>• <code>\$type</code> must be <code>symmetric</code>.</li> <li>• <code>\$key</code> is the secret key which is used for both encryption and decryption of input data. It must be a string or binary item. Its length is fixed and depends on the chosen algorithm: 8 bytes for DES, 16 bytes for AES.</li> <li>• <code>\$algorithm</code> must either be <code>DES</code> or <code>AES</code>. Default is <code>DES</code>.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	CX0016: padding problems arise.CX0017: padding is incorrect.CX0018: the encryption type is not supported.CX0019: the secret key is invalid.CX0020: the block size is incorrect.CX0021: the specified encryption algorithm is not supported.
<b>Example</b>	<p>Decrypt input data and return original string: <b>Query:</b></p> <pre>let \$encrypted := crypto:encrypt('message', 'symmetric', 'keykeyke', 'DES') return crypto:decrypt(\$encrypted, 'symmetric', 'keykeyke', 'DES')</pre> <p><b>Result:</b></p> <pre>message</pre>

## XML Signatures

**XML Signatures** are used to sign data. In our case, the data which is signed is an XQuery node. The following example shows the basic structure of an XML signature.

### XML Signature

```
<Signature>
```

```

<SignedInfo>
  <CanonicalizationMethod/>
  <SignatureMethod/>
  <Reference>
    <Transforms/>
    <DigestMethod/>
    <DigestValue/>
  </Reference>
  <Reference/>
</SignedInfo>
<SignatureValue/>
<KeyInfo/>
<Object/>
</Signature>

```

- **SignedInfo** contains or references the signed data and lists algorithm information
- **Reference** references the signed node
- **Transforms** contains transformations (i.e. XPath expressions) that are applied to the input node in order to sign a subset
- **DigestValue** holds digest value of the transformed references
- **SignatureValue** contains the Base64 encoded value of the encrypted digest of the SignedInfo element
- **KeyInfo** provides information on the key that is used to validate the signature
- **Object** contains the node which is signed if the signature is of type enveloping

### Signature Types

Depending on the signature type, the signature element is either placed as a child of the signed node (enveloped type), or directly contains the signed node (enveloping type). Detached signatures are so far not supported.

### Digital Certificate

The `generate-signature` function allows to pass a digital certificate. This certificate holds parameters that allow to access key information stored in a Java key store which is then used to sign the input document. Passing a digital certificate simply helps re-using the same key pair to sign and validate data. The digital certificate is passed as a node and has the following form:

```

<digital-certificate>
  <keystore-type>JKS</keystore-type>
  <keystore-password>...</keystore-password>
  <key-alias>...</key-alias>
  <private-key-password>...</private-key-password>
  <keystore-uri>...</keystore-uri>
</digital-certificate>

```

## crypto:generate-signature

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre> crypto:generate-signature(\$input as node(), \$canonicalization as xs:string, \$digest as xs:string, \$signature as xs:string, \$prefix as xs:string, \$type as xs:string) as node(), crypto:generate- signature(\$input as node(), \$canonicalization as xs:string, \$digest as xs:string, \$signature as xs:string, \$prefix as xs:string, \$type as xs:string, \$xpath as xs:string, \$certificate as node()) as node(), crypto:generate-signature(\$input as node(), \$canonicalization as xs:string, \$digest as xs:string, \$signature as xs:string, \$prefix as xs:string, \$type as xs:string, \$ext as item()) as node() </pre>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	<p>\$canonicalization must either be inclusive-with-comments, inclusive, exclusive-with-comments or exclusive. <b>Default is inclusive-with-comments.</b> \$digest must be one of the following: SHA1, SHA256 or SHA512. <b>Default is SHA1.</b> \$signature must either be RSA_SHA1 or DSA_SHA1. <b>Default is RSA_SHA1.</b> \$prefix may be empty and prefixes the Signature element accordingly. \$type is the signature type. It must either be enveloped or enveloping (detached signatures are not supported so far). <b>Default is enveloped.</b> \$xpath is an arbitrary XPath expression which specifies a subset of the document that is to be signed. \$certificate is the digital certificate used to sign the input document. \$ext may either be an \$xpath expression or a \$certificate.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<p>CX0001: the canonicalization algorithm is not supported.CX0002: the digest algorithm is not supported.CX0003: the signature algorithm is not supported.CX0004: the \$xpath-expression is invalid.CX0005: the root name of \$digital-certificate is not 'digital-certificate.CX0007: the key store is null.CX0012: the key cannot be found in the specified key store.CX0023: the certificate alias is invalid.CX0024: an invalid algorithm is specified.CX0025: an exception occurs while the signing the document.CX0026: an exception occurs during key store initialization.CX0027: an IO exception occurs.CX0028: the signature type is not supported.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p><b>Generate XML Signature: Query:</b></p> <pre>crypto:generate-signature(&lt;a/&gt;, '', '', '', '', '')</pre> <p><b>Result:</b></p> <pre>&lt;a&gt;   &lt;Signature xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#"&gt;     &lt;SignedInfo&gt;       &lt;CanonicalizationMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xml-c14n-20010315#WithComments"/&gt;       &lt;SignatureMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1"/&gt;       &lt;Reference URI=""&gt;         &lt;Transforms&gt;           &lt;Transform Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature"/&gt;         &lt;/Transforms&gt;         &lt;DigestMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/&gt;           &lt;DigestValue&gt;9hvH4qztnIYgYfJDRLnEMPJdoaY=&lt;/DigestValue&gt;         &lt;/Reference&gt;       &lt;/SignedInfo&gt;       &lt;SignatureValue&gt;Pn/Jr44WBcdARff2UVYEiwYW1563XdqnU87nusAIaHgzd +U3SrjVJhPFLDe0DJfxVtYzLFaznTYE P3ddeoFmyA==&lt;/SignatureValue&gt;       &lt;KeyInfo&gt;         &lt;KeyValue&gt;           &lt;RSAKeyValue&gt;             &lt;Modulus&gt;rtvpFSbCIE2BJePlVYLIRIjXl0R7ESr2D +JOVKn7AM7VZbcbRDPeqRbjSkEz1HWC/N067tjB3qH 4/4PPT9bGQ==&lt;/Modulus&gt;             &lt;Exponent&gt;AQAB&lt;/Exponent&gt;           &lt;/RSAKeyValue&gt;         &lt;/KeyValue&gt;       &lt;/KeyInfo&gt;     &lt;/Signature&gt;   &lt;/a&gt;</pre>

## crypto:validate-signature

<b>Signatures</b>	crypto:validate-signature(\$input-doc as node()) as xs:boolean
<b>Summary</b>	Checks if the given node contains a Signature element and whether the signature is valid. In this case true is returned. If the signature is invalid the function returns false.

<b>Errors</b>	CX0015: the signature element cannot be found.CX9994: an unspecified problem occurs during validation.CX9996: an IO exception occurs during validation.
<b>Example</b>	<p>Validate <b>XML Signature</b>: <b>Query</b>:</p> <pre>let \$sig := crypto:generate-signature(&lt;a/&gt;, '', '', '', '', '') return crypto:validate-signature(\$sig)</pre> <p><b>Result</b>:</p> <pre>true</pre>

## Errors

Code	Description
CX0001	The canonicalization algorithm is not supported.
CX0002	The digest algorithm is not supported.
CX0003	The signature algorithm is not supported.
CX0004	The XPath expression is invalid.
CX0005	The root element of argument \$digital-certificate must have the name 'digital-certificate'.
CX0006	The child element of argument \$digital-certificate having position \$position must have the name \$child-element-name.
CX0007	The keystore is null.
CX0008	I/O error while reading keystore.
CX0009	Permission denied to read keystore.
CX0010	The keystore URL is invalid.
CX0011	The keystore type is not supported.
CX0012	Cannot find key for alias in given keystore.
CX0013	The hashing algorithm is not supported.
CX0014	The encoding method is not supported.
CX0015	Cannot find Signature element.
CX0016	No such padding.
CX0017	Incorrect padding.
CX0018	The encryption type is not supported.
CX0019	The secret key is invalid.
CX0020	Illegal block size.
CX0021	The algorithm is not supported.
CX0023	An invalid certificate alias is specified. Added to the official specification.
CX0024	The algorithm is invalid. Added to the official specification.
CX0025	Signature cannot be processed. Added to the official specification.
CX0026	Keystore cannot be processed. Added to the official specification.
CX0027	An I/O Exception occurred. Added to the official specification.
CX0028	The specified signature type is not supported. Added to the official specification.

## Changelog

### Version 9.3

- Updated: `crypto:hmac`, `crypto:encrypt`, `crypto:decrypt`: Function types revised.

Version 8.6

- Updated: `crypto:hmac`: The key can now be a string or a binary item.

The Module was introduced with Version 7.0.

---

# Chapter 41. CSV Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) contains a single function to parse CSV input. [CSV](#) (comma-separated values) is a popular representation for tabular data, exported e. g. from Excel.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/csv` namespace, which is statically bound to the `csv` prefix.

## Conversion

### XML: Direct, Attributes

If the `direct` or `attributes` format is chosen, a CSV string is converted to XML:

- The resulting XML document has a `csv` root element.
- Rows are represented via `record` elements.
- Fields are represented via `entry` elements. The value of a field is represented as text node.
- If the `header` option is set to `true`, the first text line is parsed as table header:
  - If `format` is set to `direct`, the field names are encoded, as described in the [Conversion Module](#), and used as element names.
  - Otherwise, if `format` is `attributes`, the field names will be stored in `name` attributes.

**A little advice:** in the Database Creation dialog of the GUI, if you select CSV Parsing and switch to the *Parsing* tab, you can see the effects of some of the conversion options.

## XQuery

With the `xquery` format, CSV records are converted to a sequence of arrays:

- The resulting value will be a map with a `records` and an optional `names` key.
- Records are organized as a sequence of arrays. A single array contains the entries of a single record.
- The column names will be available if `header` option is set to `true`.

The CSV map can e.g. be accessed as follows:

- `$csv?records[5]` returns all entries of the 5th record (row)
- `$csv?records?(2)` returns all entries of the 2nd field (column)
- `$csv?names?*` returns the names of all fields (if available)
- Return enumerated strings for all records:

```
for $record at $pos in $csv?records
return $pos || ". " || string-join($record?*, ', ')
```

The resulting representation consumes less memory than XML-based formats, and values can be directly accessed without conversion. Thus, it is recommendable for very large inputs and for efficient ad-hoc processing.

## Options

In the following table, all available options are listed. The Excel column lists recommended options for data that is processed with Excel or Open/Libre Office.

Option	Description	Allowed	Default	Direction	Excel
separator	Defines the character which separates the values of a single record.	comma, semicolon, colon, tab, space or a <i>single character</i>	comma	<i>parse, serialize</i>	semicolon or comma, depending on the region
header	Indicates if the first line of the parsed or serialized CSV data is a table header.	yes, no	no	<i>parse, serialize</i>	
format	Specifies the format of the XML data: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With <i>direct</i> conversion, field names are represented as element names</li> <li>• With <i>attributes</i> conversion, field names are stored in name attributes</li> <li>• With <i>xquery</i> conversion, the input is converted to an XQuery map</li> </ul>	direct, attributes, xquery	direct	<i>parse, serialize</i>	
lax	Specifies if a lax approach is used to convert QNames to JSON names.	yes, no	yes	<i>parse, serialize</i>	no
quotes	Specifies how quotes are parsed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Parsing: If the option is enabled, quotes at the start and end of a value will be treated as control characters. Separators and</li> </ul>	yes, no	yes	<i>parse, serialize</i>	yes



	<p>newlines within the quotes will be adopted without change.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Serialization:</b> If the option is enabled, the value will be wrapped with quotes if it contains characters that might be treated as control characters. A quote character in the value will be encoded according to the rules of the backslashes option.</li> </ul>				
backslashes	<p>Specifies how quotes and other characters are escaped:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Parsing:</b> If the option is enabled, <code>\r</code>, <code>n</code> and <code>\t</code> will be replaced with the corresponding control characters. All other escaped characters will be adopted as literals (e.g.: <code>\"</code> <math>\rightarrow</math> <code>"</code>). If the option is disabled, two consecutive quotes will be replaced with a single quote (unless <code>quotes</code> is enabled and the quote is the first or last</li> </ul>	yes, no	no	<i>parse, serialize</i>	no

	<p>character of a value).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Serialization:</b> If the option is enabled, <code>\r</code>, <code>n</code>, <code>\t</code>, <code>"</code> and the separator character will be encoded with a backslash. If the option is disabled, quotes will be duplicated.</li> </ul>			
allow	<p>In Excel, a value will be evaluated if it starts with the character <code>-</code>, <code>+</code>, <code>=</code>, <code>@</code>, <code>\t</code> or <code>\r</code>. A regular expression can be specified to reject data that will be handled differently than expected by an application, or that may be malicious (see <a href="https://owasp.org/www-community/attacks/CSV_Injection">https://owasp.org/www-community/attacks/CSV_Injection</a> for more details).</p>	<i>string</i>	<i>serialize</i>	$[\^-\+=\t\r].* [-+]\d*([,.\]\d+)?$

## Functions

### csv:doc

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>csv:doc(\$uri as xs:string?) as item()?, csv:doc(\$uri as xs:string?, \$options as map(*)) as item()?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Fetches the CSV document referred to by the given <code>\$uri</code> and converts it to an XQuery value. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to control the way the input is converted.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse</code> : the specified input cannot be parsed as CSV document. <code>options</code> : the specified options are conflicting.

### csv:parse

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>csv:parse(\$string as xs:string?) as item()?, csv:parse(\$string as xs:string?, \$options as map(*)) as item()?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the CSV <code>\$string</code> to an XQuery value. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to control the way the input is converted.

**Errors** | parse: the specified input cannot be parsed as CSV document.

## csv:serialize

**Signatures** | csv:serialize(\$input as item()?) as xs:string, csv:serialize(\$input as item()?, \$options as map(\*)?) as xs:string

**Summary** | Serializes the specified \$input as CSV, using the specified \$options, and returns the result as string. Values can also be serialized as CSV with the standard **Serialization** feature of XQuery:

- The parameter method needs to be set to csv, and
- the options presented in this article need to be assigned to the csv parameter.

**Errors** | serialize: the input cannot be serialized.

## Examples

**Example 1:** Converts CSV data to XML, interpreting the first row as table header:

**Input**addressbook.csv:

```
Name,First Name,Address,City
Huber,Sepp,Hauptstraße 13,93547 Hintertupfing
```

**Query:**

```
let $text := file:read-text('addressbook.csv')
return csv:parse($text, map { 'header': true() })
```

**Result:**

```
<csv>
  <record>
    <Name>Huber</Name>
    <First_Name>Sepp</First_Name>
    <Address>Hauptstraße 13</Address>
    <City>93547 Hintertupfing</City>
  </record>
</csv>
```

<nullb/> </p>

**Example 2:** Converts some CSV data to XML and back, and checks if the input and output are equal. The expected result is true:

**Query:**

```
let $options := map { 'lax': false() }
let $input := file:read-text('some-data.csv')
let $output := $input => csv:parse($options) => csv:serialize($options)
return $input eq $output
```

**Example 3:** Converts CSV data to XQuery and returns distinct column values:

**Query:**

```
let $text := ``[Name,City
Jack,Chicago
Jack,Washington
John,New York
]``
let $options := map { 'format': 'xquery', 'header': true() }
let $csv := csv:parse($text, $options)
```

```
return (
  'Distinct values:',
  let $records := $csv('records')
  for $name at $pos in $csv('names')?*
  let $values := $records?($pos)
  return (
    '* ' || $name || ': ' || string-join(distinct-values($values), ', ')
  )
)
```

**Result:**

```
Distinct values:
* Name: Jack, John
* City: Chicago, Washington, New York
```

## Errors

Code	Description
parse	The input cannot be parsed.
serialize	The node cannot be serialized.

## Changelog

### Version 9.7

- Added: **Options**: allow option.

### Version 9.4

- Added: `csv:doc`

### Version 9.1

- Updated: `csv:parse` can be called with empty sequence.

### Version 9.0

- Added: `xquery` option
- Removed: `map` option
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.6

- Updated: **Options**: improved Excel compatibility

### Version 8.0

- Added: `backslashes` option

### Version 7.8

- Updated: `csv:parse` now returns a document node instead of an element, or an XQuery map if `format` is set to `map`.
- Added: `format` and `lax` options

The module was introduced with Version 7.7.2.

---

# Chapter 42. Database Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for processing databases from within XQuery. Existing databases can be opened and listed, its contents can be directly accessed, documents can be added to and removed, etc.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/db` namespace, which is statically bound to the `db` prefix.

## Database Nodes

In BaseX, two internal representations exist for nodes.

- XML fragments are generated by XQuery node constructors.`db:b`
- Database nodes are:
  - stored in a persistent database on disk;
  - nodes of a document that has been generated temporarily with `fn:doc`, `fn:parse-xml` and other functions; or
  - result of a main-memory update operation.

Some operations are restricted to database nodes, but you can convert XML fragments to database nodes by applying an empty **update** or **transform** operation to a node. Two examples:

- Retrieve the internal node id of an XML fragment:

```
let $xml := <xml>hello world</xml> update {}
return db:node-id($xml/text())
```

- Puts a marker element around the result of a full-text request (see `ft:mark` for more details):

```
copy $p := <xml>hello world</xml>
modify ()
return ft:mark($p[text() contains text 'word'], 'b')
```

## Updating Functions

Various functions in this module are *updating*. Updating functions will not be immediately executed, but queued on the **Pending Update List**, and processed after the remaining query has been evaluated. This means that the order in which the functions are specified in the query often does not reflect the order in which they will eventually be executed.

## General Functions

### db:system

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:system()</code> as <code>element(system)</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Returns general information on the database system the current values of all global and local <b>Options</b> . The <code>INFO</code> command returns similar output.
----------------	--

### db:option

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:option(\$name as xs:string)</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Returns the current value (string, integer, boolean, map) of a global or local <b>Option</b> with the specified \$name. The SHOW OPTIONS command returns similar output.
<b>Errors</b>	option: the specified option is unknown.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• db:option('dbpath') returns the database path string.</li> <li>• db:option('serializer') returns a map with the current serialization parameters.</li> <li>• declare option db:stripws 'true'; db:option('stripws') returns the locally assigned value.</li> </ul>

## db:info

<b>Signatures</b>	db:info(\$db as xs:string) as element(database)
<b>Summary</b>	Returns meta information on the database \$db. The output is similar to the INFO DB command.
<b>Errors</b>	open: the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.

## db:property

<b>Signatures</b>	db:property(\$db as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as xs:anyAtomicType
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value (string, boolean, integer) of a property with the specified \$name in the database \$db. The available properties are the ones returned by db:info.
<b>Errors</b>	property: the specified property is unknown.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• db:property('db', 'size') returns the number of bytes occupied by the database db.</li> <li>• db:property('xmark', 'textindex') indicates if the xmark database has a text index.</li> <li>• db:property('discogs', 'uptodate') indicates if the database statistics and index structures of the discogs database are up-to-date.</li> </ul>

## db:list

<b>Signatures</b>	db:list() as xs:string*, db:list(\$db as xs:string) as xs:string*, db:list(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as xs:string*
<b>Summary</b>	<p>The result of this function is dependent on the number of arguments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Without arguments, the names of all databases are returned that are accessible to the current user.</li> <li>• If a database \$db is specified, all documents and raw files of the specified database are returned.</li> <li>• The list of returned resources can be restricted by the \$path argument.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	open: the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	• db:list("docs") returns the names of all documents of a database named docs.

## db:list-details

<b>Signatures</b>	db:list-details() as element(database)*, db:list-details(\$db as xs:string) as element(resource)*, db:list-details(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as element(resource)*
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Without arguments, an element is returned for each database that is accessible to the current user:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An element has a value, which is the name of the database, and several attributes, which contain the number of stored resources, the modification date, the database size on disk (measured in bytes), and a path to the original database input.</li> </ul>

	<p>If a database <code>\$db</code> is specified, an element for each documents and raw file of the specified database is returned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An element has a value, which is the name of the resource, and several attributes, which contain the content type, the modification date, the raw flag (which indicates if the resource is binary or XML), and the size of a resource.</li> <li>• The value of the size attribute depends on the resource type: for documents, it represents the number of nodes; for binary data, it represents the file size (measured in bytes).</li> <li>• Returned databases resources can be further restricted by the <code>\$path</code> argument.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>db:list-details("shop")</code> returns the names plus additional info on all resources of a database named <code>shop</code>.</li> </ul>

## db:dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:dir(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as element()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Returns metadata on all directories and resources of the database <code>\$db</code> in the specified directory <code>\$path</code>. Two types of elements are returned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>resource</code> represents a resource. The element value is the directory path; content type, modification date, raw flag (which indicates if the resource is binary or XML), and size of the resource are returned as attributes.</li> <li>• <code>dir</code> represents a directory. The element value is the directory path; the modification date is returned as attribute.</li> </ul> <p>Please note that directories are not stored in BaseX. Instead, they result implicitly from the paths of stored resources.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>path</code> : the specified path is invalid.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>db:dir('shop', 'books')</code> returns all entries of the <code>books</code> directory of a <code>shop</code> database.</li> </ul>

## Read Operations

### db:get

*Updated with Version 10:* Renamed (before: `db:open`). Due to its widespread use, the old function name will be supported for some more time.

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:get(\$db as xs:string) as document-node()*</code> , <code>db:get(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as document-node()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all documents from the database <code>\$db</code> , or only documents matching the specified <code>\$path</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>db:get('docs')</code> returns all documents from the database named <code>docs</code>.</li> <li>• <code>db:get('db', 'one')</code> returns all documents from the database named <code>db</code> located in the path <code>one</code>.</li> <li>• <code>for \$i in 1 to 3 return db:get('db'    \$i)//item</code> returns all item elements from the databases <code>db1</code>, <code>db2</code> and <code>db3</code>.</li> </ul>

### db:get-pre

*Updated with Version 10:* Renamed (before: `db:open-pre`).

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:get-pre(\$db as xs:string, \$pres as xs:integer*) as node()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all nodes from the database <code>\$db</code> with the pre values <code>\$pres</code> in <b>distinct document order</b> . The <b>PRE value</b> provides very fast access to an existing database node, but it will change whenever a node with a smaller <i>pre</i> values is added to or deleted from a database.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>range</code> : the specified pre value does not exist in the database.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:get-pre("docs", 0)</code> returns the first database node from the database named <code>docs</code>.</li> </ul>

## db:get-id

Updated with Version 10: Renamed (before: `open-id`).

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:get-id(\$db as xs:string, \$ids as xs:integer*) as node()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all nodes from the database <code>\$db</code> with the pre values <code>\$ids</code> in <b>distinct document order</b> . Each database node has a <i>persistentID</i> value. Access to the node ID can be sped up by turning on the <code>UPDINDEX</code> option.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>range</code> : the specified ID value does not exist in the database.

## db:get-binary

Updated with Version 10: renamed (before: `db:retrieve`).

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:get-binary(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as item()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a map with all paths and binary resources of the database <code>\$db</code> . A single <code>xs:base64Binary</code> item is returned if a <code>\$path</code> is specified. All items are <i>lazy</i> , i.e., the actual data will only be retrieved if it is processed.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>mainmem</code> : the database is not <i>persistent</i> (stored on disk).
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:get-binary('DB', 'music/01.mp3')</code> returns the specified audio file as raw data.</li> <li><code>stream:materialize(db:get-binary('DB', 'music/01.mp3'))</code> materializes the streamable result in main-memory before returning it.</li> <li><code>convert:binary-to-string(db:get-binary('DB', 'info.txt'), 'UTF-8')</code> converts a binary database resource as UTF-8 text and returns a string.</li> </ul>

## db:get-value

Introduced with Version 10.

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:get-value(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a map with all paths and values of the database <code>\$db</code> . A single value is returned if a <code>\$path</code> is specified.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>mainmem</code> : the database is not <i>persistent</i> (stored on disk).
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:get-value('DB', 'sequence')</code> returns the specified sequence.</li> </ul>

## db:node-pre

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:node-pre(\$nodes as node()* ) as xs:integer*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <i>pre</i> values of the specified <code>\$nodes</code> , which must all be <b>database nodes</b> . The <b>PRE value</b> provides very fast access to an existing database node, but it will change whenever a node with a smaller <i>pre</i> values is added to or deleted from a database.



<b>Errors</b>	node: \$nodes contains a node which is not stored in a database.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>db:node-pre(doc("input")) returns 0 if the database input contains a single document.</li> </ul>

## db:node-id

<b>Signatures</b>	db:node-id(\$nodes as node(*) as xs:integer*
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <i>id</i> values of the specified \$nodes, which must all be <b>database nodes</b> . Each database node has a <i>persistentID value</i> . Access to the node id can be sped up by turning on the UPDINDEX option.
<b>Errors</b>	node: \$nodes contains a node which is not stored in a database.

## db:export

<b>Signatures</b>	db:export(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as empty-sequence(), db:export(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string, \$params as item()) as empty-sequence(),
<b>Summary</b>	Exports the specified database \$db to the specified file \$path. Existing files will be overwritten. The \$params argument contains <b>serialization parameters</b> . As with <b>fn:serialize()</b> , the parameters can be specified <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>either as children of an &lt;output:serialization-parameters/&gt; element: <pre>&lt;output:serialization-parameters&gt;   &lt;output:method value='xml' /&gt;   &lt;output:cdata-section-elements value="div" /&gt;   ... &lt;/output:serialization-parameters&gt;</pre> </li> <li>or as map, which contains all key/value pairs: <pre>map { "method": "xml", "cdata-section-elements": "div", ... }</pre> </li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	open: the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	Export all files as text: <pre>db:export("DB", "/home/john/xml/texts", map { 'method': 'text' })</pre> <p>The following code can be used to export parts of the database:</p> <pre>let \$target := '/home/john/xml/target' for \$doc in db:get('DB', 'collection') let \$path := \$target    db:path(\$doc) return (   file:create-dir(file:parent(\$path)),   file:write(\$path, \$doc) )</pre>

## Value Indexes

### db:text

<b>Signatures</b>	db:text(\$db as xs:string, \$strings as xs:string*) as text()*
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all text nodes of the database \$db that have one of the specified \$strings as values and that are stored in the text index.
<b>Errors</b>	open: the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.no-index: the index is not available.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:text("DB", "QUERY")/..</code> returns the parents of all text nodes of the database DB that match the string QUERY.</li> </ul>
-----------------	--

## db:text-range

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:text-range(\$db as xs:string, \$min as xs:string, \$max as xs:string) as text()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all text nodes of the database \$db whose values are between \$min and \$max and that are stored in the text index.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>no-index</code> : the index is not available.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:text-range("DB", "2000", "2001")</code> returns all text nodes of the database DB that are found in between 2000 and 2001.</li> </ul>

## db:attribute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:attribute(\$db as xs:string, \$strings as xs:string*) as attribute()*</code> , <code>db:attribute(\$db as xs:string, \$strings as xs:string*, \$name as xs:string) as attribute()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all attribute nodes of the database \$db that have one of the specified \$strings as values and that are stored in the attribute index. If \$name is specified, the resulting attribute nodes are filtered by their attribute name.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>no-index</code> : the index is not available.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:attribute("DB", "QUERY", "id")/..</code> returns the parents of all id attribute nodes of the database DB that have QUERY as string value.</li> </ul>

## db:attribute-range

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:attribute-range(\$db as xs:string, \$min as xs:string, \$max as xs:string) as attribute()*</code> , <code>db:attribute-range(\$db as xs:string, \$min as xs:string, \$max as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as attribute()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all attributes of the database \$db, the string values of which are larger than or equal to \$min and smaller than or equal to \$max and that are stored in the attribute index.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>no-index</code> : the index is not available.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:attribute-range("DB", "id456", "id473", 'id')</code> returns all @id attributes of the database DB that have a string value in between id456 and id473.</li> </ul>

## db:token

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:token(\$db as xs:string, \$tokens as xs:string*) as attribute()*</code> , <code>db:token(\$db as xs:string, \$tokens as xs:string*, \$name as xs:string) as attribute()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all attribute nodes of the database \$db the values of which contain one of the specified \$tokens. If \$name is specified, the resulting attribute nodes are filtered by their attribute name.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>no-index</code> : the index is not available.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:token("DB", "row", "class")/parent::div</code> returns all div nodes of database DB with a class attribute that contains the token row.</li> </ul>

## Updates

All functions in this section are [Updating Functions](#).

### db:create

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:create(\$db as xs:string) as empty-sequence(), db:create(\$db as xs:string, \$inputs as item(*) as empty-sequence(), db:create(\$db as xs:string, \$inputs as item(*), \$paths as xs:string*) as empty-sequence(), db:create(\$db as xs:string, \$inputs as item(*), \$paths as xs:string*, \$options as map(*?)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Creates a new database with name <code>\$db</code> and adds initial documents specified via <code>\$inputs</code> to the specified <code>\$paths</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>\$inputs</code> may be strings or nodes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>nodes may be of any type except for attributes</li> <li>strings can be a URI pointing to a file/directory or an XML string (which is detected by the leading <code>&lt;</code> character)</li> <li>a path must be specified if the input is not a file or directory reference</li> </ul> </li> <li>The parsing and indexing behavior can be controlled via <code>\$options</code>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>allowed options are <code>ADDCACHE</code> and the <a href="#">indexing</a>, <a href="#">full-text indexing</a>, <a href="#">parsing</a> and <a href="#">XML parsing</a> options, all in lower case</li> <li>parsing options will only impact string input (URIs, XML strings), because nodes have already been parsed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>An existing database will be overwritten.</li> <li>Database creation takes place after most other update operations (see <a href="#">Pending Update List</a>). As a consequence, a newly created database cannot be addressed in the same query.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>lock</code>: a database is opened by another process.  <code>name</code>: the specified name is not a <a href="#">valid database name</a>.  <code>conflict</code>: the same database was addressed more than once.  <code>args</code>: the number of specified inputs and paths differs.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:create("DB")</code> creates the empty database DB.</li> <li><code>db:create("DB", "/home/dir/doc.xml")</code> creates the database DB and adds the document <code>/home/dir/doc.xml</code> as initial content.</li> <li><code>db:create("DB", &lt;a/&gt;, "doc.xml")</code> creates the database DB and adds the document with content <code>&lt;a/&gt;</code> under the name <code>doc.xml</code>.</li> <li><code>db:create("DB", "/home/dir/", "docs/dir")</code> creates the database DB and adds the documents in <code>/home/dir</code> to the database under the path <code>docs/dir</code>.</li> <li><code>db:create("DB", file:list('.'), (), map { 'ftindex': true() })</code> adds all files of the current working directory to a new database, preserving relative filesystem paths and creating a full-text index.</li> </ul>

### db:add

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:add(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item()) as empty-sequence(), db:add(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item(), \$path as xs:string?) as empty-sequence(), db:add(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item(), \$path as xs:string?, \$options as map(*?)) as empty-sequence()</code>
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	<p>Adds documents specified by <code>\$input</code> to the database <code>\$db</code> with the specified <code>\$path</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A document with the same path may occur more than once in a database. If you want to enforce single instances, use <code>db:put</code> instead.</li> <li>• See <code>db:create</code> for more details on the input and path arguments.</li> <li>• The parsing behavior can be controlled via <code>\$options</code>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• allowed options are <code>ADDCACHE</code> and the <code>parsing</code> and <code>XML parsing</code> options, all in lower case</li> <li>• parsing options will only impact string input (URIs, XML strings), because nodes have already been parsed</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>db:add("DB", "/home/dir/doc.xml")</code> adds the file <code>/home/dir/doc.xml</code> to the database <code>DB</code>.</li> <li>• <code>db:add("DB", &lt;a/&gt;, "doc.xml")</code> adds a document node to the database <code>DB</code> under the name <code>doc.xml</code>.</li> <li>• <code>db:add("DB", "/home/dir", "docs/dir", map { 'addcache': true() })</code> adds all documents in <code>/home/dir</code> to the database <code>DB</code> under the path <code>docs/dir</code>. In order to reduce memory consumption, the files will be cached before being added to the database.</li> </ul>

## db:put

*Updated with Version 10:* renamed (before: `db:replace`); function signature aligned with `db:add` (second and third argument swapped).

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:put(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item(), \$path as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>db:put(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item(), \$path as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Replaces a resource, specified by <code>\$path</code>, in the database <code>\$db</code> with the contents of <code>\$input</code>, or adds it as a new resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The parsing behavior can be controlled via <code>\$options</code>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allowed options are <code>ADDCACHE</code> and the <code>parsing</code> and <code>XML parsing</code> options, all in lower case.</li> <li>• Parsing options will only impact string input (URIs, XML strings), because nodes have already been parsed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• See <code>db:create</code> for more details on the input argument.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>target</code> : the path points to a directory.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>db:put("DB", "/home/dir/doc.xml", "docs/dir/doc.xml")</code> replaces the content of the document <code>docs/dir/doc.xml</code> in the database <code>DB</code> with the content of the file <code>/home/dir/doc.xml</code>.</li> <li>• <code>db:put("DB", "&lt;a/&gt;", "docs/dir/doc.xml")</code> replaces the content of the document <code>docs/dir/doc.xml</code> in the database <code>DB</code> with <code>&lt;a/&gt;</code>.</li> <li>• <code>db:put("DB", document { &lt;a/&gt; }, "docs/dir/doc.xml")</code> replaces the content of the document <code>docs/dir/doc.xml</code> in the database <code>DB</code> with the specified document node.</li> </ul> <p>The following query can be used to import files from a directory to a database:</p> <pre>let \$source := '/home/john/xml/source' for \$file in file:list(\$source, true())</pre>

```
let $path := $source || $file
where not(file:is-dir($path))
return db:put('db', doc($path), $file)
```

## db:put-binary

*Updated with Version 10:* renamed (before: `db:put`); function signature aligned with `db:add` (second and third argument swapped).

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:put-binary(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item(), \$path as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Stores a binary resource specified by <code>\$input</code> in the database <code>\$db</code> at the specified <code>\$path</code> . Existing resources are overwritten.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>mainmem</code> : the database is not <i>persistent</i> (stored on disk).
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:put-binary('DB', file:read-binary('video.mov'), 'video/sample.mov')</code> stores the addressed video file at the specified location.</li> <li>With the following query, you can copy the binary resources of one database into another:</li> </ul> <pre>let \$db := 'db' let \$src-path := 'src/' let \$trg-path := 'trg/' for \$src in db:list(\$db, \$src-path) where db:type(\$db, \$src) = 'binary' let \$trg := \$trg-path    substring-after(\$src, \$src-path) return db:put-binary(\$db, db:get-binary(\$db, \$src), \$trg)</pre>

## db:put-value

*Introduced with Version 10.*

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:put-value(\$db as xs:string, \$input as item()*, \$path as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Stores a value specified by <code>\$input</code> in the database <code>\$db</code> at the specified <code>\$path</code> . Existing resources are overwritten. The value can be an arbitrary sequence of atomic items, nodes, maps, and arrays.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>mainmem</code> : the database is not <i>persistent</i> (stored on disk).
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:put-value('DB', 1 to 10000, 'sequence')</code> stores a numeric range in the database.</li> <li>With the following query, a map with countries and associated cities is stored in a database. The value resource can e.g. be used as index in future queries:</li> </ul> <pre>db:put-value(   'factbook',   map:merge(     for \$country in db:get('factbook')//country     return map:entry(\$country/@name, \$country//city/name ! string())   ),   'cities' )</pre>

## db:delete

**Signatures** `db:delete($db as xs:string, $path as xs:string) as empty-sequence()`

<b>Summary</b>	Deletes resource(s), specified by <code>\$path</code> , from the database <code>\$db</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>path</code> : the specified path is invalid.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:delete("DB", "docs/dir/doc.xml")</code> deletes the resource <code>docs/dir/doc.xml</code> from DB.</li> <li><code>db:delete("DB", "docs/dir")</code> deletes all resources from DB in the specified path <code>docs/dir</code>.</li> </ul>

## db:copy

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:copy(\$db as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a copy of the database <code>\$db</code> , which will be called <code>\$name</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>lock</code> : a database is opened by another process. <code>name</code> : invalid database name. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.

## db:alter

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:alter(\$db as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Renames the database <code>\$db</code> to <code>\$name</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>lock</code> : a database is opened by another process. <code>name</code> : invalid database name. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.

## db:optimize

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:optimize(\$db as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>db:optimize(\$db as xs:string, \$all as xs:boolean) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>db:optimize(\$db as xs:string, \$all as xs:boolean, \$options as map(*)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Optimizes the metadata and indexes of the database <code>\$db</code> . If <code>\$all</code> is <code>true</code> , the complete database will be rebuilt. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to control indexing. The syntax is identical to the <code>db:create</code> function: Allowed options are all <b>indexing</b> and <b>full-text</b> options. <code>UPDINDEX</code> is only supported if <code>\$all</code> is <code>true</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:optimize("DB")</code> optimizes the database structures of the database DB.</li> <li><code>db:optimize("DB", true(), map { 'ftindex': true() })</code> optimizes all database structures of the database DB and creates a full-text index.</li> </ul>

## db:rename

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:rename(\$db as xs:string, \$source as xs:string, \$target as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Moves all resources(s) of database <code>\$db</code> , which are found in the supplied <code>\$source</code> path, to the supplied <code>\$target</code> path. The paths may point to single resources or directories. No updates will take place if a non-existing source path is supplied.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>path</code> : the specified source or target path, or one of its descendants, is invalid.
<b>Examples</b>	<code>db:rename("DB", "docs/dir/doc.xml", "docs/dir/newdoc.xml")</code> renames the resource <code>docs/dir/doc.xml</code> to <code>docs/dir/newdoc.xml</code> in the database DB.

- `db:rename("DB", "docs/dir", "docs/newdir")` moves all resources in the database DB from `docs/dir` to `{Code|docs/newdir}`.

**db:flush**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:flush(\$db as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Explicitly flushes the buffers of the database <code>\$db</code> . This command is only useful if <code>AUTOFLUSH</code> has been set to <code>false</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.

**db:drop**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:drop(\$db as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Drops the database <code>\$db</code> and all connected resources.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>lock</code> : a database is opened by another process. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.
<b>Examples</b>	• <code>db:drop("DB")</code> drops the database DB.

**Backups**

*Introduced with Version 10:* Support for general data ([registered users](#), [scheduled services](#) and [key-value stores](#)).

All functions in this section except for `db:backups` are Updating Functions.

**db:create-backup**

*Updated with Version 10:* Options argument added.

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:create-backup(\$db as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>db:create-backup(\$db as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a backup of the database <code>\$db</code> . If no name is supplied, general data will be backed up. The following <code>\$options</code> are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With <code>comment</code>, a comment string can be attached to the backup.</li> <li>• By setting <code>compress</code> to <code>false</code>, the backup will be created faster, but it will take more space on disk.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>name</code> : invalid database name. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.
<b>Examples</b>	• <code>db:create-backup('DB', map { 'compress': false() })</code> creates a backup of the database DB without compressing its entries.

**db:drop-backup**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:drop-backup(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Drops all backups of the database with the specified <code>\$name</code> . If the name ends with a timestamp, only the specified backup file will be deleted. If no name is supplied, backups with general data are addressed.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>backup</code> : No backup file found. <code>name</code> : invalid database name. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.
<b>Examples</b>	• <code>db:drop-backup("DB")</code> drops all backups of the database DB. • <code>db:drop-backup("DB-2014-03-13-17-36-44")</code> drops the specific backup file <code>DB-2014-03-13-17-36-44.zip</code> of the database DB.

## db:alter-backup

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:alter-backup(\$name as xs:string, \$new-name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Renames all backups of the database with the specified <code>\$name</code> to <code>\$new-name</code> . If the name ends with a date, only the specified backup file will be renamed.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>backup</code> : No backup file found. <code>name</code> : invalid database name. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:alter-backup("DB", "DB2)</code> renames all backups of the database DB to DB2.</li> </ul>

## db:restore

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:restore(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Restores the database with the specified <code>\$name</code> . The <code>\$name</code> may include the timestamp of the backup file. If no name is supplied, general data will be restored. If general data is restored, it will only be available after BaseX has been restarted.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>lock</code> : a database is opened by another process. <code>name</code> : invalid database name. <code>no-backup</code> : No backup found. <code>conflict</code> : the same database was addressed more than once.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:restore("DB")</code> restores the database DB.</li> <li><code>db:restore("DB-2014-03-13-18-05-45")</code> restores the database DB from the backup file with the given timestamp.</li> </ul>

## db:backups

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:backups() as element(backup)*, db:backups(\$db as xs:string) as element(backup)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an element sequence containing all available database backups with timestamp, file size and comment. If a database <code>\$db</code> is specified, the sequence will be restricted to the backups matching this database.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:backups("factbook")</code> returns all backups that have been made from the factbook database.</li> </ul>

## Helper Functions

### db:name

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:name(\$node as node()) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the name of the database in which the specified <b>database node</b> <code>\$node</code> is stored.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>node</code> : <code>\$nodes</code> contains a node which is not stored in a database.

### db:path

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:path(\$node as node()) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the path of the database document in which the specified <b>database node</b> <code>\$node</code> is stored.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>node</code> : <code>\$nodes</code> contains a node which is not stored in a database.

### db:exists

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:exists(\$db as xs:string) as xs:boolean, db:exists(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as xs:boolean</code>
-------------------	--



<b>Summary</b>	Checks if the database <code>\$db</code> or the resource specified by <code>\$path</code> exists. <code>false</code> is returned if a database directory has been addressed.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:exists("DB")</code> returns <code>true</code> if the database <code>DB</code> exists.</li> <li><code>db:exists("DB", "resource")</code> returns <code>true</code> if <code>resource</code> is an XML document or a raw file.</li> </ul>

## db:type

Introduced with BaseX 10: Replaces `db:is-raw` and `db:is-xml`.

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:type(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as xs:boolean</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the type of a resource – <code>xml</code> , <code>binary</code> , or <code>value</code> – in the database <code>\$db</code> at the specified <code>\$path</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:type("DB", "factbook.xml")</code> returns <code>true</code> if the specified resource is an XML document.</li> </ul>

## db:content-type

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>db:content-type(\$db as xs:string, \$path as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves the content type of a resource in the database <code>\$db</code> and the path <code>\$path</code> . The file extension is used to recognize the content-type of a resource stored in the database. Content-type <code>application/xml</code> will be returned for any XML document stored in the database, regardless of its file name extension.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>db:content-type("DB", "docs/doc01.pdf")</code> returns <code>application/pdf</code>.</li> <li><code>db:content-type("DB", "docs/doc01.xml")</code> returns <code>application/xml</code>.</li> <li><code>db:content-type("DB", "docs/doc01")</code> returns <code>application/xml</code>, if <code>db:is-xml("DB", "docs/doc01")</code> returns <code>true</code>.</li> </ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>args</code>	The number of specified inputs and paths differs.
<code>conflict</code>	Multiple update operations point to the same target.
<code>lock</code>	A database cannot be updated because it is opened by another process.
<code>mainmem</code>	The addressed database is not <i>persistent</i> (stored on disk).
<code>name</code>	The name of the specified database is invalid.
<code>no-backup</code>	No backup exists for a database.
<code>node</code>	The referenced XML node is no <b>database node</b> , i.e. it is neither stored in a database nor represented as database fragment.
<code>no-index</code>	The database lacks an index structure required by the called function.
<code>open</code>	The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<code>option</code>	The specified option is unknown.
<code>path</code>	The specified database path is invalid.

---

property	The specified database property is unknown.
range	The addressed database id or pre value is out of range.
target	Path points to an invalid target.

---

## Changelog

### Version 10

- Added: `db:get`, `db:put`, `db:type`.
- Added: **Backups**: Support for general data (**registered users**, **scheduled services** and **key-value stores**).
- Updated: `db:get`, `db:get-id`, `db:get-pre` renamed (before: `db:open`, `db:open-id`, `db:open-pre`)
- Updated: `db:put` renamed (before: `db:replace`); function signature aligned with `db:add` (second and third argument swapped).
- Updated: `db:put-binary` renamed (before: `db:store`); function signature aligned with `db:add` (second and third argument swapped).
- Updated: `db:get-binary` renamed (before: `db:retrieve`).
- Updated: `db:backups`, `db:create-backup`: Options added.
- Removed: `db:is-raw`, `db:is-raw` (new: `db:type`).

### Version 9.3

- Added: `db:alter-backup`
- Updated: `db:open-id`, `db:open-pre`: support for multiple integers

### Version 9.2

- Added: `db:dir`
- Updated: `db:add`: `$path` allow empty path argument

### Version 9.0

- Added: `db:option`
- Updated: `db:output` renamed to `update:output`, `db:output-cache` renamed to `update:cache`
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.6

- Added: `db:property`

### Version 8.4

- Updated: `db:create`, `db:add`, `db:replace`: support for `ADDCACHE` option.
- Added: `db:token`

### Version 8.3

- Updated: `db:list-details`: attributes with name of database and date of backup added to results.
- Updated: `db:backups` now include attributes with name of database and date of backup.

- Updated: `value_indexes`: raise error if no index exists.

#### Version 8.2

- Added: `db:output-cache`
- Removed: `db:event`

#### Version 7.9

- Updated: parsing options added to `db:create`, `db:add` and `db:replace`.
- Updated: allow `UPDINDEX` if `$all` is true.

#### Version 7.8.2

- Added: `db:alter`, `db:copy`, `db:create-backup`, `db:drop-backup`, `db:restore`

#### Version 7.8

- Removed: `db:fulltext` (use `ft:search` instead)

#### Version 7.7

- Added: `db:export`, `db:name`, `db:path`
- Updated: `$options` argument added to `db:create` and `db:optimize`.
- Updated: the functions no longer accept `database nodes` as reference. Instead, the name of a database must now be specified.

#### Version 7.6

- Updated: `db:create`: allow more than one input and path.

#### Version 7.5

- Updated: `db:add`: input nodes will be automatically converted to document nodes
- Added: `db:backups`
- Added: `db:create`
- Added: `db:drop`

#### Version 7.3

- Added: `db:flush`

#### Version 7.2.1

- Added: `db:text-range`, `db:attribute-range`, `db:output`

#### Version 7.1

- Added: `db:list-details`, `db:content-type`
- Updated: `db:info`, `db:system`, `db:retrieve`

#### Version 7.0

- Added: `db:exists`, `db:retrieve`, `db:store`, `db:is-raw`, `db:is-xml`
- Updated: `db:list`, `db:open`, `db:add`

---

# Chapter 43. Fetch Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** provides simple functions to fetch the content of resources identified by URIs. Resources can be stored locally or remotely and e.g. use the `file://` or `http://` scheme. If more control over HTTP requests is required, the **HTTP Client Module** can be used. With the **HTML Module**, retrieved HTML documents can be converted to XML.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/fetch` namespace, which is statically bound to the `fetch` prefix.

URI arguments can point be URLs or point to local files. Relative file paths will be resolved against the *current working directory* (for more details, have a look at the **File Module**).

## Functions

### fetch:binary

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fetch:binary(\$uri as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Fetches the resource referred to by the given URI and returns it as <b>lazy</b> <code>xs:base64Binary</code> item.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the URI could not be resolved, or the resource could not be retrieved.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>fetch:binary("http://images.trulia.com/blogimg/c/5/f/4/679932_1298401950553_o.jpg")</code> returns the addressed image.</li><li><code>lazy:cache(fetch:binary("http://en.wikipedia.org"))</code> enforces the fetch operation (otherwise, it will be delayed until requested first).</li></ul>

### fetch:text

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fetch:text(\$uri as xs:string) as xs:string,</code> <code>fetch:text(\$uri as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string,</code> <code>fetch:text(\$uri as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string, \$fallback as xs:boolean) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Fetches the resource referred to by the given <code>\$uri</code> and returns it as <b>lazy</b> <code>xs:string</code> item: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The UTF-8 default encoding can be overwritten with the optional <code>\$encoding</code> argument.</li><li>By default, invalid characters will be rejected. If <code>\$fallback</code> is set to true, these characters will be replaced with the Unicode replacement character <code>FFFD</code> (#).</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the URI could not be resolved, or the resource could not be retrieved. <code>encoding</code> : the specified encoding is not supported, or unknown.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>fetch:text("http://en.wikipedia.org")</code> returns a string representation of the English Wikipedia main HTML page.</li><li><code>fetch:text("http://www.bbc.com", "US-ASCII", true())</code> returns the BBC homepage in US-ASCII with all non-US-ASCII characters replaced with #.</li><li><code>lazy:cache(fetch:text("http://en.wikipedia.org"))</code> enforces the fetch operation (otherwise, it will be delayed until requested first).</li></ul>

**fetch:doc**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fetch:doc(\$uri as xs:string) as document-node(), fetch:doc(\$uri as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as document-node()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Fetches the resource referred to by the given <code>\$uri</code> and returns it as a document node. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to change the parsing behavior. Allowed options are all <b>parsing</b> and <b>XML parsing</b> options in lower case. The function differs from <code>fn:doc</code> in various aspects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is <i>non-deterministic</i>, i.e., a new document node will be created by each call of this function.</li> <li>• A document created by this function will be garbage-collected as soon as it is not referenced anymore.</li> <li>• URIs will not be resolved against existing databases. As a result, it will not trigger any locks (see <b>limitations of database locking</b> for more details).</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the URI could not be resolved, or the resource could not be retrieved.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Retrieve an XML representation of the English Wikipedia main HTML page with whitespace stripped: <pre>fetch:doc("http://en.wikipedia.org", map { 'stripws': true() })</pre> </li> <li>• Return a web page as XML, preserve namespaces: <pre>fetch:doc(   'http://basex.org/',   map {     'parser': 'html',     'htmlparser': map { 'nons': false() }   } )</pre> </li> </ul>

**fetch:binary-doc**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fetch:binary-doc(\$input as xs:anyAtomicType) as document-node(), fetch:binary-doc(\$data as xs:anyAtomicType, \$options as map(*)) as document-node()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Converts the specified <code>\$input</code> (<code>xs:base64Binary</code>, <code>xs:hexBinary</code>) to XML and returns it as a document node. In contrast to <code>fn:parse-xml</code>, which expects a string, the input can be arbitrarily encoded. The encoding will be derived from the XML declaration or (in case of UTF-16 or UTF-32) from the first bytes of the input. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to change the parsing behavior. Allowed options are all <b>parsing</b> and <b>XML parsing</b> options in lower case.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Retrieves file input as binary data and parses it as XML: <pre>fetch:binary-doc(file:read-binary('doc.xml'))</pre> </li> <li>• Encodes a string as CP1252 and parses it as XML. The input and the string <code>touché</code> will be correctly decoded because of the XML declaration: <pre>fetch:binary-doc(convert:string-to-base64(   "&lt;?xml version='1.0' encoding='CP1252'?&gt;&lt;xml&gt;touché&lt;/xml&gt;",   "CP1252" ))</pre> </li> <li>• Encodes a string as UTF-16 and parses it as XML. The document will be correctly decoded, as the first bytes of the data indicate that the input must be UTF-16: <pre>fetch:binary-doc(convert:string-to-base64("&lt;xml/&gt;", "UTF16"))</pre> </li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the input could not be parsed.

## fetch:content-type

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>fetch:content-type(\$uri as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the content-type (also called mime-type) of the resource specified by <code>\$uri</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a remote resource is addressed, the request header will be evaluated.</li> <li>• If the addressed resource is locally stored, the content-type will be guessed based on the file extension.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>open</code> : the URI could not be resolved, or the resource could not be retrieved.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>fetch:content-type("http://docs.basex.org/skins/vector/images/wiki.png")</code> returns <code>image/png</code>.</li> </ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>encoding</code>	The specified encoding is not supported, or unknown.
<code>open</code>	The URI could not be resolved, or the resource could not be retrieved.

## Changelog

### Version 10.0

- Updated: `fetch:doc` renamed (before: `fetch:xml`).
- Updated: `fetch:binary-doc` renamed (before: `fetch:xml-binary`).

### Version 9.0

- Added: `fetch:xml-binary`
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.5

- Updated: `fetch:text:$fallback` argument added.

### Version 8.0

- Added: `fetch:xml`

The module was introduced with Version 7.6.

---

# Chapter 44. File Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions related to file system operations, such as listing, reading, or writing files.

This module is based on the **EXPath File Module**. The following enhancements have not been added to the specification yet:

Function	Description
<code>file:descendants</code>	new function
<code>file:is-absolute</code>	new function
<code>file:read-text</code> , <code>file:read-text-lines</code>	<code>\$fallback</code> argument added
<code>file:read-text-lines</code>	<code>\$offset</code> and <code>\$length</code> arguments added
<code>file:resolve-path</code>	<code>\$base</code> argument added

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://expath.org/ns/file` namespace, which is statically bound to the `file` prefix.

For serialization parameters, the `http://www.w3.org/2010/xslt-xquery-serialization` namespace is used, which is statically bound to the `output` prefix.

The error `invalid-path` is raised if a path is invalid.

## File Paths

- All file paths are resolved against the *current working directory* (the directory from which BaseX or, more generally, the Java Virtual Machine, was started). This directory can be retrieved via `file:base-dir`.
- A path can be specified as local filesystem path or as file URI.
- Returned strings that refer to existing directories are suffixed with a directory separator.

## Read Operations

### file:list

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:list(\$dir as xs:string) as xs:string*</code> , <code>file:list(\$dir as xs:string, \$recursive as xs:boolean) as xs:string*</code> , <code>file:list(\$dir as xs:string, \$recursive as xs:boolean, \$pattern as xs:string) as xs:string*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Lists all files and directories found in the specified <code>\$dir</code> . The returned paths are relative to the provided path. The optional parameter <code>\$recursive</code> specifies whether subdirectories will be traversed, too. The optional parameter <code>\$pattern</code> defines a file name pattern in the <b>Glob Syntax</b> . If present, only those files and directories are returned that correspond to the pattern. Several patterns can be separated with a comma (,).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified file does not exist. <code>no-dir</code> : the specified path does not point to a directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

### file:children

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:children(\$dir as xs:string) as xs:string*</code>
-------------------	--

---

<b>Summary</b>	Returns the full paths to all files and directories found in the specified <code>\$dir</code> . The inverse function is <code>file:parent</code> . The related function <code>file:list</code> returns relative file paths.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified file does not exist. <code>no-dir</code> : the specified path does not point to a directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:descendants

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:descendants(\$dir as xs:string) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the full paths to all files and directories found in the specified <code>\$dir</code> and its subdirectories.. The related function <code>file:list</code> returns relative file paths.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified file does not exist. <code>no-dir</code> : the specified path does not point to a directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:read-binary

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:read-binary(\$path as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>file:read-binary(\$path as xs:string, \$offset as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>file:read-binary(\$path as xs:string, \$offset as xs:integer, \$length as xs:integer) as xs:base64Binary</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Reads the binary content of the file specified by <code>\$path</code> and returns it as <b>lazy</b> <code>xs:base64Binary</code> item. The optional parameters <code>\$offset</code> and <code>\$length</code> can be used to read chunks of a file.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified file does not exist. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>out-of-range</code> : the offset or length is negative, or the chosen values would exceed the file bounds. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>lazy:cache(file:read-binary("config.data"))</code> enforces the file access (otherwise, it will be delayed until requested first).</li> </ul>

## file:read-text

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:read-text(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string</code> , <code>file:read-text(\$path as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string</code> , <code>file:read-text(\$path as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string, \$fallback as xs:boolean) as xs:string</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Reads the textual contents of the file specified by <code>\$path</code> and returns it as <b>lazy</b> <code>xs:string</code> item: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The UTF-8 default encoding can be overwritten with the optional <code>\$encoding</code> argument.</li> <li>By default, invalid characters will be rejected. If <code>\$fallback</code> is set to true, these characters will be replaced with the Unicode replacement character <code>FFFD</code> (#).</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified file does not exist. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is not supported, or unknown. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>lazy:cache(file:read-text("ids.txt"))</code> enforces the file access (otherwise, it will be delayed until requested first).</li> </ul>

## file:read-text-lines

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:read-text-lines(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string*</code> , <code>file:read-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as xs:string*</code> , <code>file:read-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string, \$fallback as xs:boolean) as xs:string*</code> , <code>file:read-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string, \$fallback as xs:boolean, \$offset as xs:integer) as xs:string*</code> , <code>file:read-text-</code>
-------------------	---



	<code>lines(\$path as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string, \$fallback as xs:boolean, \$offset as xs:integer, \$length as xs:integer) as xs:string*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Reads the textual contents of the file specified by <code>\$path</code> and returns it as a sequence of <code>xs:string</code> items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The UTF-8 default encoding can be overwritten with the optional <code>\$encoding</code> argument.</li> <li>• By default, invalid characters will be rejected. If <code>\$fallback</code> is set to <code>true</code>, these characters will be replaced with the Unicode replacement character <code>FFFD</code> (#).</li> </ul> <p>The lines to be read can be restricted with the optional parameters <code>\$offset</code> and <code>\$length</code>.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>not-found</code>: the specified file does not exist.  <code>is-dir</code>: the specified path is a directory.  <code>unknown-encoding</code>: the specified encoding is not supported, or unknown.  <code>io-error</code>: the operation fails for some other reason.</p>

## Write Operations

### file:create-dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:create-dir(\$dir as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Creates the directory specified by <code>\$dir</code> if it does not already exist. Non-existing parent directories will be created as well.
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>exists</code>: the specified target exists, but is no directory.  <code>io-error</code>: the operation fails for some other reason.</p>

### file:create-temp-dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:create-temp-dir(\$prefix as xs:string, \$suffix as xs:string) as xs:string</code> , <code>file:create-temp-dir(\$prefix as xs:string, \$suffix as xs:string, \$dir as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a new temporary directory that did not exist before this function was called, and returns its full file path. The directory name begins and ends with the specified <code>\$prefix</code> and <code>\$suffix</code> . If no directory is specified via <code>\$dir</code> , the directory will be placed in the system's default temporary directory. The operation will create all non-existing parent directories.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the specified directory points to a file. <code>io-error</code> : the directory could not be created.

### file:create-temp-file

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:create-temp-file(\$prefix as xs:string, \$suffix as xs:string) as xs:string</code> , <code>file:create-temp-file(\$prefix as xs:string, \$suffix as xs:string, \$dir as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a new temporary file that did not exist before this function was called, and returns its full file path. The file name begins and ends with the specified <code>\$prefix</code> and <code>\$suffix</code> . If no directory is specified via <code>\$dir</code> , the file will be placed in the system's default temporary directory. The operation will create all non-existing parent directories.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the specified directory points to a file. <code>io-error</code> : the directory could not be created.

### file:delete

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:delete(\$path as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>file:delete(\$path as xs:string, \$recursive as xs:boolean) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Recursively deletes a file or directory specified by <code>\$path</code> . The optional parameter <code>\$recursive</code> specifies whether subdirectories will be deleted, too.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified path does not exist. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:write

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:write(\$path as xs:string, \$items as item(*) as empty-sequence(), file:write(\$path as xs:string, \$items as item(*), \$params as item()) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Writes a serialized sequence of items to the specified file. If the file already exists, it will be overwritten. The <code>\$params</code> argument contains <b>serialization parameters</b> . As with <code>fn:serialize()</code> , the parameters can be specified <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• either as children of an <code>&lt;output:serialization-parameters/&gt;</code> element: <pre>&lt;output:serialization-parameters&gt;   &lt;output:method value='xml' /&gt;   &lt;output:cdata-section-elements value="div" /&gt;   ... &lt;/output:serialization-parameters&gt;</pre> </li> <li>• or as map, which contains all key/value pairs: <pre>map { "method": "xml", "cdata-section-elements": "div", ... }</pre> </li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>file:write('data.bin', xs:hexBinary('414243'))</code> writes a hex representation to the specified file.</li> <li>• <code>file:write('data.bin', xs:hexBinary('414243'), map { 'method': 'base64' })</code> writes binary data to the specified file (see <b>Serialization</b> for more details).</li> </ul>

## file:write-binary

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:write-binary(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:anyAtomicType) as empty-sequence(), file:write-binary(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:anyAtomicType, \$offset as xs:integer) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Writes a binary item ( <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>xs:hexBinary</code> ) to the specified file. If the file already exists, it will be overwritten. If <code>\$offset</code> is specified, data will be written at this file position. An existing file may be resized by that operation.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>out-of-range</code> : the offset is negative, or it exceeds the current file size. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:write-text

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:write-text(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:string) as empty-sequence(), file:write-text(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Writes a string to the specified file. If the file already exists, it will be overwritten. The optional parameter <code>\$encoding</code> defines the output encoding (default: UTF-8).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is not supported, or unknown. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:write-text-lines

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:write-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$values as xs:string*) as empty-sequence(), file:write-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$values as xs:string*, \$encoding as xs:string) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Writes a sequence of strings to the specified file, each followed by the system specific newline character. If the file already exists, it will be overwritten. The optional parameter <code>\$encoding</code> defines the output encoding (default: UTF-8).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is not supported, or <code>unknown.io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:append

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:append(\$path as xs:string, \$items as item()*) as empty-sequence(), file:append(\$path as xs:string, \$items as item()*, \$params as item()) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Appends a serialized sequence of items to the specified file. If the file does not exist, a new file is created.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:append-binary

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:append-binary(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:anyAtomicType) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Appends a binary item ( <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , <code>xs:hexBinary</code> ) to the specified file. If the file does not exist, a new one is created.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:append-text

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:append-text(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:string) as empty-sequence(), file:append-text(\$path as xs:string, \$value as xs:string, \$encoding as xs:string) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Appends a string to a file specified by <code>\$path</code> . If the specified file does not exist, a new file is created. The optional parameter <code>\$encoding</code> defines the output encoding (default: UTF-8).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is not supported, or <code>unknown.io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:append-text-lines

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:append-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$values as xs:string*) as empty-sequence(), file:append-text-lines(\$path as xs:string, \$values as xs:string*, \$encoding as xs:string) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Appends a sequence of strings to the specified file, each followed by the system specific newline character. If the specified file does not exist, a new file is created. The optional parameter <code>\$encoding</code> defines the output encoding (default: UTF-8).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>no-dir</code> : the parent of specified path is no directory. <code>is-dir</code> : the specified path is a directory. <code>unknown-encoding</code> : the specified encoding is not supported, or <code>unknown.io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:copy

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:copy(\$source as xs:string, \$target as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Copies a file or directory specified by <code>\$source</code> to the file or directory specified by <code>\$target</code> . If the target file already exists, it will be overwritten. No operation will be performed if the source and target path are equal.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified source does not exist. <code>exists</code> : the specified source is a directory and the target is a file. <code>no-dir</code> : the parent of the specified target is no directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## file:move

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:move(\$source as xs:string, \$target as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Moves or renames the file or directory specified by <code>\$source</code> to the path specified by <code>\$target</code> . If the target file already exists, it will be overwritten. No operation will be performed if the source and target path are equal.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : the specified source does not exist. <code>exists</code> : the specified source is a directory and the target is a file. <code>no-dir</code> : the parent of the specified target is no directory. <code>io-error</code> : the operation fails for some other reason.

## File Properties

### file:exists

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:exists(\$path as xs:string) as xs:boolean</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:boolean</code> indicating whether a file or directory specified by <code>\$path</code> exists in the file system.

### file:is-dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:is-dir(\$path as xs:string) as xs:boolean</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:boolean</code> indicating whether the argument <code>\$path</code> points to an existing directory.

### file:is-absolute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:is-absolute(\$path as xs:string) as xs:boolean</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:boolean</code> indicating whether the argument <code>\$path</code> is absolute. The behavior of this function depends on the operating system: On Windows, an absolute path starts with the drive letter and a colon, whereas on Linux it starts with a slash.

### file:is-file

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:is-file(\$path as xs:string) as xs:boolean</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>xs:boolean</code> indicating whether the argument <code>\$path</code> points to an existing file.

### file:last-modified

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:last-modified(\$path as xs:string) as xs:dateTime</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves the timestamp of the last modification of the file or directory specified by <code>\$path</code> .

<b>Errors</b>	not-found: the specified path does not exist.
---------------	---

## file:size

<b>Signatures</b>	file:size(\$path as xs:string) as xs:integer,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the size, in bytes, of the file specified by \$path, or 0 for directories.
<b>Errors</b>	not-found: the specified file does not exist.

## Path Functions

### file:name

<b>Signatures</b>	file:name(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the name of a file or directory specified by \$path. An empty string is returned if the path points to the root directory.

### file:parent

<b>Signatures</b>	file:parent(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string?,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the absolute path to the parent directory of a file or directory specified by \$path. An empty sequence is returned if the path points to a root directory. The inverse function is file:children.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>file:parent(static-base-uri()) returns the directory of the current XQuery module.</li> </ul>

### file:path-to-native

<b>Signatures</b>	file:path-to-native(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string,
<b>Summary</b>	Transforms the \$path argument to its native representation on the operating system.
<b>Errors</b>	not-found: the specified file does not exist.io-error: the specified path cannot be transformed to its native representation.

### file:resolve-path

<b>Signatures</b>	file:resolve-path(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string, file:resolve-path(\$path as xs:string, \$base as xs:string) as xs:string,
<b>Summary</b>	Transforms the \$path argument to an absolute operating system path. If the path is relative, and if an absolute \$base path is specified, it will be resolved against this path.
<b>Errors</b>	is-relative: the specified base path is relative.
<b>Examples</b>	<p>The following examples apply to Windows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>file:resolve-path('file.txt', 'C:/Temp/') returns C:/Temp/file.txt.</li> <li>file:resolve-path('file.txt', 'C:/Temp') returns C:/file.txt.</li> <li>file:resolve-path('file.txt', 'Temp') raises an error.</li> </ul>

### file:path-to-uri

<b>Signatures</b>	file:path-to-uri(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string,
<b>Summary</b>	Transforms the path specified by \$path into a URI with the file:// scheme.

## System Properties

### file:dir-separator

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:dir-separator()</code> as <code>xs:string</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the directory separator used by the operating system, such as <code>/</code> or <code>\</code> .

### file:path-separator

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:path-separator()</code> as <code>xs:string</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the path separator used by the operating system, such as <code>;</code> or <code>:</code> .

### file:line-separator

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:line-separator()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the line separator used by the operating system, such as <code>&amp;#10;</code> , <code>&amp;#13;&amp;#10;</code> or <code>&amp;#13;</code> .

### file:temp-dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:temp-dir()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the system's default temporary-file directory.

### file:current-dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:current-dir()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the current working directory. This function returns the same result as the function call <code>file:resolve-path("")</code> .

### file:base-dir

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>file:base-dir()</code> as <code>xs:string?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the parent directory of the static base URI. If the Base URI property is undefined, the empty sequence is returned. - If a static base URI exists, and if points to a local file path, this function returns the same result as the expression <code>file:parent(static-base-uri())</code> .

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>exists</code>	A file with the same path already exists.
<code>invalid-path</code>	A specified path is invalid.
<code>io-error</code>	The operation fails for some other reason specific to the operating system.
<code>is-dir</code>	The specified path is a directory.
<code>is-relative</code>	The specified path is relative (and must be absolute).
<code>no-dir</code>	The specified path does not point to a directory.
<code>not-found</code>	A specified path does not exist.
<code>out-of-range</code>	The specified offset or length is negative, or the chosen values would exceed the file bounds.
<code>unknown-encoding</code>	The specified encoding is not supported, or unknown.

## Changelog

### Version 9.3

- Added: `file:descendants`

### Version 9.0

- Updated: `file:read-text-lines`: `$offset` and `$length` arguments added.

### Version 8.5

- Updated: `file:read-text`, `file:read-text-lines`: `$fallback` argument added.

### Version 8.2

- Added: `file:is-absolute`
- Updated: `file:resolve-path`: `base` argument added

### Version 8.0

- Added: `file:current-dir`, `file:base-dir`, `file:children`

### Version 7.8

- Added: `file:parent`, `file:name`
- Updated: error codes; `file:read-binary`, `file:write-binary`: `$offset` and `$length` arguments added.
- Deleted: `file:base-name`, `file:dir-name`

### Version 7.7

- Added: `file:create-temp-dir`, `file:create-temp-file`, `file:temp-dir`
- Updated: all returned strings that refer to existing directories will be suffixed with a directory separator.

### Version 7.3

- Added: `file:append-text`, `file:write-text`, `file:append-text-lines`, `file:write-text-lines`, `file:line-separator`
- Aligned with latest specification: `$file:directory-separator` → `file:dir-separator`, `$file:path-separator` → `file:path-separator`, `file:is-directory` → `file:is-dir`, `file:create-directory` → `file:create-dir`
- Updated: `file:write-binary`, `file:append-binary`: output limited to a single value

### Version 7.2.1

- Updated: `file:delete`: `$recursive` parameter added to prevent subdirectories from being accidentally deleted.
- Fixed: `file:list` now returns relative instead of absolute paths.

---

# Chapter 45. Full-Text Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** extends the **Full-Text** features of BaseX: The index can be directly accessed, full-text results can be marked with additional elements, or the relevant parts can be extracted. Moreover, the score value, which is generated by the `contains text` expression, can be explicitly requested from items.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/ft` namespace, which is statically bound to the `ft` prefix.

## Database Functions

### ft:search

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ft:search(\$db as xs:string, \$terms as item(*) as text()*, ft:search(\$db as xs:string, \$terms as item()*, \$options as map(*)?) as text()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Returns all text nodes from the full-text index of the database <code>\$db</code> that contain the specified <code>\$terms</code>. The options used for tokenizing the input and building the full-text will also be applied to the search terms. As an example, if the index terms have been stemmed, the search string will be stemmed as well. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to control full-text processing. The following options are supported (the introduction on <b>Full-Text</b> processing gives you equivalent expressions in the XQuery Full-Text notation):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>mode</code> : determine the mode how tokens are searched. Allowed values are <code>any</code>, <code>any word</code>, <code>all</code>, <code>all words</code>, and <code>phrase</code>. <code>any</code> is the default search mode.</li><li>• <code>wildcards</code> : turn wildcard querying on or off. Allowed values are <code>true</code> and <code>false</code>. By default, wildcard querying is turned off.</li><li>• <code>fuzzy</code> : turn fuzzy querying on or off. Allowed values are <code>true</code> and <code>false</code>. By default, fuzzy querying is turned off.</li><li>• <code>errors</code> : control the maximum number of tolerated errors for fuzzy querying. By default, 0 is assigned (see <b>Fuzzy Querying</b> for more details).</li><li>• <code>ordered</code> : indicate if all tokens must occur in the order in which they are specified. Allowed values are <code>true</code> and <code>false</code>. The default is <code>false</code>.</li><li>• <code>content</code> : specify that the matched tokens need to occur at the beginning or end of a searched string, or need to cover the entire string. Allowed values are <code>start</code>, <code>end</code>, and <code>entire</code>. By default, the option is turned off.</li><li>• <code>scope</code> : define the scope in which tokens must be located. The option has following sub options:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>same</code> : can be set to <code>true</code> or <code>false</code>. It specifies if tokens need to occur in the same or different units.</li><li>• <code>unit</code> : can be <code>sentence</code> or <code>paragraph</code>. It specifies the unit for finding tokens.</li></ul></li><li>• <code>window</code> : set up a window in which all tokens must be located. By default, the option is turned off. It has following sub options:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>size</code> : specify the size of the window in terms of <i>units</i>.</li></ul></li></ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>unit</code> : can be sentences, sentences or paragraphs. The default is words.</li> <li>• <code>distance</code> : specify the distance in which tokens must occur. By default, the option is turned off. It has following sub options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>min</code> : specify the minimum distance in terms of <i>units</i>. The default is 0.</li> <li>• <code>max</code> : specify the maximum distance in terms of <i>units</i>. The default is #.</li> <li>• <code>unit</code> : can be words, sentences or paragraphs. The default is words.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>db:no-index</code> : the index is not available. <code>options</code> : the fuzzy and wildcard option cannot be both specified.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ft:search("DB", "QUERY")</code> : Return all text nodes of the database DB that contain the term QUERY.</li> <li>• Return all text nodes of the database DB that contain the numbers 2010 and 2020:  <code>ft:search("DB", ("2010", "2020"), map { 'mode': 'all' })</code></li> <li>• Return text nodes that contain the terms A and B in a distance of at most 5 words: <pre>ft:search("db", ("A", "B"), map {   "mode": "all words",   "distance": map {     "max": "5",     "unit": "words"   } })</pre> </li> <li>• Iterate over three databases and return all elements containing terms similar to Hello World in the text nodes: <pre>let \$terms := "Hello Worlds" let \$fuzzy := true() for \$db in 1 to 3 let \$dbname := 'DB'    \$db return ft:search(\$dbname, \$terms, map { 'fuzzy': \$fuzzy })/..</pre> </li> </ul>

## ft:tokens

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ft:tokens(\$db as xs:string) as element(value)*</code> , <code>ft:tokens(\$db as xs:string, \$prefix as xs:string) as element(value)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all full-text tokens stored in the index of the database <code>\$db</code> , along with their numbers of occurrences. If <code>\$prefix</code> is specified, the returned nodes will be refined to the strings starting with that prefix. The prefix will be tokenized according to the full-text used for creating the index.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>db:no-index</code> : the full-text index is not available.
<b>Examples</b>	Returns the number of occurrences for a single, specific index entry: <pre>let \$term := ft:tokenize(\$term) return number(ft:tokens('db', \$term)[. = \$term]/@count)</pre>

## General Functions

### ft:contains

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ft:contains(\$input as item()*, \$terms as item()*) as xs:boolean</code> , <code>ft:contains(\$input as item()*, \$terms as item()*, \$options as map(*)) as xs:boolean</code>
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Checks if the specified <code>\$input</code> items contain the specified <code>\$terms</code> . The function does the same as the <b>Full-Text</b> expression <code>contains text</code> , but options can be specified more dynamically. The <code>\$options</code> are the same as for <code>ft:search</code> , and the following ones exist: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>case</code> : determines how character case is processed. Allowed values are <code>insensitive</code>, <code>sensitive</code>, <code>upper</code> and <code>lower</code>. By default, search is case-insensitive.</li> <li>• <code>diacritics</code> : determines how diacritical characters are processed. Allowed values are <code>insensitive</code> and <code>sensitive</code>. By default, search is diacritical insensitive.</li> <li>• <code>stemming</code> : determines if tokens are stemmed. Allowed values are <code>true</code> and <code>false</code>. By default, stemming is turned off.</li> <li>• <code>language</code> : determines the language. This option is relevant for stemming tokens. All language codes are supported. The default language is <code>en</code>.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>options</code> : specified options are conflicting.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checks if <code>jack</code> or <code>john</code> occurs in the input string <code>John Doe</code>:  <pre>ft:contains("John Doe", ("jack", "john"), map { "mode": "any" })</pre> </li> <li>• Calls the function with stemming turned on and off:  <pre>(true(), false()) ! ft:contains("Häuser", "Haus", map { 'stemming': ., 'language':'de' })</pre> </li> </ul>

## ft:count

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ft:count(\$nodes as node(*)*) as xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the number of occurrences of the search terms specified in a full-text expression.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ft:count(//*[text() contains text 'QUERY'])</code> returns the <code>xs:integer</code> value 2 if a document contains two occurrences of the string "QUERY".</li> </ul>

## ft:score

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ft:score(\$item as item(*)*) as xs:double*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the score values (0.0 - 1.0) that have been attached to the specified items. 0 is returned a value if no score was attached.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ft:score('a' contains text 'a')</code> returns the <code>xs:double</code> value 1.</li> </ul>

## ft:tokenize

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ft:tokenize(\$string as xs:string?) as xs:string*, ft:tokenize(\$string as xs:string?, \$options as map(*)) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Tokenizes the given <code>\$string</code> , using the current default full-text options or the <code>\$options</code> specified as second argument, and returns a sequence with the tokenized string. The following options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>case</code> : determines how character case is processed. Allowed values are <code>insensitive</code>, <code>sensitive</code>, <code>upper</code> and <code>lower</code>. By default, search is case insensitive.</li> <li>• <code>diacritics</code> : determines how diacritical characters are processed. Allowed values are <code>insensitive</code> and <code>sensitive</code>. By default, search is diacritical insensitive.</li> <li>• <code>stemming</code> : determines if tokens are stemmed. Allowed values are <code>true</code> and <code>false</code>. By default, stemming is turned off.</li> </ul>

- `language` : determines the language. This option is relevant for stemming tokens. All language codes are supported. The default language is `en`.

The `$options` argument can be used to control full-text processing.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ft:tokenize("No Doubt")</code> returns the two strings <code>no</code> and <code>doubt</code>.</li> <li>• <code>ft:tokenize("École", map { 'diacritics': 'sensitive' })</code> returns the string <code>école</code>.</li> <li>• declare <code>ft-option</code> using <code>stemming</code>; <code>ft:tokenize("GIFTS")</code> returns a single string <code>gift</code>.</li> </ul>
-----------------	---

## ft:normalize

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre>ft:normalize(\$string as xs:string?) as xs:string, ft:normalize(\$string as xs:string?, \$options as map(*)) as xs:string</pre>
<b>Summary</b>	Normalizes the given <code>\$string</code> , using the current default full-text options or the <code>\$options</code> specified as second argument. The function accepts the same arguments as <code>ft:tokenize</code> ; special characters and separators will be preserved.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ft:normalize("Häuser am Meer", map { 'case': 'sensitive' })</code> returns the string <code>Hauser am Meer</code>.</li> </ul>

## ft:thesaurus

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre>ft:thesaurus(\$node as node(), \$term as xs:string) as xs:string*, ft:thesaurus(\$node as node(), \$term as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as xs:string*,</pre>
<b>Summary</b>	Looks up a <code>\$term</code> in a <b>Thesaurus Structure</b> supplied by <code>\$node</code> . The following <code>\$options</code> exist: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>relationship</code> : determines the relationship between terms</li> <li>• <code>levels</code> : determines the maximum number of levels to traverse</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	Returns <code>happy</code> and <code>lucky</code> : <pre>ft:thesaurus(   &lt;thesaurus&gt;     &lt;entry&gt;       &lt;term&gt;happy&lt;/term&gt;       &lt;synonym&gt;         &lt;term&gt;lucky&lt;/term&gt;         &lt;relationship&gt;RT&lt;/relationship&gt;       &lt;/synonym&gt;     &lt;/entry&gt;   &lt;/thesaurus&gt;,   'happy' )</pre>

## Highlighting Functions

### ft:mark

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre>ft:mark(\$nodes as node()*) as node()*, ft:mark(\$nodes as node()*, \$name as xs:string) as node()*</pre>
<b>Summary</b>	Puts a marker element around the resulting <code>\$nodes</code> of a full-text request. The default name of the marker element is <code>mark</code> . An alternative name can be chosen via the optional <code>\$name</code> argument. Please note that:

- The full-text expression that computes the token positions must be specified as argument of the `ft:mark()` function, as all position information is lost in subsequent processing steps. You may need to specify more than one full-text expression if you want to use the function in a FLWOR expression, as shown in Example 2.
- The supplied node must be a **Database Node**. As shown in Example 3, `update` or `transform` can be utilized to convert a fragment to the required internal representation.

**Examples** **Example 1:** The following query returns `<XML><mark>hello</mark> world</XML>`, if one text node of the database DB has the value "hello world":

```
ft:mark(db:get('DB')//*[text() contains text 'hello'])
```

**Example 2:** The following expression loops through the first ten full-text results and marks the results in a second expression:

```
let $start := 1
let $end   := 10
let $term  := 'welcome'
for $ft in (db:get('DB')//*[text() contains text { $term }])[position()
= $start to $end]
return element hit {
  ft:mark($ft[text() contains text { $term }])
}
```

**Example 3:** The following expression returns `<xml>hello <b>word</b></xml>`:

```
copy $p := <xml>hello world</xml>
modify ()
return ft:mark($p[text() contains text 'word'], 'b')
```

## ft:extract

**Signatures** `ft:extract($nodes as node()*) as node()*`, `ft:extract($nodes as node()*, $name as xs:string) as node()*`, `ft:extract($nodes as node()*, $name as xs:string, $length as xs:integer) as node()*`

**Summary** Extracts and returns relevant parts of full-text results. It puts a marker element around the resulting `$nodes` of a full-text index request and chops irrelevant sections of the result. The default element name of the marker element is `mark`. An alternative element name can be chosen via the optional `$name` argument. The default length of the returned text is 150 characters. An alternative length can be specified via the optional `$length` argument. Note that the effective text length may differ from the specified text due to formatting and readability issues. For more details on this function, please have a look at `ft:mark`.

**Examples** • The following query may return `<XML>... <b>hello</b>... <XML>` if a text node of the database DB contains the string "hello world":

```
ft:extract(db:get('DB')//*[text() contains text 'hello'], 'b', 1)
```

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>options</code>	Both wildcards and fuzzy search have been specified as search options.

## Changelog

Version 9.6

- Added: `ft:thesaurus`
- Updated: `ft:search`, `ft:contains`: new errors option.

Version 9.1

- Updated: `ft:tokenize` and `ft:normalize` can be called with empty sequence.

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

Version 8.0

- Added: `ft:contains`, `ft:normalize`
- Updated: Options added to `ft:tokenize`

Version 7.8

- Added: `ft:contains`
- Updated: Options added to `ft:search`

Version 7.7

- Updated: the functions no longer accept **Database Nodes** as reference. Instead, the name of a database must now be specified.

Version 7.2

- Updated: `ft:search` (second argument generalized, third parameter added)

Version 7.1

- Added: `ft:tokens`, `ft:tokenize`

---

# Chapter 46. Hashing Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) provides functions that perform different hash operations.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/hash` namespace, which is statically bound to the `hash` prefix.

## Functions

### hash:md5

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hash:md5(\$value as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:base64Binary,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the MD5 hash of the given \$value, which may be of type <code>xs:string</code> , <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , or <code>xs:hexBinary</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>string(xs:hexBinary(hash:md5("BaseX")))</code> returns <code>0D65185C9E296311C0A2200179E479A2.</code></li><li><code>string(hash:md5(xs:base64Binary(" ")))</code> returns <code>1B2M2Y8AsgTpgAmY7PhCfg==.</code></li></ul>

### hash:sha1

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hash:sha1(\$value as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:base64Binary,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the SHA-1 hash of the given \$value, which may be of type <code>xs:string</code> , <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , or <code>xs:hexBinary</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>string(xs:hexBinary(hash:sha1("BaseX")))</code> returns <code>3AD5958F0F27D5AFFDCA2957560F121D0597A4ED.</code></li><li><code>string(hash:sha1(xs:base64Binary(" ")))</code> returns <code>2j mj7l5rSw0yVb/vlWAYkK/YBwk=.</code></li></ul>

### hash:sha256

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hash:sha256(\$value as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:base64Binary,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the SHA-256 hash of the given \$value, which may be of type <code>xs:string</code> , <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , or <code>xs:hexBinary</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>string(xs:hexBinary(hash:sha256("BaseX")))</code> returns <code>15D570763DEB75D728BB69643392873B835CCCC94A2F1E881909DA47662821A3.</code></li><li><code>string(hash:sha256(xs:base64Binary(" ")))</code> returns <code>47DEQpj8HBSa+/TImW+5JCeuQeRkm5NMpJWZG3hSuFU=.</code></li></ul>

### hash:hash

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hash:hash(\$value as xs:anyAtomicType, \$algorithm as xs:string) as xs:base64Binary,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the hash of the given \$value, using the specified \$algorithm. The specified values may be of type <code>xs:string</code> , <code>xs:base64Binary</code> , or <code>xs:hexBinary</code> . The following three algorithms are supported: MD5, SHA-1, and SHA-256.

<b>Errors</b>	algorithm: the specified hashing algorithm is unknown.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>string(xs:hexBinary(hash:hash(" ", "MD5"))) returns D41D8CD98F00B204E9800998ECF8427E.</code></li> <li>• <code>string(hash:hash(" ", " "))</code> raises an error, because no algorithm was specified.</li> </ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
algorithm	The specified hash algorithm is unknown.

## Changelog

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

The module was introduced with Version 7.3.

---

# Chapter 47. Higher-Order Functions Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** adds some useful higher-order functions, additional to the **Higher-Order Functions** provided by the official specification.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/hof` namespace, which is statically bound to the `hof` prefix.

## Loops

### hof:fold-left1

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:fold-left1(\$seq as item()+, \$f as function(item()* , item()) as item()* ) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Works the same as <b>fn:fold-left</b> , but does not need a seed, because the sequence must be non-empty.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>hof:fold-left1(1 to 10, function(\$a, \$b) { \$a + \$b })</code> returns 55.</li><li>• <code>hof:fold-left1((), function(\$a, \$b) { \$a + \$b })</code> throws XPTY0004, because <code>\$seq</code> has to be non-empty.</li></ul>

### hof:until

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:until(\$pred as function(item()* ) as xs:boolean, \$f as function(item()* ) as item()* , \$start as item()* ) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Applies the predicate function <code>\$pred</code> to <code>\$start</code> . If the result is <code>false</code> , <code>\$f</code> is invoked with the start value – or, subsequently, with the result of this function – until the predicate function returns <code>true()</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Doubles a numeric value until a maximum is reached:<pre>hof:until(   function(\$output) { \$output ge 1000 },   function(\$input ) { 2 * \$input },   1 )</pre></li><li>• Calculates the square root of a number by iteratively improving an initial guess:<pre>let \$sqrt := function(\$input as xs:double) as xs:double {   hof:until(     function(\$result) { abs(\$result * \$result - \$input) &lt; 0.00001 },     function(\$guess) { (\$guess + \$input div \$guess) div 2 },     \$input   ) } return \$sqrt(25)</pre></li><li>• Returns OK, as the predicate is evaluated first:<pre>hof:until(   function(\$_) { true() },   function(\$_) { error() },   1 )</pre></li></ul>



```
'OK'
)
```

## hof:scan-left

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:scan-left(\$seq as item()*, \$start as item()*, \$f as function(item()* , item()) as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	This function is similar to <a href="#">fn:fold-left</a> , but it returns a list of successive reduced values from the left. It is equivalent to: <pre>declare function hof:scan-left(\$seq, \$acc, \$f) {   if(empty(\$seq)) then \$acc else (     \$acc,     hof:scan-left(tail(\$seq), \$f(\$acc, head(\$seq)), \$f)   ) };</pre>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Returns triangular numbers:</li> </ul> <pre>hof:scan-left(1 to 10, 0, function(\$a, \$b) { \$a + \$b })</pre>

## hof:take-while

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:take-while(\$seq as item()*, \$pred as function(item()) as xs:boolean) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	The function returns items of <code>\$seq</code> as long as the predicate <code>\$pred</code> is satisfied. It is equivalent to: <pre>declare function hof:take-while(\$seq, \$pred) {   if(empty(\$seq) or not(\$pred(head(\$seq)))) then () else (     head(\$seq),     hof:take-while(tail(\$seq), \$pred)   ) };</pre>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Computes at most 100 random integers, but stops if an integer is smaller than 10:</li> </ul> <pre>hof:take-while(   (1 to 100) ! random:integer(50),   function(\$x) { \$x &gt;= 10 } )</pre>

## hof:drop-while

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:drop-while(\$seq as item()*, \$pred as function(item()) as xs:boolean) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	The function skips all items of <code>\$seq</code> until the predicate <code>\$pred</code> is not satisfied anymore. It is equivalent to: <pre>declare function hof:drop-while(\$seq, \$pred) {   if(\$pred(head(\$seq))) then (     hof:drop-while(tail(\$seq), \$pred)   ) else (     \$seq   ) };</pre>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Returns the name of the first file that does not exist on disk:</li> </ul> <pre>hof:drop-while(   (1 to 1000) ! (.    '.log'),   file:exists#1 )[1]</pre>

## Sorting

### hof:top-k-by

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:top-k-by(\$seq as item()*, \$sort-key as function(item()) as item(), \$k as xs:integer) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <code>\$k</code> items in <code>\$seq</code> that are greatest when sorted by the result of <code>\$f</code> applied to the item. The function is a much more efficient implementation of the following scheme: <pre>(for \$x in \$seq   order by \$sort-key(\$x) descending   return \$x )[position() &lt;= \$k]</pre>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>hof:top-k-by(1 to 1000, hof:id#1, 5)</code> returns 1000 999 998 997 996</li> <li>• <code>hof:top-k-by(1 to 1000, function(\$x) { -\$x }, 3)</code> returns 1 2 3</li> <li>• <code>hof:top-k-by(&lt;x a='1' b='2' c='3' /&gt;/@*, xs:integer#1, 2)/node-name()</code> returns c b</li> </ul>

### hof:top-k-with

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:top-k-with(\$seq as item()*, \$lt as function(item(), item()) as xs:boolean, \$k as xs:integer) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <code>\$k</code> items in <code>\$seq</code> that are greatest when sorted in the order of the <i>less-than</i> predicate <code>\$lt</code> . The function is a general version of <code>hof:top-k-by(\$seq, \$sort-key, \$k)</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>hof:top-k-with(1 to 1000, function(\$a, \$b) { \$a lt \$b }, 5)</code> returns 1000 999 998 997 996</li> <li>• <code>hof:top-k-with(-5 to 5, function(\$a, \$b) { abs(\$a) gt abs(\$b) }, 5)</code> returns 0 1 -1 2 -2</li> </ul>

## IDs

### hof:id

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:id(\$expr as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns its argument unchanged. This function isn't useful on its own, but can be used as argument to other higher-order functions.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>hof:id(1 to 5)</code> returns 1 2 3 4 5</li> <li>• With higher-order functions: <pre>let \$sort := sort(?, (), hof:id#1) let \$reverse-sort := sort(?, (), function(\$x) { -\$x }) return (   \$sort((1, 5, 3, 2, 4)),   ' ',   \$reverse-sort((1, 5, 3, 2, 4)) )</pre> returns: 1 2 3 4 5   5 4 3 2 1 </li> </ul>

### hof:const

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>hof:const(\$expr as item()*, \$ignored as item()*) as item()*</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Returns its first argument unchanged and ignores the second. This function isn't useful on its own, but can be used as argument to other higher-order functions, e.g. when a function combining two values is expected and one only wants to retain the left one.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>hof:const(42, 1337)</code> returns 42.</li> <li>• With higher-order functions: <pre>let \$zip-sum := function(\$f, \$seq1, \$seq2) {   sum(for-each-pair(\$seq1, \$seq2, \$f)) } let \$sum-all := \$zip-sum(function(\$a, \$b) { \$a + \$b }, ?, ?) let \$sum-left := \$zip-sum(hof:const#2, ?, ?) return (   \$sum-all((1, 1, 1, 1, 1), 1 to 5),   \$sum-left((1, 1, 1, 1, 1), 1 to 5) )</pre> </li> <li>• Another use-case: When inserting a key into a map, <code>\$f</code> decides how to combine the new value with a possibly existing old one. <code>hof:const</code> here means ignoring the old value, so that's normal insertion. <pre>let \$insert-with := function(\$f, \$map, \$k, \$v) {   let \$old := \$map(\$k)   let \$new := if(\$old) then \$f(\$v, \$old) else \$v   return map:merge((\$map, map:entry(\$k, \$new))) } let \$map := map { 'foo': 1 } let \$add := \$insert-with(function(\$a, \$b) { \$a + \$b }, ?, ?, ?) let \$ins := \$insert-with(hof:const#2, ?, ?, ?) return (   \$add(\$map, 'foo', 2)('foo'),   \$ins(\$map, 'foo', 42)('foo') )</pre> </li> </ul> <p>returns 3 42</p>

## Changelog

### Version 9.5

- Added: `hof:drop-while`

### Version 8.1

- Added: `hof:scan-left`, `hof:take-while`

### Version 7.2

- Added: `hof:top-k-by`, `hof:top-k-with`
- Removed: `hof:iterate`

### Version 7.0

- module added

---

# Chapter 48. HTML Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) provides functions for converting HTML to XML. Conversion will only take place if TagSoup is included in the classpath (see [HTML Parsing](#) for more details).

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/html` namespace, which is statically bound to the `html` prefix.

## Functions

### html:doc

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>html:doc(\$uri as xs:string?) as document-node()?, html:doc(\$uri as xs:string?, \$options as map(*)?) as document-node()?,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Fetches the HTML document referred to by the given <code>\$uri</code> , converts it to XML and returns a document node. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to set <a href="#">TagSoup Options</a> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse</code> : the input cannot be converted to XML.

### html:parse

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>html:parse(\$input as xs:anyAtomicType) as document-node(),</code> <code>html:parse(\$input as xs:anyAtomicType, \$options as map(*)?) as document-node(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the HTML document specified by <code>\$input</code> to XML and returns a document node: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The input may be of type <code>xs:string</code>, <code>xs:base64Binary</code>, or <code>xs:hexBinary</code>.</li><li>• If the input is passed on in its binary representation, the HTML parser will try to choose the correct encoding automatically.</li></ul> The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to set <a href="#">TagSoup Options</a> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse</code> : the input cannot be converted to XML.

### html:parser

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>html:parser() as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the name of the applied HTML parser (currently: TagSoup). If an <i>empty string</i> is returned, TagSoup was not found in the classpath, and the input will be treated as well-formed XML.

## Examples

### Basic Example

The following query converts the specified string to an XML document node.

Query

```
html:parse("<html>")
```

Result

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" />
```

## Specifying Options

The next query creates an XML document with namespaces:

Query

```
html:parse("<a href='ok.html' />", map { 'nons': false() })
```

Result

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <body>
    <a shape="rect" href="ok.html" />
  </body>
</html>
```

## Parsing Binary Input

If the input encoding is unknown, the data to be processed can be passed on in its binary representation. The HTML parser will automatically try to detect the correct encoding:

Query

```
html:parse(fetch:binary("https://en.wikipedia.org"))
```

Result

```
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" class="client-nojs" dir="ltr" lang="en">
  <head>
    <title>Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia</title>
    <meta charset="UTF-8" />
    ...
```

## Errors

Code	Description
parse	The input cannot be converted to XML.

## Changelog

Version 9.4

- Added: `html:doc`

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

The module was introduced with Version 7.6.

---

# Chapter 49. HTTP Client Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains a single function to send HTTP requests and handle HTTP responses. The function `send-request` is based on the **EXPath HTTP Client Module**. It gives full control over the available request and response parameters. For simple GET requests, the **Fetch Module** may be sufficient.

If `<http:header name="Accept-Encoding" value="gzip" />` is specified and if the addressed web server provides support for the `gzip` compression algorithm, the response will automatically be decompressed.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://expath.org/ns/http-client` namespace, which is statically bound to the `http` prefix. All errors are assigned to the `http://expath.org/ns/error` namespace, which is statically bound to the `experr` prefix.

## Functions

### http:send-request

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>http:send-request(\$request as element(http:request)) as item()+</code> , <code>http:send-request(\$request as element(http:request)?, \$href as xs:string?) as item()+</code> , <code>http:send-request(\$request as element(http:request)?, \$href as xs:string?, \$bodies as item(*) as item()+</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Sends an HTTP request and interprets the corresponding response:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>\$request</code> contains the parameters of the HTTP request such as HTTP method and headers.</li><li>• In addition to this it can also contain the URI to which the request will be sent and the body of the HTTP method.</li><li>• If the URI is not given with the parameter <code>\$href</code>, its value in <code>\$request</code> is used instead.</li><li>• The request body can also be supplied via the <code>\$bodies</code> parameter.</li><li>• Certificate verification can be globally disabled via the <code>IGNORECERT</code> option.</li></ul> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Both basic and digest authentication is supported.</li><li>• While the contents of the request can be supplied as child of the <code>http:body</code> element, it is faster and safer to pass them on via the third argument.</li><li>• For further information, please check out the <b>EXPath</b> specification.</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	HC0001: an HTTP error occurred.HC0002: error parsing the entity content as XML or HTML.HC0003: with a multipart response, the override-media-type must be either a multipart media type or application/octet-stream.HC0004: the src attribute on the body element is mutually exclusive with all other attribute (except the media-type).HC0005: the request element is not valid.HC0006: a timeout occurred waiting for the response.

## Examples

### Status Only

Simple GET request. As the attribute `status-only` is set to true, only the response element is returned.

**Query:**

```
http:send-request(<http:request method='get' status-only='true'/>, 'http://
basex.org')
```

**Result:**

```
<http:response status="200" message="OK">
  <http:header name="Date" value="Mon, 14 Mar 2011 20:55:53 GMT"/>
  <http:header name="Content-Length" value="12671"/>
  <http:header name="Expires" value="Mon, 14 Mar 2011 20:57:23 GMT"/>
  <http:header name="Set-Cookie"
value="fe_typo_user=d10c9552f9a784d1a73f8b6ebdf5ce63; path=/" />
  <http:header name="Connection" value="close" />
  <http:header name="Content-Type" value="text/html; charset=utf-8"/>
  <http:header name="Server" value="Apache/2.2.16"/>
  <http:header name="X-Powered-By" value="PHP/5.3.5"/>
  <http:header name="Cache-Control" value="max-age=90"/>
  <http:body media-type="text/html; charset=utf-8"/>
</http:response>
```

## Google Homepage

Retrieve the Google search home page with a timeout of 10 seconds. In order to **parse HTML**, TagSoup must be contained in the class path.

**Query:**

```
http:send-request(<http:request method='get' href='http://www.google.com'
timeout='10'/>)
```

**Result:**

```
<http:response status="200" message="OK">
  <http:header name="Date" value="Mon, 14 Mar 2011 22:03:25 GMT"/>
  <http:header name="Transfer-Encoding" value="chunked"/>
  <http:header name="Expires" value="-1"/>
  <http:header name="X-XSS-Protection" value="1; mode=block"/>
  <http:header name="Set-Cookie" value="...; expires=Tue, 13-Sep-2011 22:03:25 GMT;
path=/; domain=.google.ch; HttpOnly"/>
  <http:header name="Content-Type" value="text/html; charset=ISO-8859-1"/>
  <http:header name="Server" value="gws"/>
  <http:header name="Cache-Control" value="private, max-age=0"/>
  <http:body media-type="text/html; charset=ISO-8859-1"/>
</http:response>
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <head>
    <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=UTF-8"/>
    <title>Google</title>
    ...
  </body>
</html>
```

The response content type can also be overwritten in order to retrieve HTML pages and other textual data as plain string (using `text/plain`) or in its binary representation (using `application/octet-stream`). With the `http:header` element, a custom user agent can be set. See the following example:

**Query:**

```
let $binary := http:send-request(
  <http:request method='get'
    override-media-type='application/octet-stream'
    href='http://www.google.com'>
```

```

    <http:header name="User-Agent" value="Opera"/>
  </http:request>
)[2]
return try {
  html:parse($binary)
} catch * {
  'Conversion to XML failed: ' || $err:description
}

```

## SVG Data

Content-type ending with +xml, e.g. image/svg+xml.

### Query:

```
http:send-request(<http:request method='get'/>, 'http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6b/Bitmap_VS_SVG.svg')
```

### Result:

```

<http:response status="200" message="OK">
  <http:header name="ETag" value="W/&quot;11b6d-4ba15ed4&quot;"/>
  <http:header name="Age" value="9260"/>
  <http:header name="Date" value="Mon, 14 Mar 2011 19:17:10 GMT"/>
  <http:header name="Content-Length" value="72557"/>
  <http:header name="Last-Modified" value="Wed, 17 Mar 2010 22:59:32 GMT"/>
  <http:header name="Content-Type" value="image/svg+xml"/>
  <http:header name="X-Cache-Lookup" value="MISS from
knsq22.knams.wikimedia.org:80"/>
  <http:header name="Connection" value="keep-alive"/>
  <http:header name="Server" value="Sun-Java-System-Web-Server/7.0"/>
  <http:header name="X-Cache" value="MISS from knsq22.knams.wikimedia.org"/>
  <http:body media-type="image/svg+xml"/>
</http:response>
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" xmlns:xlink="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink"
  version="1.1" width="1063" height="638">
  <defs>
    <linearGradient id="lg0">
      <stop stop-color="#3333ff" offset="0"/>
      <stop stop-color="#3f3fff" stop-opacity="0" offset="1"/>
    </linearGradient>
    ...
  </svg>

```

## POST Request

POST request to the BaseX REST Service, specifying a username and password.

### Query:

```

http:send-request(
  <http:request method='post' username='admin' password='admin'>
    <http:body media-type='application/xml'/>
  </http:request>,
  'http://localhost:8984/rest',
  <query>
    <text>
      <html>{
        for $i in 1 to 3
          return <div>Section {$i }</div>
      }</html>
    </text>
  </query>
)

```



**Result:**

```
<http:response xmlns:http="http://expath.org/ns/http-client" status="200"
message="OK">
  <http:header name="Content-Length" value="135"/>
  <http:header name="Content-Type" value="application/xml"/>
  <http:header name="Server" value="Jetty(6.1.26)"/>
  <http:body media-type="application/xml"/>
</http:response>
<html>
  <div>Section 1</div>
  <div>Section 2</div>
  <div>Section 3</div>
</html>
```

**File Upload**

Performs an HTML file upload. In the RESTXQ code, the uploaded file is written to the temporary directory:

**Query:**

```
let $path := 'file-to-be.uploaded'
return http:send-request(
  <http:request method='POST'>
    <http:multipart media-type='multipart/form-data'>
      <http:header name='content-disposition'
        value='form-data; name="files"; filename="{ file:name($path) }"/>
      <http:body media-type='application/octet-stream' />
    </http:multipart>
  </http:request>,
  'http://localhost:8984/write-to-temp',
  file:read-binary($path)
)
```

**RESTXQ service:**

```
declare
  %rest:POST
  %rest:path('/write-to-temp')
  %rest:form-param('files', '{$files}')
function dba:file-upload(
  $files as map(xs:string, xs:base64Binary)
) as empty-sequence() {
  map:for-each($files, function($file, $content) {
    file:write-binary(file:temp-dir() || $file, $content)
  });
};
```

**Errors**

Code	Description
HC0001	An HTTP error occurred.
HC0002	Error parsing the entity content as XML or HTML.
HC0003	With a multipart response, the override-media-type must be either a multipart media type or application/octet-stream.
HC0004	The src attribute on the body element is mutually exclusive with all other attribute (except the media-type).
HC0005	The request element is not valid.
HC0006	A timeout occurred waiting for the response.

## Changelog

Version 9.0

- Updated: support for gzipped content encoding

Version 8.0

- Added: digest authentication

Version 7.6

- Updated: `http:send-request:HC0002` is raised if the input cannot be parsed or converted to the final data type.
- Updated: errors are using `text/plain` as media-type.

---

# Chapter 50. Index Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) provides functions for displaying information stored in the database index structures.

For functions that use the indexes to return nodes see [Value Indexes](#) in the [Database Module](#) and `ft:search` in the [Full-Text Module](#).

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/index` namespace, which is statically bound to the `index` prefix.

## Functions

### index:facets

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>index:facets(\$db as xs:string) as xs:string</code> , <code>index:facets(\$db as xs:string, \$type as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns information about all facets and facet values of the database <code>\$db</code> in document structure format. If <code>\$type</code> is specified as <code>flat</code> , the function returns this information in a flat summarized version. The returned data is derived from the <a href="#">Path Index</a> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>index:facets("DB")</code> returns information about facets and facet values on the database <code>DB</code> in document structure.</li><li><code>index:facets("DB", "flat")</code> returns information about facets and facet values on the database <code>DB</code> in a summarized flat structure.</li></ul>

### index:texts

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>index:texts(\$db as xs:string) as element(value)*</code> , <code>index:texts(\$db as xs:string, \$prefix as xs:string) as element(value)*</code> , <code>index:texts(\$db as xs:string, \$start as xs:string, \$ascending as xs:boolean) as element(value)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all strings stored in the <a href="#">Text Index</a> of the database <code>\$db</code> , along with their number of occurrences. If <code>\$prefix</code> is specified, the returned entries will be refined to the ones starting with that prefix. If <code>\$start</code> and <code>\$ascending</code> are specified, all nodes will be returned after or before the specified start entry.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>db:no-index</code> : the index is not available.

### index:attributes

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>index:attributes(\$db as xs:string) as element(value)*</code> , <code>index:attributes(\$db as xs:string, \$prefix as xs:string) as element(value)*</code> , <code>index:attributes(\$db as xs:string, \$start as xs:string, \$ascending as xs:boolean) as element(value)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all strings stored in the <a href="#">Attribute Index</a> of the database <code>\$db</code> , along with their number of occurrences. If <code>\$prefix</code> is specified, the returned entries will be refined to the ones starting with that prefix. If <code>\$start</code> and <code>\$ascending</code> are specified, all nodes will be returned after or before the specified start entry.

<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>db:no-index</code> : the index is not available.
---------------	--

## index:tokens

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>index:tokens(\$db as xs:string) as element(value)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all strings stored in the <b>Token Index</b> of the database <code>\$db</code> , along with their number of occurrences.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened. <code>db:no-index</code> : the index is not available.

## index:element-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>index:element-names(\$db as xs:string) as element(value)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all element names stored in the <b>Name Index</b> of the database <code>\$db</code> , along with their number of occurrences.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.

## index:attribute-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>index:attribute-names(\$db as xs:string) as element(value)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all attribute names stored in the <b>Name Index</b> of the database <code>\$db</code> , along with their number of occurrences.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>db:get</code> : The addressed database does not exist or could not be opened.

## Changelog

Version 8.4

- Added: `index:tokens`

Version 7.7

- Updated: the functions no longer accept **Database Nodes** as reference. Instead, the name of a database must now be specified.

Version 7.3

- Updated: `index:texts`, `index:attributes`: signature with three arguments added.

The module was introduced with Version 7.1.

---

# Chapter 51. Inspection Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for extracting internal information about modules and functions and generating documentation.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/inspect` namespace, which is statically bound to the `inspect` prefix. `xqDoc` document instances are assigned to the `http://www.xqdoc.org/1.0` namespace, which is statically bound to the `xqdoc` prefix.

## Reflection

### inspect:functions

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:functions() as function(*)*, inspect:functions(\$uri as xs:string) as function(*)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns function items for all user-defined functions (both public and private) that are known in the current query context. If a <code>\$uri</code> is specified, the specified resource will be retrieved as string and compiled, and its functions will be added to the query context and returned to the user. A relative URI will be resolved against the static base URI of the query.
<b>Examples</b>	<p>Invokes the declared functions and returns their values:</p> <pre>declare %private function local:one() { 12 }; declare %private function local:two() { 34 }; for \$f in inspect:functions() return \$f()</pre> <p>Compiles all functions in <code>code.xqm</code> and invokes the function named <code>run</code>:</p> <pre>let \$uri := 'code.xqm' let \$name := 'run' for \$f in inspect:functions(\$uri) where local-name-from-QName(function-name(\$f)) = \$name return \$f()</pre>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse: Error while parsing a module.</code>

### inspect:function-annotations

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:function-annotations(\$function as function(*)?) as map(xs:QName, xs:anyAtomicType*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the annotations of the specified <code>\$function</code> in a map.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Returns an empty map:<pre>inspect:function-annotations(true#0)</pre></li><li>Returns a map with a single key <code>Q{http://www.w3.org/2012/xquery}private</code> and an empty sequence as value:<pre>declare %private function local:f() { 'well hidden' }; inspect:function-annotations(local:f#0)</pre></li></ul>

### inspect:static-context

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:static-context(\$function as function(*)?, \$name as xs:string) as item(*)</code>
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	<p>Returns a component of the <b>static context</b> of a \$function with the specified \$name. If no function is supplied, the current static context is considered. The following components can be requested:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>base-uri</code> : Static base URI.</li> <li>• <code>namespaces</code> : Prefix/URI map with all statically known namespaces.</li> <li>• <code>element-namespace</code> : Default element/type namespace URI, or an empty sequence if it is absent.</li> <li>• <code>function-namespace</code> : Default function namespace URI, or an empty sequence if it is absent.</li> <li>• <code>collation</code> : URI of the default collation.</li> <li>• <code>ordering</code> : Ordering mode (<code>ordered/unordered</code>)</li> <li>• <code>construction</code> : Construction mode (<code>preserve/strip</code>)</li> <li>• <code>default-order-empty</code> : Default order for empty sequences (<code>greatest/least</code>)</li> <li>• <code>boundary-space</code> : Boundary-space policy (<code>preserve/strip</code>)</li> <li>• <code>copy-namespaces</code> : Copy-namespaces mode (<code>inherit/no-inherit, preserve/no-preserve</code>)</li> <li>• <code>decimal-formats</code> : Nested map with all statically known decimal formats</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Returns the static base URI (same as <code>static-base-uri()</code>):</li> </ul> <pre>inspect:static-context((), 'base-uri')</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Returns a map with all namespaces that are statically known in the module of the specified function:</li> </ul> <pre>import module namespace data = 'data.xqm'; inspect:static-context(data:get#1, 'namespaces')</pre>
<b>Errors</b>	<p>unknown: The specified component does not exist.</p>

## Documentation

### inspect:type

<b>Signatures</b>	<pre>inspect:type(\$value as item(*) as xs:string, inspect:type(\$value as item(*), \$options as map(*)) as xs:string</pre>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Returns a string representation of the type of a \$value:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The string includes the occurrence indicator.</li> <li>• The type of functions and nodes may be stricter than the returned type.</li> <li>• For type checking, the standard expressions <code>typeswitch</code> and <code>instance of</code> should be used instead.</li> </ul> <p>The following \$options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>item</code> : If enabled, only the item type is returned and the occurrence indicator is omitted. The default is <code>false()</code>.</li> </ul>

- `mode` : If value is specified, the assigned type of the result value is returned. With expression the type of the input expression is returned (please note that the original expression may already have been rewritten at compile-time). With `computed`, the exact value is computed at runtime, based on the expression and the result value. The default is `computed`.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>inspect:type((&lt;a/&gt;, &lt;a/&gt;))</code> yields <code>element(a)+</code></li> <li>• <code>inspect:type(map { 'a': (1, 2)[. = 1] })</code> yields <code>map(xs:string, xs:integer)</code></li> <li>• <code>inspect:type(1 to 100, map { 'item': true() })</code> yields <code>xs:integer</code></li> </ul>
-----------------	---

## inspect:function

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:function(\$function as function(*)) as element(function)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Inspects the specified <code>\$function</code> and returns an element that describes its structure. The output of this function is similar to eXist-db's <a href="#">inspect:inspect-function</a> function.
<b>Examples</b>	<p>The query <code>inspect:function(count#1)</code> yields:</p> <pre>&lt;function name="count" uri="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions" external="false"&gt;   &lt;argument type="item()" occurrence="*" /&gt;   &lt;return type="xs:integer" /&gt; &lt;/function&gt;</pre> <p>The function...</p> <pre>(:~ : This function simply returns the specified integer. : @param \$number number to return : @return specified number :)</pre> <pre>declare %private function local:same(\$number as xs:integer) as xs:integer {   \$number };</pre> <p>...is represented by <code>inspect:function(local:same#1)</code> as...</p> <pre>&lt;function name="local:same" uri="http://www.w3.org/2005/xquery-local- functions" external="false"&gt;   &lt;argument type="xs:integer" name="number"&gt;number to return&lt;/argument&gt;   &lt;annotation name="private" uri="http://www.w3.org/2012/xquery"/&gt;   &lt;description&gt;This function simply returns the specified integer.&lt;/ description&gt;   &lt;return type="xs:integer"&gt;specified number&lt;/return&gt; &lt;/function&gt;</pre>

## inspect:context

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:context()</code> as <code>element(context)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Generates an element that describes all variables and functions in the current query context.
<b>Examples</b>	<p>Evaluate all user-defined functions with zero arguments in the query context:</p> <pre>inspect:context()/function ! function-lookup(QName(@uri, @name), 0) ! . ()</pre> <p>Return the names of all private functions in the current context:</p> <pre>for \$f in inspect:context()/function where \$f/annotation/@name = 'private'</pre>

```
return $f/@name/string()
```

## inspect:module

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:module(\$uri as xs:string) as element(module)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves the resource located at the specified <code>\$uri</code> , parses it as XQuery module, and generates an element that describes the module's structure. A relative URI will be resolved against the static base URI of the query.
<b>Examples</b>	An example is <a href="#">shown below</a> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse: Error while parsing a module.</code>

## inspect:xqdoc

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>inspect:xqdoc(\$uri as xs:string) as element(xqdoc:xqdoc)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves the resource located at the specified <code>\$uri</code> , parses it as XQuery module, and generates an <code>xqDoc</code> element. A relative URI will be resolved against the static base URI of the query. <b>xqDoc</b> provides a simple vendor-neutral solution for generating documentation from XQuery modules. The documentation conventions have been inspired by the JavaDoc standard. Documentation comments begin with ( <code>:~</code> and end with <code>:)</code> , and tags start with <code>@</code> . <code>xqDoc</code> comments can be specified for main and library modules and variable and function declarations. We have slightly extended the <code>xqDoc</code> conventions to do justice to more recent versions of XQuery (Schema: <a href="#">xqdoc-1.1.30052013.xsd</a> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an <code>&lt;xqdoc:annotations/&gt;</code> node is added to each variable or function that uses annotations. The <code>xqdoc:annotation</code> child nodes may have additional <code>xqdoc:literal</code> elements with <code>type</code> attributes (<code>xs:string</code>, <code>xs:integer</code>, <code>xs:decimal</code>, <code>xs:double</code>) and values.</li> <li>• a single <code>&lt;xqdoc:namespaces/&gt;</code> node is added to the root element, which summarizes all prefixes and namespace URIs used or declared in the module.</li> <li>• name and type elements are added to variables.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	An example is <a href="#">shown below</a> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse: Error while parsing a module.</code>

## Examples

This is the `sample.xqm` library module:

```
(:~
: This module provides some sample functions to demonstrate
: the features of the Inspection Module.
:
: @author   BaseX Team
: @see     http://docs.basex.org/wiki/XQDoc_Module
: @version  1.0
: )
module namespace samples = 'http://basex.org/modules/samples';

(:~ This is a sample string. :)
declare variable $samples:test-string as xs:string := 'this is a string';

(:~
: This function simply returns the specified integer.
: @param   $number number to return
: @return  specified number
: )
declare %private function samples:same($number as xs:integer) as xs:integer {
    $number
```



```
};
```

If `inspect:module('sample.xqm')` is run, the following output will be generated:

```
<module prefix="samples" uri="http://basex.org/modules/samples">
  <description>This module provides some sample functions to demonstrate
the features of the Inspection Module.</description>
  <author>BaseX Team</author>
  <see>http://docs.basex.org/wiki/XQDoc_Module</see>
  <version>1.0</version>
  <variable name="samples:test-string" uri="http://basex.org/modules/samples"
type="xs:string" external="false">
  <description>This is a sample string.</description>
</variable>
  <function name="samples:same" uri="http://basex.org/modules/samples"
external="false">
  <argument name="number" type="xs:integer">number to return</argument>
  <annotation name="private" uri="http://www.w3.org/2012/xquery"/>
  <description>This function simply returns the specified integer.</description>
  <return type="xs:integer">specified number</return>
</function>
</module>
```

The output looks as follows if `inspect:xqdoc('sample.xqm')` is called:

```
<xqdoc:xqdoc xmlns:xqdoc="http://www.xqdoc.org/1.0">
  <xqdoc:control>
    <xqdoc:date>2013-06-01T16:59:33.654+02:00</xqdoc:date>
    <xqdoc:version>1.1</xqdoc:version>
  </xqdoc:control>
  <xqdoc:module type="library">
    <xqdoc:uri>http://basex.org/modules/samples</xqdoc:uri>
    <xqdoc:name>sample.xqm</xqdoc:name>
    <xqdoc:comment>
      <xqdoc:description>This module provides some sample functions to demonstrate
the features of the Inspection Module.</xqdoc:description>
      <xqdoc:author>BaseX Team</xqdoc:author>
      <xqdoc:see>http://docs.basex.org/wiki/XQDoc_Module</xqdoc:see>
      <xqdoc:version>1.0</xqdoc:version>
    </xqdoc:comment>
  </xqdoc:module>
  <xqdoc:namespaces>
    <xqdoc:namespace prefix="samples" uri="http://basex.org/modules/samples"/>
  </xqdoc:namespaces>
  <xqdoc:imports/>
  <xqdoc:variables>
    <xqdoc:variable>
      <xqdoc:name>samples:test-string</xqdoc:name>
      <xqdoc:comment>
        <xqdoc:description>This is a sample string.</xqdoc:description>
      </xqdoc:comment>
      <xqdoc:type>xs:string</xqdoc:type>
    </xqdoc:variable>
  </xqdoc:variables>
  <xqdoc:functions>
    <xqdoc:function arity="1">
      <xqdoc:comment>
        <xqdoc:description>This function simply returns the specified integer.</
xqdoc:description>
        <xqdoc:param>$number number to return</xqdoc:param>
        <xqdoc:return>specified number</xqdoc:return>
      </xqdoc:comment>
      <xqdoc:name>samples:same</xqdoc:name>
      <xqdoc:annotations>
        <xqdoc:annotation name="private"/>
      </xqdoc:annotations>
    </xqdoc:function>
  </xqdoc:functions>
</xqdoc:variables>
```

```

</xqdoc:annotations>
<xqdoc:signature>declare %private function samples:same($number as
xs:integer) as xs:integer</xqdoc:signature>
<xqdoc:parameters>
  <xqdoc:parameter>
    <xqdoc:name>number</xqdoc:name>
    <xqdoc:type>xs:integer</xqdoc:type>
  </xqdoc:parameter>
</xqdoc:parameters>
<xqdoc:return>
  <xqdoc:type>xs:integer</xqdoc:type>
</xqdoc:return>
</xqdoc:function>
</xqdoc:functions>
</xqdoc:xqdoc>

```

## Errors

Code	Description
parse	Error while parsing a module.
unknown	The specified component does not exist.

## Changelog

### Version 9.6

- Updated: `inspect:type`: options added

### Version 9.3

- Added: `inspect:type`

### Version 8.5

- Added: `inspect:function-annotations`, `inspect:static-context`
- Updated: `external` attribute added to variables and functions
- Updated: Relative URIs will always be resolved against the static base URI of the query

### Version 7.9

- Updated: a query URI can now be specified with `inspect:functions`.

This module was introduced with Version 7.7.

---

# Chapter 52. Job Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

Updated with Version 10: Renamed from *Jobs Module* to *Job Module*. The namespace URI has been updated as well.

This [XQuery Module](#) provides functions for organizing scheduled, queued, running and cached jobs. Jobs can be commands, queries, client, or HTTP requests.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/job` namespace, which is statically bound to the `job` prefix. Errors will be bound to the same prefix.

## Services

A job can be registered as *service* by supplying the `service` option to `job:eval`:

```
(: register job as service; will be run every day at 1 am :)
job:eval('db:drop("tmp")', (), map { 'id':'cleanup', 'start':'01:00:00',
  'interval':'P1D', 'service': true() }),

(: list registered services :)
job:services(),
(: result: <job base-uri="..." id="cleanup" interval="P1D"
  start="01:00:00">db:drop("tmp")</job> :)

(: unregister job :)
job:remove('cleanup', map { 'service': true() })
```

### Some more notes:

- All job services will be scheduled for evaluation when the BaseX server or BaseX HTTP server is started.
- If a job service is outdated (e.g. because a supplied end time has been exceeded), it will be removed from the jobs file at startup time.
- The job definitions are stored in a `jobs.xml` file in the database directory. It can also be edited manually.

## Executing Jobs

There are cases in which a client does not, or cannot, wait until a request is fully processed. The client may be a browser, which sends an HTTP request to the server to start another time-consuming query job. The functions in this section allow you to register a new query job from a running query. Jobs can be executed immediately (i.e., as soon as the [Concurrency Control](#) allows it) or scheduled for repeated execution. Each registered job gets a job ID, and the ID can be used to retrieve a query result, stop a job, or wait for its termination.

### job:eval

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:string, job:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*)) as xs:string, job:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*), \$options as map(*)) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Schedules the evaluation of the supplied <code>\$query</code> ( <code>xs:string</code> , or of type <code>xs:anyURI</code> , pointing to a resource), and returns a query ID. The query will be queued, and the result will optionally be cached. Queries can be updating. Variables and the context value can be declared via <code>\$bindings</code> (see <code>xquery:eval</code> for more details). The following <code>\$options</code> can be supplied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>cache</code> : indicates if the query result will be cached or ignored (default: <code>false</code>):</li></ul>

- The result will be cached in main-memory until it is fetched via `job:result`, or until `CACHETIMEOUT` is exceeded.
- If the query raises an error, it will be cached and returned instead.
- `start` : a `dayTimeDuration`, `time`, `dateTime` or `integer` can be specified to delay the execution of the query:
  - If a `dayTimeDuration` is specified, the query will be queued after the specified duration has passed. Examples of valid values are: `P1D` (1 day), `PT5M` (5 minutes), `PT0.1S` (100 ms). An error will be raised if a negative value is specified.
  - If a `dateTime` is specified, the query will be executed at this date. Examples for valid values are: `2018-12-31T23:59:59` (New Year's Eve 2018, close to midnight). An error will be raised if the specified time lies in the past.
  - If a `time` is specified, the query will be executed at this time of the day. Examples of valid times are: `02:00:00` (2am local time), `12:00:00Z` (noon, UTC). If the time lies in the past, the query will be executed the next day.
  - An `integer` will be interpreted as minutes. If the specified number is greater than the elapsed minutes of the current hour, the query will be executed one hour later.
- `interval` : a `dayTimeDuration` string can be specified to execute the query periodically. An error is raised if the specified interval is less than one second (`PT1S`). If the next scheduled call is due, and if a query with the same ID is still running, it will be skipped.
- `end` : scheduling can be stopped after a given time or duration. The string format is the same as for `start`. An error is raised if the resulting end time is smaller than the start time.
- `base-uri` : sets the `base-uri property` for the query. This URI will be used when resolving relative URIs, such as with `fn:doc`.
- `id` : sets a custom job ID. The ID must not start with the standard `job` prefix, and it can only be assigned if no job with the same name exists.
- `service` : additionally registers the job as `service`. Registered services must have no variable bindings.
- `log` : writes the specified string to the `database logs`. Two log entries are stored, one at the beginning and another one after the execution of the job.

**Errors** `overflow`: Query execution is rejected because too many jobs are queued or being executed. `CACHETIMEOUT` can be decreased if the default setting is too restrictive. `range`: A specified time or duration is out of range. `id`: The specified ID is invalid or has already been assigned. `options`: The specified options are conflicting.

**Examples**

- Cache query result. The returned ID can be used to pick up the result with `job:result`:
 

```
job:eval("1+3", (), map { 'cache': true() })
```
- A happy birthday mail will be sent at the given date:
 

```
job:eval("import module namespace mail='mail'; mail:send('Happy birthday!')",
            (), map { 'start': '2018-09-01T06:00:00' })})
```
- The following `RESTXQ` functions can be called to execute a query at 2 am every day. An ID will be returned by the first function, which can be used to stop the scheduler via the second function:
 

```
declare %rest:POST("${query}") %rest:path('/start-scheduling') function
            local:start($query) {
```

```

job:eval($query, (), map { 'start': '02:00:00', 'interval': 'P1D' })
};
declare %rest:path('/stop-scheduling/{$id}') function local:stop($id) {
  job:remove($id)
};

```

- Query execution is scheduled for every second, and for 10 seconds in total. As the query itself will take 1.5 seconds, it will only be executed every second time:

```

job:eval("prof:sleep(1500)", (), map { 'interval': 'PT1S', 'end':
'PT10S' })

```

- The query in the specified file will be evaluated once:

```

job:eval(xs:anyURI('cleanup.xq'))

```

- The following expression, if stored in a file, will be evaluated every 5 seconds:

```

job:eval(
  static-base-uri(),
  map { },
  map { 'start': 'PT5S' }
)

```

## job:result

Version 10: options argument added.

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:result(\$id as xs:string) as item()*</code> , <code>job:result(\$id as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Returns the cached result of a job with the specified job \$id:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the original job has raised an error, the cached error will be raised instead.</li> <li>• The cached result or error will be dropped after it has been retrieved.</li> <li>• If the result has not been cached or if it has been dropped, an empty sequence is returned.</li> </ul> <p>The following \$options can be supplied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>keep</code> : Keep the cached result or error after retrieval.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The following <b>RESTXQ</b> function will either return the result of a previously started job or raise an error:</li> </ul> <pre> declare %rest:path('/result/{\$id}') function local:result(\$id) {   job:result(\$id) }; </pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The following query demonstrates how the results of an executed query can be returned within the same query (see below why you should avoid this pattern in practice):</li> </ul> <pre> let \$query := job:eval('(1 to 1000000)[. = 1]', map { }, map { 'cache': true() }) return (   job:wait(\$query),   job:result(\$query) ) </pre> <p>Queries of this kind can cause deadlocks! If the original query and the new query perform updates on the same database, the second query will only be run after the first one has been executed, and the first query will wait for the second query forever. You should resort to <code>xquery:fork-join</code> if you want to have full control on parallel query execution.</p>

## job:remove

Updated with Version 10: Renamed from `jobs:stop`.

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:remove(\$id as xs:string) as empty-sequence(), job:remove(\$id as xs:string, \$options as map(*?)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Triggers the cancelation of a job with the specified <code>\$id</code> , cancels a scheduled job or removes a cached result. Unknown IDs are ignored. All jobs are gracefully stopped; it is up to the process to decide when it is safe to shut down. The following <code>\$options</code> can be supplied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>service</code> : additionally removes the job from the <b>job services</b> list.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>job:list()[. != job:current()] ! job:remove(.)</code> stops and discards all jobs except for the current one.</li> <li>• <code>job:remove(job:current())</code> interrupts the current job.</li> </ul>

## job:wait

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:wait(\$id as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Waits for the completion of a job with the specified <code>\$id</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The function will terminate immediately if the job ID is unknown. This is the case if a future job has not been queued yet, or if the ID has already been discarded after job evaluation.</li> <li>• If the function is called with the ID of a queued job, or repeatedly executed job, it may stall and never terminate.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>self</code> : The current job is addressed.

## Listing Jobs

### job:current

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:current() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the ID of the current job.

### job:list

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:list() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the IDs of all jobs that are currently registered. The list includes scheduled, queued, running, stopped, and finished jobs with cached results.
<b>Examples</b>	<code>job:list()</code> returns the same job ID as <code>job:current</code> if no other job is registered.

### job:list-details

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>job:list-details() as element(job)*, job:list-details(\$id as xs:string) as element(job)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns information on all jobs that are currently registered, or on a job with the specified <code>\$id</code> (or an empty sequence if this job is not found). The list includes scheduled, queued, running jobs, and cached jobs. A string representation of the job, or its URI, will be returned as a value. The returned elements have additional attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>id</code> : job ID</li> <li>• <code>type</code> : type of the job (command, query, REST, RESTXQ, etc.)</li> <li>• <code>state</code> : current state of the job: scheduled, queued, running, cached</li> </ul>

- `user` : user who started the job
- `duration` : evaluation time (included if a job is running or if the result was cached)
- `start` : next start of job (included if a job will be executed repeatedly)
- `time` : time when job was registered

**Examples** `job:list-details()` returns information on the currently running job and possibly others:

```
<job id="job1" type="XQuery" state="running" user="admin"
duration="PT0.001S">
  XQUERY job:list-details()
</job>
```

## job:bindings

*Introduced with Version 10.*

**Signatures** `job:bindings($id as xs:string) as map(*)`

**Summary** Returns the variable bindings of an existing job with the specified `$id`. If no variables have been bound to this job, an empty map is returned.

## job:finished

**Signatures** `job:finished($id as xs:string) as xs:boolean`

**Summary** Indicates if the evaluation of an already running job with the specified `$id` has finished. As the IDs of finished jobs will usually be discarded, unless caching is enabled, the function will also return `true` for unknown jobs.

- `false` indicates that the job ID is scheduled, queued, or currently running.
- `true` will be returned if the job has either finished, or if the ID is unknown (because the IDs of all finished jobs will not be cached).

## job:services

**Signatures** `job:services() as element(job)*`

**Summary** Returns a list of all jobs that have been persistently registered as **Services**.

**Errors** `services`: Registered services cannot be parsed.

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>options</code>	The specified options are conflicting.
<code>id</code>	The specified ID is invalid or has already been assigned.
<code>overflow</code>	Too many queries or query results are queued.
<code>range</code>	A specified time or duration is out of range.
<code>running</code>	A query is still running.
<code>self</code>	The current job cannot be addressed.
<code>service</code>	Registered services cannot be parsed, added or removed.

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: Renamed from *Jobs Module* to *Job Module*. The namespace URI has been updated as well.
- Updated: `job:remove` renamed from `jobs:stop`.
- Updated: `job:result:options` argument added.
- Added: `job:bindings`

Version 9.7

- Updated: `job:result`: return empty sequence if no result is cached.

Version 9.5

- Updated: `job:eval`: integers added as valid start and end times.

Version 9.4

- Updated: `job:eval`: option added for writing log entries.
- Updated: `job:list-details:interval` added.

Version 9.2

- Deleted: `job:invoke` (merged with `job:eval`)

Version 9.1

- Updated: `job:list-details:registration-time` added.

Version 9.0

- Added: `job:invoke`, [Services](#)

Version 8.6

- Updated: `job:eval:id` option added.

The module was introduced with Version 8.5.



---

# Chapter 53. JSON Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to parse and serialize JSON data **JSON (JavaScript Object Notation)** is a popular data exchange format for applications written in JavaScript. As there are notable differences between JSON and XML, or XQuery data types, no mapping exists that guarantees a lossless, bidirectional conversion between JSON and XML. For this reason, we offer various mappings, all of which are suited to different use cases.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/json` namespace, which is statically bound to the `json` prefix.

## Conversion Formats

**A little advice:** in the Database Creation dialog of the GUI, if you select JSON Parsing and switch to the *Parsing* tab, you can see the effects of some of the conversion options.

### Direct

The `direct` conversion format allows a lossless conversion from JSON to XML and back. The transformation is based on the following rules:

- The resulting document has a `json` root node.
- Object pairs are represented via elements. The name of a pair is encoded, as described in the [Conversion Module](#), and used as element name.
- Array entries are also represented via elements, with `_` as element name.
- Object and array values are stored in text nodes.
- The types of values are represented via `type` attributes:
  - The existing types are *string*, *number*, *boolean*, *null*, *object*, and *array*.
  - As most values are strings, the *string* type is by default omitted.

### Attributes

The `attributes` format is lossless, too. The transformation based on the following rules:

- The resulting document has a `json` root node.
- Object pairs are represented via `pair` elements. The name of a pair is stored in a `name` attribute.
- Array entries are represented via `item` elements.
- Object and array values are stored in text nodes.
- The types of values are represented via `type` attributes:
  - The existing types are *string*, *number*, *boolean*, *null*, *object*, and *array*.
  - As most values are strings, the *string* type is by default omitted.

### Basic

The `basic` format is another lossless format. It converts a JSON document to an XML node and vice versa. The conversion rules are the same as for [fn:json-to-xml](#).

## JsonML

The `jsonml` format is designed to convert XML to JSON and back, using the JsonML dialect. JsonML allows the transformation of arbitrary XML documents, but namespaces, comments and processing instructions will be discarded in the transformation process. More details are found in the official [JsonML documentation](#).

## XQuery

The `xquery` format is lossless, too. It converts JSON data to an XQuery value (a map, array, string, number, boolean, or empty sequence) and vice versa. The conversion rules are the same as for `fn:parse-json`.

The resulting representation consumes less memory than XML-based formats, and values can be directly accessed without conversion. Thus, it is recommendable for very large inputs and for efficient ad-hoc processing.

## Options

The following options are available (the *Direction* column indicates if an option applies to parsing, serialization, or both operations):

Option	Description	Allowed	Default	Direction
<code>format</code>	Specifies the format for converting JSON data.	direct, attributes, jsonml, xquery	direct	<i>parse, serialize</i>
<code>liberal</code>	Determines if minor deviations from <a href="#">RFC 7159</a> will be ignored.	yes, no	no	<i>parse</i>
<code>merge</code>	This option is considered when <code>direct</code> or <code>attributes</code> conversion is used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a name has the same type throughout the data, the <code>type</code> attribute will be omitted. Instead, the name will be listed in additional, type-specific attributes in the root node.</li> <li>The attributes are named by their type in plural (<i>numbers, booleans, nulls, objects and arrays</i>), and the attribute value contains all names with that type, separated by whitespaces.</li> </ul>	yes, no	no	<i>parse, serialize</i>
<code>strings</code>	Indicates if <code>type</code> attributes will be added for strings.	yes, no	yes	<i>parse, serialize</i>
<code>lax</code>	Specifies if a lax approach is used to convert QNames to JSON names.	yes, no	no	<i>parse, serialize</i>
<code>escape</code>	Indicates if escaped characters are expanded (for example, <code>\n</code> becomes a single <code>x0A</code> character, while <code>\u20AC</code> becomes the character <code>€</code> ).	yes, no	yes	<i>parse</i>
<code>escape</code>	Indicates if characters are escaped whenever the JSON syntax requires it. This option can be set to <code>no</code> if strings are already in escaped form and no further escaping is permitted.	yes, no	yes	<i>serialize</i>
<code>indent</code>	Indicates if whitespace should be added to the output with the aim of improving human legibility. If the parameter is set as in the query prolog, it overrides the <code>indent</code> <a href="#">serialization parameter</a> .	yes, no	yes	<i>serialize</i>

## Functions

### json:doc

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>json:doc(\$uri as xs:string) as item()?, json:doc(\$uri as xs:string, \$options as map(*)?) as item()?,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Fetches the JSON document referred to by the given <code>\$uri</code> and converts it to an XQuery value. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to control the way the input is converted.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse</code> : the specified input cannot be parsed as JSON document. <code>options</code> : the specified options are conflicting.

### json:parse

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>json:parse(\$string as xs:string?) as item()?, json:parse(\$string as xs:string?, \$options as map(*)?) as item()?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Converts the JSON <code>\$string</code> to an XQuery value. If the input can be successfully parsed, it can be serialized back to the original JSON representation. The <code>\$options</code> argument can be used to control the way the input is converted.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>parse</code> : the specified input cannot be parsed as JSON document. <code>options</code> : the specified options are conflicting.

### json:serialize

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>json:serialize(\$input as item()) as xs:string, json:serialize(\$input as item(), \$options as map(*)?) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Serializes the specified <code>\$input</code> as JSON, using the specified <code>\$options</code> , and returns the result as string: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The input is expected to conform to the results that are created by <code>json:parse</code>.</li> <li>Non-conforming items will be serialized as specified in the <a href="#">json output method</a> of the official recommendation.</li> </ul> <p>Values can also be serialized as JSON with the standard <a href="#">Serialization</a> feature of XQuery:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter <code>method</code> needs to be set to <code>json</code>, and</li> <li>the options presented in this article need to be assigned to the <code>json</code> parameter.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>serialize</code> : the specified node cannot be serialized as JSON document.

## Examples

### BaseX Format

**Example 1: Adds all JSON documents in a directory to a database**

**Query:**

```
let $database := "database"
for $name in file:list('.', false(), '*.json')
let $file := file:read-text($name)
let $json := json:parse($file)
return db:add($database, $json, $name)
```

**Example 2: Converts a simple JSON string to XML and back**

**Query:**

```
json:parse('{}')
```

**Result:**

```
<json type="object"/>
```

**Query:**

```
(: serialize result as plain text :)
declare option output:method 'text';
json:serialize(<json type="object"/>)
```

**Result:**

```
{ }
```

**Example 3: Converts a JSON string with simple objects and arrays****Query:**

```
json:parse('{
  "title": "Talk On Travel Pool",
  "link": "http://www.flickr.com/groups/talkontravel/pool/",
  "description": "Travel and vacation photos from around the world.",
  "modified": "2014-02-02T11:10:27Z",
  "generator": "http://www.flickr.com/"
}')
```

**Result:**

```
<json type="object">
  <title>Talk On Travel Pool</title>
  <link>http://www.flickr.com/groups/talkontravel/pool/</link>
  <description>Travel and vacation photos from around the world.</description>
  <modified>2014-02-02T11:10:27Z</modified>
  <generator>http://www.flickr.com/</generator>
</json>
```

**Example 4: Converts a JSON string with different data types****Query:**

```
let $options := map { 'merge': true() }
return json:parse('{
  "first_name": "John",
  "last_name": "Smith",
  "age": 25,
  "address": {
    "street": "21 2nd Street",
    "city": "New York",
    "code": 10021
  },
  "phone": [
    {
      "type": "home",
      "number": "212 555-1234"
    },
    {
      "type": "mobile",
      "number": 1327724623
    }
  ]
}', $options)
```

**Result:**

```
<json numbers="age code" arrays="phone" objects="json address value">
  <first__name>John</first__name>
  <last__name>Smith</last__name>
  <age>25</age>
  <address>
    <street>21 2nd Street</street>
    <city>New York</city>
    <code>10021</code>
  </address>
  <phone>
    <_>
      <type>home</type>
      <number>212 555-1234</number>
    </_>
    <_>
      <type>mobile</type>
      <number type="number">1327724623</number>
    </_>
  </phone>
</json>
```

## JsonML Format

**Example 1: Converts all XML documents in a database to the JsonML format and writes them to disk**

### Query:

```
for $doc in collection('json')
let $name := document-uri($doc)
let $json := json:serialize($doc, map { 'format': 'jsonml' })
return file:write($name, $json)
```

**Example 2: Converts an XML document with elements and text**

### Query:

```
json:serialize(doc('flickr.xml'), map { 'format': 'jsonml' })
```

### flickr.xml:

```
<flickr>
  <title>Talk On Travel Pool</title>
  <link>http://www.flickr.com/groups/talkontravel/pool/</link>
  <description>Travel and vacation photos from around the world.</description>
  <modified>2014-02-02T11:10:27Z</modified>
  <generator>http://www.flickr.com/</generator>
</flickr>
```

### Result:

```
[ "flickr",
  [ "title",
    "Talk On Travel Pool" ],
  [ "link",
    "http://www.flickr.com/groups/talkontravel/pool/" ],
  [ "description",
    "Travel and vacation photos from around the world." ],
  [ "modified",
    "2014-02-02T11:10:27Z" ],
  [ "generator",
    "http://www.flickr.com/" ] ]
```

**Example 3: Converts a document with nested elements and attributes to JsonML**

### Query:

```
json:serialize(doc('input.xml'), map { 'format': 'jsonml' })
```

**input.xml:**

```
<address id='1'>
  <!-- comments will be discarded -->
  <last_name>Smith</last_name>
  <age>25</age>
  <address xmlns='will be dropped as well'>
    <street>21 2nd Street</street>
    <city>New York</city>
    <code>10021</code>
  </address>
  <phone type='home'>212 555-1234</phone>
</address>
```

**Result:**

```
[ "address", { "id": "1" },
  [ "last_name",
    "Smith" ],
  [ "age",
    "25" ],
  [ "address",
    [ "street",
      "21 2nd Street" ],
    [ "city",
      "New York" ],
    [ "code",
      "10021" ] ],
  [ "phone", { "type": "home" },
    "212 555-1234" ] ]
```

**XQuery Format****Example 1: Converts a JSON string to XQuery****Query:**

```
let $input := '{
  "Title": "Drinks",
  "Author": [ "Jim Daniels", "Jack Beam" ]
}'
let $data := json:parse($input, map { 'format': 'xquery' })
return map:for-each($data, function($k, $v) {
  $k || ': ' || string-join($v, ', ')
})
```

**Result:**

```
Author: Jim Daniels, Jack Beam
Title: Drinks
```

**Example 2: Converts XQuery data to JSON****Query:**

```
for $item in (
  true(),
  'ABC',
  array { 1 to 5 },
  map { "Key": "Value" }
)
return json:serialize(
  $item,
```

```
map { 'format': 'xquery', 'indent': 'no' }
)
```

**Result:**

```
true
"ABC"
[1,2,3,4,5]
{"Key": "Value" }
```

**Errors**

Code	Description
options	The specified options are conflicting.
parse	The specified input cannot be parsed as JSON document.
serialize	The specified node cannot be serialized as JSON document.

**Changelog**

## Version 9.4

- Added: `json:doc`

## Version 9.1

- Updated: `json:parse` can be called with empty sequence.

## Version 9.0

- Updated: `map` format renamed to `xquery`.
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

## Version 8.4

- Updated: `unescape` changed to `escape`.

## Version 8.2

- Added: Conversion format `basic`.

## Version 8.0

- Updated: Serialization aligned with the `json` output method of the official specification.
- Added: `liberal` option.
- Removed: `spec` option.

## Version 7.8

- Removed: `json:parse-ml`, `json:serialize-ml`.
- Updated: `json:parse` now returns a document node instead of an element, or an XQuery map if `format` is set to `.map`.

## Version 7.7.2

- Updated: `$options` argument added to `json:parse` and `json:serialize`.
- Updated: `json:parse-ml` and `json:serialize-ml` are now *deprecated*.

The module was introduced with Version 7.0.



---

# Chapter 54. Lazy Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for handling *lazy* items.

In contrast to standard XQuery items, a *lazy* item contains a reference to the actual data, and the data itself will only be retrieved if it is processed. Hence, possible errors will be postponed, and no memory will be occupied by a lazy item as long as its content has not been requested yet.

The following BaseX functions return lazy items:

- Lazy Base64 binaries:
  - `fetch:binary`
  - `file:read-binary`
  - `db:get-binary`
- Lazy strings:
  - `fetch:text`
  - `file:read-text`

Some functions are capable of consuming the contents of lazy items in a *streamable* fashion: data will not be cached, but instead passed on to another target (file, the calling expression, etc.). The following streaming functions are currently available:

- **Archive Module** (most functions)
- Conversion Module: `convert:binary-to-string`
- File Module: `file:write-binary-text`, `file:write-text` (if no encoding is specified)
- Database Module: `db:put-binary`
- **Hashing Module** (all functions)

The XQuery expression below serves as an example on how large files can be downloaded and written to a file with constant memory consumption:

```
file:write-binary('output.data', fetch:binary('http://files.basex.org/xml/xmark111mb.zip'))
```

If lazy items are serialized, they will be streamed as well.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/lazy` namespace, which is statically bound to the `lazy` prefix.

## Functions

### lazy:cache

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>lazy:cache(\$items as item()*) as item()*</code> , <code>lazy:cache(\$items as item()*, \$lazy as xs:boolean) as item()*</code>
-------------------	---

---

<b>Summary</b>	<p>Caches the data of lazy <code>\$items</code> in a sequence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• data of lazy items will be retrieved and cached inside the item.</li> <li>• non-lazy items, or lazy items with cached data, will simply be passed through.</li> <li>• If <code>\$lazy</code> is set to <code>true()</code>, caching will be deferred until the data is eventually requested. Streaming will be disabled: Data will always be cached before a stream is returned.</li> </ul> <p>Caching is advisable if an item will be processed more than once, or if the data may not be available anymore at a later stage.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In the following example, a file will be deleted before its content is returned. To avoid a “file not found” error when serializing the result, the content must be cached:</p> <pre>let \$file := 'data.txt' let \$text := lazy:cache(file:read-text(\$file)) return (file:delete(\$file), \$text)</pre>

## lazy:is-lazy

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>lazy:is-lazy(\$item as item()) as xs:boolean</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Checks whether the specified <code>\$item</code> is lazy.

## lazy:is-cached

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>lazy:is-cached(\$item as item()) as xs:boolean</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Checks whether the contents of the specified <code>\$item</code> are cached. The function will always return <code>true</code> for non-lazy items.

## Changelog

### Version 9.1

- Updated: `lazy:cache`: `$lazy` argument added; support for sequences.

### Version 9.0

- Updated: Renamed from Streaming Module to Lazy Module.
- Added: `lazy:is-cached`

### Version 8.0

- Updated: `stream:materialize` extended to sequences.

This module was introduced with Version 7.7.

---

# Chapter 55. Map Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for manipulating maps. **Maps** have been introduced with **XQuery 3.1**.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/map` namespace, which is statically bound to the `map` prefix.

## Functions

Some examples use the `map$week` defined as:

```
declare variable $week := map {
  0: "Sun", 1: "Mon", 2: "Tue", 3: "Wed", 4: "Thu", 5: "Fri", 6: "Sat"
};
```

### map:contains

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:contains(\$map as map(*), \$key as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:boolean</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns true if the supplied <code>\$map</code> contains an entry with a key equal to the supplied value of <code>\$key</code> ; otherwise it returns false. No error is raised if the map contains keys that are not comparable with the supplied <code>\$key</code> . If the supplied key is <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code> , it is compared as an instance of <code>xs:string</code> . If the supplied key is the <code>xs:float</code> or <code>xs:double</code> value NaN, the function returns true if there is an entry whose key is NaN, or false otherwise.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>map:contains(\$week, 2)</code> returns <code>true()</code>.</li><li>• <code>map:contains(\$week, 9)</code> returns <code>false()</code>.</li><li>• <code>map:contains(map {}, "xyz")</code> returns <code>false()</code>.</li><li>• <code>map:contains(map { "xyz": 23 }, "xyz")</code> returns <code>true()</code>.</li></ul>

### map:entry

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:entry(\$key as xs:anyAtomicType, \$value as item(*) as map(*))</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a new <i>map</i> containing a single entry. The key of the entry in the new map is <code>\$key</code> , and its associated value is <code>\$value</code> . The function <code>map:entry</code> is intended primarily for use in conjunction with the function <code>map:merge</code> . For example, a map containing seven entries may be constructed like this: <pre>map:merge((   map:entry("Sun", "Sunday"),   map:entry("Mon", "Monday"),   map:entry("Tue", "Tuesday"),   map:entry("Wed", "Wednesday"),   map:entry("Thu", "Thursday"),   map:entry("Fri", "Friday"),   map:entry("Sat", "Saturday") ))</pre> Unlike the <code>map { . . . }</code> expression, this technique can be used to construct a map with a variable number of entries, for example:

	<code>map:merge(for \$b in //book return map:entry(\$b/isbn, \$b))</code>
<b>Examples</b>	<code>map:entry("M", "Monday")</code> creates map { "M": "Monday" }.

## map:find

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:find(\$input as item()*, \$key as xs:anyAtomicType) as array(*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns all values of maps in the supplied <code>\$input</code> with the specified <code>\$key</code> . The found values will be returned in an array. Arbitrary input will be processed recursively as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In a sequence, each item will be processed in order.</li> <li>• In an array, all array members will be processed as sequence.</li> <li>• In a map, all entries whose keys match the specified key. Moreover, all values of the map will be processed as sequence.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>map:find(map { 1:2 }, 1)</code> returns [ 2 ].</li> <li>• <code>map:find(map { 1: map { 2: map { 3: 4 } } }, 3)</code> returns [ 4 ].</li> <li>• <code>map:find((1, 'b', true#0), 1)</code> returns an empty array.</li> </ul>

## map:for-each

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:for-each(\$map as map(*), \$function as function(xs:anyAtomicType, item()*) as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Applies the specified <code>\$function</code> to every key/value pair of the supplied <code>\$map</code> and returns the results as a sequence.
<b>Examples</b>	The following query adds the keys and values of all map entries and returns ( 3 , 7 ): <pre>map:for-each(   map { 1: 2, 3: 4 },   function(\$key, \$value) { \$key + \$value } )</pre>

## map:get

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:get(\$map as map(*), \$key as xs:anyAtomicType) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value associated with a supplied key in a given map. This function attempts to find an entry within the <code>\$map</code> that has a key equal to the supplied value of <code>\$key</code> . If there is such an entry, the function returns the associated value; otherwise it returns an empty sequence. No error is raised if the map contains keys that are not comparable with the supplied <code>\$key</code> . If the supplied key is <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code> , it is converted to <code>xs:string</code> . A return value of <code>()</code> from <code>map:get</code> could indicate that the key is present in the map with an associated value of <code>()</code> , or it could indicate that the key is not present in the map. The two cases can be distinguished by calling <code>map:contains</code> . Invoking the <i>map</i> as a function item has the same effect as calling <code>get</code> : that is, when <code>\$map</code> is a map, the expression <code>\$map(\$K)</code> is equivalent to <code>get(\$map, \$K)</code> . Similarly, the expression <code>get(get(get(\$map, 'employee'), 'name'), 'first')</code> can be written as <code>\$map('employee')('name')('first')</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>map:get(\$week, 4)</code> returns "Thu".</li> <li>• <code>map:get(\$week, 9)</code> returns <code>()</code>. (When the key is not present, the function returns an empty sequence.)</li> <li>• <code>map:get(map:entry(7, ()), 7)</code> returns <code>()</code>. (An empty sequence as the result can also signify that the key is present and the associated value is an empty sequence.)</li> </ul>

## map:keys

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:keys(\$map as map(*)) as xs:anyAtomicType*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a sequence containing all the key values present in a map. The function takes the supplied <code>\$map</code> and returns the keys that are present in the map as a sequence of atomic values. The order may differ from the order in which entries were inserted in the map.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>map:keys(map { 1: "yes", 2: "no" })</code> returns <code>(1,2)</code>.</li> </ul>

## map:merge

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:merge(\$maps as map(*)*) as map(*), map:merge(\$maps as map(*)*, \$options as map(*)) as map(*)</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Constructs and returns a new map. The <i>map</i> is formed by combining the contents of the supplied <code>\$maps</code>. The maps are combined as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is one entry in the new map for each distinct key present in the union of the input maps.</li> <li>The <code>\$options</code> argument defines how duplicate keys are handled. Currently, a single option <code>duplicates</code> exists, and its allowed values are <code>use-first</code>, <code>use-last</code>, <code>combine</code> and <code>reject</code> (default: <code>use-first</code>).</li> </ol>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>map:merge(())</code> creates an empty map.</li> <li><code>map:merge((map:entry(0, "no"), map:entry(1, "yes")))</code> creates <code>map { 0: "no", 1: "yes" }</code>.</li> <li>The following function adds a seventh entry to an existing map: <pre>map:merge((\$week, map { 7: "---" })))</pre> </li> <li>In the following example, the values of all maps are combined, resulting in a map with a single key (<code>map { "key": (1, 2, 3) }</code>): <pre>map:merge(   for \$i in 1 to 3 return map { 'key': \$i },   map { 'duplicates': 'combine' } )</pre> </li> </ul>

## map:put

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:put(\$map as map(*), \$key as xs:anyAtomicType, \$value as item(*) as map(*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a new <i>map</i> , containing the entries of the supplied <code>\$map</code> and a new entry composed by <code>\$key</code> and <code>\$value</code> . The semantics of this function are equivalent to <code>map:merge((map { \$key, \$value }, \$map))</code>

## map:remove

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:remove(\$map as map(*), \$keys as xs:anyAtomicType*) as map(*)</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Constructs a new map by removing entries from an existing map. The entries in the new map correspond to the entries of <code>\$map</code> , excluding entries supplied via <code>\$keys</code> . No failure occurs if the input map contains no entry with the supplied keys; the input map is returned unchanged.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>map:remove(\$week, 4)</code> creates <code>map { 0: "Sun", 1: "Mon", 2: "Tue", 3: "Wed", 5: "Fri", 6: "Sat" }</code>.</li> <li><code>map:remove(\$week, 23)</code> creates <code>map { 0: "Sun", 1: "Mon", 2: "Tue", 3: "Wed", 4: "Thu", 5: "Fri", 6: "Sat" }</code>.</li> </ul>

## map:size

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>map:size(\$map as map(*)) as xs:integer,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a the number of entries in the supplied map. The function takes the supplied \$map and returns the number of entries that are present in the map.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>map:size(map:merge(()))</code> returns 0.</li><li>• <code>map:size(map { "true": 1, "false": 0 })</code> returns 2.</li></ul>

## Changelog

### Version 8.6

- Added: `map:find`
- Updated: `map:merge`: Signature extended with `options` argument. By default, value of first key is now adopted (instead of last, as in previous versions).

### Version 8.4

- Removed: `map:serialize` (use `fn:serialize` instead)

### Version 8.0

- Added: `map:for-each`, `map:merge`, `map:put`
- Removed: support for collations (in accordance with the XQuery 3.1 spec).
- Removed: `map:new` (replaced with `map:merge`)
- Updated: aligned with latest specification: compare keys of type `xs:untypedAtomic` as `xs:string` instances, store `xs:float` or `xs:double` value NaN.
- Introduction on maps is now found in the article on [XQuery 3.1](#).

### Version 7.8

- Updated: map syntax `map { 'key': 'value' }`
- Added: `map:serialize`

### Version 7.7.1

- Updated: alternative map syntax without `map` keyword and `:` as key/value delimiter (e.g.: `{ 'key': 'value' }`)

---

# Chapter 56. Math Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

The math **XQuery Module** defines functions to perform mathematical operations, such as `pi`, `asin` and `acos`. Most functions are specified in the **Functions and Operators Specification** of the upcoming XQuery 3.0 Recommendation, and some additional ones have been added in this module.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math` namespace, which is statically bound to the `math` prefix.

## W3 Functions

### math:pi

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:pi()</code> as <code>xs:double</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <code>xs:double</code> value of the mathematical constant $\pi$ whose lexical representation is 3.141592653589793.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>2*math:pi()</code> returns 6.283185307179586e0.</li><li><code>60 * (math:pi() div 180)</code> converts an angle of 60 degrees to radians.</li></ul>

### math:sqrt

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:sqrt(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the square root of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the <code>xs:double</code> value of the mathematical square root of <code>\$arg</code> .

### math:sin

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:sin(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the sine of the <code>\$arg</code> , expressed in radians. If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the sine of <code>\$arg</code> , treated as an angle in radians.

### math:cos

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:cos(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the cosine of <code>\$arg</code> , expressed in radians. If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the cosine of <code>\$arg</code> , treated as an angle in radians.

### math:tan

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:tan(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the tangent of <code>\$arg</code> , expressed in radians. If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the tangent of <code>\$arg</code> , treated as an angle in radians.

### math:asin

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:asin(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
-------------------	--

---

<b>Summary</b>	Returns the arc sine of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the arc sine of <code>\$arg</code> , returned as an angle in radians in the range $-\pi/2$ to $+\pi/2$ .
----------------	--

**math:acos**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:acos(\$arg as xs:double?) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the arc cosine of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the arc cosine of <code>\$arg</code> , returned as an angle in radians in the range $0$ to $+\pi$ .

**math:atan**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:atan(\$arg as xs:double?) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the arc tangent of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the arc tangent of <code>\$arg</code> , returned as an angle in radians in the range $-\pi/2$ to $+\pi/2$ .

**math:atan2**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:atan2(\$arg1 as xs:double?, \$arg2 as xs:double) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the arc tangent of <code>\$arg1</code> divided by <code>\$arg2</code> , the result being in the range $-\pi/2$ to $+\pi/2$ radians. If <code>\$arg1</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the arc tangent of <code>\$arg1</code> divided by <code>\$arg2</code> , returned as an angle in radians in the range $-\pi$ to $+\pi$ .

**math:pow**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:pow(\$arg1 as xs:double?, \$arg2 as xs:double) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns <code>\$arg1</code> raised to the power of <code>\$arg2</code> . If <code>\$arg1</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the <code>\$arg1</code> raised to the power of <code>\$arg2</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>math:pow(2, 3)</code> returns 8.</li> </ul>

**math:exp**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:exp(\$arg as xs:double?) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns $e$ raised to the power of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the value of $e$ raised to the power of <code>\$arg</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>math:exp(1)</code> returns <math>e</math>.</li> </ul>

**math:log**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:log(\$arg as xs:double?) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the natural logarithm of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the natural logarithm (base $e$ ) of <code>\$arg</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>math:log(math:e())</code> returns 1.</li> </ul>

**math:log10**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:log10(\$arg as xs:double?) as xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the base 10 logarithm of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the base 10 logarithm of <code>\$arg</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>math:log(100)</code> returns 2.</li> </ul>



## Additional Functions

### math:e

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:e()</code> as <code>xs:double</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the <code>xs:double</code> value of the mathematical constant $e$ whose lexical representation is 2.718281828459045.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>5*math:e()</code> returns 13.591409142295225.</li> </ul>

### math:sinh

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:sinh(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the hyperbolic sine of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the hyperbolic sine of <code>\$arg</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>math:sinh(0)</code> returns 0.</li> </ul>

### math:cosh

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:cosh(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the hyperbolic cosine of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the hyperbolic cosine of <code>\$arg</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>math:cosh(0)</code> returns 1.</li> </ul>

### math:tanh

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:tanh(\$arg as xs:double?)</code> as <code>xs:double?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the hyperbolic tangent of <code>\$arg</code> . If <code>\$arg</code> is the empty sequence, the empty sequence is returned. Otherwise the result is the hyperbolic tangent of <code>\$arg</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>math:tanh(100)</code> returns 1.</li> </ul>

### math:crc32

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>math:crc32(\$string as xs:string?)</code> as <code>xs:hexBinary?</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Calculates the CRC32 check sum of the given <code>\$string</code> . If an empty sequence is supplied, the empty sequence is returned.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>math:crc32("")</code> returns '00000000'.</li> <li>• <code>math:crc32("BaseX")</code> returns '4C06FC7F'.</li> </ul>

## Changelog

#### Version 9.1

- Updated: `math:crc32` can be called with empty sequence.

#### Version 7.5

- Moved: `math:random` and `math:uuid` have been moved to the [Random Module](#).

#### Version 7.3

- Added: `math:crc32` and `math:uuid` have been adopted from the obsolete Utility Module.

---

# Chapter 57. Process Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** provides functions for executing system commands from XQuery.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/proc` namespace, which is statically bound to the `proc` prefix.

## Functions

### proc:system

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>proc:system(\$cmd as xs:string) as xs:string, proc:system(\$cmd as xs:string, \$args as xs:string*) as xs:string, proc:system(\$cmd as xs:string, \$args as xs:string*, \$options as map(xs:string, xs:string)) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Executes the specified command in a separate process and returns the result as string. <code>\$cmd</code> is the name of the command, arguments to the command may be specified via <code>\$args</code>. The <code>\$options</code> parameter contains process options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>encoding</code>: convert result to the specified encoding. If no encoding is supplied, the system's default encoding is used.</li><li>• <code>timeout</code>: abort process execution after the specified number of seconds.</li><li>• <code>dir</code>: process command in the specified directory.</li><li>• <code>input</code>: standard string input (<code>stdin</code>) to be passed on to the command.</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>encoding</code>: the specified encoding does not exist or is not supported. <code>timeout</code>: the specified timeout was exceeded. <code>error</code>: the command could not be executed, or an I/O exception was raised. <code>code . . .</code>: If the command returns an exit code different to 0, an error will be raised. Its code will consist of the letters <code>code</code> and four digits with the exit code.</p>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>proc:system('date')</code> returns the current date on a Linux system.</li><li>• Analyses the given input and counts the number of lines, words and characters (provided that <code>wc</code> is available on the system):<pre>proc:system(   'wc', (),   map { 'input': 'A B'    out:nl()    'C' } )</pre></li><li>• The following example returns “Command not found” (unless <code>xyz</code> is a valid command on the system):<pre>try {   proc:system('xyz') } catch proc:error {   'Command not found: '    \$err:description }</pre></li></ul>

### proc:execute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>proc:execute(\$cmd as xs:string) as element(result),</code> <code>proc:execute(\$cmd as xs:string, \$args as xs:string*) as</code>
-------------------	---

	<code>element(result), proc:execute(\$cmd as xs:string, \$args as xs:string*, \$options as map(xs:string, xs:string)) as element(result)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Executes the specified command in a separate process and returns the result as element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\$cmd</code> is the name of the command, and arguments to the command may be specified via <code>\$args</code>.</li> <li>• The same <code>\$options</code> are allowed as for <code>proc:system</code>.</li> <li>• Instead of the <code>proc:error</code> error, the error message and process code will be assigned to the returned elements.</li> <li>• Instead of the <code>proc:code . . .</code> error, the error message will be assigned to the returned element (no process code will be returned).</li> </ul> <p>The result has the following structure:</p> <pre>&lt;result&gt;   &lt;output&gt;...output...&lt;/output&gt;   &lt;error&gt;...error message...&lt;/error&gt;   &lt;code&gt;...process code...&lt;/code&gt; &lt;/result&gt;</pre>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>encoding</code> : the specified encoding does not exist or is not supported. <code>timeout</code> : the specified timeout was exceeded.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>proc:execute('dir', '\')</code> returns the files of the root directory of a Windows system.</li> <li>• <code>proc:execute('ls', ('-l', '-a'))</code> executes the <code>ls -la</code> command on Unix systems.</li> </ul>

## proc:fork

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>proc:fork(\$cmd as xs:string) as element(result), proc:fork(\$cmd as xs:string, \$args as xs:string*) as element(result), proc:fork(\$cmd as xs:string, \$args as xs:string*, \$options as map(xs:string, xs:string)) as element(result)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Executes the specified command and ignores the result. <code>\$cmd</code> is the name of the command, and arguments to the command may be specified via <code>\$args</code> . The same <code>\$options</code> are allowed as for <code>proc:system</code> (but the encoding will be ignored).
<b>Errors</b>	<code>encoding</code> : the specified encoding does not exist or is not supported.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>proc:fork('sleep', '5')</code>: sleep for 5 seconds (no one should notice).</li> </ul>

## proc:property

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>proc:property(\$name as xs:string) as xs:string?</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the system property, specified by <code>\$name</code> , or a context parameter of the <code>web.xml</code> file with that name (see <a href="#">Web Applications</a> ). An empty sequence is returned if the property does not exist. For environment variables of the operating system, please use <a href="#">fn:environment-variable</a> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>proc:property('java.class.path')</code> returns the full user class path.</li> <li>• <code>map:merge(proc:property-names(), ! map:entry(., proc:property(.)))</code> returns a map with all system properties.</li> </ul>

## proc:property-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>proc:property-names() as xs:string*</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all Java system properties and context parameters of the <code>web.xml</code> file (see <a href="#">Web Applications</a> ). For environment variables of the operating system, please use <a href="#">fn:available-environment-variables</a> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>proc:property('java.runtime.version')</code> returns the version of the Java runtime engine.</li></ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>code...</code>	The result of a command call with an exit code different to 0.
<code>code9999</code>	A command could not be executed.
<code>encoding</code>	The specified encoding does not exist or is not supported.
<code>timeout</code>	The specified timeout was exceeded.

## Changelog

### Version 9.0

- Added: `proc:fork`
- Updated: error codes; errors now use the module namespace
- Updated: new `input` option; revised error handling

### Version 8.6

- Updated: `proc:system`, `proc:exec`: `encoding` option moved to `options` argument, `timeout` and `dir` options added.

### Version 8.3

- Added: `proc:property`, `proc:property-names`.

The module was introduced with Version 7.3.

---

# Chapter 58. Profiling Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains various functions to test and profile code, and to dump information to standard output.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/prof` namespace, which is statically bound to the `prof` prefix.

## Performance Functions

### prof:track

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:track(\$expression as item()) as item()*, prof:track(\$expression as item(), \$options as map(*)) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Measures the execution time and memory consumption required for evaluating the specified <code>\$expression</code> and returns a map with the results. The following <code>\$options</code> are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>time</code>: Include execution time in result as <code>xs:decimal</code> (unit: milliseconds; default: true).</li><li><code>memory</code>: Include memory consumption in result as <code>xs:integer</code> (unit: bytes; default: false).</li><li><code>value</code>: Include value in result (default: true).</li></ul> <p>Helpful notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If you are not interested in some of the returned results, you should disable them to save time and memory.</li><li>Profiling might change the execution behavior of your code: An expression that might be executed iteratively will be cached by the profiling function.</li><li>If a value has a compact internal representation, memory consumption will be very low, even if the serialized result may consume much more memory.</li><li>Please note that memory profiling is only approximative, so it can be quite misleading. If the memory option is enabled, main-memory will be garbage-collected before and after evaluation to improve the quality of the measurement.</li></ul>
<b>Properties</b>	The function is <i>non-deterministic</i> : evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Return a human-readable representation of the memory consumption caused by fetching an XML document. <code>fetch:doc</code> is used, as <code>fn:doc</code> may already be evaluated at compilation time:</li></ul> <pre>prof:track(fetch:doc('factbook.xml'))?memory =&gt; prof:human()</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The function call <code>prof:track((1 to 1000000)[. mod 2 = 0], map { 'time': false() })</code> will return something similar to:</li></ul> <pre>map {   "memory": 21548400,   "value": (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, ...)</pre>

## prof:time

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:time(\$expr as item()) as item()*, prof:time(\$expr as item(), \$label as xs:string) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Measures the time needed to evaluate <code>\$expr</code> and outputs a string to standard error or, if the GUI is used, to the Info View. An optional <code>\$label</code> may be specified to tag the profiling result. See <code>prof:track</code> for further notes.
<b>Properties</b>	The function is <i>non-deterministic</i> : evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>prof:time(prof:sleep(1000))</code> outputs something similar to <code>1000.99 ms</code>.</li> </ul>

## prof:memory

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:memory(\$expr as item()) as item()*, prof:memory(\$expr as item(), \$label as xs:string) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Measures the memory allocated by evaluating <code>\$expr</code> and outputs a string to standard error or, if the GUI is used, to the Info View. An optional <code>\$label</code> may be specified to tag the profiling result. See <code>prof:track</code> for further notes.
<b>Properties</b>	The function is <i>non-deterministic</i> : evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>prof:memory((1 to 100000) ! &lt;a/&gt;)</code> will output something similar to <code>5620 kB</code>.</li> </ul>

## prof:current-ms

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:current-ms() as xs:integer,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the number of milliseconds passed since 1970/01/01 UTC. The granularity of the value depends on the underlying operating system and may be larger. For example, many operating systems measure time in units of tens of milliseconds.
<b>Properties</b>	In contrast to <code>fn:current-time()</code> , the function is <i>non-deterministic</i> and returns different values every time it is called. Its evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>convert:integer-to-dateTime(prof:current-ms())</code> returns the current milliseconds in the <code>xs:dateTime</code> format.</li> </ul>

## prof:current-ns

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:current-ns() as xs:integer,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the current value of the most precise available system timer in nanoseconds.
<b>Properties</b>	In contrast to <code>fn:current-time()</code> , the function is <i>non-deterministic</i> and returns different values every time it is called. Its evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.
<b>Examples</b>	<p>Measures the time of an expression:</p> <pre>let \$ns1 := prof:current-ns() return (   (: process to measure :)   (1 to 1000000)[. = 0],   let \$ns2 := prof:current-ns()   let \$ms := (((\$ns2 - \$ns1) idiv 10000) div 100)   return \$ms    ' ms' )</pre>

## Debugging Functions

### prof:dump

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:dump(\$expr as item()*) as empty-sequence(), prof:dump(\$expr as item()*, \$label as xs:string) as empty-sequence(),</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Dumps a serialized representation of <code>\$expr</code> to <code>STDERR</code> , optionally prefixed with <code>\$label</code> , and returns an empty sequence. If the GUI is used, the dumped result is shown in the <a href="#">Info View</a> .
<b>Properties</b>	In contrast to <code>fn:trace()</code> , the consumed expression will not be passed on.

## prof:variables

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:variables() as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Prints a list of all current local and global variable assignments to standard error or, if the GUI is used, to the Info View. As every query is optimized before being evaluated, not all of the original variables may be visible in the output. Moreover, many variables of function calls will disappear because functions are inlined. Function inlining can be turned off by setting <code>INLINELIMIT</code> to 0.
<b>Properties</b>	The function is <i>non-deterministic</i> : evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for <code>\$x</code> in 1 to 2 return (<code>\$x</code>, <code>prof:variables()</code>) will dump the values of <code>\$x</code> to standard error.</li> </ul>

## prof:type

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:type(\$expr as item(*) as item(*)*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Similar to <code>fn:trace(\$expr, \$msg)</code> , but instead of a user-defined message, it emits the compile-time type and estimated result size of its argument.

## prof:gc

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:gc() as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>prof:gc(\$count as xs:integer) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Enforces Java garbage collection. If no <code>\$count</code> is supplied, garbage will be collected once. Please note that this function should only be used for debugging purposes; in productive code, it is best to trust the garbage collecting strategies of Java.

## prof:runtime

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:runtime(\$name of xs:string) as xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of the specified runtime <code>\$option</code> . The following options exist: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>max</code>: Maximum memory that the Java virtual machine will attempt to use.</li> <li><code>total</code>: Total memory in the Java virtual machine (varies over time).</li> <li><code>used</code>: Currently used memory (varies over time, will shrink after garbage collection).</li> <li><code>processors</code>: number of processors available to the Java virtual machine.</li> </ul>
<b>option</b>	The specified option is unknown.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>prof:gc(3)</code>, <code>prof:human(prof:runtime('used'))</code> performs some garbage collection and returns the currently used amount of memory in a user-friendly format.</li> </ul>

## Helper Functions

### prof:void

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>prof:void(\$value as item(*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Swallows all items of the specified <code>\$value</code> and returns an empty sequence. This function is helpful if some code needs to be evaluated and if the actual result is irrelevant.
<b>Properties</b>	The function is <i>non-deterministic</i> : evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.

**Examples** | • `prof:void(fetch:binary('http://my.rest.service'))` performs an HTTP request and ignores the result.

## prof:sleep

**Signatures** | `prof:sleep($ms as xs:integer) as empty-sequence()`,

**Summary** | Sleeps for the specified number of milliseconds.

**Properties** | The function is *non-deterministic*: evaluation order will be preserved by the compiler.

## prof:human

**Signatures** | `prof:human($number as xs:integer) as xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns a human-readable representation of the specified \$number.

**Example** | • `prof:human(16384)` returns 16K.

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>option</code>	The specified option is unknown.

## Changelog

### Version 9.2

- Added: `prof:gc`, `prof:runtime`
- Updated: `prof:track`: decimal timing results; by default no memory profiling

### Version 9.0

- Added: `prof:track`
- Updated: renamed `prof:mem` to `prof:memory`, `prof:time:$cache` argument removed

### Version 8.5

- Added: `prof:type` (moved from [XQuery Module](#))

### Version 8.1

- Added: `prof:variables`

### Version 7.7

- Added: `prof:void`

### Version 7.6

- Added: `prof:human`

### Version 7.5

- Added: `prof:dump`, `prof:current-ms`, `prof:current-ns`

This module was introduced with Version 7.3.



---

# Chapter 59. Random Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for computing random values. All functions except for `random:seeded-double` and `random:seeded-integer` are non-deterministic, i.e., they return different values for each call.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/random` namespace, which is statically bound to the `random` prefix.

## Functions

### random:double

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:double()</code> as <code>xs:double</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a double value between 0.0 (inclusive) and 1.0 (exclusive).

### random:integer

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:integer()</code> as <code>xs:integer</code> , <code>random:integer(\$max as xs:integer)</code> as <code>xs:integer</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an integer value, either in the whole integer range or between 0 (inclusive) and the given maximum (exclusive)
<b>Errors</b>	<code>bounds</code> : the maximum value is out of bounds.

### random:seeded-double

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:seeded-double(\$seed as xs:integer, \$num as xs:integer)</code> as <code>xs:double*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a sequence with <code>\$num</code> double values between 0.0 (inclusive) and 1.0 (exclusive). The random values are created using the initial seed given in <code>\$seed</code> .

### random:seeded-integer

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:seeded-integer(\$seed as xs:integer, \$num as xs:integer)</code> as <code>xs:integer*</code> , <code>random:seeded-integer(\$seed as xs:integer, \$num as xs:integer, \$max as xs:integer)</code> as <code>xs:integer*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a sequence with <code>\$num</code> integer values, either in the whole integer range or between 0 (inclusive) and the given maximum (exclusive). The random values are created using the initial seed given in <code>\$seed</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>bounds</code> : the maximum value is out of bounds. <code>negative</code> : the number of values to be returned is negative.

### random:gaussian

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:gaussian(\$num as xs:integer)</code> as <code>xs:double*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a sequence with <code>\$num</code> double values. The random values are Gaussian (i.e. normally) distributed with the mean 0.0. and the derivation 1.0.

## random:seeded-permutation

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:seeded-permutation(\$seed as xs:integer, \$items as item(*) as item()*)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a random permutation of the specified <code>\$items</code> . The random order is created using the initial seed given in <code>\$seed</code> .

## random:uuid

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>random:uuid() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a random universally unique identifier (UUID), represented as 128-bit value.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>random:uuid() eq random:uuid()</code> will (most probably) return the boolean value <code>false</code>.</li></ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>bounds</code>	The specified maximum value is out of bounds.
<code>negative</code>	The specified number of values to be returned is negative.

## Changelog

### Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.5

- Added: `random:seeded-permutation`

### Version 8.0

- Updated: `random:integer`, `random:seeded-integer` raise error for invalid input.

The module was introduced with Version 7.5. It includes some functionality which was previously located in the [Math Module](#).

---

# Chapter 60. Repository Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) contains functions for installing, listing and deleting modules contained in the [Repository](#).

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/repo` namespace, which is statically bound to the `repo` prefix.

## Functions

### repo:install

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>repo:install(\$uri as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves and installs a package from the given <code>\$uri</code> . Existing packages are replaced.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : a package does not exist. <code>descriptor</code> : the package descriptor is invalid. <code>installed</code> : the module contained in the package to be installed is already installed as part of another package. <code>parse</code> : an error occurred while parsing the package. <code>version</code> : the package version is not supported.

### repo:delete

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>repo:delete(\$package as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Deletes a <code>\$package</code> . The argument contains the package name, optionally suffixed with a dash and the package version.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : a package does not exist. <code>delete</code> : the package cannot be deleted.

### repo:list

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>repo:list() as element(package)*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Lists the names and versions of all currently installed packages.

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>delete</code>	The package cannot be deleted because of dependencies, or because files are missing.
<code>descriptor</code>	The package descriptor is invalid.
<code>installed</code>	The module contained in the package to be installed is already installed as part of another package.
<code>not-found</code>	A package does not exist.
<code>parse</code>	An error occurred while parsing the package.
<code>version</code>	The package version is not supported.

## Changelog

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

Version 7.2.1

- Updated: `repo:install`: existing packages will be replaced
- Updated: `repo:delete`: remove specific version of a package

Version 7.2

- Updated: `repo:list` now returns nodes

The module was introduced with Version 7.1.

---

# Chapter 61. Request Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

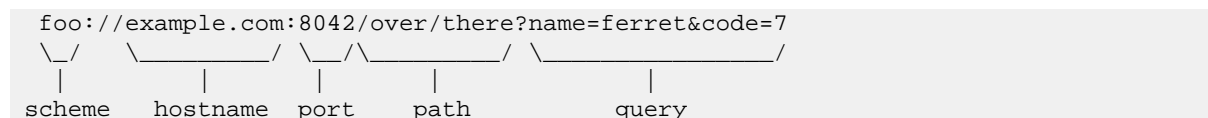
This **XQuery Module** contains functions for retrieving information on an HTTP request that has triggered the query. It is mostly useful when building **Web Applications**.

The module is based on the **EXQuery Request Module** draft.

## Conventions

- The module will be available if the `basex-api` library is found in the classpath. This is the case if you use one of the complete distributions of BaseX (zip, exe, war).
- All functions are assigned to the `http://exquery.org/ns/request` namespace, which is statically bound to the `request` prefix.
- If any of the functions is called outside the servlet context, `basex:http` is raised.

The following example illustrated what components a URI may consist of (the example is derived from [RFC 3986](#)):



## General Functions

### request:method

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:method()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the Method of the HTTP request.

## URI Functions

### request:scheme

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:scheme()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the Scheme component of the URI of an HTTP request.
<b>Example</b>	For the example given in the introduction, this function would return <code>foo</code> .

### request:hostname

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:hostname()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the Hostname component of the URI of an HTTP request.
<b>Example</b>	For the example given in the introduction, this function would return <code>example.com</code> .

### request:port

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:port()</code> as <code>xs:integer</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the Port component of the URI of an HTTP request, or a default port if it has not been explicitly specified in the URI.

**Example** | For the example given in the introduction, this function would return 8042.

## request:path

**Signatures** | `request:path()` as `xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns the Path component of the URI of an HTTP request.

**Example** | For the example given in the introduction, this function would return `/over/there`.

## request:query

**Signatures** | `request:query()` as `xs:string?`

**Summary** | Returns the Query component of the URI of an HTTP request. If no query component exists, an empty sequence is returned.

**Example** | For the example given in the introduction, this function would return `name=ferret&code=7`.

## request:uri

**Signatures** | `request:uri()` as `xs:anyURI`

**Summary** | Returns the complete URI of an HTTP request as it has been specified by the client.

**Example** | For the example given in the introduction, this method would return `foo://example.com:8042/over/there?name=ferret&code=7`.

## request:context-path

**Signatures** | `request:context-path()` as `xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns the context of the request. For servlets in the default (root) context, this method returns an empty string.

## Connection Functions

### request:address

**Signatures** | `request:address()` as `xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns the IP address of the server.

### request:remote-hostname

**Signatures** | `request:remote-hostname()` as `xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns the fully qualified hostname of the client that sent the request.

### request:remote-address

**Signatures** | `request:remote-address()` as `xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns the IP address of the client that sent the request.

### request:remote-port

**Signatures** | `request:remote-port()` as `xs:string`

**Summary** | Returns the TCP port of the client socket that triggered the request.

## Parameter Functions

### request:parameter-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:parameter-names() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all query and form field parameters available from the HTTP request. With <b>RESTXQ</b> , this function can be used to access parameters that have not been statically bound by <b>%rest:query-param</b> .
<b>Example</b>	For the example given in the introduction, this function would return name.
<b>Errors</b>	parameter: the request has invalid parameters.

### request:parameter

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:parameter(\$name as xs:string) as xs:string*, request:parameter(\$name as xs:string, \$default as xs:string) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of the named query or form field parameter in an HTTP request. If the parameter does not exist, an empty sequence or the optionally specified default value is returned instead. If both query and form field parameters with the same name exist, the form field values will be attached to the query values.
<b>Example</b>	For the example given in the introduction, the function call <code>request:parameter('code')</code> would return 7.
<b>Errors</b>	parameter: the request has invalid parameters.

## Header Functions

### request:header-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:header-names() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all headers available from the HTTP request. If <b>RESTXQ</b> is used, this function can be used to access headers that have not been statically bound by <b>%rest:header-param</b> .

### request:header

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:header(\$name as xs:string) as xs:string?, request:header(\$name as xs:string, \$default as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of the named header in an HTTP request. If the header does not exist, an empty sequence or the optionally specified default value is returned instead.

## Cookie Functions

### request:cookie-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:cookie-names() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all cookies in the HTTP headers available from the HTTP request. If <b>RESTXQ</b> is used, this function can be used to access cookies that have not been statically bound by <b>%rest:cookie-param</b> .

## request:cookie

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:cookie(\$name as xs:string) as xs:string?, request:cookie(\$name as xs:string, \$default as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of the named Cookie in an HTTP request. If there is no such cookie, an empty sequence or the optionally specified default value is returned instead.

## Attribute Functions

### request:attribute-names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:attribute-names() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all HTTP request attributes.

### request:attribute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:attribute(\$name as xs:string) as item()*, request:attribute(\$name as xs:string, \$default as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of an attribute of the HTTP request. If the attribute does not exist, an empty sequence or the optionally specified default value is returned instead.
<b>Example</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>request:attribute("javax.servlet.error.request_uri")</code> returns the original URI of a caught error.</li> <li>• <code>request:attribute("javax.servlet.error.message")</code> returns the error message of a caught error.</li> </ul>

### request:set-attribute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>request:set-attribute(\$name as xs:string, \$value as item()*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Binds the specified \$value to the request attribute with the specified \$name.

## Errors

Code	Description
parameter	Request has invalid parameters.

## Changelog

### Version 9.3

- Added: `request:attribute-names`, `request:set-attribute`
- Updated: `request:attribute`: return type generalized, default argument added

### Version 7.9

- Updated: The returned values of `request:parameter-names`, `request:parameter` now also include form field parameters.

### Version 7.8

- Added: `request:context-path`



Version 7.7

- Added: `request:attribute`

This module was introduced with Version 7.5.

---

# Chapter 62. RESTXQ Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains helper functions for the **RESTXQ** API, some of which are defined in the **RESTXQ Draft**.

## Conventions

- The module will be available if the `basex-api` library is found in the classpath. This is the case if you use one of the complete distributions of BaseX (zip, exe, war).
- All functions are assigned to the `http://exquery.org/ns/restxq` namespace, which is statically bound to the `rest` prefix.
- The `http://wadl.dev.java.net/2009/02` namespace is bound to the `wadl` prefix.
- If any of the functions is called outside the servlet context, `basex:http` is raised.

## General Functions

### rest:base-uri

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>rest:base-uri()</code> as <code>xs:anyURI</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the implementation-defined base URI of the resource function.

### rest:uri

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>rest:uri()</code> as <code>xs:anyURI</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the complete URI that addresses the Resource Function. This is the result of <code>rest:base-uri</code> appended with the path from the path annotation of the resource function.

### rest:wadl

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>rest:wadl()</code> as <code>element(wadl:application)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a <b>WADL description</b> of all available REST services.

### rest:init

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>rest:init()</code> as <code>empty-sequence()</code> , <code>rest:init(\$update as xs:boolean)</code> as <code>empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Initializes the RESTXQ module cache: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• By default, the cache will be discarded, and all modules will be parsed and cached again.</li><li>• If <code>\$update</code> is enabled, the background caching behavior is simulated (see <code>PARSERESTXQ</code>): Only updated modules will be parsed.</li><li>• This function should be called if new RESTXQ code is deployed at runtime.</li></ul>

## Changelog

Version 9.4

- Updated: `rest:init` argument added

Version 8.6

- Added: `rest:init`

This module was introduced with Version 7.7.

---

# Chapter 63. Session Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for accessing and modifying server-side session information. This module is mainly useful in the context of **Web Applications**.

## Conventions

- The module will be available if the `basex-api` library is found in the classpath. This is the case if you use one of the complete distributions of BaseX (zip, exe, war).
- All functions and errors are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/session` namespace, which is statically bound to the `session` prefix.
- If any of the functions is called outside the servlet context, `basex:http` is raised.
- As sessions are side-effecting operations, all functions are flagged as *non-deterministic*. As a result, some query optimizations will be suppressed.

## Functions

### session:id

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:id() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the session ID of a servlet request.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No session is available for the current client.
<b>Examples</b>	Running the server-side XQuery file <code>id.xq</code> via <code>http://localhost:8984/id.xq</code> : <pre>import module namespace session = "http://basex.org/modules/session"; 'Session ID: '    session:id()</pre>

### session:created

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:created() as xs:dateTime</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the creation time of a session.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No session is available for the current client.

### session:accessed

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:accessed() as xs:dateTime</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the last access time of a session.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No session is available for the current client.

### session:names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:names() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all attributes bound to the current session.
<b>Examples</b>	Running the server-side XQuery file <code>names.xq</code> via <code>http://localhost:8984/names.xq</code> : <pre>import module namespace session = "http://basex.org/modules/session"; session:names() ! element variable { . }</pre>

## session:get

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:get(\$name as xs:string) as item()*, session:get(\$name as xs:string, \$default as item()*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of a session attribute with the specified <code>\$name</code> . If the attribute is unknown, an empty sequence or the optionally specified <code>\$default</code> value will be returned instead.
<b>Examples</b>	Running the server-side XQuery file <code>get.xq</code> via <code>http://localhost:8984/get.xq?key=user:</code>  <pre>import module namespace session = "http://basex.org/modules/session"; 'Value of '    \$key    ': '    session:get(\$key)</pre>

## session:set

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:set(\$name as xs:string, \$value as item()*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Binds the specified <code>\$value</code> to the session attribute with the specified <code>\$name</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No session is available for the current client.
<b>Examples</b>	Running the server-side XQuery file <code>set.xq</code> via <code>http://localhost:8984/set.xq?key=user&amp;value=john:</code>  <pre>import module namespace session = "http://basex.org/modules/session"; session:set(\$key, \$value), 'Variable was set.'</pre>

## session:delete

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:delete(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Deletes a session attribute with the specified <code>\$name</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	Running the server-side XQuery file <code>delete.xq</code> via <code>http://localhost:8984/delete.xq?key=user:</code>  <pre>import module namespace session = "http://basex.org/modules/session"; session:delete(\$key), 'Variable was deleted.'</pre>

## session:close

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>session:close() as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Unregisters a session and all data associated with it.

## Errors

Code	Description
<code>not-found</code>	No session is available for the current client.

## Changelog

### Version 9.4

- Updated: Only create session if required.

### Version 9.3

- Updated: `session:get`: Values that have no XQuery type will be returned as strings.

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

Version 8.0

- Updated: Allow sequences as session values.

This module was introduced with Version 7.5.

---

# Chapter 64. Sessions Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** can only be called from users with *Admin* permissions. It contains functions for accessing and modifying all registered server-side sessions. This module is mainly useful in the context of **Web Applications**.

## Conventions

- The module will be available if the `basex-api` library is found in the classpath. This is the case if you use one of the complete distributions of BaseX (zip, exe, war).
- All functions and errors are assigned of the `http://basex.org/modules/sessions` namespace, which is statically bound to the `sessions` prefix.
- If any of the functions is called outside the servlet context, `basex:http` is raised.
- If a specified session id is not found, `not-found` is raised.
- As sessions are side-effecting operations, all functions are flagged as *non-deterministic*. As a result, some query optimizations will be suppressed.

## Functions

### sessions:ids

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:ids() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the IDs of all registered sessions.

### sessions:created

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:created(\$id as xs:string) as xs:dateTime</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the creation time of the session specified by <code>\$id</code> .

### sessions:accessed

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:accessed(\$id as xs:string) as xs:dateTime</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the last access time of the session specified by <code>\$id</code> .

### sessions:names

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:names(\$id as xs:string) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all attributes bound to the session specified by <code>\$id</code> .

### sessions:get

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:get(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as item()*</code> , <code>sessions:get(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string, \$default as item()) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of an attribute with the specified <code>\$name</code> from the session with the specified <code>\$id</code> . If the attribute is unknown, an empty sequence or the optionally specified <code>\$default</code> value will be returned instead.

**sessions:set**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:set(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string, \$value as item(*) as empty-sequence())</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the specified value to the attribute with the specified \$name from the session with the specified \$id.

**sessions:delete**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:delete(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Deletes an attribute with the specified \$name from the session with the specified \$id.

**sessions:close**

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sessions:close(\$id as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Unregisters the session specified by \$id.

**Errors**

<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>
not-found	The specified session is not available.

**Changelog**

Version 9.3

- Updated: `sessions:get`: Values that have no XQuery type will be returned as strings.

Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

Version 8.4

- Updated: Allow sequences as session values.

This module was introduced with Version 7.5.



---

# Chapter 65. SQL Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to access relational databases from XQuery using SQL. With this module, you can execute query, update and prepared statements, and the result sets are returned as sequences of XML elements representing tuples. Each element has children representing the columns returned by the SQL statement.

This module uses JDBC to connect to a SQL server. Hence, your JDBC driver will need to be added to the classpath, too. If you work with the full distributions of BaseX, you can copy the driver into the `lib` directory. To connect to MySQL, for example, download the **Connector/J Driver** and extract the archive into this directory.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/sql` namespace, which is statically bound to the `sql` prefix.

## Functions

### sql:init

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:init(\$class as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	This function initializes a JDBC driver specified via <code>\$class</code> . This step might be superfluous if the SQL database is not embedded.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init</code> : the specified driver is not found.

### sql:connect

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:connect(\$url as xs:string) as xs:anyURI</code> , <code>sql:connect(\$url as xs:string, \$user as xs:string, \$password as xs:string) as xs:anyURI</code> , <code>sql:connect(\$url as xs:string, \$user as xs:string, \$password as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as xs:anyURI</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	This function establishes a connection to a relational database and returns a connection id. The parameter <code>\$url</code> is the URL of the database and shall be of the form: <code>jdbc:&lt;driver name&gt;:&lt;server&gt; [/&lt;database&gt;]</code> . If the parameters <code>\$user</code> and <code>\$password</code> are specified, they are used as credentials for connecting to the database. The <code>\$options</code> parameter can be used to set connection options.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : an SQL exception occurred when connecting to the database.
<b>Examples</b>	Connects to an SQL Server and sets autocommit to <code>true</code> : <pre>sql:connect('jdbc:sqlserver://DBServer', map { 'autocommit': true() })</pre>

### sql:execute

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:execute(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$statement as xs:string) as item()*</code> , <code>sql:execute(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$statement as xs:string, \$options as map(*)) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	This function executes an SQL <code>\$statement</code> , using the connection with the specified <code>\$id</code> . The returned result depends on the kind of statement: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If an update statement was executed, the number of updated rows will be returned as integer.</li><li>• Otherwise, an XML representation of all results will be returned.</li></ul> With <code>\$options</code> , the following parameter can be set:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>timeout</code> : query execution will be interrupted after the specified number of seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>error</code>: an error occurred while executing SQL.id: the specified connection does not exist.  <code>timeout</code>: query execution exceeded timeout.</p>

## sql:execute-prepared

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:execute-prepared(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$params as element(sql:parameters)) as item()*</code> , <code>sql:execute-prepared(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$params as element(sql:parameters), \$options as map(*)) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This function executes a prepared statement with the specified <code>\$id</code>. The output format is identical to <code>sql:execute</code>. The optional parameter <code>\$params</code> is an element <code>&lt;sql:parameters/&gt;</code> representing the parameters for a prepared statement along with their types and values. The following schema shall be used:</p> <pre> element sql:parameters {   element sql:parameter {     attribute type { "bigdecimal"   "boolean"   "byte"   "date"   "double"   "float"   "int"   "long"   "short"   "sqlxml"   "string"   "time"   "timestamp" },     attribute null { "true"   "false" }?,     text   }+ }? </pre> <p>With <code>\$options</code>, the following parameter can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>timeout</code> : query execution will be interrupted after the specified number of seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>attribute</code>: an attribute different from <code>type</code> and <code>null</code> is set for a <code>&lt;sql:parameter/&gt;</code> element.  <code>error</code>: an error occurred while executing SQL.id: the specified connection does not exist.  <code>parameters</code>: no parameter type specified.  <code>timeout</code>: query execution exceeded timeout.  <code>type</code>: the value of a parameter cannot be converted to the specified format.</p>

## sql:prepare

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:prepare(\$id as xs:anyURI, \$statement as xs:string) as xs:anyURI</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This function prepares an SQL <code>\$statement</code>, using the specified connection <code>\$id</code>, and returns the id reference to this statement. The statement is a string with one or more '?' placeholders. If the value of a field has to be set to NULL, then the attribute <code>null</code> of the <code>&lt;sql:parameter/&gt;</code> element must be <code>true</code>.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>error</code>: an error occurred while executing SQL.id: the specified connection does not exist.</p>

## sql:commit

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:commit(\$id as xs:anyURI) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This function commits the changes made to a relational database, using the specified connection <code>\$id</code>.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<p><code>error</code>: an error occurred while executing SQL.id: the specified connection does not exist.</p>

## sql:rollback

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>sql:rollback(\$id as xs:anyURI) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>This function rolls back the changes made to a relational database, using the specified connection <code>\$id</code>.</p>

**Errors** | error: an error occurred while executing SQL.id: the specified connection does not exist.

## sql:close

**Signatures** | sql:close(\$id as xs:anyURI) as empty-sequence()

**Summary** | This function closes a database connection with the specified \$id. Opened connections will automatically be closed after the XQuery expression has been evaluated, but in order to save memory, it is always recommendable to close connections that are not used anymore.

**Errors** | error: an error occurred while executing SQL.id: the specified connection does not exist.

## Examples

### Direct queries

A simple select statement can be executed as follows:

```
let $id := sql:connect("jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/coffeehouse")
return sql:execute($id, "SELECT * FROM coffees WHERE price < 10")
```

The result may look like:

```
<sql:row xmlns:sql="http://basex.org/modules/sql">
  <sql:column name="cof_name">French_Roast</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="sup_id">49</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="price">3.5</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="sales">15</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="total">30</sql:column>
</sql:row>
<sql:row xmlns:sql="http://basex.org/modules/sql">
  <sql:column name="cof_name">French_Roast_Decaf</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="sup_id">49</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="price">7.5</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="sales">10</sql:column>
  <sql:column name="total">14</sql:column>
</sql:row>
```

### Prepared Statements

A prepared select statement can be executed in the following way:

```
(: Establish a connection :)
let $conn := sql:connect("jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/coffeehouse")
(: Obtain a handle to a prepared statement :)
let $prep := sql:prepare($conn, "SELECT * FROM coffees WHERE price < ? AND cof_name
= ?")
(: Values and types of prepared statement parameters :)
let $params := <sql:parameters>
  <sql:parameter type='double'>10</sql:parameter>
  <sql:parameter type='string'>French_Roast</sql:parameter>
</sql:parameters>
(: Execute prepared statement :)
return sql:execute-prepared($prep, $params)
```

### SQLite

The following expression demonstrates how SQLite can be addressed with the [Xerial SQLite JDBC driver](#):

```
(: Initialize driver :)
sql:init("org.sqlite.JDBC"),
(: Establish a connection :)
let $conn := sql:connect("jdbc:sqlite:database.db")
```

```

return (
  (: Create a new table :)
  sql:execute($conn, "drop table if exists person"),
  sql:execute($conn, "create table person (id integer, name string)"),
  (: Run 10 updates :)
  for $i in 1 to 10
  let $q := "insert into person values(" || $i || ", '" || $i || "'"")
  return sql:execute($conn, $q),
  (: Return table contents :)
  sql:execute($conn, "select * from person")
)

```

## Errors

Code	Description
attribute	An attribute different from type and null is set for a <code>&lt;sql:parameter/&gt;</code> element.
error	An SQL exception occurred.
id	A connection does not exist.
init	A database driver is not found.
parameter	No parameter type specified.
timeout	Query execution exceeded timeout.
type	The value of a parameter cannot be converted to the specified format.

## Changelog

### Version 9.6

- Updated: `sql:execute-prepared`, additional types added

### Version 9.0

- Updated: `sql:execute`, `sql:execute-prepared`: Return update count for updating statements. `$options` argument added.
- Updated: Connection ids are URIs now.
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 7.5

- Updated: prepared statements are now executed via `sql:execute-prepared`

The module was introduced with Version 7.0.

---

# Chapter 66. Store Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** provides functions to organize values in a persistent main-memory key-value store.

The store is useful if data (a system configuration, maps serving as indexes) needs to be repeatedly accessed. The store is persistent: Contents will be written to disk at shutdown time, and the serialized store will be retrieved from disk as soon as the store is used for the first time. The store will be stored in a binary `store.basex` file in the database directory.

In addition, custom stores can be read and written. Custom stores have filenames with the pattern `store-NAME.basex`. The implicit write of the standard store at shutdown time will be disabled if a custom store is used.

Functions of this module are non-deterministic and side-effecting: Updates will immediately be visible, and a repeated call of the same function may yield different results if the contents of the store have changed.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/store` namespace, which is statically bound to the `store` prefix.

## Key-value operations

### store:get

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>store:get(\$key as xs:string) as item()*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves an entry from the store with the given <code>\$key</code> . If the addressed entry does not exist, an empty sequence is returned.

### store:put

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>store:put(\$key as xs:string, \$value as item()) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Stores an entry with the given <code>\$key</code> and <code>\$value</code> in the store: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the value is an empty sequence, the entry is removed.</li><li>• If a value refers to an opened database or is a <b>lazy item</b>, its contents are materialized in main memory.</li><li>• Values with function items are rejected.</li></ul>

### store:get-or-put

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>store:get-or-put(\$key as xs:string, \$put as function() as item()) as item()*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves an entry from the store with the given <code>\$key</code> . The <code>\$put</code> function will only be invoked if the entry does not exist, and its result will be stored and returned instead.

### store:remove

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>store:remove(\$key as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Removes an entry with the given <code>\$key</code> from the store. No error will be raised if an addressed entry does not exist.

## store:keys

<b>Signatures</b>	store:keys() as xs:string*
-------------------	----------------------------

<b>Summary</b>	Lists the names of all keys.
----------------	------------------------------

## store:clear

<b>Signatures</b>	store:clear() as empty-sequence(),
-------------------	------------------------------------

<b>Summary</b>	Resets the store by removing all its entries.
----------------	---

## Store Operations

### store:read

<b>Signatures</b>	store:read() as empty-sequence(), store:read(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Retrieves the standard store from disk, or a custom store if a \$name is supplied.
----------------	--

<b>Errors</b>	io: The store could not be read.name: The specified name is invalid.not-found: A store with the specified name does not exist.
---------------	--

### store:write

<b>Signatures</b>	store:write() as empty-sequence(), store:write(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Writes the standard store to disk, or to a custom store file if a \$name is supplied. If the standard store is empty, the store file will be deleted.
----------------	---

<b>Errors</b>	io: The store could not be written.name: The specified name is invalid.
---------------	---

### store:list

<b>Signatures</b>	store:list() as xs:string*
-------------------	----------------------------

<b>Summary</b>	Lists the names of all custom stores.
----------------	---------------------------------------

### store:delete

<b>Signatures</b>	store:delete(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Deletes a custom store from disk.
----------------	-----------------------------------

<b>Errors</b>	name: The specified name is invalid.not-found: A store with the specified name does not exist.
---------------	--

## Examples

### Use Case 1: Create/update a system configuration in a running BaseX server instance:

```
(: store an integer :)
store:put('version', 1),
(: retrieve existing or new value, store an element :)
let $license := store:get-or-put('license', function() { 'free' })
return store:put('info', <info>{ $license = 'free' ?? 'Free' !! 'Professional' }
  License</info>),
(: store a map :)
store:put('data', map { 'year': 2022 }),
(: serialize configuration to disk :)
store:write()
```

The configuration can be requested by further operations, e.g. a client request:

```
store:get('version')
```

The store will still be available if BaseX is restarted until it is cleared.

### Use Case 2: Create index for fast lookup operations in the GUI:

```
let $map := map:merge(  
  for $country in db:get('factbook')//country  
  for $religion in $country//religions  
  group by $religion  
  return map:entry($religion, data($country/@name))  
)  
return store:put('religions', $map)
```

A subsequent query can be used to access its contents:

```
store:get('religions')?Buddhism
```

Note that the store will eventually be written to disk unless it is invalidated before closing the GUI.

## Errors

Code	Description
io	The store could not be read or written.
name	The specified name is invalid.
not-found	A store with the specified name does not exist.

## Changelog

The module was introduced with Version 10.

---

# Chapter 67. String Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

Updated with Version 10: Renamed from *Strings Module* to *String Module*. The namespace URI has been updated as well.

This [XQuery Module](#) contains functions for string operations and computations.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module and errors are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/string` namespace, which is statically bound to the `string` prefix.

## Computations

### string:levenshtein

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:levenshtein(\$string1 as xs:string, \$string2 as xs:string) as xs:double,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the <a href="#">Damerau-Levenshtein Distance</a> for two strings and returns a double value (0.0 - 1.0). The returned value is computed as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 1.0 – distance / max(length of strings)</li><li>• 1.0 is returned if the strings are equal; 0.0 is returned if the strings are too different.</li></ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>string:levenshtein("flower", "flower")</code> returns 1</li><li>• <code>string:levenshtein("flower", "lewes")</code> returns 0.5</li><li>• In the following query, the input is first normalized (words are stemmed, converted to lower case, and diacritics are removed). It returns 1:<pre>let \$norm := ft:normalize(?, map { 'stemming': true() }) return string:levenshtein(\$norm("HOUSES"), \$norm("house"))</pre></li></ul>

### string:soundex

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:soundex(\$string as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the <a href="#">Soundex</a> value for the specified string. The algorithm can be used to find and index English words with similar pronunciation.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>string:soundex("Michael")</code> returns M240</li><li>• <code>string:soundex("OBrien") = string:soundex("O'Brien")</code> returns true</li></ul>

### string:cologne-phonetic

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:cologne-phonetic(\$string as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Computes the <a href="#">Kölner Phonetik</a> value for the specified string. Similar to Soundex, the algorithm is used to find similarly pronounced words, but for the German language. As the first returned digit can be 0, the value is returned as string.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>string:cologne-phonetic("Michael")</code> returns 645</li><li>• <code>every \$s in ("Mayr", "Maier", "Meier") satisfies string:cologne-phonetic(\$s) = "67"</code> returns true</li></ul>



## Formatting

The functions in this section have been adopted from the obsolete *Output Module*.

### string:format

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:format(\$format as xs:string, \$items as item() ...) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a formatted string. The remaining arguments specified by <code>\$items</code> are applied to the <code>\$format</code> string, according to <a href="#">Java's printf syntax</a> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>format</code> : The specified format is not valid.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>string:format("%b", true())</code> returns <code>true</code>.</li><li><code>string:format("%06d", 256)</code> returns <code>000256</code>.</li><li><code>string:format("%e", 1234.5678)</code> returns <code>1.234568e+03</code>.</li></ul>

### string:cr

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:cr() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a single carriage return character ( <code>&amp;#13;</code> ).

### string:nl

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:nl() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a single newline character ( <code>&amp;#10;</code> ).

### string:tab

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>string:tab() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns a single tabulator character ( <code>&amp;#9;</code> ).

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: Renamed from *Strings Module* to *String Module*. The namespace URI has been updated as well.
- Updated: `string:format`, `string:cr`, `string:nl` and `string:tab` adopted from the obsolete *Output Module*.

The Module was introduced with Version 8.3. Functions were adopted from the obsolete *Utility and Output Modules*.

---

# Chapter 68. Unit Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) contains annotations and functions for performing XQUnit tests.

## Introduction

The more complex a software application grows, the more error-prone it gets. This is why testing frameworks have been developed, which provide a standardized, automated way of testing software. The [XUnit](#) frameworks (such as SUnit or JUnit) allow testing of atomic units of a program, such as single functions and algorithms.

This module borrows heavily from the existing frameworks: it provides various annotations for testing XQuery functions. Unit functions are provided to assert the validity of arbitrary conditions expressed in XQuery and to raise errors whenever a condition is not satisfied. Some additional functions exist to run all unit tests of the current module or a set of specified library modules.

## Usage

Tests are started via the `TEST` command. It compiles all XQuery modules in a given file or directory and runs all functions that are annotated with `%unit:test`. A test report is generated and returned, which resembles the format returned by other xUnit testing frameworks, such as the Maven Surefire Plugin ([see below](#)).

## Conventions

All annotations, functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/unit` namespace, which is statically bound to the `unit` prefix.

## Annotations

### unit:test

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>%unit:test, %unit:test("expected", CODE)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	With this annotation, a function can be marked as unit test. It will be evaluated if a test report is created for the module in which this function is located. <code>error</code> can be supplied as additional string argument. It is followed by <code>CODE</code> , which must be a valid <a href="#">EQName</a> string. If the function expression does not raise that error, the test will fail.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The following test does will be successful, as it does nothing (and, hence, nothing wrong):<pre>declare %unit:test function local:void() { () };</pre></li><li>The following test will be successful, as the function body will raise <code>err:XPTY0004</code>:<pre>declare %unit:test('expected', "err:XPTY0004") function local:add() {   123 + 'strings and integers cannot be added' };</pre></li></ul>

### unit:before

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>%unit:before, %unit:before(FUNCTION)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	A function decorated with this annotation will be evaluated <b>before each</b> unit test as a separate transaction. <code>FUNCTION</code> can be supplied as additional argument. It must be a valid <a href="#">EQName</a> string. If specified, the function will only be evaluated before a function with the given name is tested. This extension is e. g. helpful if the results of updates need to be tested.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The first function will be evaluated before the actual test:</li></ul>

```

declare %updating %unit:before("local:check") function local:before-
check() {
  db:create('test-db')
};
declare %updating %unit:test function local:check() {
  unit:assert(db:exists('test-db'))
};

```

## unit:after

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>%unit:after, %unit:after(FUNCTION)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	A function decorated with this annotation will be evaluated <b>after each</b> unit test as a separate transaction. <code>FUNCTION</code> can be supplied as additional argument. It must be a valid <a href="#">EQName</a> string. If specified, the function will only be evaluated after a function with the given name is tested.

## unit:before-module

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>%unit:before-module</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If a function is decorated with this annotation, it will be evaluated <b>before all</b> unit tests in the current module as a separate transaction.

## unit:after-module

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>%unit:after-module</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If a function is decorated with this annotation, it will be evaluated <b>after all</b> unit tests in the current module as a separate transaction.

## unit:ignore

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>%unit:ignore, %unit:ignore(MESSAGE)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	If a function is decorated with this annotation, it will temporarily be ignored by the test suite runner.

## Functions

### unit:assert

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>unit:assert(\$test as item()*) as empty-sequence(), unit:assert(\$test as item()*, \$info as item()) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Asserts that the effective boolean value of the specified <code>\$test</code> is true and returns an empty sequence. Otherwise, raises an error. The <i>effective boolean value</i> of an expression can be explicitly computed by using the <code>fn:boolean</code> function. The default failure message can be overridden with the <code>\$info</code> argument.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>fail: the assertion failed, or an error was raised.</code>

### unit:assert-equals

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>unit:assert-equals(\$returned as item()*, \$expected as item()*) as empty-sequence(), unit:assert-equals(\$returned as item()*, \$expected as item()*, \$info as item()) as empty-sequence(),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Asserts that the specified arguments are equal according to the rules of the <a href="#">fn:deep-equal function</a> . Otherwise, raises an error. The default failure message can be overridden with the <code>\$info</code> argument.

**Errors** | fail: the assertion failed, or an error was raised.

## unit:fail

**Signatures** | unit:fail() as empty-sequence(), unit:fail(\$info as item()) as empty-sequence(),

**Summary** | Raises a unit error. The default failure message can be overridden with the \$info argument.

**Errors** | fail: default error raised by this function.

## Example

The following XQUnit module tests.xqm contains all available unit annotations:

## Query

```

module namespace test = 'http://basex.org/modules/xqunit-tests';

(:~ Initializing function, which is called once before all tests. :)
declare %unit:before-module function test:before-all-tests() {
  ()
};

(:~ Initializing function, which is called once after all tests. :)
declare %unit:after-module function test:after-all-tests() {
  ()
};

(:~ Initializing function, which is called before each test. :)
declare %unit:before function test:before() {
  ()
};

(:~ Initializing function, which is called after each test. :)
declare %unit:after function test:after() {
  ()
};

(:~ Function demonstrating a successful test. :)
declare %unit:test function test:assert-success() {
  unit:assert(<a/>)
};

(:~ Function demonstrating a failure using unit:assert. :)
declare %unit:test function test:assert-failure() {
  unit:assert((), 'Empty sequence.')
};

(:~ Function demonstrating a failure using unit:assert-equals. :)
declare %unit:test function test:assert-equals-failure() {
  unit:assert-equals(4 + 5, 6)
};

(:~ Function demonstrating an unexpected success. :)
declare %unit:test("expected", "err:FORG0001") function test:unexpected-success() {
  ()
};

(:~ Function demonstrating an expected failure. :)
declare %unit:test("expected", "err:FORG0001") function test:expected-failure() {
  1 + <a/>
};

```

```
(::~~ Function demonstrating the creation of a failure. ::)
declare %unit:test function test:failure() {
  unit:fail("Failure!")
};

(::~~ Function demonstrating an error. ::)
declare %unit:test function test:error() {
  1 + <a/>
};

(::~~ Skipping a test. ::)
declare %unit:test %unit:ignore("Skipped!") function test:skipped() {
  ()
};
```

By running `TEST tests.xqm`, the following report will be generated (timings may differ):

## Result

```
<testsuites time="PT0.256S">
  <testsuite name="file:///C:/Users/user/Desktop/test.xqm" time="PT0.212S"
    tests="8" failures="4" errors="1" skipped="1">
    <testcase name="assert-success" time="PT0.016S"/>
    <testcase name="assert-failure" time="PT0.005S">
      <failure line="30" column="15">
        <info>Empty sequence.</info>
      </failure>
    </testcase>
    <testcase name="assert-equals-failure" time="PT0.006S">
      <failure line="35" column="22">
        <returned item="1" type="xs:integer">9</returned>
        <expected item="1" type="xs:integer">6</expected>
        <info>Item 1: 6 expected, 9 returned.</info>
      </failure>
    </testcase>
    <testcase name="unexpected-success" time="PT0.006S">
      <failure>
        <expected>FORG0001</expected>
      </failure>
    </testcase>
    <testcase name="expected-failure" time="PT0.004S"/>
    <testcase name="failure" time="PT0.004S">
      <failure line="50" column="13">
        <info>Failure!</info>
      </failure>
    </testcase>
    <testcase name="error" time="PT0.004S">
      <error line="55" column="6" type="FORG0001">
        <info>Cannot cast to xs:double: ".</info>
      </error>
    </testcase>
    <testcase name="skipped" skipped="Skipped!" time="PT0S"/>
  </testsuite>
</testsuites>
```

## Errors

Code	Description
fail	An assertion failed, or an error was raised.
no-args	A test function must have no arguments.
private	A test function must not be private.

## Changelog

### Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.0.2

- Updated: (expected) errors are compared by QNames instead of local names (including namespaces).

### Version 8.0

- Deleted: `UNIT0006` (ignore results returned by functions).
- Added: `unit:fail`, 0-argument signature.
- Updated: the `info` argument of functions can now be an arbitrary item.
- Updated: infos are now represented in an `info` child element.
- Updated: `unit:before` and `unit:after` can be extended by a filter argument.

### Version 7.9

- Added: `TEST` command
- Removed: `unit:test`, `unit:test-uris`

### Version 7.8

- Added: `unit:assert-equals`
- Updated: enhanced test report output

This module was introduced with Version 7.7.

---

# Chapter 69. Update Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** provides additional functions for performing updates and returning results in **updating expressions**.

## Conventions

All functions in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/update` namespace, which is statically bound to the `update` prefix.

Except for `update:output-cache`, all functions are *updating* and thus comply to the XQuery Update constraints.

## Updates

### update:apply

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>update:apply(\$function as function(*), \$arguments as array(*)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	The updating variant of <b>fn:apply</b> applies the specified updating <code>\$function</code> to the specified <code>\$arguments</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Creates a new database with an initial document and adds a document to an existing database.</li></ul> <pre>declare %updating function local:update(     \$database as xs:string,     \$path as xs:string,     \$function as %updating function(item(), xs:string) as empty- sequence() ) as empty-sequence() {     update:apply(\$function, [ \$database, \$path ]) }; local:update('new-db', 'doc.xml', db:create#2), local:update('existing-db', 'doc.xml', db:add#2)</pre>

### update:for-each

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>update:for-each(\$seq as item()*, \$function as function(item()) as item()*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	The updating variant of <b>fn:for-each</b> applies the specified updating <code>\$function</code> to every item of <code>\$seq</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Creates two databases:</li></ul> <pre>let \$names := ('db1', 'db2') return update:for-each(\$names, db:create#1)</pre>

### update:for-each-pair

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>update:for-each-pair(\$seq1 as item()*, \$function as function(item() as item()*) as empty-sequence())</code>
<b>Summary</b>	The updating variant of <b>fn:for-each-pair</b> applies the specified updating <code>\$function</code> to the successive pairs of items of <code>\$seq1</code> and <code>\$seq2</code> . Evaluation is stopped if one sequence yields no more items.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Renames nodes in an XML snippets:</li></ul>

```

copy $xml := <xml><a/><b/></xml>
modify update:for-each-pair(
  ('a', 'b'),
  ('d', 'e'),
  function($source, $target) {
    for $e in $xml/*[name() = $source]
      return rename node $e as $target
  }
)
return $xml

```

## update:map-for-each

<b>Signatures</b>	update:map-for-each(\$map as map(*), \$function as function(xs:anyAtomicType, item()*) as item()*) as item()*
<b>Summary</b>	The updating variant of map:for-each applies the specified \$function to every key/value pair of the supplied \$map and returns the results as a sequence.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inserts attributes into a document:</li> </ul> <pre> copy \$doc := &lt;xml/&gt; modify update:map-for-each(   map {     'id': 'id0',     'value': 456   },   function(\$key, \$value) {     insert node attribute { \$key } { \$value } into \$doc   } ) return \$doc </pre>

## Output

### update:output

<b>Signatures</b>	update:output(\$items as item()*) as empty-sequence()
<b>Summary</b>	This function can be used if MIXUPDATES is not enabled, and if values need to returned within an updating expression: The supplied \$items will be cached and returned at the very end, i.e., after all updates on the <i>pending update list</i> have been processed. If one of the supplied items is affected by an update, a copy will be created and cached instead.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• update:output("Prices have been deleted."), delete node //price deletes all price elements in a database and returns an info message.</li> </ul>

### update:cache

<b>Signatures</b>	update:cache() as item()*, update:cache(\$reset as xs:boolean) as item()*
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the items that have been cached by update:output. The output cache can optionally be \$reset. The function can be used to check which items will eventually be returned as result of an updating function. This function is <i>non-deterministic</i> : It will return different results before and after items have been cached. It is e. g. useful when writing <b>unit tests</b> .

## Changelog

Version 9.3

- update:cache : \$reset parameter added.



Version 9.1

- `update:output` : Maps and arrays can be cached if they contain no persistent database nodes or function items.

Version 9.0

- Updated: `db:output` renamed to `update:output`, `db:output-cache` renamed to `update:cache`

This module was introduced with Version 9.0.

---

# Chapter 70. User Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for creating and administering database users. The **User Management** article gives more information on database users and permissions.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/user` namespace, which is statically bound to the `user` prefix.

## Read Operations

### user:current

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:current()</code> as <code>xs:string</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the name of the currently logged in user.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If the GUI or the standalone mode is used, <code>user:current()</code> always returns <code>admin</code>.</li></ul>

### user:list

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:list()</code> as <code>xs:string*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the names of all registered users that are visible to the current user.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>After a fresh installation, <code>user:list()</code> will only return <code>admin</code>.</li></ul>

### user:list-details

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:list-details()</code> as <code>element(user)*</code> , <code>user:list-details(\$name as xs:string)</code> as <code>element(user)*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an element sequence, containing all registered users that are visible to the current user. In addition to the <code>SHOW USERS</code> command, encoded password strings and database permissions will be output. A user <code>\$name</code> can be specified to filter the results in advance.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>After a fresh installation, <code>user:list-details()</code> returns output similar to the following one:<pre>&lt;user name="admin" permission="admin"&gt;   &lt;password algorithm="digest"&gt;     &lt;hash&gt;304bdfb0383c16f070a897fc1eb25cb4&lt;/hash&gt;   &lt;/password&gt;   &lt;password algorithm="salted-sha256"&gt;     &lt;salt&gt;871602799292195&lt;/salt&gt;    &lt;hash&gt;a065ca66fa3d6da5762c227587f1c8258c6dc08ee867e44a605a72da115dcb41&lt;/ hash&gt;   &lt;/password&gt; &lt;/user&gt;</pre></li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	unknown: The specified username is unknown.

### user:exists

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:exists(\$name as xs:string)</code> as <code>xs:boolean</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Checks if a user with the specified <code>\$name</code> exists.

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>user:exists('admin')</code> will always yield true.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	name: The specified username is invalid.

## user:check

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:check(\$name as xs:string, \$password as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Checks if the specified user and password is correct. Raises errors otherwise.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>user:check('admin', )</code> will raise an error if the password of the admin user is a non-empty string.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	name: The specified username is invalid.unknown: The specified user does not exist.password: The specified password is wrong.

## user:info

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:info()</code> as <code>element(info)</code> , <code>user:info(\$name as xs:string)</code> as <code>element(info)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns an <code>info</code> element, which may contain application-specific data. If a user <code>\$name</code> is supplied, a user-specific element is returned. By default, the returned element has no contents. It can be modified via <code>user:update-info</code> .
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After a fresh installation, <code>user:info()</code> returns <code>&lt;info/&gt;</code>.</li> </ul>

## Updates

**Important note:** All functions in this section are *updating functions*: they will not be immediately executed, but queued on the [Pending Update List](#), which will be processed after the actual query has been evaluated. This means that the order in which the functions are specified in the query does usually not reflect the order in which the code will be evaluated.

## user:create

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:create(\$name as xs:string, \$password as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>user:create(\$name as xs:string, \$password as xs:string, \$permissions as xs:string*) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>user:create(\$name as xs:string, \$password as xs:string, \$permissions as xs:string*, \$patterns as xs:string*) as empty-sequence()</code> , <code>user:create(\$name as xs:string, \$password as xs:string, \$permissions as xs:string*, \$patterns as xs:string*, \$info as element(info)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Creates a new user with the specified <code>\$name</code>, <code>\$password</code>, and <code>\$permissions</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local permissions are granted with non-empty glob <code>\$patterns</code>.</li> <li>An <code>\$info</code> element with application-specific information can be supplied.</li> <li>The default global permission (<i>none</i>) can be overwritten with an empty pattern or by omitting the last argument.</li> <li>Existing users will be overwritten.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>user:create('John', '7e\$j#!1', 'admin')</code> creates a new user 'John' with admin permissions.</li> <li><code>user:create('Jack', 'top!secret', 'read', 'index*')</code> creates a new user 'Jack' with read permissions for databases starting with the letters 'index'.</li> </ul>

<b>Errors</b>	name: The specified username is invalid.permission: The specified permission is invalid.admin: The "admin" user cannot be modified.logged-in: The specified user is currently logged in.update: The operation can only be performed once per user or database pattern.
---------------	--

## user:grant

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:grant(\$name as xs:string, \$permissions as xs:string*) as empty-sequence(), user:grant(\$name as xs:string, \$permissions as xs:string*, \$patterns as xs:string*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Grants global or local \$permissions to a user with the specified \$name. Local permissions are granted with non-empty glob \$patterns.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>user:grant('John', 'create')</code> grants create permissions to the user 'John'.</li> <li><code>user:grant('John', ('read','write'), ('index*','unit*))</code> allows John to read all databases starting with the letters 'index', and to write to all databases starting with 'unit'.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	unknown: The specified username is unknown.name: The specified username is invalid.pattern: The specified database pattern is invalid.permission: The specified permission is invalid.admin: The "admin" user cannot be modified.local: A local permission can only be 'none', 'read' or 'write'.logged-in: The specified user is currently logged in.update: The operation can only be performed once per user or database pattern.

## user:drop

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:drop(\$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence(), user:drop(\$name as xs:string, \$patterns as xs:string*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Drops a user with the specified \$name. If non-empty glob \$patterns are specified, only the database patterns will be removed.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>user:drop('John')</code> drops the user 'John'.</li> <li><code>user:grant('John', 'unit*')</code> removes the 'unit*' database pattern. If John accesses any of these database, his global permission will be checked again.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	unknown: The specified username is unknown.name: The specified username is invalid.pattern: The specified database pattern is invalid.admin: The "admin" user cannot be modified.logged-in: The specified user is currently logged in.update: The operation can only be performed once per user or database pattern.conflict: A user cannot be both altered and dropped.

## user:alter

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:alter(\$name as xs:string, \$newname as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Renames a user with the specified \$name to \$newname.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>user:alter('John', 'Jack')</code> renames the user 'John' to 'Jack'.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	unknown: The specified username is unknown.name: The specified username is invalid.admin: The "admin" user cannot be modified.logged-in: The specified user is currently logged in.update: The operation can only be performed once per user or database pattern.conflict: A user cannot be both altered and dropped.

## user:password

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:password(\$name as xs:string, \$password as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	Changes the password of a user with the specified \$name.
<b>Examples</b>	• <code>user:password('John', )</code> assigns user 'John' an empty password string.
<b>Errors</b>	unknown: The specified username is unknown.name: The specified username is invalid.update: The operation can only be performed once per user or database pattern.

## user:update-info

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>user:update-info(\$info as element(info)) as empty-sequence(),</code> <code>user:update-info(\$info as element(info), \$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Assigns the specified \$info element to the user management or, if \$name is supplied, to a specific user. This function can be used to manage application-specific data (groups, enhanced user info, etc.).
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Store initial groups information: <pre>user:update-info(element info {   for \$group in ('editor', 'author', 'writer')   return element group { \$group } })</pre> </li> <li>Add a group to a specific user: <pre>user:update-info(&lt;info group='editor'/&gt;, 'john')</pre> </li> </ul>

## Errors

Code	Description
admin	The "admin" user cannot be modified.
conflict	A user cannot be both altered and dropped.
equal	Name of old and new user is equal.
local	A local permission can only be 'none', 'read' or 'write'.
logged-in	The specified user is currently logged in.
name	The specified username is invalid.
password	The specified password is wrong.
pattern	The specified database name is invalid.
permission	The specified permission is invalid.
unknown	The specified user does not exist.
update	The operation can only be performed once per user or database pattern.

## Changelog

### Version 8.6

- Updated: `user:create`, `user:info`, `user:update-info`: \$name parameter added.

### Version 8.6

- Added: `user:check`, `user:info`, `user:update-info`.
- Updated: `user:list`, `user:list-details`: If called by non-admins, will only return the current user.

### Version 8.4

- Updated: `user:create`, `user:grant`, `user:drop`: extended support for database patterns.

Version 8.1

- Added: `user:current`.

The Module was introduced with Version 8.0.

---

# Chapter 71. Validation Module

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This **XQuery Module** contains functions to perform validations against DTDs, XML Schema and RelaxNG. The documentation further describes how to use Schematron validation with BaseX.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/validate` namespace, which is statically bound to the `validate` prefix.

## DTD Validation

Checks whether an XML document validates against a DTD. The input document can be specified as:

- `xs:string`, representing a URI (relative URIs will always be resolved against the static base URI of the query),
- `xs:string`, representing the resource in its string representation, or
- `node()`, representing the resource itself.

If no DTD is supplied in a function, the XML document is expected to contain an embedded DTD doctype declaration.

### validate:dtd

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:dtd(\$input as item()) as empty-sequence(), validate:dtd(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string?) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> and returns an empty sequence or an error.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error: the validation fails.</code> <code>init: the validation process cannot be started.</code> <code>not-found: no DTD validator is available.</code>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>validate:dtd('doc.xml', 'doc.dtd')</code> validates the document <code>doc.xml</code> against the specified DTD file <code>doc.dtd</code>.</li><li>• The following example validates an invalid document against a DTD, which is specified as string:<pre>try {   let \$doc := &lt;invalid/&gt;   let \$schema := '&lt;!ELEMENT root (#PCDATA)&gt;'   return validate:dtd(\$doc, \$schema) } catch validate:error {   'DTD Validation failed.' }</pre></li></ul>

### validate:dtd-info

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:dtd-info(\$input as item()) as xs:string*, validate:dtd-info(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string?) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> and returns warnings, errors and fatal errors in a string sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init: the validation process cannot be started.</code> <code>not-found: no DTD validator is available.</code>

<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>validate:dtd-info(&lt;invalid/&gt;, '&lt;!ELEMENT root (#PCDATA)&gt;')</code> returns:2:11: Element type "invalid" must be declared..</li> </ul>
-----------------	---

## validate:dtd-report

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:dtd-report(\$input as item()) as element(report), validate:dtd-report(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string?) as element(report)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML \$input document against a \$schema and returns warnings, errors and fatal errors as XML.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init: the validation process cannot be started.not-found: no DTD validator is available.</code>
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>validate:dtd-report(&lt;invalid/&gt;, '&lt;!ELEMENT root (#PCDATA)&gt;')</code> returns:  <pre>&lt;report&gt;   &lt;status&gt;invalid&lt;/status&gt;   &lt;message level="Error" line="2" column="11"&gt;Element type "invalid"   must be declared.&lt;/message&gt; &lt;/report&gt;</pre> </li> </ul>

## XML Schema Validation

Checks whether an XML document validates against an XML Schema. The input document and the schema can be specified as:

- `xs:string`, containing the path to the resource,
- `xs:string`, containing the resource in its string representation, or
- `node()`, containing the resource itself.

If no schema is given, the input is expected to contain an `xsi:(noNamespace)schemaLocation` attribute, as defined in [W3C XML Schema](#).

Different XML Schema processors are supported:

- By default, the **Java implementation** of XML Schema 1.0 is used (it is based on an old version of Apache Xerces).
- The latest version of **Xerces2** provides implementations of XML Schema 1.0 and 1.1. The processor will be applied if you download one of the [binary distributions](#) and copy the following libraries to the `lib/custom` directory of the full distribution of BaseX:
  - `org.eclipse.wst.xml.xpath2.processor_1.2.0.jar`
  - `cupv10k-runtime.jar`
  - `xercesImpl.jar`
  - `xml-apis.jar`
- **Saxon Enterprise Edition** will be used if you download the [ZIP release](#) and if you copy `saxon9ee.jar` and a valid license key to the classpath.

## validate:xsd

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:xsd(\$input as item()) as empty-sequence(), validate:xsd(\$input as item(), \$schema as item(?) as empty-</code>
-------------------	---



	<code>sequence(), validate:xsd(\$input as item(), \$schema as item()?, \$features as map(*)) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> , using the processor-specific <code>\$features</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : the validation fails. <code>init</code> : the validation process cannot be started. <code>not-found</code> : no XML Schema validator is available.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pass on document and schema as nodes: <pre>let \$doc := &lt;simple:root xmlns:simple='http://basex.org/simple'/&gt; let \$schema :=   &lt;xs:schema xmlns:xs='http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema' targetNamespace='http://basex.org/simple'&gt;   &lt;xs:element name='root'/&gt;   &lt;/xs:schema&gt; return validate:xsd(\$doc, \$schema)</pre> </li> <li>Validate all documents of a database against the specified schema, using the supplied feature: <pre>for \$city in db:get('cities') return validate:xsd(\$city, 'city.xsd',   map { 'http://javax.xml.XMLConstants/feature/secure-processing' :     true() } )</pre> </li> </ul>

## validate:xsd-info

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:xsd-info(\$input as item()) as xs:string*</code> , <code>validate:xsd-info(\$input as item(), \$schema as item()?) as xs:string*</code> , <code>validate:xsd-info(\$input as item(), \$schema as item()?, \$features as map(*)) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> , using the processor-specific <code>\$features</code> , and returns warnings, errors and fatal errors in a string sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init</code> : the validation process cannot be started. <code>not-found</code> : no XML Schema validator is available.

## validate:xsd-report

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:xsd-report(\$input as item()) as element(report)</code> , <code>validate:xsd-report(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string?) as element(report)</code> , <code>validate:xsd-report(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string?, \$features as map(*)) as element(report)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> , using the processor-specific <code>\$features</code> , and returns warnings, errors and fatal errors as XML.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init</code> : the validation process cannot be started. <code>not-found</code> : no XML Schema validator is available.

## validate:xsd-processor

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:xsd-processor()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the name of the applied XSD processor.

## validate:xsd-version

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:xsd-version()</code> as <code>xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the supported version of XSD Schema.

## RelaxNG Validation

Checks whether an XML document validates against a RelaxNG schema. The input document and the schema can be specified as:

- `xs:string`, containing the path to the resource,
- `xs:string`, containing the resource in its string representation, or
- `node()`, containing the resource itself.

RelaxNG validation will be available if **Jing** exists in the classpath. The latest version, `jing-20091111.jar`, is included in the full distributions of BaseX. As Jing additionally supports **NVDL** validation, you can also use the functions to validate the input against NVDL schemas.

### validate:rng

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:rng(\$input as item(), \$schema as item()) as empty-sequence(), validate:rng(\$input as item(), \$schema as item(), \$compact as xs:boolean) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> , using the XML or <code>\$compact</code> notation.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>error</code> : the validation fails. <code>init</code> : the validation process cannot be started. <code>not-found</code> : the RelaxNG validator is not available.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>validate:rng('doc.xml', 'doc.rng')</code> validates the document <code>doc.xml</code> against the specified schema <code>doc.rng</code>.</li> </ul>

### validate:rng-info

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:rng-info(\$input as item(), \$schema as item()) as xs:string*, validate:rng-info(\$input as item(), \$schema as item(), \$compact as xs:boolean) as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> , using the XML or <code>\$compact</code> notation, and returns warnings, errors and fatal errors in a string sequence.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init</code> : the validation process cannot be started. <code>not-found</code> : the RelaxNG validator is not available.

### validate:rng-report

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>validate:rng-report(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string) as element(report), validate:rng-report(\$input as item(), \$schema as xs:string, \$compact as xs:boolean) as element(report)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Validates the XML <code>\$input</code> document against a <code>\$schema</code> , using the XML or <code>\$compact</code> notation, and returns warnings, errors and fatal errors as XML.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>init</code> : the validation process cannot be started. <code>not-found</code> : The RelaxNG validator is not available.

## Schematron Validation

If you want to use Schematron for validating documents, install Vincent Lizzi's excellent [Schematron XQuery Module for BaseX](#):

```
repo:install('https://github.com/Schematron/schematron-basex/raw/master/dist/schematron-basex-1.2.xar')
```

The following query illustrates how documents are validated. It is directly taken from the GitHub project:

```

import module namespace schematron = "http://github.com/Schematron/schematron-
basex";

let $sch := schematron:compile(doc('rules.sch'))
let $svrl := schematron:validate(doc('document.xml'), $sch)
return (
  schematron:is-valid($svrl),
  for $message in schematron:messages($svrl)
  return concat(schematron:message-level($message), ': ', schematron:message-
description($message))
)

```

## Errors

Code	Description
error	The document cannot be validated against the specified schema.
init	The validation cannot be started.
not-found	No validator is available.

## Changelog

### Version 9.2

- Added: `validate:xsd-processor`, `validate:xsd-version`
- Updated: `validate:xsd`, `validate:xsd-info`, `validate:xsd-report`: `version` argument was dropped (the latest version will always be used)

### Version 9.0

- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.5

- Updated: Relative URIs will always be resolved against the static base URI of the query

### Version 8.3

- Added: `validate:rng`, `validate:rng-info`
- Added: `validate:dtd-report`, `validate:xsd-report`, `validate:rng-report`

### Version 7.6

- Added: `validate:xsd-info`, `validate:dtd-info`

The module was introduced with Version 7.3.

---

# Chapter 72. Web Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This [XQuery Module](#) provides convenience functions for building web applications with [RESTXQ](#).

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/web` namespace, which is statically bound to the `web` prefix.

## Functions

### web:content-type

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:content-type(\$path as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the content type of a path by analyzing its file suffix. <code>application/octet-stream</code> is returned if the file suffix is unknown.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>web:content-type("sample.mp3")</code> returns <code>audio/mpeg</code></li></ul>

### web:create-url

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:create-url(\$url as xs:string, \$parameters as map(*)) as xs:string,</code> <code>web:create-url(\$url as xs:string, \$parameters as map(*), \$anchor as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a new URL from the specified <code>\$url</code> string, query string <code>\$parameters</code> and an optional <code>\$anchor</code> reference. The keys and values of the map entries will be converted to strings, URL-encoded (see <code>web:encode-url</code> ), and appended to the URL as query parameters. If a map entry has more than a single item, all of them will be appended as single parameters.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>web:create-url('http://find.me', map { 'q': 'dog' })</code> returns <code>http://find.me?q=dog</code></li><li><code>web:create-url('search', map { 'year': (2000,2001), 'title':() })</code> returns <code>search?year=2000&amp;year=2001</code></li></ul>

### web:encode-url

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:encode-url(\$string as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Encodes a string to a URL. Spaces are rewritten to <code>+</code> ; <code>*</code> , <code>-</code> , <code>.</code> and <code>_</code> are adopted; and all other non-ASCII characters and special characters are percent-encoded.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>web:encode-url("this is a test!.html")</code> returns <code>this+is+a+test%21.html</code>.</li></ul>

### web:decode-url

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:decode-url(\$string as xs:string) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Decodes a URL to the original string. Percent-encoded characters are decoded to their UTF8 codepoints, and <code>+</code> characters are rewritten to spaces.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>web:decode-url("%E6%97%A5%E6%9C%AC%E8%AA%9E")</code> returns <code>###</code>.</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>invalid: the string contains invalid XML characters.</code>

## web:forward

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:forward(\$path as xs:string) as element(rest:forward),</code> <code>web:forward(\$path as xs:string, \$parameters as map(*)) as</code> <code>element(rest:forward)</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a server-side <b>RESTXQ forward request</b> to the specified <code>\$path</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The client will not get notified of this forwarding.</li> <li>• Supplied query parameters will be attached to parameters of the current request.</li> <li>• The <code>\$parameter</code> argument is processed as described in <code>web:create-url</code>.</li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	The function call <code>web:forward('/a/b')</code> creates the following result (which will be interpreted as forwarding if RESTXQ is used): <pre>&lt;rest:forward&gt;/a/b&lt;/rest:forward&gt;</pre>

## web:redirect

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:redirect(\$url as xs:string) as element(rest:response),</code> <code>web:redirect(\$url as xs:string, \$parameters as map(*)) as</code> <code>element(rest:response),web:redirect(\$url as xs:string, \$parameters</code> <code>as map(*), \$anchor as xs:string) as element(rest:response),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a <b>RESTXQ redirection</b> to the specified <code>\$url</code> . The returned response will only work if no other items are returned by the RESTXQ function. The <code>\$parameters</code> and <code>\$anchor</code> arguments are processed as described in (see <code>web:create-url</code> ).
<b>Examples</b>	The query <code>web:redirect('/a/b')</code> returns the following result (which will be interpreted as redirection if RESTXQ is used): <pre>&lt;rest:response xmlns:rest="http://exquery.org/ns/restxq"&gt;   &lt;http:response xmlns:http="http://expath.org/ns/http-client"     status="302"&gt;     &lt;http:header name="location" value="/a/b"/&gt;   &lt;/http:response&gt; &lt;/rest:response&gt;</pre>

## web:response-header

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>web:response-header() as element(rest:response), web:response-</code> <code>header(\$output as map(*)) as element(rest:response),web:response-</code> <code>header(\$output as map(*), \$headers as map(*)) as</code> <code>element(rest:response), web:response-header(\$output as map(*),</code> <code>\$headers as map(*), \$atts as map(*)) as element(rest:response),</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Creates a <b>RESTXQ response header</b> . Serialization parameters and header values can be supplied via the <code>\$output</code> and <code>\$headers</code> arguments, and status and message attributes can be attached to the HTTP response element with the <code>\$atts</code> argument. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>media-type:application/octet-stream</code></li> </ul> Header options can be supplied via the <code>\$headers</code> argument. Empty string values can be specified to invalidate default values. By default, the following header options will be returned: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>Cache-Control:max-age=3600,public</code></li> </ul>
<b>Examples</b>	• The function call <code>web:response-header()</code> returns: <pre>&lt;rest:response xmlns:rest="http://exquery.org/ns/restxq"&gt;   &lt;http:response xmlns:http="http://expath.org/ns/http-client"/&gt;</pre>

```
<output:serialization-parameters xmlns:output="http://www.w3.org/2010/
xslt-xquery-serialization"/>
</rest:response>
```

- The following expression returns a media-type for binary data, a caching directive, and the OK status:

```
web:response-header(
  map { 'media-type': 'application/octet-stream' },
  map { 'Cache-Control': 'max-age=3600,public' },
  map { 'status': 200, 'message': 'OK' }
)
```

- The following RESTXQ function returns the contents of a file to the client with correct media type:

```
declare %rest:path('media/{$file}') function local:get($file) {
  let $path := 'path/to/' || $file
  return (
    web:response-header(map { 'media-type': web:content-type($path) }),
    file:read-binary($path)
  )
};
```

## web:error

<b>Signatures</b>	web:error(\$status as xs:integer, \$message as xs:string) as none,
<b>Summary</b>	Raises an error with the QName rest:error, the specified \$message and the specified \$status as error value.Calls to this function are equivalent to fn:error(xs:QName('rest:error'), \$message, \$status). See <a href="#">RESTXQ: Raise Errors</a> to learn how the function is helpful in web applications.
<b>Examples</b>	• web:error(404, "The requested resource cannot be found.")
<b>Errors</b>	status: The supplied status code is invalid.

## Errors

Code	Description
invalid	A string contains invalid XML characters.
status	The supplied status code is invalid.

## Changelog

### Version 9.3

- Added: web:error, web:forward

### Version 9.2

- Updated: web:create-url, web:redirect: third argument added.

### Version 9.0

- Updated: web:response-header: third argument added; default parameters removed.
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.4

- Updated: web:response-header: serialization method raw was removed (now obsolete).

Version 8.2

- Added: `web:encode-url`, `web:decode-url`.

The module was introduced with Version 8.1.

---

# Chapter 73. WebSocket Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for accessing specific WebSocket functions. This module is mainly useful in the context of **WebSockets**.

## Conventions

- The module will be available if the `basex-api` library is found in the classpath. This is the case if you use one of the complete distributions of BaseX (zip, exe, war).
- All functions and errors are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/ws` namespace, which is statically bound to the `ws` prefix.
- As sessions are side-effecting operations, all functions are flagged as *non-deterministic*. As a result, some query optimizations will be suppressed.

## General Functions

### ws:id

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:id() as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the ID of the current WebSocket.
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No WebSocket with the specified id exists.

### ws:ids

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:ids() as xs:string*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the ids of all currently registered WebSockets.

### ws:path

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:path(\$id as xs:string) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the path of the WebSocket with the specified <code>\$id</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No WebSocket with the specified id exists.

### ws:close

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:close(\$id as xs:string) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Closes the connection of the WebSocket with the specified <code>\$id</code> .
<b>Errors</b>	<code>not-found</code> : No WebSocket with the specified id exists.

## Sending Data

### ws:send

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:send(\$message as item(), \$ids as xs:string*) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Sends a <code>\$message</code> to the clients with the specified <code>\$ids</code> . Ids that cannot be assigned to clients will be ignored. The message will be handled as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Items of type <code>xs:base64Binary</code> and <code>xs:hexBinary</code> will be transmitted as binary messages.</li></ul>



- Function items (maps, arrays) will be serialized as JSON and transmitted as string messages.
- All other items will be serialized with the default serialization options and transmitted as string messages.

## ws:broadcast

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:broadcast(\$message as xs:anyAtomicType) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Broadcasts a <code>\$message</code> to all connected clients except to the caller. Invocations of this convenience function are equivalent to <code>ws:send(\$message, ws:ids()[. != ws:id()])</code> . See <code>ws:send</code> for more details on the message handling.

## ws:emit

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:emit(\$message as xs:anyAtomicType) as empty-sequence()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Emits a <code>\$message</code> to all connected clients. Invocations of this function are equivalent to <code>ws:send(\$message, ws:ids())</code> . See <code>ws:send</code> for more details on the message handling.

## ws:eval

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType) as xs:string, ws:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*)) as xs:string, ws:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*)?, \$options as map(*)?) as xs:string,</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Schedules the evaluation of the supplied <code>\$query</code> and returns the result to the calling WebSocket client. The query can be a URI or a string, and variables and context items can be declared via <code>\$bindings</code> (see <code>xquery:eval</code> for more details). The following <code>\$options</code> can be supplied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>base-uri</code> : sets the <b>base-uri property</b> for the query. This URI will be used when resolving relative URIs, such as with <code>fn:doc</code>.</li> <li>• <code>id</code> : sets a custom job id. The id must not start with the standard job prefix, and it can only be assigned if no job with the same name exists.</li> </ul> <p>Query scheduling is recommendable if the immediate query execution might be too time consuming and lead to a timeout.</p>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>overflow</code> : Query execution is rejected, because too many jobs are queued or being executed. <code>id</code> : The specified id is invalid or has already been assigned.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schedule a second query that will notify the client 10 seconds later that a message was processed:</li> </ul> <pre>declare   %ws:message('/tasks', '{\$message}') function local:message(\$message) {   ws:eval('prof:sleep(10000), "Your message has been processed."') };</pre>

## WebSocket Attributes

### ws:get

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>ws:get(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as item()*</code> , <code>ws:get(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string, \$default as item()) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the value of an attribute with the specified <code>\$name</code> from the WebSocket with the specified <code>\$id</code> . If the attribute is unknown, an empty sequence or the optionally specified <code>\$default</code> value will be returned instead.

<b>Errors</b>	not-found: No WebSocket with the specified id exists.
---------------	---

**ws:set**

<b>Signatures</b>	ws:set(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string, \$value as item(*) as empty-sequence())
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Returns the specified value of the attribute with the specified \$name from the WebSocket with the specified \$id.
----------------	--

<b>Errors</b>	not-found: No WebSocket with the specified id exists.
---------------	---

**ws:delete**

<b>Signatures</b>	ws:delete(\$id as xs:string, \$name as xs:string) as empty-sequence()
-------------------	---

<b>Summary</b>	Deletes an attribute with the specified \$name from the WebSocket with the specified \$id.
----------------	--

<b>Errors</b>	not-found: No WebSocket with the specified id exists.
---------------	---

**Examples****Example 1**

```
import module namespace ws = "http://basex.org/modules/ws";

declare
  %ws:connect('/')
function local:connect() as empty-sequence() {
  let $id := ws:id()
  let $message := json:serialize(map {
    'type': 'Connect',
    'id': $id
  })
  return ws:broadcast($message)
};
```

**Explanation:**

- The function has a %ws:connect annotation. It gets called if a client successfully creates a WebSocket connection to the path / (check out [WebSockets](#) for further information).
- A JSON response is generated, which contains the new client id and a Connect string.
- This response will be sent to all other connected clients.

**Example 2**

```
import module namespace ws = "http://basex.org/modules/ws";

declare
  %ws:message('/', '{$message}')
function local:message(
  $message as xs:string
) as empty-sequence() {
  let $message := json:serialize(map { 'message': $message })
  return ws:emit($message)
};
```

**Explanation:**

- The function has a %ws:message annotation. It gets called if a client sends a new message.

- A JSON response is generated, which contains the message string.
- This response will be sent to all connected clients (including the calling client).

## Errors

Code	Description
not-found	No WebSocket with the specified id exists.

## Changelog

Version 9.2

- Added: `ws:eval`

This module was introduced with Version 9.1.

---

# Chapter 74. XQuery Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions for parsing and evaluating XQuery strings at runtime, and to run code in parallel.

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/xquery` namespace, which is statically bound to the `xquery` prefix.

## Evaluation

### xquery:eval

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xquery:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType) as item()*</code> , <code>xquery:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*)?)</code> <code>as item()*</code> , <code>xquery:eval(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as</code> <code>map(*)?, \$options as map(*)?) as item()*</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Evaluates the supplied <code>\$query</code> and returns the resulting items. If the query is of type <code>xs:anyURI</code>, the module located at this URI will be retrieved (a relative URI will be resolved against the static base URI). Otherwise, the input is expected to be of type <code>xs:string</code>. Variables and context items can be declared via <code>\$bindings</code>. The specified keys must be QNames or strings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If a key is a QName, it will be directly adopted as variable name.</li><li>• If a key is a string, it may be prefixed with a dollar sign. Namespace can be specified using the <a href="#">Clark Notation</a>.</li><li>• If the specified string is empty, the value will be bound to the context item.</li></ul> <p>The <code>\$options</code> parameter contains evaluation options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>permission</code> : the query will be evaluated with the specified permissions (see <a href="#">User Management</a>).</li><li>• <code>timeout</code> : query execution will be interrupted after the specified number of seconds.</li><li>• <code>memory</code> : query execution will be interrupted if the specified number of megabytes will be exceeded. This check works best if only one process is running at the same time. Moreover, please note that this option enforces garbage collection, so it will take some additional time, and it requires GC to be enabled in your JVM.</li><li>• <code>base-uri</code> : set <a href="#">base-uri property</a> for the query. Overwrites the base URI of the query; will be used when resolving relative URIs by functions such as <code>fn:doc</code>.</li><li>• <code>pass</code> : passes on the original error info (line and column number, optional file uri). By default, this option is <code>false</code>.</li></ul>
<b>Errors</b>	<code>update</code> : the query contains <a href="#">updating expressions</a> . <code>permission</code> : insufficient permissions for evaluating the query. <code>timeout</code> : query execution exceeded <code>timeout.limit</code> . <code>memory</code> : query execution exceeded memory limit. <code>nested</code> : nested query evaluation is not allowed. Any other error that may occur while evaluating the query.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>xquery:eval("1+3")</code> returns 4.</li><li>• If a URI is supplied, the query in the specified file will be evaluated:</li></ul> <pre>xquery:eval(xs:anyURI('cleanup.xq'))</pre>

- You can bind the context and e.g. operate on a certain database only:

```
xquery:eval("//country", map { ': db:get('factbook') })
```

- The following expressions use strings as keys. All of them return 'XML':

```
xquery:eval(".", map { ': 'XML' } ),
```

```
xquery:eval("declare variable $xml external; $xml", map { 'xml': 'XML' } ),
```

```
xquery:eval(
  "declare namespace pref='URI';
  declare variable $pref:xml external;
  $pref:xml",
  map { '{URI}xml': 'XML' }
)
```

- The following expressions use QNames as keys. All of them return 'XML':

```
declare namespace pref = 'URI';
```

```
xquery:eval("declare variable $xml external; $xml", map
  { xs:QName('xml'): 'XML' } ),
```

```
let $query := "declare namespace pref='URI';
  declare variable $pref:xml external;
  $pref:xml"
```

```
let $vars := map { xs:QName('pref:xml'): 'XML' }
return xquery:eval($query, $vars)
```

## xquery:eval-update

<b>Signatures</b>	xquery:eval-update(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType) as item()*, xquery:eval-update(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*)?) as item()*, xquery:eval-update(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$bindings as map(*)?, \$options as map(*)?) as item()*,
<b>Summary</b>	Evaluates a query as updating expression. All updates will be added to the <b>Pending Update List</b> of the main query and performed after the evaluation of the main query. The rules for all arguments are the same as for xquery:eval.
<b>Errors</b>	update: the query contains no <b>updating expressions</b> . permission: insufficient permissions for evaluating the query. timeout: query execution exceeded timeout.limit: query execution exceeded memory limit. nested: nested query evaluation is not allowed. Any other error that may occur while evaluating the query.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removes entries from a temporary databases and returns an info string:</li> </ul> <pre>xquery:eval-update("   delete node db:get('tmp')/*,   update:output('TEMPORARY DATABASE WAS CLEANED UP') ")</pre>

## Parsing

### xquery:parse

Updated with Version 10:\$query can additionally be of type xs:anyURI.

<b>Signatures</b>	xquery:parse(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType) as item()?, xquery:parse(\$query as xs:anyAtomicType, \$options as map(*)?) as item()?,
-------------------	--

<b>Summary</b>	<p>Parses the specified <code>\$query</code> as XQuery module and returns the resulting query plan. If the query is of type <code>xs:anyURI</code>, the module located at this URI will be retrieved (a relative URI will be resolved against the static base URI). Otherwise, the input is expected to be of type <code>xs:string</code>. The <code>\$options</code> parameter influences the output:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>compile</code>: additionally compiles the query after parsing it. By default, this option is <code>false</code>.</li> <li>• <code>plan</code>: returns an XML representation of the internal query plan. By default, this option is <code>true</code>. The naming of the expressions in the query plan may change over time</li> <li>• <code>pass</code>: by default, the option is <code>false</code>. If an error is raised, the line/column number and the optional file uri will refer to the location of the function call. If the option is enabled, the line/column and file uri will be adopted from the raised error.</li> <li>• <code>base-uri</code>: set <b>base-uri property</b> for the query. This URI will be used when resolving relative URIs by functions such as <code>fn:doc</code>.</li> </ul>
<b>Errors</b>	Any error that may occur while parsing the query.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>xquery:parse("1 + 3")</code> returns:</li> </ul> <pre>&lt;MainModule updating="false"&gt;   &lt;QueryPlan compiled="false"&gt;     &lt;Arith op="+"&gt;       &lt;Int value="1" type="xs:integer"/&gt;       &lt;Int value="3" type="xs:integer"/&gt;     &lt;/Arith&gt;   &lt;/QueryPlan&gt; &lt;/MainModule&gt;</pre>

## Parallelized Execution

Parallel query execution is recommendable if you have various calls that require a lot of time, but that cannot be sped up by rewriting the code. This is e. g. the case if external URLs are called. If you are parallelizing local data reads (such as the access to a database), single-threaded queries will usually be faster, because parallelized access to disk data often results in randomized access patterns, which will rarely be optimized by the caching strategies of HDDs, SSDs, or the operating system.

### xquery:fork-join

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xquery:fork-join(\$functions as function(*)*) as item()*</code>
<b>Summary</b>	This function executes the supplied (non-updating) functions in parallel.
<b>Examples</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The following function sleeps in parallel; it will be finished in 1 second if your system has at least 2 cores:</li> </ul> <pre>let \$f := function() { prof:sleep(1000) } return xquery:fork-join((\$f, \$f))</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the following query, up to four URLs will be requested in parallel:</li> </ul> <pre>xquery:fork-join(   for \$segment in 1 to 4   let \$url := 'http://url.com/path/'    \$segment   return function() { http:send-request((), \$url) } )</pre>
<b>Errors</b>	error: an unexpected error occurred.

## Errors

Code	Description

---

permission	Insufficient permissions for evaluating the query.
update	<b>updating expression</b> found or expected.
timeout	Query execution exceeded timeout.
memory	Query execution exceeded memory limit.
nested	Nested query evaluation is not allowed.
error	An unexpected error occurred.

## Changelog

### Version 10

- Deleted: `xquery:parse-uri` (merged with `xquery:parse`)
- Updated: `xquery:parse:Template:$query` can additionally be of type `xs:anyURI`.

### Version 9.2

- Deleted: `xquery:invoke`, `xquery:invoke-update` (merged with `xquery:eval` and `xquery:eval-update`)

### Version 9.0

- Added: `xquery:invoke-update`
- Updated: `xquery:eval:pass` option added
- Updated: `xquery:parse`, `xquery:parse-uri:base-uri` option added
- Updated: `xquery:update` renamed to `xquery:eval-update`
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

### Version 8.5

- Added: `xquery:fork-join`
- Updated: `xquery:eval:base-uri` option added
- Updated: Relative URIs will always be resolved against the static base URI of the query
- Deleted: `xquery:type` (moved to **Profiling Module**)

### Version 8.4

- Added: `xquery:parse-uri`
- Updated: `xquery:parse:pass` option added

### Version 8.0

- Added: `xquery:update`, `xquery:parse`
- Deleted: `xquery:evaluate` (opened databases will now be closed by main query)

### Version 7.8.2

- Added: `$options` argument

### Version 7.8

- Added: `xquery:evaluate`

- Updated: used variables must be explicitly declared in the query string.

This module was introduced with Version 7.3. Functions have been adopted from the obsolete Utility Module.



---

# Chapter 75. XSLT Module

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This **XQuery Module** contains functions and variables to perform XSL transformations.

By default, this module uses Java's XSLT 1.0 Xalan implementation to transform documents. XSLT 3.0 will be enabled if Version 9 or 10 of the **Saxon XSLT Processor** is found in the class path (see **Distributions** for more details). A custom transformer can be specified by assigning a class to the system property `javax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory`, e.g. directly in Java:

```
System.setProperty(
    "javax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory",
    "org.custom.xslt.TransformerFactoryImpl");

Context ctx = new Context();
String result = new XQuery("xslt:transform('...', '...')").execute(ctx);
...
ctx.close();
```

## Conventions

All functions and errors in this module are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/xslt` namespace, which is statically bound to the `xslt` prefix.

## Functions

### `xslt:processor`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xslt:processor()</code> as <code>xs:string</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the name of the applied XSLT processor, or the path to a custom implementation (currently: "Java", "Saxon EE", "Saxon PE", or "Saxon HE").

### `xslt:version`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xslt:version()</code> as <code>xs:string</code> ,
<b>Summary</b>	Returns the supported XSLT version (currently: "1.0" or "3.0"). "Unknown" is returned if a custom implementation was chosen.

### `xslt:transform`

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xslt:transform(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item()) as node()</code> , <code>xslt:transform(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item(), \$params as map(*)) as node()</code> , <code>xslt:transform(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item(), \$args as map(*), \$options as map(*)) as node()</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Transforms the document specified by <code>\$input</code> , using the XSLT template specified by <code>\$stylesheet</code> , and returns the result as <code>node</code> . <code>\$input</code> and <code>\$stylesheet</code> can be specified as <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>xs:string</code>, containing the stylesheet URI,</li><li>• <code>xs:string</code>, containing the document in its string representation, or</li><li>• <code>node()</code>, containing the document itself.</li></ul> <p><b>XML Catalog files</b> will be considered when resolving URIs. Variables can be bound to a stylesheet via <code>\$args</code> (only strings are supported when using XSLT 3.0 and Saxon). The following <code>\$options</code> are available:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>cache</code> : cache XSLT transformer (speeds up repeated transformations, but increases memory consumption)</li> </ul>
<b>Error</b>	<code>error</code> : an error occurred during the transformation process.

## xslt:transform-text

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xslt:transform-text(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item()) as xs:string</code> , <code>xslt:transform-text(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item(), \$params as map(*)?) as xs:string</code> , <code>xslt:transform-text(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item(), \$params as map(*)?, \$options as map(*)?) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	Transforms the document specified by <code>\$input</code> , using the XSLT template specified by <code>\$stylesheet</code> , and returns the result as string. The semantics of <code>\$params</code> and <code>\$options</code> is the same as for <code>xslt:transform</code> .
<b>Error</b>	<code>error</code> : an error occurred during the transformation process.

## xslt:transform-report

<b>Signatures</b>	<code>xslt:transform-report(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item()) as xs:string</code> , <code>xslt:transform-report(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item(), \$params as map(*)?) as xs:string</code> , <code>xslt:transform-report(\$input as item(), \$stylesheet as item(), \$params as map(*)?, \$options as map(*)?) as xs:string</code>
<b>Summary</b>	<p>Transforms the document specified by <code>\$input</code>, using the XSLT template specified by <code>\$stylesheet</code>, and returns a map with the following keys:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>result</code> : The transformation result: One or more document nodes, or (if the result cannot be converted to XML) an item of type <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code>.</li> <li>• <code>messages</code> : Informational output generated by <code>xsl:message</code> elements: A sequence of arrays. The arrays consist of XML elements, or (for those messages that cannot be converted to XML) items of type <code>xs:untypedAtomic</code>.</li> </ul> <p>The semantics of <code>\$params</code> and <code>\$options</code> is the same as for <code>xslt:transform</code>. For the moment, messages can only be returned with recent versions of Saxon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>error</code> (optional): An error string, which would be raised as an error by the other functions of this module.</li> </ul>

## Examples

### Example 1: XSL transformation, with XML and XSL supplied as nodes

#### Query:

```
(: Outputs the result as html. :)
declare option output:method 'html';

let $in :=
  <books>
    <book>
      <title>XSLT Programmer's Reference</title>
      <author>Michael H. Kay</author>
    </book>
    <book>
      <title>XSLT</title>
      <author>Doug Tidwell</author>
      <author>Simon St. Laurent</author>
```

```

    <author>Robert Romano</author>
  </book>
</books>
let $style :=
  <xsl:stylesheet version='3.0' xmlns:xsl='http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform'>
    <xsl:output method='xml' />
    <xsl:template match="/">
<html>
  <body>
    <div>
      <xsl:for-each select='books/book'>
        • <b><xsl:apply-templates select='title' /></b>: <xsl:value-of
select='author' /><br/>
      </xsl:for-each>
    </div>
  </body>
</html>
    </xsl:template>
  </xsl:stylesheet>

return xslt:transform($in, $style)

```

**Result:**

```

<html>
  <body>
    <div>
      • <b>XSLT Programmer's Reference</b>: Michael H. Kay<br>
      • <b>XSLT</b>: Doug Tidwell<br>
    </div>
  </body>
</html>

```

**Example 2: Textual XSL transformation****Query:**

```
xslt:transform-text(<dummy/>, 'basic.xslt')
```

**basic.xslt**

```

<xsl:stylesheet version='1.0' xmlns:xsl='http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform'>
  <xsl:template match="/">123</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

**Result:**

```
123
```

**Example 3: XSL transformation with variable assignment****Query:**

```

let $in := <dummy/>
let $style := doc('variable.xsl')
return xslt:transform($in, $style, map { "v": 1 })

```

**variable.xsl**

```

<xsl:stylesheet version='1.0'
  xmlns:xsl='http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform'>
  <xsl:param name='v' />
  <xsl:template match='/'>
    <v><xsl:value-of select='$v' /></v>
  </xsl:template>

```

```
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

**Result:**

```
<v>1</v>
<v>1</v>
```

**Example 4: XSL transformation, yielding a result and info messages****Query:**

```
xslt:transform-report(
  <_/>,
  <xsl:transform version='2.0' xmlns:xsl='http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform'>
    <xsl:template match='/'>
      <xsl:message><msg>START...</msg></xsl:message>
      <xml>123</xml>
      <xsl:message select='4, 5, "...END"'/>
    </xsl:template>
  </xsl:transform>
)
```

**Result:**

```
map {
  "messages": ([<msg>START...</msg>], ["4 5 ...END"]),
  "result": <xml>123</xml>
}
```

**Errors**

Code	Description
error	An error occurred during the transformation process.

**Changelog**

## Version 9.7

- Added: `xslt:transform-report`

## Version 9.2

- Updated: Support for XML Catalog files added.

## Version 9.0

- Updated: `xslt:transform`, `xslt:transform-text`: `$options` argument added.
- Updated: error codes updated; errors now use the module namespace

## Version 7.6

- Added: `xslt:transform-text`
- Updated: `xslt:transform` returned error code

## Version 7.3

- Updated: `$xslt:processor` → `xslt:processor`, `$xslt:version` → `xslt:version`

---

# Part VIII. Developing

---

---

# Chapter 76. Developing

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is one of the [Main Sections](#) of the documentation. It provides useful information for developers. Here you can find information on various alternatives to integrate BaseX into your own project.

## Integrate & Contribute

- [Eclipse](#) : Compile and run BaseX from within Eclipse
- [Git](#) : Learn how to work with Git
- [Maven](#) : Embed BaseX into your own projects
- [Releases](#) : Official releases, snapshots, old versions
- [Translations](#) : Contribute a new translation to BaseX!

## Web Technology

- [RESTXQ](#) : Write web services with XQuery
- [REST](#) : Access and update databases via HTTP requests
- [WebDAV](#) : Access databases from your filesystem

## APIs

- [Clients](#) : Communicate with BaseX using C#, PHP, Python, Perl, C, ...
- [Java Examples](#) : Code examples for developing with BaseX
- [XQJ API](#) : Closed source, implemented by Charles Foster (restricted to XQuery 3.0)
- [XQuery for Scala API](#) , based on XQJ and written by Dino Fancellu

## Extensions

- [Service/daemon](#) : Install BaseX server as a service
- [Android](#) : Running BaseX with Android

## Code, Questions, Bugs

- The [Source Code](#) is available on GitHub.
- For questions, bug reports and feature requests, please write to our [mailing list](#)
- The [Issue Tracker](#) contains confirmed bugs and feature requests.

---

# Chapter 77. Developing with Eclipse

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#). It describes how to get the BaseX sources compiled and running on your system.

Another article in the documentation describes how to use BaseX as a [query processor in Eclipse](#).

## Prerequisites

BaseX is developed with the Eclipse environment (other IDEs like IntelliJ IDEA can be used as well). The [Eclipse IDE for Java Developers](#) includes the EGit plugin (for [Git](#)) and the m2e plugin (for [Maven](#)). Other plugins we use are:

Name	Description	Update URL	Eclipse Marketplace
<a href="#">eclipse-cs</a>	Enforces Checkstyle coding standards.	<a href="http://eclipse-cs.sf.net/update/">http://eclipse-cs.sf.net/update/</a>	<a href="#">install</a>
<a href="#">SpotBugs</a>	Analyze project at byte code level	<a href="https://spotbugs.github.io/eclipse/">https://spotbugs.github.io/eclipse/</a>	<a href="#">install</a>
<a href="#">UCDetector</a>	Unnecessary code detector	<a href="http://ucdetector.sourceforge.net/update">http://ucdetector.sourceforge.net/update</a>	<a href="#">install</a>

## Check Out

Our [Git Tutorial](#) explains how BaseX can be checked out from the [GitHub Repository](#) and embedded in Eclipse with EGit. The article also demonstrates how git can be used on command-line.

The basex repository contains the following subdirectories:

1. `basex-core` is the main project
2. `basex-api` contains the BaseX APIs (XML:DB, bindings in other languages) and HTTP Services ([REST](#), [RESTXQ](#), [WebDAV](#))
3. `basex-examples` includes some examples code for BaseX
4. `basex-tests` contains several unit and stress tests

If the "Problems" View contains errors or warnings, you may need to switch to Java 11 (*Windows* → *Preferences* → *Java* → *Installed JREs*).

## Start in Eclipse

1. Press *Run* → *Run...*
2. Create a new "Java Application" launch configuration
3. Select "basex" as "Project"
4. Choose a "Main class" (e.g., `org.basex.BaseXGUI` for the graphical user interface)
5. Launch the project via *Run*

## Alternative

You may as well use the standalone version of **Maven** to compile and run the project, use other IDEs such as **IntelliJ IDEA**.



---

# Chapter 78. Git

Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.

This page is part of the **Developer Section**. It describes how to use **git** to manage the BaseX sources.

## Using Git to contribute to BaseX

Our team uses **git** and **GitHub** to manage the source code. All team members have read/write access to the repository, and external contributors are welcome to fork the project.

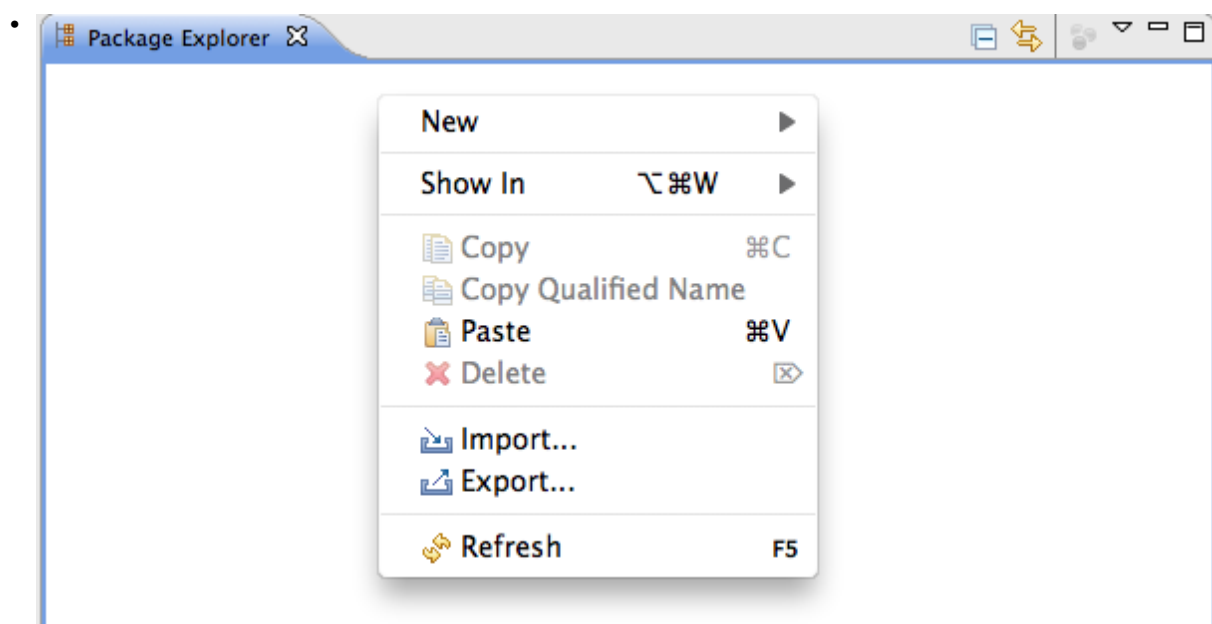
Git makes it easy to retain a full copy of the repository for yourself. To get started and running, simply *fork* BaseX:

1. Head over to <https://github.com> and create an account
2. Fork <https://github.com/BaseXdb/baseX>, so you have a version on your own
3. The forked project can then be cloned on your local machine, and changes can be pushed back to your remote repository

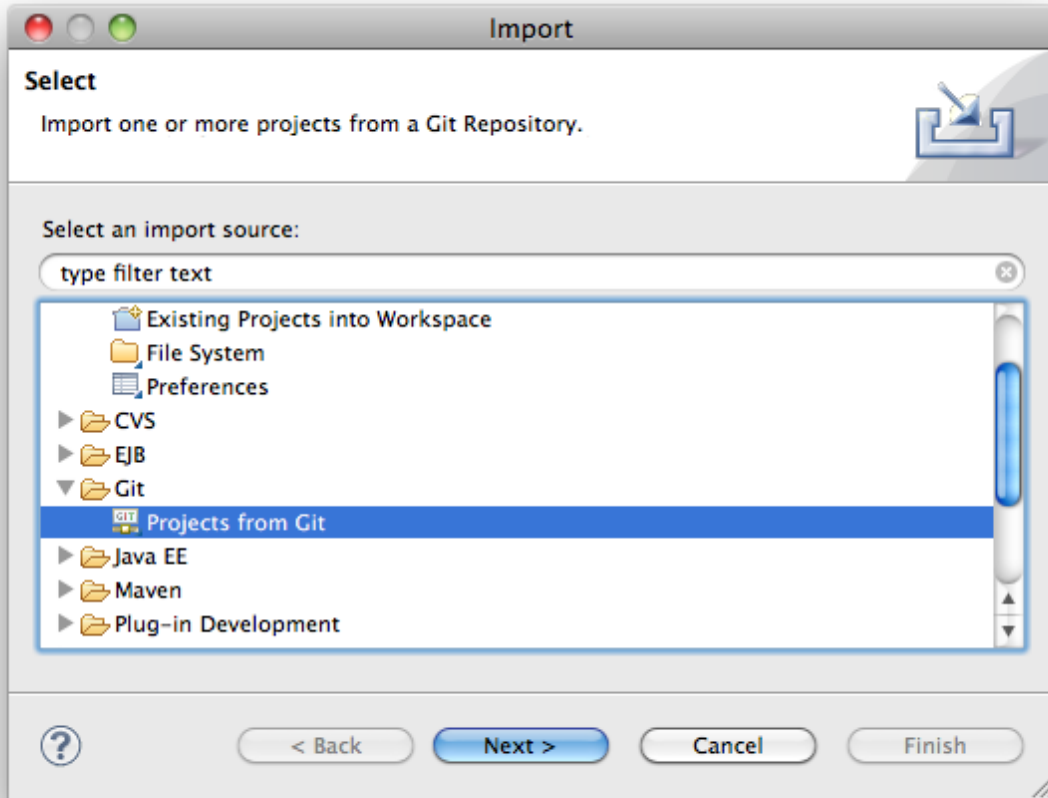
## Using Git & Eclipse

### Clone

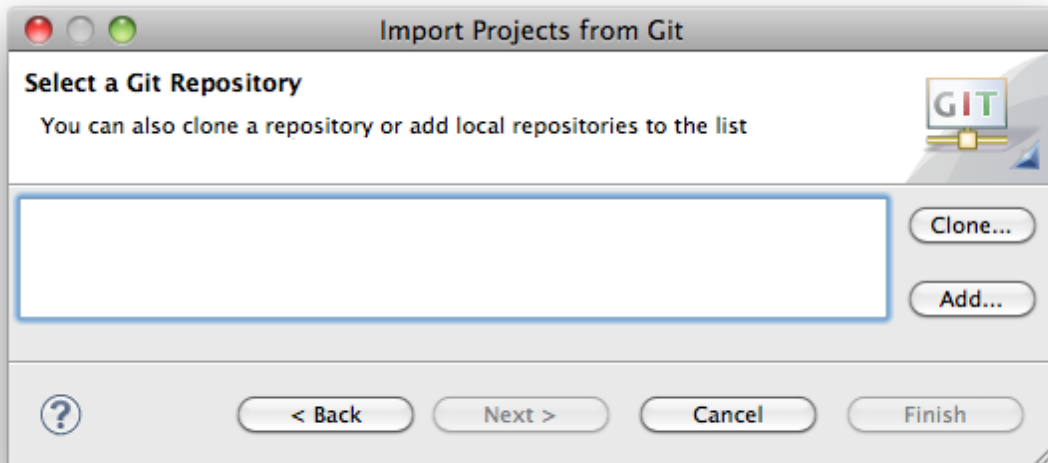
- In the **Package Explorer** to the left, use right-click and choose **Import...**
- Select **Projects from Git** and click **Next**
- Choose the **Clone** option to create a local copy of the remote repository. This copy will include the full project history
- Copy & Paste the GitHub URI in the Location field. If you want to use SSH, make sure you provided GitHub with your public key to allow write-access. If in doubt, use the https URI and authenticate yourself with your GitHub credentials. The read-only URI of the repository is `https://github.com/BaseXdb/baseX.git`.
- Select the master branch (or arbitrary branches you like)
- Now choose a location where the local repository is stored: Create `<workspace>/repos/BaseX` and click "**Finish**".



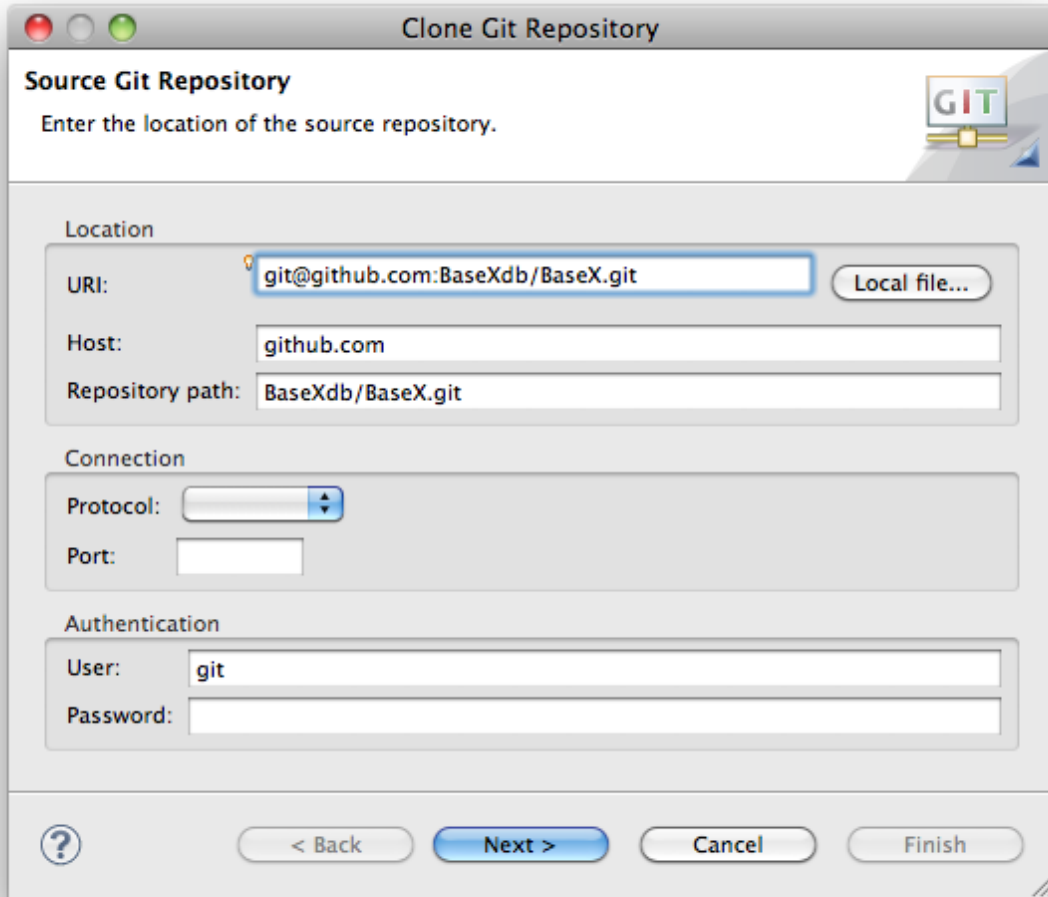
Package Explorer



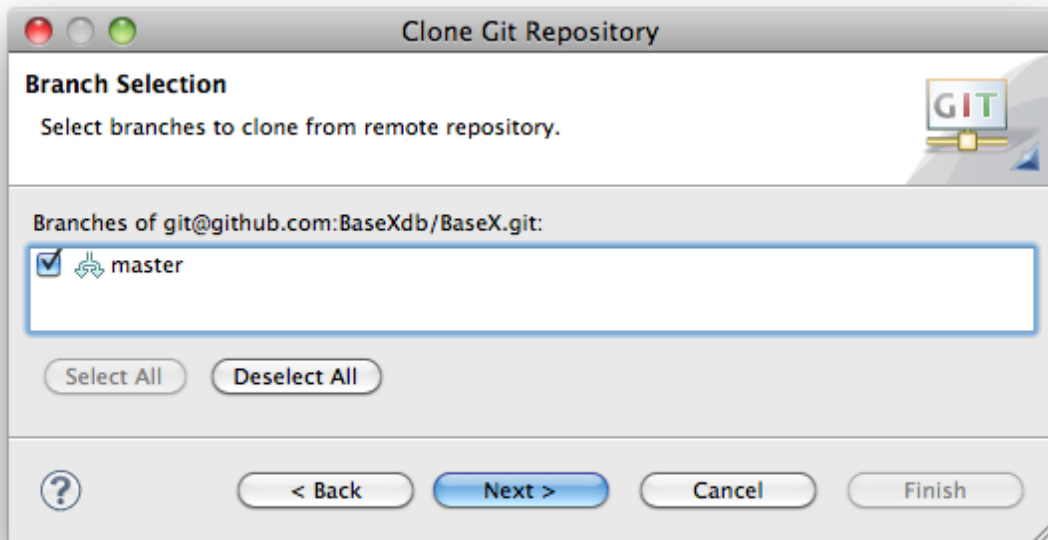
Projects from Git



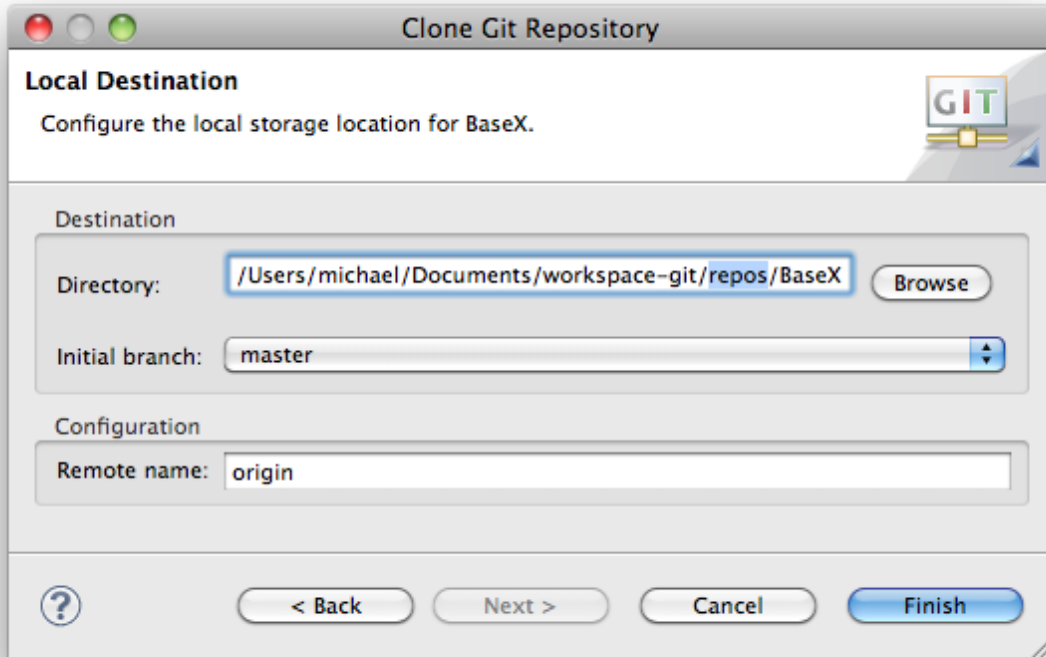
Clone



GitHub URI



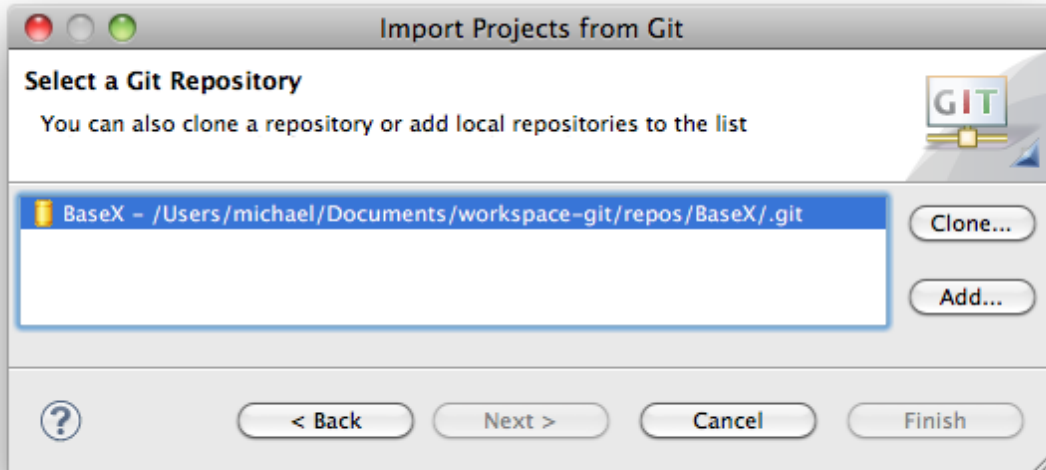
Select Branch



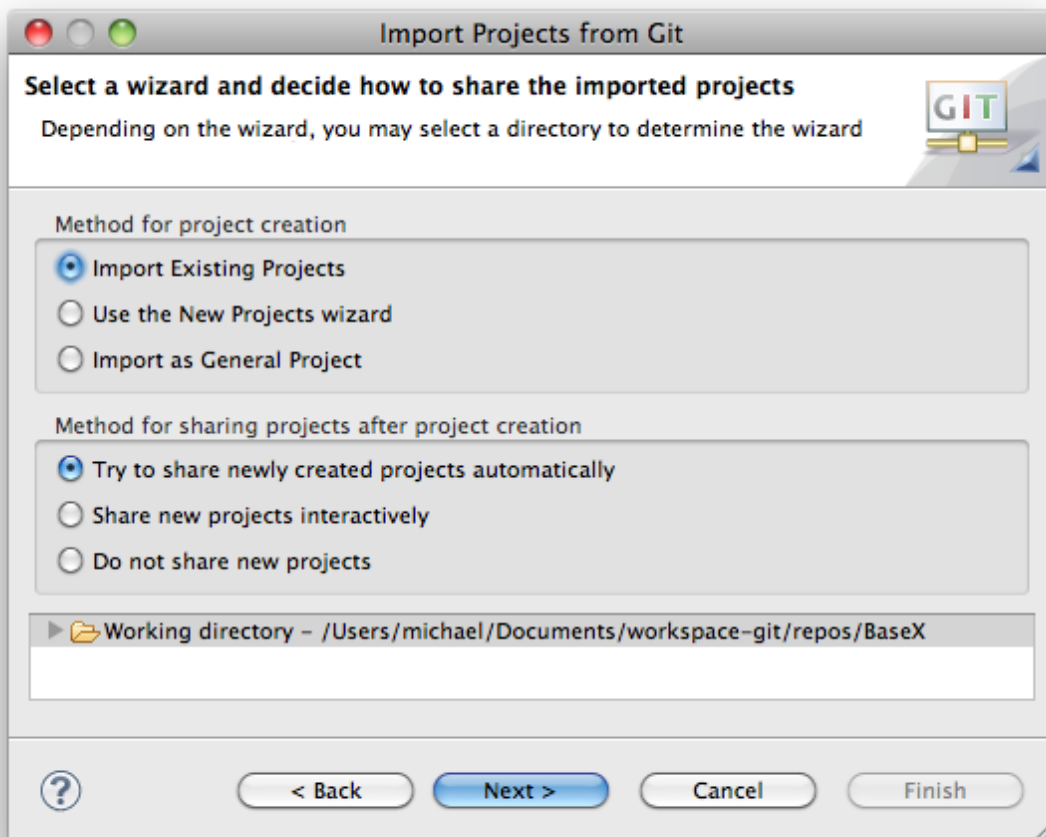
Location

## Create the project

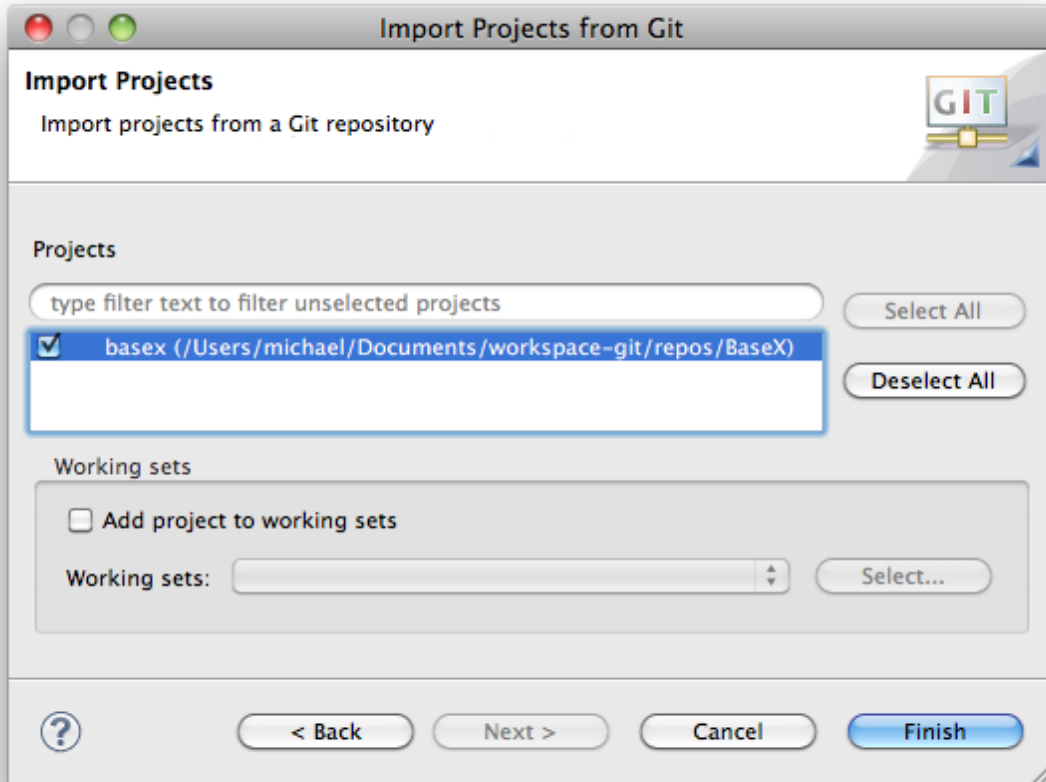
- Select our newly cloned repository and click Next
- Select "**Import Existing Projects**" and depending on your Eclipse version enable automatic sharing. More recent versions will not offer this feature as sharing is enabled by default.
- Click next to select the Project to import
- Check "basex" to check out and click finish
- You are now ready to contribute.



Select Repository



Import existing Projects



Select basex Project

## EGit & SSH

The Eclipse git plugin uses the [JSch](#) library, which had [problems with RSA SSH keys](#) in Linux and possibly other platforms. If the problem persists, the path to the native SSH executable can be assigned to the `GIT_SSH` variable.

## Using Git on Command-Line

**Note:** this is not intended to be a complete git reference; its purpose is to quickly introduce BaseX developers to the most commonly used git commands in the context of the BaseX project.

### Preparation

1. Create a GitHub user account: [here](#) (your github username will be referenced as \$username)
2. Set up SSH access to GitHub as described [here](#)
3. Create a fork of one of the BaseXdb projects (it will be referenced as \$project)
4. Choose a directory where the project will be created and make it your working directory (e. g. /home/user/myprojects)

### Clone Repository

```
$ git clone git@github.com:$username/$project.git
Cloning into $project...
Enter passphrase for key '/home/user/.ssh/id_rsa':
...
$ ls -d -1 $PWD/*
```

```
/home/user/myprojects/$project
```

Note that git automatically creates a directory where the repository content will be checked out.

## List Remote Repositories

```
$ git remote -v
origin  git@github.com:$username/$project.git (fetch)
origin  git@github.com:$username/$project.git (push)
```

Currently, there is only one remote repository; it is automatically registered during the clone operation. Git remembers this repository as the default repository for push/pull operations.

## List Local Changes

After some files have been changed locally, the changes can be seen as follows:

```
$ git diff
diff --git a/readme.txt b/readme.txt
index fabaeaa..cd09568 100644
--- a/readme.txt
+++ b/readme.txt
@@ -49,6 +49,10 @@ ADDING CHECKSTYLE
-----
- Enter the URL: http://eclipse-cs.sourceforge.net/update
- Follow the installation procedure and restart Eclipse
+USING GIT -----
Any kind of feedback is welcome; please check out the online documentation at
```

## Commit to Local Repository

**Note:** this commit operation does **not** commit into the remote repository!

First, it is needed to select the modified files which should be committed:

```
$ git add readme.txt
```

Then perform the actual commit:

```
$ git commit
[master 0fdelfb] Added TODO in section "USING GIT"
1 files changed, 4 insertions(+), 0 deletions(-)
```

Before executing the actual commit, git will open the default shell editor (determined using the \$EDITOR variable, usually vi) to enter a message describing the commit changes.

Alternative way is to commit all changed files, i. e. it is not needed to explicitly add the changed files:

```
$ git commit -a
[master 0fdelfb] Added TODO in section "USING GIT"
1 files changed, 4 insertions(+), 0 deletions(-)
```

## Pushing Changes to Remote Repository

```
$ git push
Enter passphrase for key '/home/user/.ssh/id_rsa':
Everything up-to-date
```

## Pulling Changes from Remote Repository

```
$ git pull
```

```
Enter passphrase for key '/home/user/.ssh/id_rsa':  
Already up-to-date.
```

## Add Upstream Repository

The upstream repository is the one from which the BaseX releases are made and the one from which the personal repository was forked.

```
$ git remote add upstream git@github.com:BaseXdb/$project.git  
  
$ git remote -v  
origin  git@github.com:$username/$project.git (fetch)  
origin  git@github.com:$username/$project.git (push)  
upstream      git@github.com:BaseXdb/$project.git (fetch)  
upstream      git@github.com:BaseXdb/$project.git (push)
```

## Pulling Changes from Upstream to Local Repository

When some changes are made in the upstream repository, they can be pulled to the local repository as follows:

```
$ git pull upstream master  
Enter passphrase for key '/home/user/.ssh/id_rsa':  
From github.com:BaseXdb/$project  
 * branch                master      -> FETCH_HEAD  
Already up-to-date.
```

The changes can then be pushed in the personal repository:

```
$ git push
```

Check out the links at the end of the page for more git options.

## Developing a new feature or bug fix

It is always a good idea to create a new branch for a new feature or a big fix you are working on. So first, let's make sure you have the most up-to-date source code. We assume, that you added BaseX as upstream repository as described above and you are currently in the *master* branch:

```
$ git pull upstream master
```

Now, we create a new branch, based on the master branch

```
$ git checkout -b new-feature  
Switched to a new branch 'new-feature'
```

You are now automatically switched to the *new-feature* branch. Now you can make all your changes in one or several commits. You can commit all changes using

```
$ git commit -a
```

Now, you want to push these changes to the repository on GitHub. Remember, that up to now your changes just reside on your local drive, so now you want to push it to your remote fork of BaseX. Simply do:

```
$ git push origin new-feature  
Counting objects: 318, done.  
Delta compression using up to 4 threads.  
Compressing objects: 100% (107/107), done.  
Writing objects: 100% (154/154), 22.96 KiB | 0 bytes/s, done.  
Total 154 (delta 93), reused 81 (delta 26)  
To git@github.com:$username/basex.git  
 * [new branch]      new-feature -> new-feature
```

You can now use your web browser and go to your fork of BaseX. You will see the following message:



BaseX Main Repository. <http://basex.org> — Edit

5,918 commits   13 branches   17 releases   19 contributors

Your recently pushed branches:

new-feature (1 minute ago) [Compare & pull request](#)

branch: master   basex / +

You can now click the "Compare & pull request" button. You can now review the changes you are going to push.

**Please review them carefully. Also, please give a meaningful comment so we can quickly determine what your changes are doing.** After clicking the "Create Pull request" button you are done and we will review your changes and either merge the pull request or get back to you.

## Links

- [GitHub: git Installation Guide](#)
- [Comprehensive Getting Starting Guide on GitHub](#)
- [The git book](#)

---

# Chapter 79. Maven

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#). It demonstrates how [Maven](#) is used to compile and run BaseX, and embed it into other projects.

## Using Maven

If you have [cloned our repository](#) and installed Maven on your machine, you can run the following commands from all local repository directories:

- `mvn compile` : the BaseX source files are compiled.
- `mvn package` : JAR archives are created in the `target` class directory, and all relevant libraries are created in the `lib` directory. Packaging is useful if you want to use the start scripts.
- `mvn install` : the JAR archive is installed to the local repository, and made available to other Maven projects. This is particularly useful if you are compiling a beta version of BaseX, for which no archives exist in the repositories.

By adding the flag `-DskipTests` you can skip the JUnit tests and speed up packaging. You may as well use [Eclipse and m2eclipse](#) to compile the BaseX sources.

There are several alternatives for starting BaseX:

- type in `java -cp target/classes org.basex.BaseX` in the `basex-core` directory to start BaseX on the command-line mode,
- type in `mvn jetty:run` in the `basex-api` directory to start BaseX with Jetty and the HTTP servers,
- run one of the [Start Scripts](#) contained in the `etc` directory

## Artifacts

You can easily embed BaseX into your own Maven projects by adding the following XML snippets to your `pom.xml` file:

```
<repositories>
  <repository>
    <id>basex</id>
    <name>BaseX Maven Repository</name>
    <url>http://files.basex.org/maven</url>
  </repository>
</repositories>
```

## BaseX Main Package

```
<dependency>
  <groupId>org.basex</groupId>
  <artifactId>basex</artifactId>
  <version>7.6</version>
</dependency>
```

## APIs and Services

...including APIs and the [REST](#), [RESTXQ](#) and [WebDAV](#) services:

```
<dependency>
  <groupId>org.basex</groupId>
  <artifactId>basex-api</artifactId>
```

```
<version>7.6</version>  
</dependency>
```

## XQJ API

The XQJ API is hosted at <http://xqj.net>:

```
<repository>  
  <id>xqj</id>  
  <name>XQJ Maven Repository</name>  
  <url>http://xqj.net/maven</url>  
</repository>  
...  
<dependency>  
  <groupId>net.xqj</groupId>  
  <artifactId>basex-xqj</artifactId>  
  <version>1.2.0</version>  
</dependency>  
<dependency>  
  <groupId>com.xqj2</groupId>  
  <artifactId>xqj2</artifactId>  
  <version>0.1.0</version>  
</dependency>  
<dependency>  
  <groupId>javax.xml.xquery</groupId>  
  <artifactId>xqj-api</artifactId>  
  <version>1.0</version>  
</dependency>
```

---

# Chapter 80. Releases

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#). It lists the official locations of major and minor BaseX versions:

## Official Releases

Our releases, packaged for various platforms, are linked from our homepage. They are updated every 2-8 weeks:

<https://basex.org/download/>

Our file server contains links to older releases as well (but we recommend everyone to stay up-to-date, as you'll get faster feedback working with the latest version):

<https://files.basex.org/releases/>

## Stable Snapshots

If you are a developer, we recommend you to regularly download one of our stable snapshots, which are packaged and uploaded several times a week:

<https://files.basex.org/releases/latest/>

Note that the offered snapshot files are replaced as soon as newer versions are available.

## Code Base

If you always want to be on the cutting edge, you are invited to [watch and clone](#) our GitHub repository:

<https://github.com/BaseXdb/basex/>

We do our best to keep our main repository stable as well.

## Maven Artifacts

The official releases and the current snapshots of both our core and our API packages are also deployed as [Maven](#) artifacts on our file server at regular intervals:

<https://files.basex.org/maven/org/basex/>

## Linux

BaseX can also be found in some Linux distributions, such as Debian, Ubuntu and archlinux:

- Debian: <https://packages.debian.org/sid/basex>
- Ubuntu: <https://launchpad.net/ubuntu/+source/basex>
- Arch Linux: <https://aur.archlinux.org/packages/basex>

---

# Chapter 81. Translations

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#). It describes how to translate BaseX into other (natural) languages.

Thanks to the following contributors, BaseX is currently available in 10 languages:

- **Dutch** : Huib Verweij
- **English** : BaseX Team
- **French** : Maud Ingarao
- **German** : BaseX Team
- **Hungarian** : Kiss-Kálmán Dániel
- **Indonesian** : Andria Arisal
- **Italian** : Massimo Franceschet
- **Japanese** : Toshio HIRAI and Kazuo KASHIMA
- **Mongolian** : Tuguldur Jamiyansharav
- **Romanian** : Adrian Berila
- **Russian** : Oleksandr Shpak and Max Shamaev
- **Spanish** : Carlos Marcos

It is easy to translate BaseX into your native language! This is how you can proceed:

## Working with the sources

If you have downloaded all BaseX sources via [Eclipse](#) or [Git](#), you may proceed as follows:

All language files are placed in the `src/main/resources/lang` directory of the main project:

1. Create a copy of an existing translation file (e.g., `English.lang`) and rename it to your target language (e.g. `Hawaiian.lang`).
2. Enter your name and contact information in the second line.
3. If you are using Eclipse, refresh the project (via *Project* → *Refresh*); if you are using Maven, type in `mvn compile`. Your new language file will be automatically detected.
4. Start the BaseX GUI, choose your language via *Options* → *Preferences...* and close the GUI.
5. Translate the texts in your language file and restart BaseX in order to see the changes.
6. Repeat the last step if you want to revise your translations.

If new strings are added to BaseX, they will automatically be added to your language files in English. The history view in GitHub is helpful to see which strings have recently been updated to a file.

## Updating BaseX.jar

You can directly add new languages to the JAR file. JAR files are nothing else than ZIP archives, and all language files are placed in the `lang` directory into the JAR file:

1. Unzip an existing translation file (e.g., `English.lang`) and rename it to your target language (e.g. `Hawaiian.lang`)
2. Enter your name and contact information in the second line and translate the texts
3. Update your JAR file by copying the translated file into the zipped `lang` directory. Your new language file will be automatically detected.
4. Start `BaseX.jar`, choose your language via *Options* → *Preferences...* and restart BaseX to see the changes

You can also directly assign a language in the `.baseX` configuration file, which is placed in your **home directory**. The language is assigned to the `LANG` option. In order to see where the text keys are used within BaseX, you can set `LANGKEY` to `true`.

---

# Part IX. Web Technology

---

---

# Chapter 82. RESTXQ

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page presents one of the [Web Application](#) services. It describes how to use the RESTXQ API of BaseX.

RESTXQ, introduced by [Adam Retter](#), is an API that facilitates the use of XQuery as a server-side processing language for the Web. It has been inspired by the Java [JAX-RS API](#): It provides a pre-defined set of XQuery 3.0 annotations for mapping HTTP requests to XQuery functions, which in turn generate and return HTTP responses.

Please note that BaseX provides various extensions to the original draft of the specification:

- Multipart types are supported, including `multipart/form-data`
- A `%rest:error` annotation can be used to catch XQuery errors
- Servlet errors can be redirected to other RESTXQ pages
- A [RESTXQ Module](#) provides some helper functions
- Parameters are implicitly cast to the type of the function argument
- The [Path Annotation](#) can contain regular expressions
- `%input` annotations, support for input-specific content-type parameters
- `%rest:single` annotation to cancel running RESTXQ functions
- Quality factors in the [Accept header](#) will be evaluated
- Support for server-side quality factors in the `%rest:produces` annotation
- Better support for the OPTIONS and HEAD methods

## Introduction

### Preliminaries

The RESTXQ service is accessible via `http://localhost:8984/`.

All RESTXQ [annotations](#) are assigned to the `http://exquery.org/ns/restxq` namespace, which is statically bound to the `rest` prefix. A *Resource Function* is an XQuery function that has been marked up with RESTXQ annotations. When an HTTP request comes in, a resource function will be invoked that matches the constraints indicated by its annotations.

If a RESTXQ URL is requested, the `RESTXQPATH` module directory and its subdirectories will be traversed, and all [XQuery files](#) will be parsed for functions with RESTXQ annotations. Subdirectories that include an `.ignore` file will be skipped.

To speed up processing, the functions of the existing XQuery modules are automatically cached in main memory:

- Functions will be invalidated and parsed again if the timestamp of their module changes.
- File monitoring can be adjusted via the `PARSERESTXQ` option. In productive environments with a high load, it may be recommendable to change the timeout, or completely disable monitoring.
- If files are replaced while the web server is running, the RESTXQ module cache should be explicitly invalidated by calling the static root path `/.init` or by calling the `rest:init` function.



## Examples

A first RESTXQ function is shown below:

```
module namespace page = 'http://basex.org/examples/web-page';

declare %rest:path("hello/{$who}") %rest:GET function page:hello($who) {
  <response>
    <title>Hello { $who }!</title>
  </response>
};
```

If the URI <http://localhost:8984/hello/World> is accessed, the result will be:

```
<response>
  <title>Hello World!</title>
</response>
```

The next function demonstrates a POST request:

```
declare
  %rest:path("/form")
  %rest:POST
  %rest:form-param("message", "{$message}", "(no message)")
  %rest:header-param("User-Agent", "{$agent}")
function page:hello-postman(
  $message as xs:string,
  $agent as xs:string*
) as element(response) {
  <response type='form'>
    <message>{ $message }</message>
    <user-agent>{ $agent }</user-agent>
  </response>
};
```

If you post something (e.g. using curl or the embedded form at <http://localhost:8984/>)...

```
curl -i -X POST --data "message='CONTENT'" http://localhost:8984/form
```

...you will receive something similar to the following result:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: application/xml; charset=UTF-8
Content-Length: 107
Server: Jetty(8.1.11.v20130520)
```

```
<response type="form">
  <message>'CONTENT'</message>
  <user-agent>curl/7.31.0</user-agent>
</response>
```

## Request

This section shows how annotations are used to handle and process HTTP requests.

### Constraints

Constraints restrict the HTTP requests that a resource function may process.

### Paths

A resource function must have a single *Path Annotation* with a single string as argument. The function will be called if a URL matches the path segments and templates of the argument. *Path templates* contain variables in

curly brackets, and map the corresponding segments of the request path to the arguments of the resource function. The first slash in the path is optional.

The following example contains a path annotation with three segments and two templates. One of the function arguments is further specified with a data type, which means that the value for `$variable` will be cast to an `xs:integer` before being bound:

```
declare %rest:path("/a/path/{$with}/some/{$variable}")
  function page:test($with, $variable as xs:integer) { ... };
```

Variables can be enhanced by regular expressions:

```
(: Matches all paths with "app" as first, a number as second, and "order" as third
segment :)
declare %rest:path("app/{$code=[0-9]+}/order")
  function page:order($code) { ... };

(: Matches all other all paths starting with "app/" :)
declare %rest:path("app/{$path=.*}")
  function page:others($path) { ... };
```

If multiple path candidates are found for the request, the one with more segments will be preferred.

## Content Negotiation

Functions can be restricted to specific Media Types. The default type is `*/*`. Multiple types can either be specified by a single or by multiple annotations.

### Consuming Data

A function will only be taken into consideration if the HTTP `Content-Type` header of the request matches one of the given types:

```
declare
  %rest:POST("{ $body}")
  %rest:path("/xml")
  %rest:consumes("application/xml")
  %rest:consumes("text/xml")
function page:xml($body) { $body };
```

### Producing Data

A function will only be chosen if the HTTP `Accept` header of the request matches one of the given types:

```
declare
  %rest:path("/xml")
  %rest:produces("application/xml", "text/xml")
function page:xml() { <xml/> };
```

Note that the annotations will *not* affect the type of the actual response: You will need to supply an additional `%output:media-type` annotation or (if a single function may produce results of different types) generate an apt [Custom Response](#).

### Quality Factors

A client can supply quality factors to influence the server-side function selection process. If a client sends the following HTTP header with quality factors...

```
Accept: */*;q=0.5,text/html;q=1.0
```

...and if two RESTXQ functions exist for the addressed path with two different annotations for producing data...

```
declare function %rest:produces("text/html") ...
```

```
...
declare function %rest:produces("*/*") ...
```

...the first of these function will be chosen, as the quality factor for `text/html` documents is highest.

As we cannot ensure that the client may supply quality factors, the selection process can also be controlled server-side. The `qs` parameter can be attached server-side to the Media Type. If multiple functions are left in the selection process, the one with the highest quality factor will be favored:

```
declare function %rest:produces("application/json;qs=1") ...
...
declare function %rest:produces("*/*;qs=0.5") ...
```

## HTTP Methods

### Default Methods

The HTTP method annotations are equivalent to all **HTTP request methods** except `TRACE` and `CONNECT`. Zero or more methods may be used on a function; if none is specified, the function will be invoked for each method.

The following function will be called if `GET` or `POST` is used as request method:

```
declare %rest:GET %rest:POST %rest:path("/post")
function page:post() { "This was a GET or POST request" };
```

The `POST` and `PUT` annotations may optionally take a string literal in order to map the HTTP request body to a **function argument**. Once again, the target variable must be embraced by curly brackets:

```
declare %rest:PUT("{ $body }") %rest:path("/put")
function page:put($body) { "Request body: " || $body };
```

### Custom Methods

Custom HTTP methods can be specified with the `%rest:method` annotation. An optional body variable can be supplied as second argument:

```
declare
  %rest:path("binary-size")
  %rest:method("SIZE", "{ $body }")
function page:patch(
  $body as xs:base64Binary
) {
  "Request method: " || request:method(),
  "Size of body: " || bin:length($body)
};
```

If an `OPTIONS` request is received, and if no function is defined, an automatic response will be generated, which includes an `Allow` header with all supported methods.

If a `HEAD` request is received, and if no function is defined, the corresponding `GET` function will be processed, but the response body will be discarded.

## Content Types

The body of a `POST` or `PUT` request will be converted to an XQuery item. Conversion can be controlled by specifying a content type. It can be further influenced by specifying additional content-type parameters:

Content-Type	Parameters ( <code>;name=value</code> )	Type of resulting XQuery item
<code>text/xml, application/xml</code>		<code>document-node()</code>
<code>text/*</code>		<code>xs:string</code>
<code>application/json</code>	<b>JSON Options</b>	<code>document-node()</code> or <code>map(*)</code>

text/html	HTML Options	document-node()
text/comma-separated-values	CSV Options	document-node() or map(*)
others		xs:base64Binary
multipart/*		sequence (see next paragraph)

For example, if `application/json;lax=yes` is specified as content type, the input will be transformed to JSON, and the lax QName conversion rules will be applied, as described in the [JSON Module](#).

## Input options

Conversion options for JSON, CSV and HTML can also be specified via annotations with the input prefix. The following function interprets the input as text with the CP1252 encoding and treats the first line as header:

```
declare
  %rest:path("/store.csv")
  %rest:POST("{ $csv}")
  %input:csv("header=true,encoding=CP1252")
function page:store-csv($csv as document-node()) {
  "Number of rows: " || count($csv/csv/record)
};
```

## Multipart Types

The single parts of a multipart message are represented as a sequence, and each part is converted to an XQuery item as described in the last paragraph.

A function that is capable of handling multipart types is identical to other RESTXQ functions:

```
declare
  %rest:path("/multipart")
  %rest:POST("{ $data}")
  %rest:consumes("multipart/mixed") (: optional :)
function page:multipart($data as item(*) {
  "Number of items: " || count($data)
};
```

## Parameters

The following annotations can be used to bind request values to function arguments. Values will implicitly be cast to the type of the argument.

### Query Parameters

The value of the *first parameter*, if found in the [query component](#), will be assigned to the variable specified as *second parameter*. If no value is specified in the HTTP request, all additional parameters will be bound to the variable (if no additional parameter is given, an empty sequence will be bound):

```
declare
  %rest:path("/params")
  %rest:query-param("id", "{ $id}")
  %rest:query-param("add", "{ $add}", 42, 43, 44)
function page:params($id as xs:string?, $add as xs:integer+) {
  <result id="{ $id }" sum="{ sum($add) }"/>
};
```

### HTML Form Fields

Form parameters are specified the same way as [query parameters](#):

```
%rest:form-param("city", "{ $city}", "no-city-specified")
```

The values are the result of HTML forms submitted with the (default) content type `application/x-www-form-urlencoded`:

```
<form action="/process" method="POST" enctype="application/x-www-form-urlencoded">
  <input type="text" name="city"/>
  <input type="submit"/>
</form>
```

## File Uploads

Files can be uploaded to the server by using the content type `multipart/form-data` (the HTML5 `multiple` attribute enables the upload of multiple files):

```
<form action="/upload" method="POST" enctype="multipart/form-data">
  <input type="file" name="files" multiple="multiple"/>
  <input type="submit"/>
</form>
```

The file contents are placed in a `map`, with the filename serving as key. The following example shows how uploaded files can be stored in a temporary directory:

```
declare
  %rest:POST
  %rest:path("/upload")
  %rest:form-param("files", "{$files}")
function page:upload($files) {
  for $name in map:keys($files)
  let $content := $files($name)
  let $path := file:temp-dir() || $name
  return (
    file:write-binary($path, $content),
    <file name="{ $name }" size="{ file:size($path) }"/>
  )
};
```

## HTTP Headers

Header parameters are specified the same way as [query parameters](#):

```
%rest:header-param("User-Agent", "{$user-agent}")
%rest:header-param("Referer", "{$referer}", "none")
```

## Cookies

Cookie parameters are specified the same way as [query parameters](#):

```
%rest:cookie-param("username", "{$user}")
%rest:cookie-param("authentication", "{$auth}", "no_auth")
```

## Query Execution

In many web search scenarios, user input from browser forms is processed and search results are returned. Such operations can be made more interactive by sending a new search request to the server with each key click. However, this may lead to many parallel server-side requests, from which only the result of the last request will be relevant for the client.

With the `%rest:single` annotation, it can be enforced that only one instance of a function will run at the same time and for the same client. If the same function will be called for the second time, a currently executed query will be stopped, and the HTTP error code 460 will be returned instead:

```
(: If fast enough, returns the result. Otherwise, if called again, raises 460 :)
declare
  %rest:path("/search")
  %rest:query-param("term", "{$term}")
```

```

%rest:single
function page:search($term as xs:string) {
  <ul>{
    for $result in db:get('large-db')//*[text() = $term]
    return <li>{ $result }</li>
  }</ul>
};

```

By adding a string value to with the annotation, functions can be bundled together, and a running query can be canceled by calling another one that has the same annotation value. This is shown by another example, in which the first function can be interrupted by the second one. If you call both functions in separate browser tabs, you will note that the first tab will return 460, and the second one will return `<xml>stopped</xml>`.

```

declare
  %rest:path("/compute")
  %rest:single("EXPENSIVE")
function local:compute() {
  (1 to 1000000000000000)[. = 0]
};

declare
  %rest:path("/stop")
  %rest:single("EXPENSIVE")
function local:stop() {
  <xml>stopped</xml>
};

```

The following things should be noted:

- If a query will be canceled, there will be no undesirable side effects. For example, it won't be possible to abort a query if it is currently updating the database or performing any other I/O operations. As a result, the termination of a running query can take some more time as expected.
- The currently executed function is bound to the current session. This way, a client will not be able to cancel requests from other clients. As a result, functions can only be stopped if there was at least one previous successful response, in which initial session data was returned to the client.

## Response

By default, a successful request is answered with the HTTP status code 200 (OK) and is followed by the given content. An erroneous request leads to an error code and an optional error message (e.g. 404 for "resource not found").

A `Server-Timing` HTTP header is attached to each response. It indicates how much time was spent for parsing, compiling, evaluating and serializing the query. The last value will not necessarily reflect the full time for serializing the result, as the header is generated before the result is sent to the client. Server-side serialization can be enforced by annotating a function with the `%rest:single` annotation.

## Custom Response

Custom responses can be generated in XQuery by returning an `rest:response` element, an `http:response` child node that matches the syntax of the [EXPath HTTP Client Module](#) specification, and optional child nodes that will be serialized as usual. A function that yields a response on an unknown resource may look as follows:

```

declare %output:method("text") %rest:path("/") function page:error404() {
  <rest:response>
    <http:response status="404">
      <http:header name="Content-Language" value="en"/>
      <http:header name="Content-Type" value="text/plain; charset=utf-8"/>
    </http:response>
  </rest:response>,
  "The requested resource is not available."
};

```

```
};
```

## Forwards and Redirects

### Redirects

The server can invite the client (e.g., the web browser) to make a second request to another URL by sending a 302 response:

```
<rest:response>
  <http:response status="302">
    <http:header name="Location" value="new-location"/>
  </http:response>
</rest:response>
```

The convenience function `web:redirect` can be called to create such a response.

In the XQuery context, redirects are particularly helpful if **Updates** are performed. An updating request may send a redirect to a second function that generates a success message, or evaluates an updated database:

```
declare %updating %rest:path('/app/init') function local:create() {
  db:create('app', <root/>, 'root.xml'),
  db:output(web:redirect('/app/ok'))
};

declare %rest:path('/app/ok') function local:ok() {
  'Stored documents: ' || count(db:get('app'))
};
```

### Forwards

A server-side redirect is called forwarding. It reduces traffic among client and server, and the forwarding will not change the URL seen from the client's perspective:

```
<rest:forward>new-location</rest:forward>
```

The fragment can also be created with the convenience function `web:forward`.

### Output

The content-type of a response can be influenced by the user via **Serialization Parameters**. The steps are described in the **REST** chapter. In RESTXQ, serialization parameters can be specified in the query prolog, via annotations, or within the REST response element:

### Query Prolog

In main modules, serialization parameters may be specified in the query prolog. These parameters will then apply to all functions in a module. In the following example, the content type of the response is overwritten with the `media-type` parameter:

```
declare option output:media-type 'text/plain';

declare %rest:path("version1") function page:version1() {
  'Keep it simple, stupid'
};
```

### Annotations

Global serialization parameters can be overwritten via `%output` annotations. The following example serializes XML nodes as JSON, using the **JsonML** format:

```
declare
  %rest:path("cities")
```

```

%output:method("json")
%output:json("format=jsonml")
function page:cities() {
  element cities {
    db:get('factbook')//city/name
  }
}
};

```

The next function, when called, generates XHTML headers, and `text/html` will be set as content type:

```

declare
  %rest:path("done")
  %output:method("xhtml")
  %output:omit-xml-declaration("no")
  %output:doctype-public("-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN")
  %output:doctype-system("http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd")
function page:html() {
  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
    <body>done</body>
  </html>
}
};

```

## Response Element

Serialization parameters can also be specified in a REST response element in a query. Serialization parameters will be overwritten:

```

declare %rest:path("version3") function page:version3() {
  <rest:response>
    <output:serialization-parameters>
      <output:media-type value='text/plain' />
    </output:serialization-parameters>
  </rest:response>,
  'Not that simple anymore'
}
};

```

## Error Handling

If an error is raised when RESTXQ code is parsed, compiled or evaluated, an HTTP response with the status code 500 is generated.

By default, all server-side errors will be passed on to the client. This is particularly helpful during the development process. In a productive environment, however, it is advisable not to expose errors to the client. This can be realized via the `RESTXQERRORS` option. If disabled,

- XQuery modules that cannot be parsed will be ignored and
- full error messages and stack traces will be suppressed and not included in the HTTP response.

The full error information can still be looked up in the database logs.

## Raise Errors

With `web:error`, you can abort query evaluation, enforce a premature HTTP response and report errors back to the client:

```

declare
  %rest:path("/teapot")
function page:teapot() {
  web:error(418, "I'm a pretty teapot")
}
};

```

In contrast to the standard `fn:error` function, a status code can be supplied, and the response body will only contain the specified error message and no stack trace.



## Catch XQuery Errors

XQuery runtime errors can be processed via *error annotations*. Error annotations have one or more arguments, which represent the error codes to be caught. The codes equal the names of the `try/catch` construct:

Precedence	Syntax	Example
1	prefix:name, Q{uri}name	err:FORG0001, Q{http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors}FORG0001
2	prefix:*, Q{uri}*	err:*, Q{http://www.w3.org/2005/xqt-errors}*
3	*:name	*:FORG0001
4	*	*

All error codes that are specified for a function must have the same precedence. The following rules apply when catching errors:

- Codes with a higher precedence (smaller number) will be given preference.
- A global RESTXQ error will be raised if two functions with conflicting codes are found.

Similar to `try/catch`, the pre-defined variables (`code`, `description`, `value`, `module`, `line-number`, `column-number`, `additional`) can be bound to variables via *error parameter annotations*, which are specified the same way as [query parameters](#).

Errors may occur unexpectedly. However, they can also be triggered by a query, as demonstrated by the following example:

```
declare
  %rest:path("/check/{$user}")
function page:check($user) {
  if($user = ('jack', 'lisa'))
  then 'User exists'
  else fn:error(xs:QName('err:user'), $user)
};

declare
  %rest:error("err:user")
  %rest:error-param("description", "{$user}")
function page:user-error($user) {
  'User "' || $user || '" is unknown'
};
```

## Catch HTTP Errors

Errors that occur outside RESTXQ can be caught by adding `error-page` elements with an error code and a target location to the `web.xml` configuration file (find more details in the [Jetty Documentation](#)):

```
<error-page>
  <error-code>404</error-code>
  <location>/error404</location>
</error-page>
```

The target location may be another RESTXQ function. The `request:attribute` function can be used to request details on the caught error:

```
declare %rest:path("/error404") function page:error404() {
  "URL: " || request:attribute("javax.servlet.error.request_uri") || ", " ||
  "Error message: " || request:attribute("javax.servlet.error.message")
```

```
};
```

## User Authentication

If you want to provide restricted access to parts of a web applications, you will need to check permissions before returning a response to the client. The [Permissions](#) layer is a nice abstraction for defining permission checks.

## Functions

The [Request Module](#) contains functions for accessing data related to the current HTTP request. Two modules exist for setting and retrieving server-side session data of the current user ([Session Module](#)) and all users known to the HTTP server ([Sessions Module](#)). The [RESTXQ Module](#) provides functions for requesting RESTXQ base URIs and generating a [WADL description](#) of all services. Please note that the namespaces of all of these modules must be explicitly specified via module imports in the query prolog.

The following example returns the current host name:

```
import module namespace request = "http://exquery.org/ns/request";

declare %rest:path("/host-name") function page:host() {
  'Remote host name: ' || request:remote-hostname()
};
```

## References

Documentation:

- [RESTXQ Specification](#) , First Draft
- [RESTful XQuery, Standardised XQuery 3.0 Annotations for REST](#) . Paper, XMLPrague, 2012
- [RESTXQ](#) . Slides, MarkLogic User Group London, 2012
- [Web Application Development](#) . Slides from XMLPrague 2013

Examples:

- Sample code combining XQuery and JavaScript: [Materials](#) and [paper](#) from Amanda Galtman, Balisage 2016.
- [DBA](#) : The Database Administration interface, bundled with the full distributions of BaseX.

## Changelog

Version 9.6

- Updated: [Response](#): Server-Timing HTTP header.

Version 9.5

- Updated: [Raise Errors](#): Status code 400 changed to 500, omit stack trace.

Version 9.3

- Updated: [Custom Methods](#): Better support for the OPTIONS and HEAD methods.
- Updated: [XQuery Errors](#): Suppress stack trace and error code in the HTTP response.
- Removed: `rest:redirect` element (`web:redirect` can be used instead)

Version 9.2

- Updated: Ignore XQuery modules that cannot be parsed

Version 9.0

- Added: Support for server-side quality factors in the `%rest:produces` annotation
- Updated: Status code 410 was replaced with 460
- Removed: `restxq` prefix

Version 8.4

- Added: `%rest:single` annotation

Version 8.1

- Added: support for input-specific content-type parameters
- Added: `%input` annotations

Version 8.0

- Added: Support for regular expressions in the `Path Annotation`
- Added: Evaluation of quality factors that are supplied in the `Accept header`

Version 7.9

- Updated: `XQuery Errors`, extended error annotations
- Added: `%rest:method`

Version 7.7

- Added: `Error Handling`, `File Uploads`, `Multipart Types`
- Updated: RESTXQ function may now also be specified in main modules (suffix: `*.xq`).
- Updated: the RESTXQ prefix has been changed from `restxq` to `rest`.
- Updated: parameters are implicitly cast to the type of the function argument
- Updated: the RESTXQ root url has been changed to `http://localhost:8984/`

Version 7.5

- Added: new XML elements `<rest:redirect/>` and `<rest:forward/>`

---

# Chapter 83. Permissions

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page presents the web application permission layer of BaseX, which can be used along with [RESTXQ](#).

Non-trivial web applications require a user management: Users need to log in to a web site in order to get access to protected pages; Depending on their status (role, user group, ...), they can be offered different views; etc. The light-weight permission layer simplifies permission checks a lot:

- Permission strings can be attached to RESTXQ functions.
- With security functions, you can ensure that access to RESTXQ functions will only be granted to clients with sufficient permissions.

## Preliminaries

All permission [annotations](#) are assigned to the `http://basex.org/modules/perm` namespace, which is statically bound to the `perm` prefix.

## Annotations

### Permission Strings

With the `%perm:allow` annotation, one or more permission strings can be attached to a RESTXQ function:

```
(::~ Login page (visible to everyone). ::)
declare
  %rest:path("/")
  %output:method("html")
function local:login() {
  <html>
    Please log in:
    <form action="/login-check" method="post">
      <input name="name"/>
      <input type="password" name="pass"/>
      <input type="submit"/>
    </form>
  </html>
};

(::~ Main page (restricted to logged in users). ::)
declare
  %rest:path("/main")
  %output:method("html")
function local:main() {
  <html>
    Welcome to the main page:
    <a href="/main/admin">admin area</a>,
    <a href="/logout">log out</a>.
  </html>
};

(::~ Admin page. ::)
declare
  %rest:path("/main/admin")
  %output:method("html")
  %perm:allow("admin")
function local:admin() {
  <html>
```

```
Welcome to the admin page.
</html>
};
```

The permission strings may denote ids, users, user groups, applications, or any other realms. It is completely up to the user which strings are used, and which functions will be annotated. In the given example code, only the last function has a `%perm:allow` annotation.

## Checking Permissions

Functions that are marked with `%perm:check` are so-called *Security Functions*. These functions will be invoked before the actually requested function will be evaluated. Two arguments can be specified with the annotation:

- A path can be specified as first argument:
  - The security function will only be called if the path of the client request starts with the specified path.
  - In contrast to RESTXQ, all subordinate paths will be accepted as well.
  - If no path argument is specified, `/` is assigned instead.
- A variable can be specified in the second argument. A map with the following keys will be bound to that variable:
  - `allow`: Permission strings attached to the requested function; may be empty.
  - `path`: Original path of the client request.
  - `method`: Method of the client request (GET, POST, ...).
  - `authorization`: Value of the HTTP Authorization header string; may be empty.

An example:

```
import module namespace Session = 'http://basex.org/modules/session';

(:~
 : Global permission checks.
 : Rejects any usage of the HTTP DELETE method.
 :)
declare %perm:check %rest:DELETE function local:check() {
  error((), 'Access denied to DELETE method.')
};

(:~
 : Permission check: Area for logged-in users.
 : Checks if a session id exists for the current user; if not, redirects to the
 : login page.
 :)
declare %perm:check('/main') function local:check-app() {
  let $user := Session:get('id')
  where empty($user)
  return web:redirect('/')
};

(:~
 : Permissions: Admin area.
 : Checks if the current user is admin; if not, redirects to the main page.
 : @param $perm map with permission data
 :)
declare %perm:check('/main/admin', '{$perm}') function local:check-admin($perm) {
  let $user := Session:get('id')
  where not(user:list-details($user)/@permission = $perm?allow)
  return web:redirect('/main')
};
```

Some notes:

- If several permission functions are available that match the user request, all of them will be called one after another. The function with the shortest path will be called first. Accordingly, in the example, if the `/main/admin` URL is requested, all three security functions will be run in the given order.
- If a security function raises an error or returns any XQuery value (e.g. a **redirection** to another web page), no other functions will be invoked. This means that the function that has been requested by the client will only be evaluated if all security functions yield no result and no error.
- As shown in the first function, the `%perm:check` annotation can be combined with other RESTXQ annotations, excluding `%rest:path` and `%rest:error`.
- In the example, it is assumed that a logged in user is bound to a session variable (see further below).

The permission layer was designed to provide as much flexibility as possible to the web application developer: It is possible to completely work without permission strings, and realize all access checks based on the request information (path, method, and properties returned by the **Request Module**). It is also possible (but rather unhandy) to accompany each RESTXQ function by its individual security function. The bare minimum is a single `%perm:check` function. Without this function, existing `%perm:allow` annotations will be ignored.

## Authentication

There are numerous ways how users can be authenticated in a web application (via OAuth, LDAP, ...). The approach demonstrated on this page is pretty basic and straightforward:

- A login HTML page allows you to enter your credentials (username, password).
- A login check function checks if the typed in data matches one of the database users. If the input is valid, a session id will be set, and the user will be redirected to the main page. Otherwise, the redirection points back to the login page.
- A logout page deletes the session id.

The following lines of code complete the image:

```
declare
  %rest:path("/login-check")
  %rest:query-param("name", "{$name}")
  %rest:query-param("pass", "{$pass}")
function local:login($name, $pass) {
  try {
    user:check($name, $pass),
    Session:set('id', $name),
    web:redirect("/main")
  } catch user:* {
    web:redirect("/")
  }
};

declare
  %rest:path("/logout")
function local:logout() {
  Session:delete('id'),
  web:redirect("/")
};
```

For a full round trip, check out the source code of the **DBA** that is bundled with BaseX.

## Changelog

Version 9.1

- Added: `authorization` value in `permissions` map variable

The Module was introduced with Version 9.0.

---

# Chapter 84. WebSockets

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page presents one of the [Web Application](#) services. It describes how to use the WebSockets API of BaseX. WebSocket is a communication protocol for providing **full-duplex** communication: Data can be sent in both directions and simultaneously.

Please note that the current WebSocket implementation relies on Jetty's WebSocket servlet API. Other web servers may be supported in future versions.

## Introduction

### Protocol

Use WebSockets if you have to exchange data with a high frequency or if you have to send messages from the server to the client without techniques like [polling](#). In contrast to REST, WebSockets use a single URL for the whole communication.

The WebSocket protocol was standardized in [RFC 6455](#) by the IETF. After an initial HTTP request, all communication takes place over a single TCP connection. Unlike the HTTP protocol, a connection will be kept alive, and a server can send unsolicited data to the client.

For establishing a WebSocket connection, a handshake request is sent by the client. The web server returns a handshake response. If the handshake is successful, the persistent connection will be open until the client or the server closes it, an error occurs or a timeout happens. It is possible to transmit all kind of data, binary or text. **The BaseX WebServer handles the handshake completely.** You just have to define some limits of the connection in the `web.xml` and specify functions for WebSocket events like `onConnect` and `onMessage`.

Notice that there is no specification of a message protocol. The WebSocket protocol just specifies the message architecture but not how the payload of the messages is formatted. To agree on a format between the server and the client one can use sub-protocols.

Some older browsers don't support the WebSocket protocol. Therefore you can use fallback options like Ajax. JavaScript client libraries like SockJS can be used for building client applications. The library takes care of how to establish the real-time connection. If the WebSocket protocol isn't supported, it uses polling. You have to provide server functions for the fallback solutions if you have to support fallbacks.

### Preliminaries

There are a bunch of annotations depending to WebSockets for annotating XQuery functions. When a WebSocket message arrives at the server, an XQuery function will be invoked that matches the constraints indicated by its annotations.

If a WebSocket function is requested (like connecting to the path `/`, sending a message to the path `/path, ...`), the module directory and its subdirectories will be traversed, and all [XQuery files](#) will be parsed for functions with WebSocket annotations. Subdirectories that include an `.ignore` file will be skipped.

To speed up processing, the functions of the existing XQuery modules are automatically cached in main memory. For further information on cache handling, check out the [RESTXQ introduction](#).

### Configuration

- The WebSocket servlet can be enabled and disabled in the `web.xml` configuration file. You can specify further configuration options, such as `maxIdleTime`, `maxTextMessageSize`, and `maxBinaryMessageSize`.
- The default limit for messages is 64 KB. If you a message exceeds the default or the specified limit, an error will be raised and the connection will be closed.



## Annotations

To tag functions as WebSocket functions you have to use **annotations**. The annotation is written after the keyword *declare* and before the keyword *function*. For the context of WebSockets there are some annotations listed below. Functions which are annotated with a WebSocket annotation will be called if the appropriate event occurs. For example, the function annotated with `ws:connect('/')` will be executed if a client establishes a connection with the WebSocket root path (which is, by default, `ws/`). By using annotations, it's easy to provide an API for your WebSocket connection. You just have to specify what to do when a WebSocket Event occurs, annotate it with the corresponding annotation and the Servlet will do the rest for you.

### ws:connect(path)

Called directly after a successful WebSocket handshake. The `path` specifies the path which a client is connected to:

```
declare %ws:connect('/') function local:connect() { };
```

You can specify here how to handle your users, e. g. save a name as a WebSocket attribute. Furthermore, you can check header parameters for validity.

### ws:message(path, message)

Called when a client message arrives at the server. The `path` specifies the path which a client is connected to. The `message` string contains the name of the variable to which the message will be bound:

```
declare %ws:message('/', '{$info}') function local:message($info) { };
```

The value will be of type `xs:string` or `xs:base64Binary`. As there is no fixed message protocol, the client needs to take care of the message syntax.

### ws:error(path, message)

Called when an error occurs. The `path` specifies the path which a client is connected to. The `message` string contains the name of the variable to which the message will be bound:

```
declare %ws:error('/', '{$error}') function local:error($error) { };
```

Usually, errors happen because of bad/malformed incoming packets. The WebSocket connection gets closed after the error handling.

### ws:close(path)

Called when the WebSocket closes. The `path` specifies the path which a client is connected to:

```
declare %ws:close('/') function local:connect() { };
```

The WebSocket is already closed when this annotation is called so there can be no return.

### ws:header-param(name, variable[, default])

For accessing connection-specific properties like the HTTP version. The value will be bound to the specified `variable`. If the property has no value, an optional `default` value will be assigned instead:

```
declare
  %ws:close('host', '{$host}')
  %ws:header-param('host', '{$host}')
function local:close($host) {
  admin:write-log('Connection was closed: ' || $host)
};
```

The following parameters are available:

Name	Description

host	The host of the request URI.
http-version	The HTTP version used for the request.
is-secure	Indicates if the connection is secure.
origin	The WebSocket origin.
protocol-version	The version of the used protocol.
query-string	The query string of the request URI.
request-uri	The Request URI to use for this request.
sub-protocols	List of configured sub-protocols.

General information on the request can be retrieved via the [Request Module](#).

## Writing Applications

The [WebSocket Module](#) contains functions for interacting with other clients or manage specific clients. For example, you can store and access client-specific properties for a WebSocket connection or close the connection of clients.

Note that one WebSocket connection can be opened per browser tab. In contrast, only one HTTP session exists for multiple tabs in a browser. If you want to keep client-specific data on the web server, you can either store them in HTTP sessions or in the WebSocket connection.

Note further that the results of functions annotated with `%ws:close` or `%ws:error` will not be transmitted to the client. Both annotations have rather been designed to gracefully close connections, write log data, remove clients from session data, etc.

For keeping the connection alive it is recommendable to use heart-beats, and send regular pings to the server. There is no ideal timespan for sending pings: It should not be sent too often, but you should also consider possible network latencies.

If your HTTP connection is secure, you should use the `wss` instead of the `ws` scheme.

If you get the `[basex:ws] WebSocket connection required` error, you may be attempting to call WebSocket functions from a non-WebSocket context. If you use a proxy server, check in the configuration if WebSockets are enabled.

## Examples

### Basic Example

The following chapter explains how to create a simple basic web application with WebSockets. You can find another example in the BaseX source code.

First of all, you have to ensure that the `WsServlet` is enabled in your `web.xml` file. It will be enabled if you use the standard configuration of BaseX.

For establishing a connection to the WebSocket server, it is necessary that the server provides at least one function annotated with a WebSocket annotation. Let's start by using the annotation `%ws:connect('/')`. In the `connect` function, a bidirectional communication with the client can be initialized: attributes such as the id and name of a client can be set, or a welcome message can be emitted to other connected users, and so on.

```
declare
  %ws:connect('/')
function example:connect() as empty-sequence() {
};
```

The `connect` function is sufficient for creating the persistent client/server connection. In order to something sensible with the connection, you should implement a function annotated with `%ws:message("/"):`

```
import module namespace ws = 'http://basex.org/modules/ws'

declare
  %ws:message('/', '{$message}')
function example:message(
  $message as xs:string
) as empty-sequence() {
  ws:emit($message)
};
```

In the function above, the **WebSocket Module** is imported, and the function `ws:emit` is used for forwarding the message to all connected clients.

The following client-side code demonstrates a basic application of the WebSocket connection:

```
var ws = new WebSocket("ws://localhost:8080/ws");

ws.onmessage = function(event) {
  alert(event.data);
};

function send(message) {
  ws.send(message);
};
```

The `send` function can be called to pass on a string to the server.

There are no heart-beats in this example. This means that the connection is terminated if nothing happens for 5 minutes (standard timeout). It will also be closed if you send a message that exceeds the standard text size.

## Chat Application

In the full distributions of BaseX, you will find a little self-contained chat application that demonstrates how WebSockets can be used in practice.

## Changelog

WebSockets were introduced with Version 9.1.

---

# Chapter 85. REST

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page presents one of the [Web Application](#) services. It describes how to use the REST API of BaseX.

BaseX offers a RESTful API for accessing database resources via URLs. REST (**RE**presentational **S**tate **T**ransfer) facilitates a simple and fast access to databases through HTTP. The HTTP methods GET, PUT, DELETE, and POST can be used to interact with the database.

## Usage

By default, REST services are available at `http://localhost:8984/rest/`. If no default credentials are specified in the URL or when starting the web application, they will be requested by the client ([see further](#)).

A web browser can be used to perform simple GET-based REST requests and display the response. Some alternatives for using REST are listed in the [Usage Examples](#).

With *BaseX 10*, results in the `rest` namespace will be returned unprefixd:

```
<!-- before -->
<rest:databases xmlns:rest="http://basex.org/rest" />

<!-- before -->
<databases xmlns="http://basex.org/rest" />
```

## URL Architecture

A request to the root URL returns all available databases:

```
http://localhost:8984/rest
```

```
<databases xmlns="http://basex.org/rest">
  <database resources="25742" size="43813599">articles</database>
  ...
</databases>
```

The resources of a database (directories, resource metadata) are listed if a database and an optional directory path is specified:

```
http://localhost:8984/rest/articles
```

```
<database name="articles" xmlns="http://basex.org/rest">
  <dir>binaries</dir>
  <resource type="xml" content-type="application/xml" size="77192">1973-02-08-
xltp325.xml</resource>
  ...
</database>
```

The `dir` elements were introduced with *Version 10*. Before, information on all resources was listed that were located in the specified path or any of its subdirectories.

If the path to a single resource is specified, the resource itself will be returned:

```
http://localhost:8984/rest/articles/1973-02-08-xltp325.xml
```

## Parameters

The following **parameters** can be applied to the operations:

- **Variables** :External variables can be *bound* before a query is evaluated ([see below](#) for more).

- **Context** :The `context` parameter may be used to provide an initial XML context node.
- **Options** :Specified **Options** are applied before the actual operation will be performed.
- **Serialization** :All **Serialization** parameters known to BaseX can be specified as query parameters. Parameters that are specified within a query will be interpreted by the REST server before the output is generated.

While **Options** can be specified for all operations, the remaining parameters will only make sense for **Query** and **Run**.

## Request

### GET Method

If the GET method is used, all query parameters are directly specified within the URL. Additionally, the following **operations** can be specified:

- `query` : Evaluate an XQuery expression. If a database or database path is specified in the URL, it is set as query context.
- `command` : Execute a single **database command**.
- `run` : Evaluate an XQuery file or command script located on the server. The file path is resolved against the directory specified by `RESTPATH` (before, it was resolved against `WEBPATH`). Similar to `query`, a database or database path is set as context.

#### Examples

- Lists all resources found in the **tmp** path of the *factbook* database:`http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook/tmp`
- Returns the number of documents in a database:`http://localhost:8984/rest/database?query=count(.)`
- Serializes a document as JSONML:`http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook/factbook.xml?method=json&json=format=jsonml`
- US-ASCII is chosen as output encoding, and the query `eval.xq` is evaluated:`http://localhost:8984/rest?run=eval.xq&encoding=US-ASCII`
- The next URL lists all database users that are known to BaseX:`http://localhost:8984/rest?command=show+users`

### POST Method

The body of a POST request is interpreted as XML fragment, which specifies the operation to perform. The name of the root element determines how the body will be evaluated:

- `commands` : Run **Command Script**
- `query` : Execute XQuery expression
- `run` : Run server-side file (query or command script)
- `command` : Execute single command

The root element may be bound to the optional REST namespace. Existing command scripts can be sent to the server without any modifications:

- Create an empty database and return database information:

```
<commands>
  <create-db name='db' />
```

```
<info-db/>
</commands>
```

For the other commands, the following child elements are supported:

Name	Description
text	Required; contains the query string, command string, or file to be run
parameter	Serialization parameter (with @name and @value attributes)
option	Database option (with @name and @value attributes)
variable	Variable bindings
context	Initial context item

### Examples

- Return the first five city names of the **factbook** database:

```
<rest xmlns="http://basex.org/rest">
  <rest><![CDATA[ (//city/name)[position() <= 5] ]]></text>
</rest>
```

- Return string lengths of all text nodes that are found in the node that has been specified as initial context node:

```
<query>
  <text>for $i in ../text() return string-length($i)</text>
  <context>
    <xml>
      <text>Hello</text>
      <text>World</text>
    </xml>
  </context>
</query>
```

- Return the registered database users encoded in ISO-8859-1:

```
<command>
  <text>show users</text>
  <parameter name='encoding' value='ISO-8859-1' />
</command>
```

- Create a new database from the specified input and preserve all whitespaces:

```
<command>
  <text>create db test http://files.basex.org/xml/xmark.xml</text>
  <option name='chop' value='false' />
</command>
```

- Bind value to the \$person variable and run query find-person.xq, which must be located in the directory specified by WEBPATH:

```
<run>
  <variable name='person' value='Johannes Müller' />
  <text>find-person.xq</text>
</run>
```

## PUT Method

The PUT method is used to create new databases, or to add or update existing database resources:

- Create Database** :A new database is created if the URL only specifies the name of a database. If the request body contains XML, a single document is created, adopting the name of the database.

- **Store Resource** :A resource is added to the database if the URL contains a database path. If the addressed resource already exists, it is replaced by the new input.

There are two ways to store non-XML data in BaseX:

- **Store as Raw Data** : If `application/octet-stream` is chosen as content-type, the input is added as **Binary Data**.
- **Convert to XML** : Incoming data is converted to XML if a parser is available for the specified content-type. The following content types are supported:
  - `application/json` : Stores JSON as XML.
  - `text/plain` : Stores plain text input as XML.
  - `text/comma-separated-values` : Stores CSV text input as XML.
  - `text/html` : Stores HTML input as XML.

Conversion can be influenced by specifying additional content-type parameters (see [RESTXQ](#) for more information).

If raw data is added and if no content type, or a wrong content, is specified, a 400 (BAD REQUEST) error will be raised.

Examples

- A new database with the name **XMark** is created. If XML input is sent in the HTTP body, the resulting database resource will be called **XMark.xml**:`http://localhost:8984/rest/XMark`
- A new database is created, and no whitespaces will be removed from the passed on XML input:`http://localhost:8984/rest/XMark?chop=false`
- The contents of the HTTP body will be taken as input for the document **one.xml**, which will be stored in the **XMark** database:`http://localhost:8984/rest/XMark/one.xml`

An HTTP response with status code 201 (CREATED) is sent back if the operation was successful. Otherwise, the server will reply with 404 (if a specified database was not found) or 400 (if the operation could not be completed).

Have a look at the [usage examples](#) for more detailed examples using Java and shell tools like cURL.

## DELETE Method

The DELETE method is used to delete databases or resources within a database.

Example

- The **factbook** database is deleted:`http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook`
- All resources of the **XMark** database are deleted that reside in the **tmp** path:`http://localhost:8984/rest/XMark/tmp/`

The HTTP status code 404 is returned if no database is specified. 200 (OK) will be sent in all other cases.

## Assigning Variables

### GET Method

All query parameters that have not been processed before will be treated as variable assignments:

Example

- The following request assigns two variables to a server-side query file `mult.xq` placed in the HTTP directory: `http://localhost:8984/rest?run=mult.xq&$a=21&$b=2`

```
(: XQuery file: mult.xq :)
declare variable $a as xs:integer external;
declare variable $b as xs:integer external;
<mult>{ $a * $b }</mult>
```

The dollar sign can be omitted as long as the variable name does not equal a parameter keyword (e.g.: `method`).

## POST Method

If `query` or `run` is used as operation, external variables can be specified via the `<variable/>` element:

```
<query xmlns="http://basex.org/rest">
  <text><![CDATA[
    declare variable $a as xs:integer external;
    declare variable $b as xs:integer external;
    <mult>{ $a * $b }</mult>
  ]]></text>
  <variable name="a" value="21"/>
  <variable name="b" value="2"/>
</query>
```

## Response

### Content Type

As the content type of a REST response cannot necessarily be dynamically determined, it can be enforced by the user. The final content type of a REST response is chosen as follows:

1. If the serialization parameter `media-type` is supplied, it will be adopted as content-type.
2. Otherwise, if the serialization parameter `method` is supplied, the content-type will be chosen according to the following mapping:
  - `xml`, `adaptive`, `basex` → `application/xml`
  - `xhtml` → `text/html`
  - `html` → `text/html`
  - `text` → `text/plain`
  - `json` → `application/json`
3. If no `media-type` or serialization method is supplied, the content type of a response depends on the chosen REST operation:
  - **Query/Run** → `application/xml`
  - **Command** → `text/plain`
  - **Get** → `application/xml`, or content type of the addressed resource

Serialization parameters can either be supplied as **query parameters** or within the query.

The following three example requests all return `<a/>` with `application/xml` as content-type:

```
http://localhost:8984/rest?query=%3Ca%3E,      http://localhost:8984/rest?
query=%3Ca%3E&method=xml,                    http://localhost:8984/rest?query=%3Ca/
%3E&media-type=application/xml
```



## Usage Examples

### Java

#### Authentication

Most programming languages offer libraries to communicate with HTTP servers. The following example demonstrates how easy it is to perform a DELETE request with Java.

Basic access authentication can be activated in Java by adding an authorization header to the `URLConnection` instance. The header contains the word `Basic`, which specifies the authentication method, followed by the Base64-encoded `USER:PASSWORD` pair. As Java does not include a default conversion library for Base64 data, the internal BaseX class `org.base64.util.Base64` can be used for that purpose:

```
import java.net.*;
import org.base64.util.*;

public final class RESTExample {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        // The java URL connection to the resource.
        URL url = new URL("http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook");

        // Establish the connection to the URL.
        HttpURLConnection conn = (HttpURLConnection) url.openConnection();
        // Set as DELETE request.
        conn.setRequestMethod("DELETE");

        // User and password.
        String user = "bob";
        String pw = "alice";
        // Encode username and password pair with a base64 implementation.
        String encoded = Base64.encode(user + ":" + pw);
        // Basic access authentication header to connection request.
        conn.setRequestProperty("Authorization", "Basic " + encoded);

        // Print the HTTP response code.
        System.out.println("HTTP response: " + conn.getResponseCode());

        // Close connection.
        conn.disconnect();
    }
}
```

#### Content-Types

The content-type of the input can easily be included, just add the following property to the connection (in this example we explicitly store the input file as raw):

```
// store input as raw
conn.setRequestProperty("Content-Type", "application/octet-stream");
```

See the [PUT Requests](#) section for a description of the possible content-types.

Find Java examples for all methods here: [GET](#), [POST](#), [PUT](#), [DELETE](#).

#### Command Line

Tools such as the Linux commands [Wget](#) or [cURL](#) exist to perform HTTP requests (try copy & paste):

GET

- `curl -i "http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook?query=//city/name"`

## POST

- `curl -i -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/xml" -d "<query xmlns='http://basex.org/rest'><text>//city/name</text></query>" "http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook"`
- `curl -i -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/xml" -T query.xml "http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook"`

## PUT

- `curl -i -X PUT -T "etc/xml/factbook.xml" "http://localhost:8984/rest/factbook"`
- `curl -i -X PUT -H "Content-Type: application/json" -T "plain.json" "http://localhost:8984/rest/plain"`

## DELETE

- `curl -i -X DELETE "http://admin:admin@localhost:8984/rest/factbook"`

# Changelog

## Version 10.0

- Updated: Results in the `rest` namespace will be returned unprefixd.
- Updated: `dir` elements are returned when listing the contents of a database.

## Version 9.0

- Added: Support for command scripts in the **POST Method**.
- Updated: The REST namespace in the **POST Method** has become optional.

## Version 8.1

- Added: Support for input-specific content-type parameters
- Updated: The **run operation** now resolves file paths against the `RESTPATH` option.

## Version 8.0

- Removed: `wrap` parameter

## Version 7.9

- Updated: Also evaluate command scripts via the `run` operation.

## Version 7.2

- Removed: Direct evaluation of addresses resources with `application/xquery` as content type

## Version 7.1.1

- Added: `options` parameter for specifying database options

## Version 7.1

- Added: PUT request: automatic conversion to XML if known content type is specified

## Version 7.0

- REST API introduced, replacing the old JAX-RX API

---

# Chapter 86. WebDAV

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page presents one of the [Web Application](#) services. It describes how to use the WebDAV file system interface.

BaseX offers access to the databases and documents using the [WebDAV](#) protocol. WebDAV provides convenient means to access and edit XML documents by representing BaseX databases and documents in the form of a file system hierarchy.

The implementation in BaseX is based on the [Milton library](#). Currently, only Basic Authentication is supported.

## Usage

By default, the BaseX HTTP server makes the WebDAV service accessible at `http://localhost:8984/webdav/`. If no default credentials are specified, they will be requested by the client ([see further](#)). It can be accessed by either `http://<httphost>:<httpport>/webdav/` or `webdav://<httphost>:<httpport>/webdav/`, depending on your WebDAV client.

Please note that the file size of XML documents will be displayed as 0 bytes, as the actual file size can only be determined if the full document is being returned and serialized. This may cause problems with some WebDAV clients (e.g., NetDrive or WebDrive).

## Authentication

The WebDAV service uses the database user credentials to perform authentication and authorization. A default user can be defined in the configuration [as described here](#).

## Root Directory

In the WebDAV root directory, all existing databases are listed. As new resources can only be stored inside a database, it is not possible to store files in the root directory. If a file is copied on top level, a new database will be created, which contains this resource.

## Resources

### XML Documents

Uploaded files that start with an angle bracket will be stored as XML files. XML entities will be decoded during this process.

If a file is downloaded, the characters with the following code points will be encoded as entities:

- 160 (non-breaking space)
- 8192–8207, 8232–8239, 8287–8303 (see [General Punctuation](#))

### Binary Files

If XML parsing files, or if the first character of the input is no angle bracket, the file will be stored as binary resource.

## Locking

The BaseX WebDAV implementation supports locking. It can be utilized with clients which support this feature (e.g. [oxygen Editor](#)). **EXCLUSIVE** and **SHARED** locks are supported, as well as **WRITE** locks.

**Note:** WebDAV locks are stored in a database called `~webdav`. If the database is deleted, it will automatically be recreated along with the next lock operations. If a resource remains locked, it can be unlocked by removing the correspondent `<w:lockinfo>` entry.

## WebDAV Clients

Please check out the following tutorials to get WebDAV running on different operating systems and with oXygen:

- [Windows 7 and up](#)
- [Windows XP](#)
- [Mac OSX 10.4+](#)
- [GNOME and Nautilus](#)
- [KDE](#)
- [oXygen Editor](#)

## Changelog

Version 7.7

- Added: [Locking](#)

Version 7.0

- WebDAV API introduced

---

# Chapter 87. WebDAV: Windows 7

Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.

This page belongs to the [WebDAV](#) page. It describes how to get the WebDAV API running with Windows 7.

- Open the Explorer
- Open the "Map network drive..." dialog by right-clicking on "My Computer"
- Click on the link "Connect to a Web site that you can use to store your documents and pictures."

What network folder would you like to map?

Specify the drive letter for the connection and the folder that you want to connect to:

Drive:  ▼

Folder:  ▼

Example: \\server\share


Reconnect at logon

Connect using different credentials

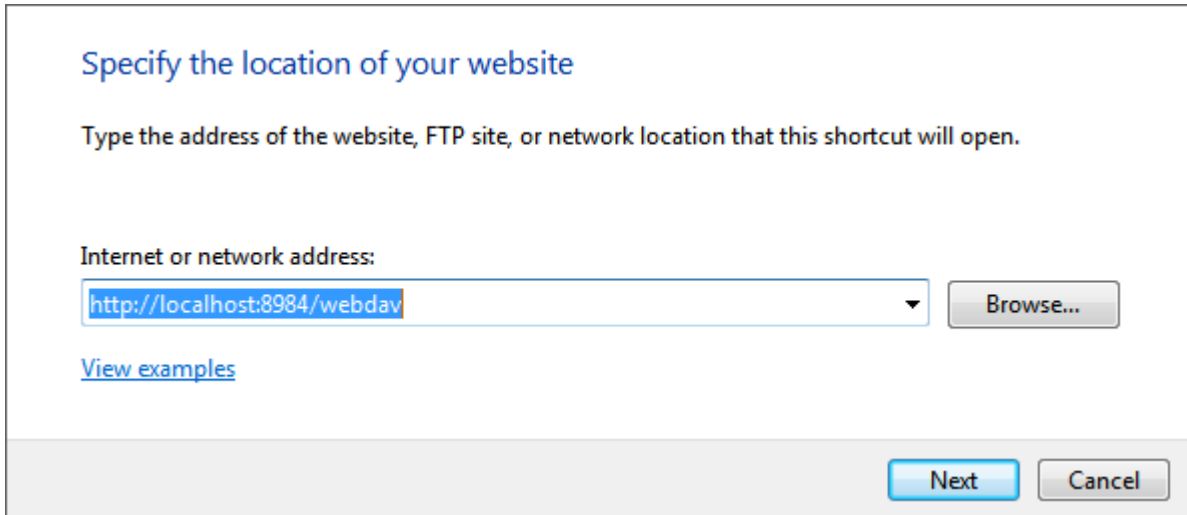
[Connect to a Web site that you can use to store your documents and pictures.](#)

- Click "Next", select "Choose a custom network location" and click "Next" again.

Where do you want to create this network location?

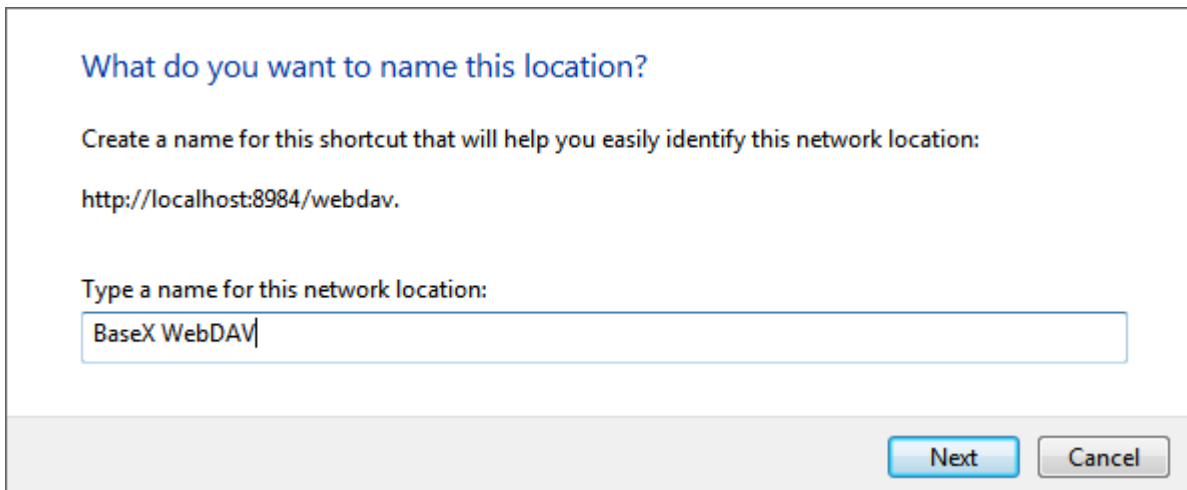
 **Choose a custom network location**  
Specify the address of a website, network location, or FTP site.

- Enter the URL address of the BaseX WebDAV Server (e.g. <http://localhost:8984/webdav>) and click "Next".

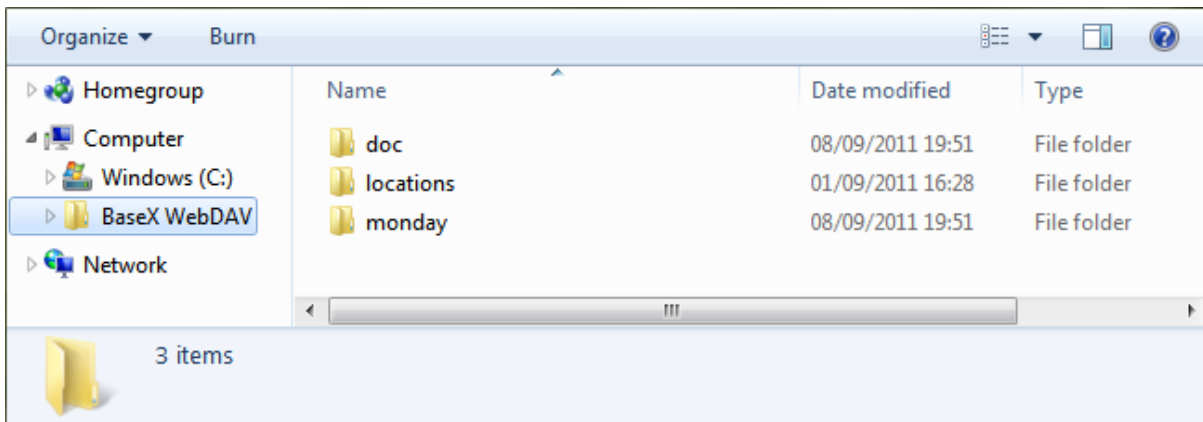


If a message saying that the folder is not valid, this is because Microsoft WebClient is not configured to use Basic HTTP authentication. Please check out the following [StackOverflow entry](#) in order to enable Basic HTTP authentication.

- Enter a name for the network location and click "Next".



- The BaseX WebDAV can be accessed from the Explorer window.



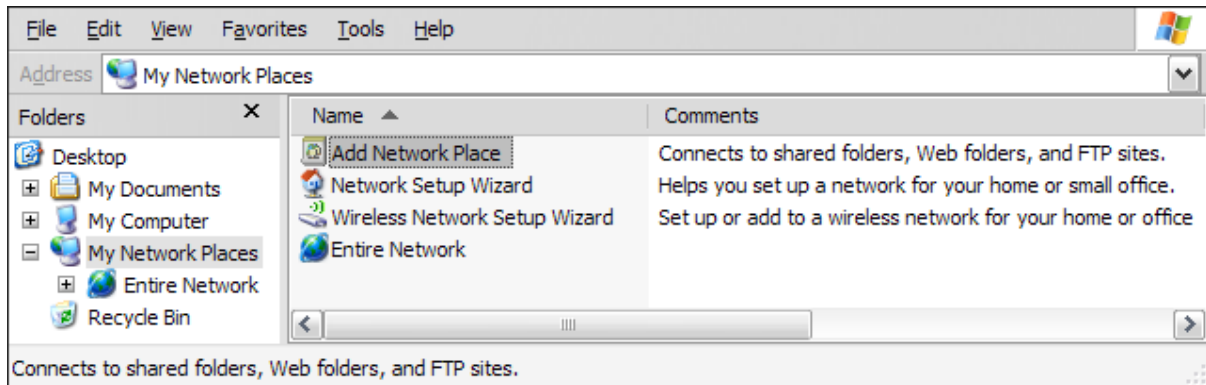
---

# Chapter 88. WebDAV: Windows XP

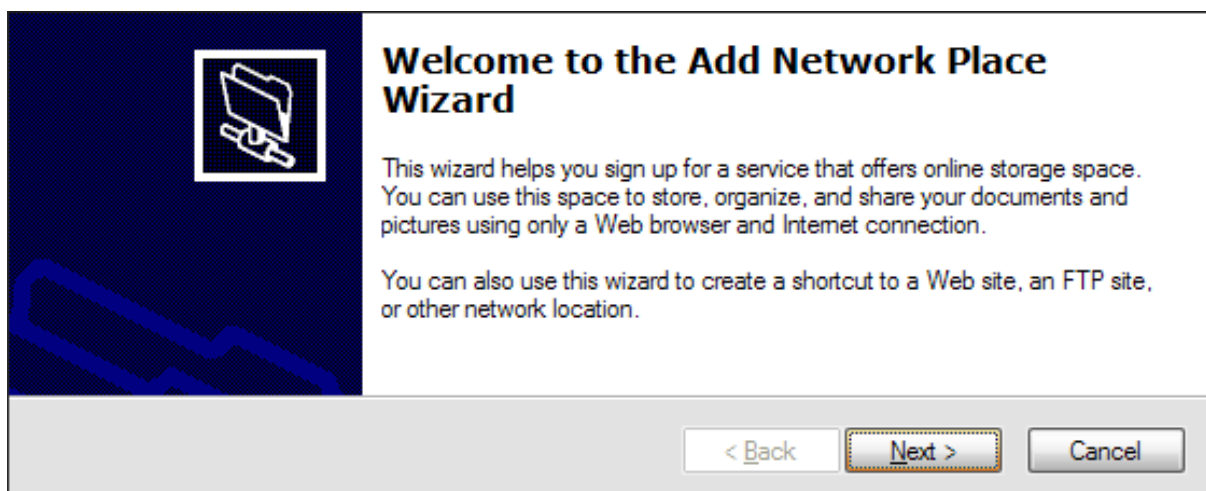
Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page belongs to the [WebDAV](#) page. It describes how to get the WebDAV API running with Windows XP.

- In the "My Network Places" view, double click on "Add Network Place":

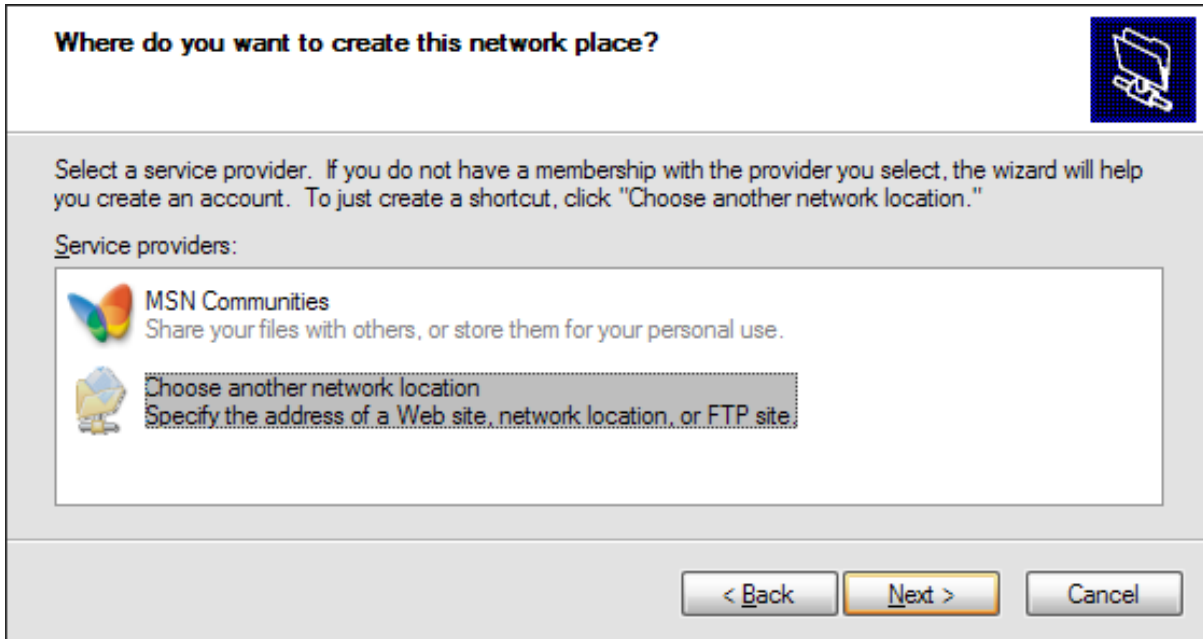


- Confirm the upcoming introductory dialog:

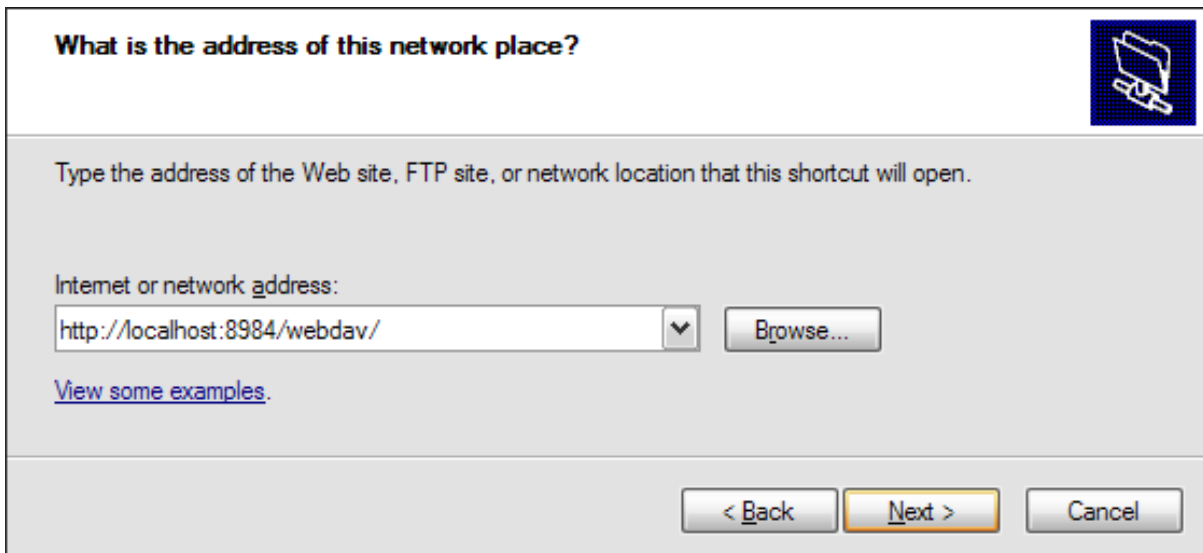


- Select "Choose another network location" in the next dialog:





- Next, specify the BaseX WebDAV URL:



- Enter the user/password combination to connect to the WebDAV service:

Please enter your authentication information

Resource: http://localhost:8984/webdav

User name: admin

Password: ●●●●●

Save this password in your password list

OK Cancel

- Assign a name to your WebDAV connection:

**What do you want to name this place?**

Create a name for this shortcut that will help you easily identify this network place:  
http://localhost:8984/webdav/.

Type a name for this network place:  
BaseX WebDAV

< Back Next > Cancel

- Finish the wizard:

**Completing the Add Network Place Wizard**

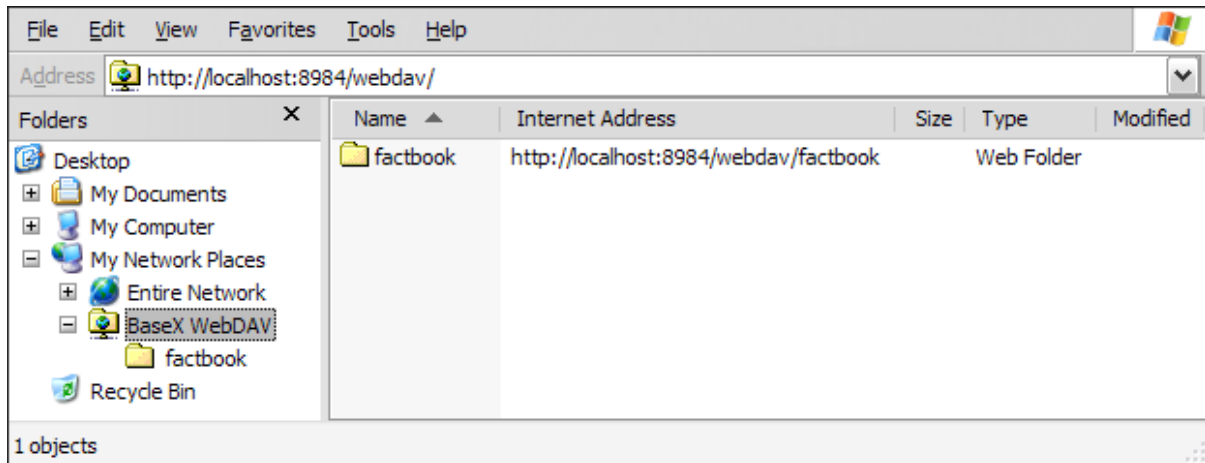
You have successfully created this network place:  
[BaseX WebDAV](#)

A shortcut for this place will appear in My Network Places.

Open this network place when I click Finish.

< Back Finish Cancel

- You can now see all BaseX databases in the Windows Explorer:



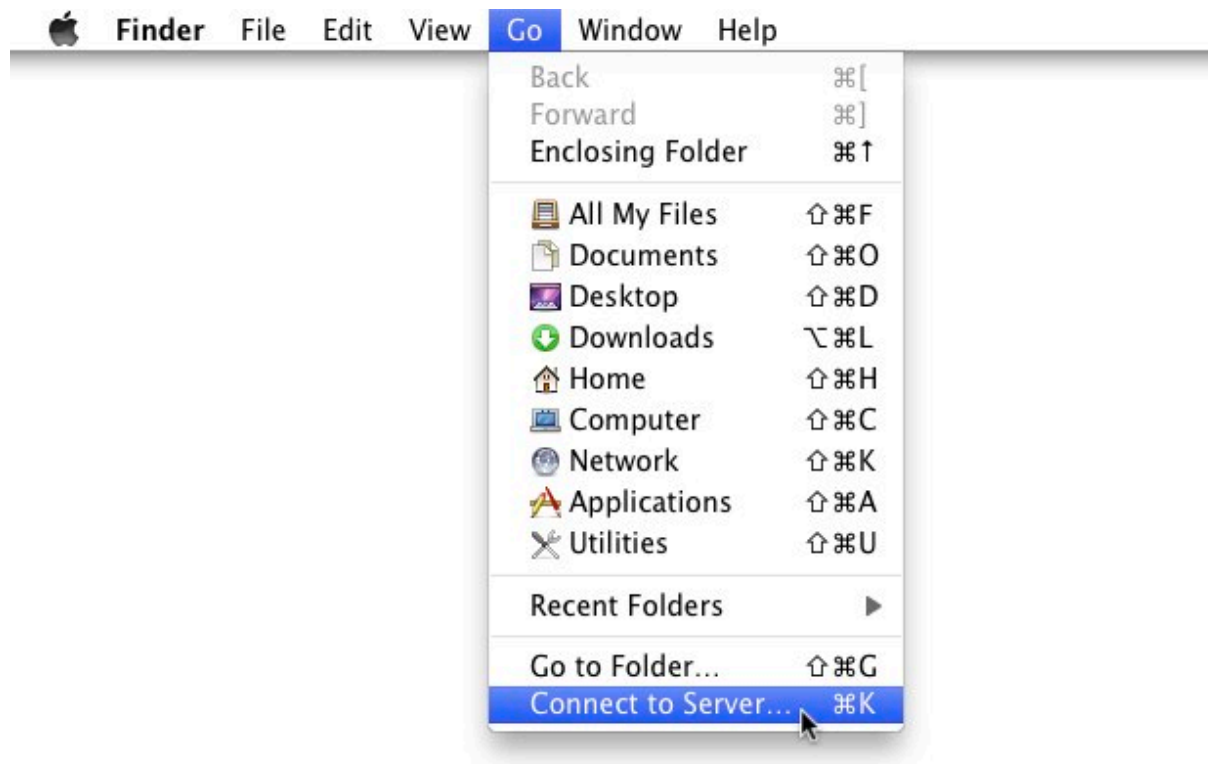
---

# Chapter 89. WebDAV: Mac OSX

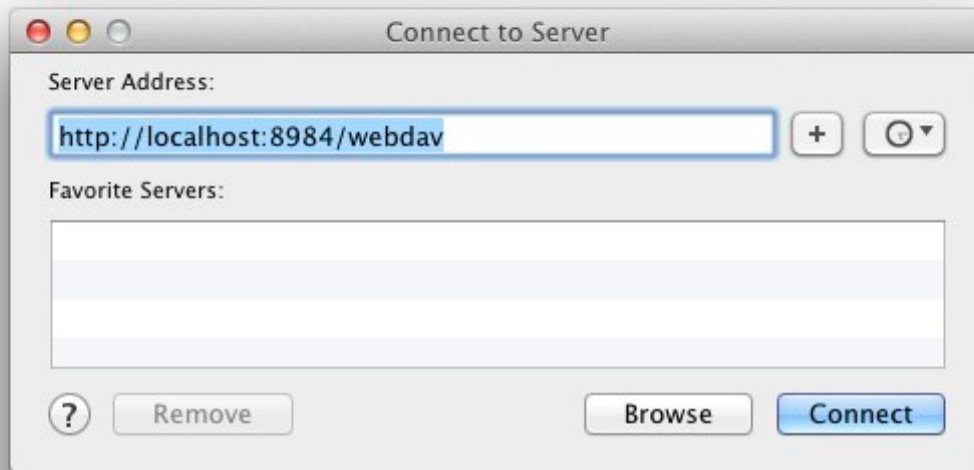
Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page belongs to the [WebDAV](#) page. It describes how to get the WebDAV API running with Mac OS X 10.4+.

- Mac OS X supports WebDAV since 10.4/Tiger
- Open Finder, choose Go -> Connect to Server:



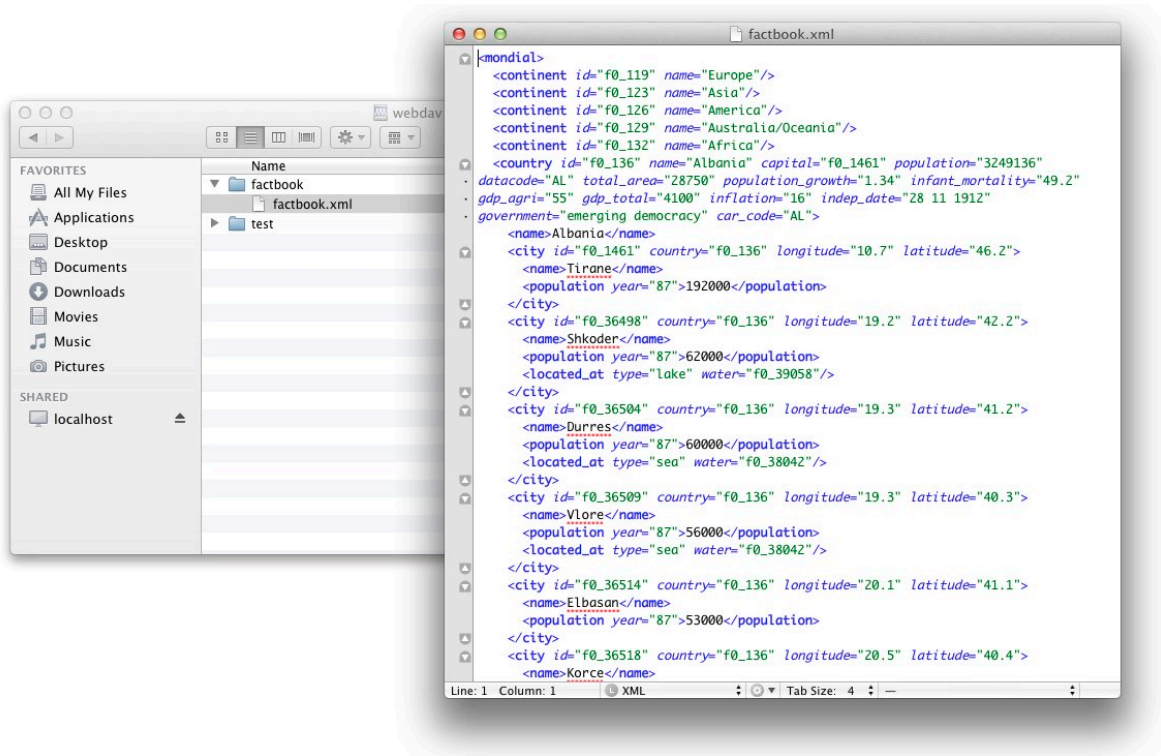
- Enter BaseX WebDAV URL (eg. <http://localhost:8984/webdav>) - do not use webdav://-scheme! Press Connect:



- Enter the user credentials:



- That's it, now the databases can be browsed:



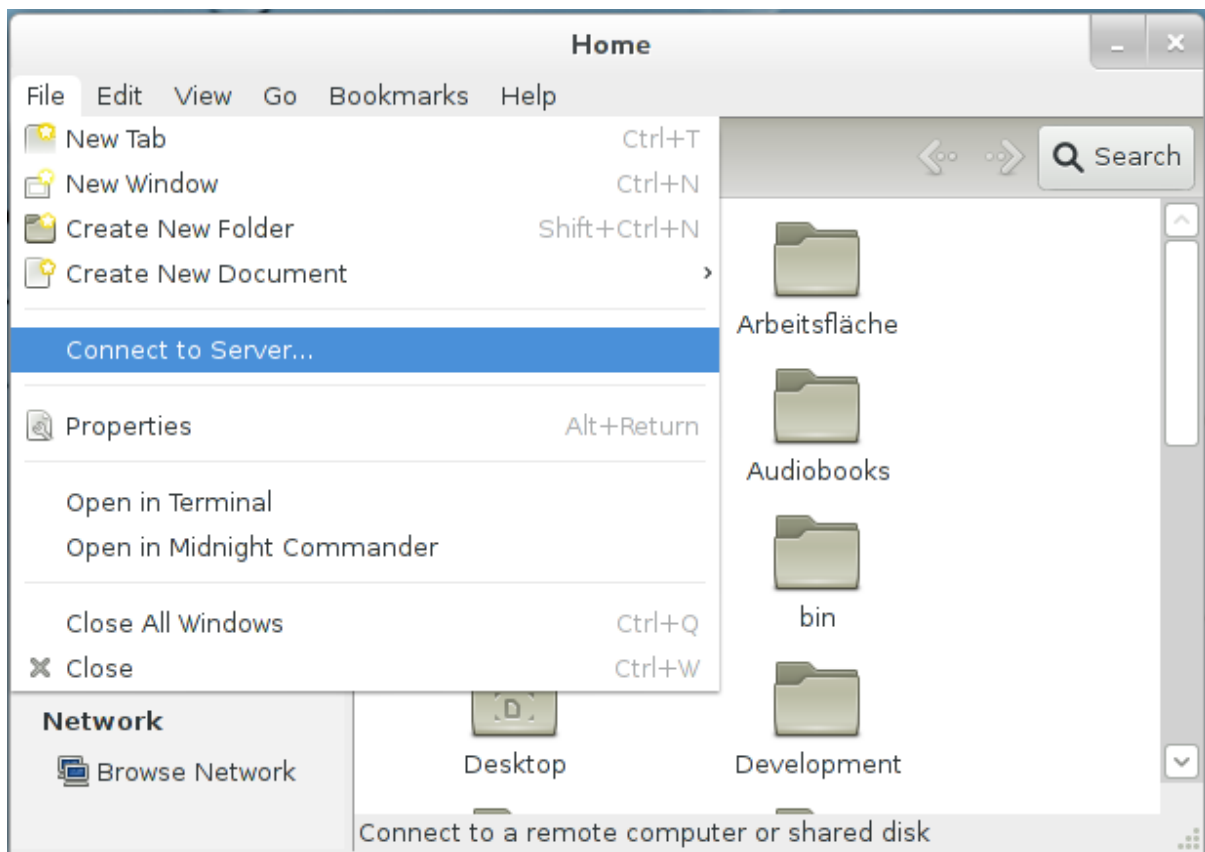
---

# Chapter 90. WebDAV: GNOME

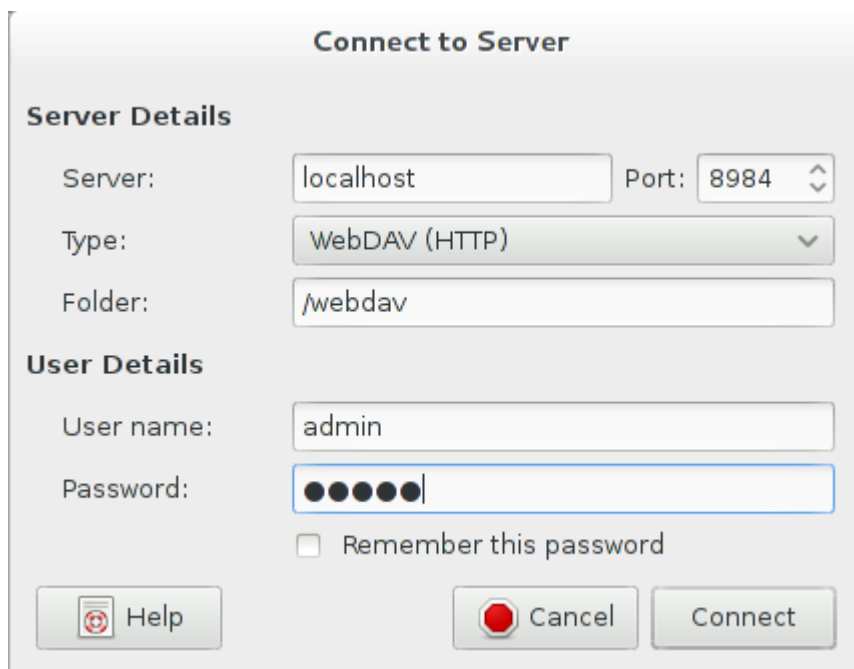
[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page belongs to the [WebDAV](#) page. It describes how to get the WebDAV API running with GNOME and Nautilus.

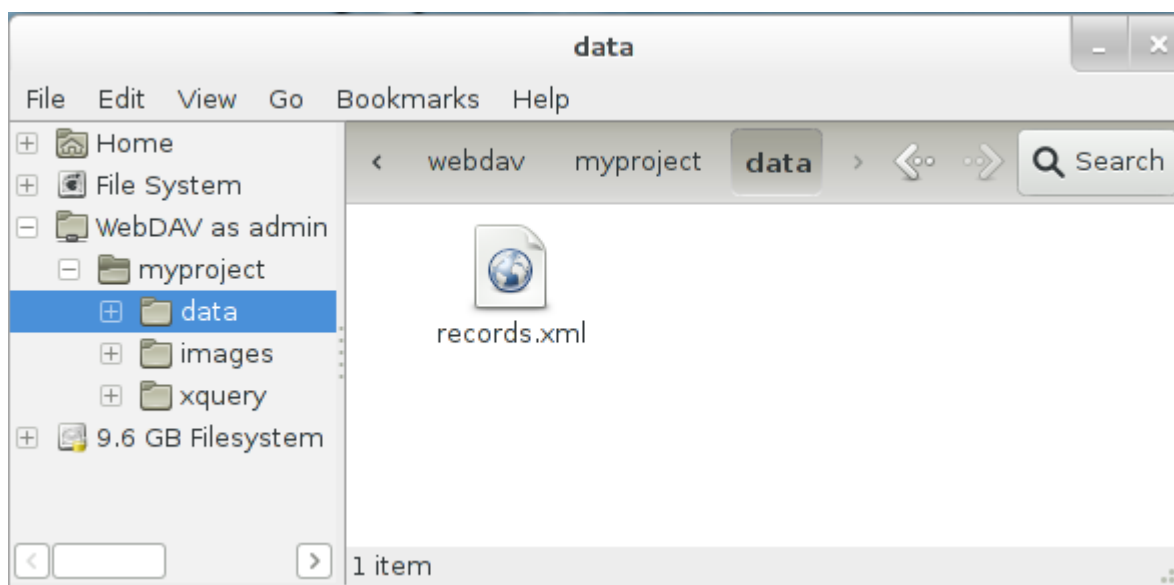
- In Nautilus choose File -> Connect to Server:



- Choose "WebDAV (HTTP)" from the "Type" drop-down and enter the server address, port and user credentials:



- After clicking "Connect" the databases can be browsed:





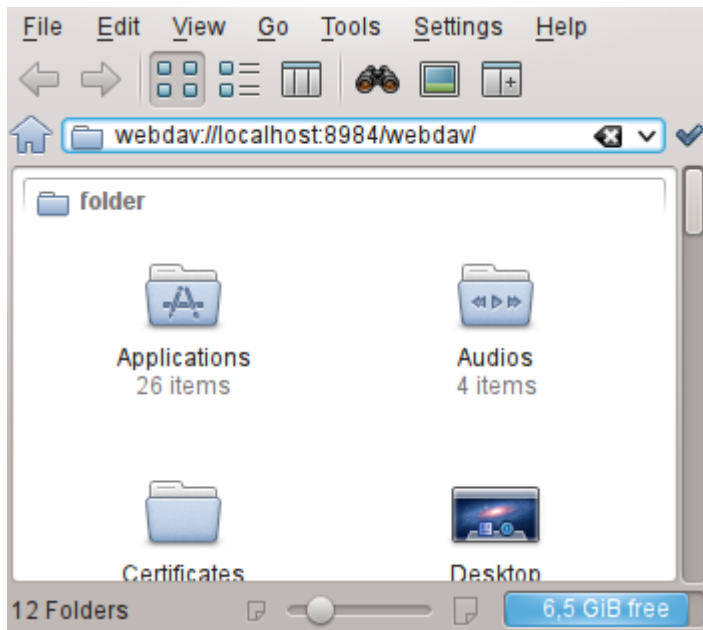
---

# Chapter 91. WebDAV: KDE

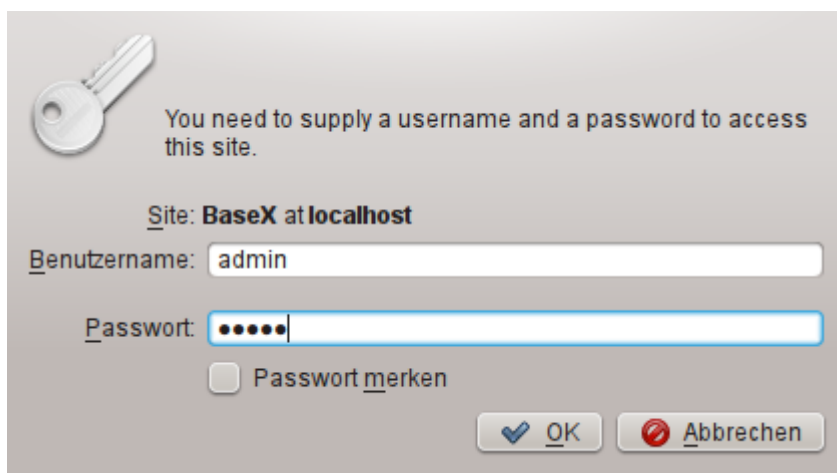
[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page belongs to the [WebDAV](#) page. It describes how to get the WebDAV API running with KDE.

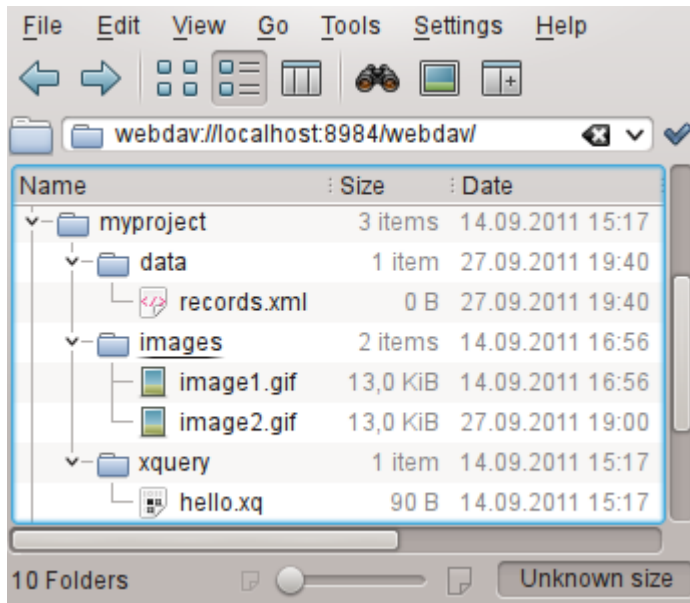
- KDE SC provides two file managers - Dolphin and Konqueror, which both support WebDAV using the "webdav://" URL prefix. Start Dolphin or Konqueror and enter the BaseX WebDAV URL (eg. webdav://localhost/webdav):



- Enter the user credentials:



- After clicking "OK" the databases can be browsed:



---

# Part X. Client APIs

---

---

# Chapter 92. Clients

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

*The conventions for the client functions were revised:*

- The `replace` and `store` functions have been renamed to `put` and `putBinary`.
- Existing client implementations are working without changes unless they haven't been upgraded.

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#). It describes how to communicate with BaseX from other programming languages.

You can use the following light-weight language bindings to connect to a running BaseX server instance, execute database commands and evaluate XQuery expressions.

Most clients provide two modes:

- **Standard Mode** : connecting to a server, sending commands
- **Query Mode** : defining queries, binding variables, iterative evaluation

Please see the [Server Protocol](#) for more information on the available commands. Currently, we offer bindings for the following programming languages:

## BaseX 7.x, BaseX 8.x and later

- **Java** : The default implementation
- **C++** : contributed by Karim Salama (based on `SDL2_net`)
- **C++** : contributed by Jean-Marc Mercier (based on `libboost`)
- **C#** , contributed by the BaseX Team and Martín Ferrari
- **C** , contributed by the BaseX Team
- **Golang** : contributed by Christian Baune
- **Erlang** : contributed by Zachary Dean
- **node.js** : contributed by Andy Bunce
- **Perl** , contributed by the BaseX Team
- **PHP** : updated by James Ball
- **Python** : contributed by Hiroaki Itoh
- **Python** , using BaseX REST services: contributed by Luca Lianas
- **R** : contributed by Ben Engbers
- **Raku** : contributed by Wayland
- **Ruby** , contributed by the BaseX Team

## BaseX 7.x (outdated)

- **ActionScript** : contributed by Manfred Knobloch
- **Haskell** : contributed by Leo Wörteler
- **Lisp** : contributed by Andy Chambers
- **node.js** : contributed by Hans Hübner (deviating from client API)
- **Qt** : contributed by Hendrik Strobel
- **Rebol** : contributed by Sabu Francis
- **Scala** : contributed by Manuel Bernhardt
- **Scala** (simple implementation)
- **VB** , contributed by the BaseX Team

With **Version 8.0**, authentication has changed. Some of the language bindings have not been updated yet. The update is rather trivial, though ([see here](#) for more details); we are looking forward to your patches!

Many of the interfaces contain the following files:

- `BaseXClient` contains the code for creating a session, sending and executing commands and receiving results. An inner `Query` class facilitates the binding of external variables and iterative query evaluation.
- `Example` demonstrates how to send database commands.
- `QueryExample` shows you how to evaluate queries in an iterative manner.
- `QueryBindExample` shows you how to bind a variable to your query and evaluates the query in an iterative manner.
- `CreateExample` shows how new databases can be created by using streams.
- `AddExample` shows how documents can be added to a database by using streams.

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: The `replace` and `store` functions have been renamed to `put` and `putBinary`.

Version 8.0

- Updated: `cram-md5` replaced with `digest` authentication.

---

# Chapter 93. Standard Mode

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

In the standard mode of the **Clients**, a database command can be sent to the server using the `execute()` function of the `Session`. This function returns the whole result. With the `info()` function, you can request some information on your executed process. If an error occurs, an exception with the error message will be thrown.

## Usage

The standard execution works as follows:

1. Create a new session instance with hostname, port, username and password.
2. Call the `execute()` function of the session with the **database commands** as argument.
3. Receive the result of a successfully executed command. If an error occurs, an exception is thrown.
4. Optionally, call `info()` to get some process information
5. Continue using the client (back to 2.), or close the session.

## Example in PHP

Taken from our [repository](#):

```
<?php
/*
 * This example shows how database commands can be executed.
 * Documentation: http://basex.org/api
 *
 * (C) BaseX Team 2005-15, BSD License
 */
include("BaseXClient.php");

try {
    // initialize timer
    $start = microtime(true);

    // create session
    $session = new Session("localhost", 1984, "admin", "...");

    // perform command and print returned string
    print $session->execute("xquery 1 to 10");

    // close session
    $session->close();

    // print time needed
    $time = (microtime(true) - $start) * 1000;
    print "\n$time ms\n";
} catch (Exception $e) {
    // print exception
    print $e->getMessage();
}
?>
```

---

# Chapter 94. Query Mode

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

The query mode of the **Clients** allows you to bind external variables to a query and evaluate the query in an iterative manner. The `query()` function of the `Session` instance returns a new query instance.

## Usage

The query execution works as follows:

1. Create a new session instance with hostname, port, username and password.
2. Call `query()` with your XQuery expression to get a query object.
3. Optionally bind variables to the query with one of the `bind()` functions.
4. Optionally bind a value to the context item via `context()`.
5. Iterate through the query object with the `more()` and `next()` functions.
6. As an alternative, call `execute()` to get the whole result at a time.
7. `info()` gives you information on query evaluation.
8. `options()` returns the query serialization parameters.
9. Don't forget to close the query with `close()`.

## PHP Example

Taken from our [repository](#):

```
<?php
/*
 * This example shows how queries can be executed in an iterative manner.
 * Documentation: http://basex.org/api
 *
 * (C) BaseX Team 2005-15, BSD License
 */
include("BaseXClient.php");

try {
    // create session
    $session = new Session("localhost", 1984, "admin", "...");

    try {
        // create query instance
        $input = 'declare variable $name external; '
            . 'for $i in 1 to 10 return element { $name } { $i }';
        $query = $session->query($input);

        // bind variable
        $query->bind("$name", "number");

        // print result
        print $query->execute()."\n";

        // close query instance
        $query->close();
    }
}
```

```
} catch (Exception $e) {  
    // print exception  
    print $e->getMessage();  
}  
  
// close session  
$session->close();  
  
} catch (Exception $e) {  
    // print exception  
    print $e->getMessage();  
}  
?  
?>
```

## Changelog

Version 7.2

- Added: `context()` function



---

# Chapter 95. Server Protocol

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page presents the classes and functions of the **BaseX Clients**, and the underlying protocol, which is utilized for communicating with the database server. A detailed example demonstrates how a concrete byte exchange can look like.

## Workflow

- All clients are based on the client/server architecture. Hence, a BaseX database server must be started first.
- Each client provides a session class or script with methods to connect to and communicate with the database server. A socket connection will be established by the constructor, which expects a host, port, username and password as arguments.
- The `execute()` method is called to launch a database command. It returns the result or throws an exception with the received error message.
- The `query()` method creates a query instance. Variables and the context item can be bound to that instance, and the result can either be requested via `execute()`, or in an iterative manner with the `more()` and `next()` functions. If an error occurs, an exception will be thrown.
- The `create()`, `add()`, `put()` and `putbinary()` methods pass on input streams to the corresponding database commands. The input can be a UTF-8 encoded XML document, a binary resource, or any other data (such as JSON or CSV) that can be successfully converted to a resource by the server.
- To speed up execution, an output stream can be specified by some clients; this way, all results will be directed to that output stream.
- Most clients are accompanied by some example files, which demonstrate how database commands can be executed or how queries can be evaluated.

## Transfer Protocol

All **Clients** use the following client/server protocol to communicate with the server. The description of the protocol is helpful if you want to implement your own client.

### Conventions

- `\xx` : single byte.
- `{ . . . }` : utf8 strings or raw data, suffixed with a `\00` byte. To avoid confusion with this end-of-string byte, all transferred `\00` and `\xFF` bytes are prefixed by an additional `\xFF` byte.

### Authentication

#### Digest

Digest authentication is used since Version 8.0:

1. Client connects to server socket
2. Server sends a **realm** and **nonce**, separated by a colon: `{ realm:nonce }`
3. Client sends the **username** and a hash value. The hash is composed of the md5 hash of
  - a. the md5 hash of the **username**, **realm**, and **password** (all separated by a colon), and

b. the **nonce**: {username} {md5(md5(username:realm:password) + nonce)}

4. Server replies with \00 (success) or \01 (error)

### CRAM-MD5

CRAM-MD5 was discarded, because unsalted md5 hashes could easily be uncovered using rainbow tables. However, most client bindings still provide support for the outdated handshaking, as it only slightly differs from the new protocol:

1. Client connects to server socket
2. Server sends a **nonce** (timestamp): {nonce}
3. Client sends the **username** and a hash value. The hash is composed of the md5 hash of
  - a. the md5 of the **password** and
  - b. the **nonce**: {username} {md5(md5(password) + nonce)}
4. Server replies with \00 (success) or \01 (error)

Clients can easily be implemented to both support `digest` and `cram-md5` authentication: If the first server response contains no colon, `cram-md5` should be chosen.

### Command Protocol

The following byte sequences are sent and received from the client (please note that a specific client may not support all of the presented commands):

Command	Client Request	Server Response	Description
COMMAND	{command}	{result} {info} \00	Executes a database command.
QUERY	\00 {query}	{id} \00	Creates a new query instance and returns its id.
CREATE	\08 {name} {input}	{info} \00	Creates a new database with the specified input (may be empty).
ADD	\09 {name} {path} {input}	{info} \00	Adds a new document to the opened database.
PUT	\0C {path} {input}	{info} \00	Puts (adds or replaces) an XML document resource in the opened database.
PUTBINARY	\0D {path} {input}	{info} \00	Puts (adds or replaces) a binary resource in the opened database.
# error		{partial result} {error} \01	Error feedback.

### Query Command Protocol

Queries are referenced via an `id`, which has been returned by the `QUERY` command (see above).

Query Command	Client Request	Server Response	Description
CLOSE	\02 {id}	\00 \00	Closes and unregisters the query with the specified id.

BIND	\03 {id} {name} {value} {type}	\00 \00	Binds a value to a variable. The type will be ignored if the string is empty.
RESULTS	\04 {id}	\xx {item} ... \xx {item} \00	Returns all resulting items as strings, prefixed by a single byte (\xx) that represents the <b>Type ID</b> . This command is called by the <code>more()</code> function of a client implementation.
EXECUTE	\05 {id}	{result} \00	Executes the query and returns the result as a single string.
INFO	\06 {id}	{result} \00	Returns a string with query compilation and profiling info.
OPTIONS	\07 {id}	{result} \00	Returns a string with all query serialization parameters, which can e.g. be assigned to the <code>SERIALIZER</code> option.
CONTEXT	\0E {id} {value} {type}	\00 \00	Binds a value to the context. The type will be ignored if the string is empty.
UPDATING	\1E {id}	{result} \00	Returns <code>true</code> if the query contains updating expressions; <code>false</code> otherwise.
FULL	\1F {id}	XDM {item} ... XDM {item} \00	Returns all resulting items as strings, prefixed by the <b>XDM Metadata</b> . This command is e. g. used by the <b>XQJ API</b> .

As can be seen in the table, all results end with a single `\00` byte, which indicates that the process was successful. If an error occurs, an additional byte `\01` is sent, which is then followed by the error message string.

## Binding Sequences

Also, sequences can be bound to variables and the context:

- `empty-sequence()` must be supplied as type if an empty sequence is to be bound.
- Multiple items are supplied via the `{value}` argument and separated with `\01` bytes.
- Item types are specified by appending `\02` and the type in its string representation to an item. If no item type is specified, the general type is used.

Some examples for the `{value}` argument:

- the two integers 123 and 789 are encoded as `123, \01, 789` and `\00` (`xs:integer` may be specified via the `{type}` argument).
- the two items `xs:integer(123)` and `xs:string('ABC')` are encoded as `123, \02, xs:integer, \01, ABC, \02, xs:string` and `\00`.

## Example

In the following example, a client registers a new session and executes the INFO database command. Next, it creates a new query instance for the XQuery expression `1, 2+'3'`. The query is then evaluated, and the server returns the result of the first subexpression 1 and an error for the second sub expression. Finally, the query instance and client session are closed.

- **Client** connects to the database server socket
- **Server** sends realm and timestamp "BaseX:1369578179679": # 42 61 73 65 58 3A 31 33 36 39 35 37 38 31 37 39 36 37 39 00
- **Client** sends username "jack": 6A 61 63 6B 00 #
- **Client** sends hash: md5(md5("jack:BaseX:topsecret") + "1369578179679") = "ca664a31f8deda9b71ea3e79347f6666": 63 61 36 ... 00 #
- **Server** replies with success code: # 00
- **Client** sends the "INFO" command: 49 4E 46 4F 00 #
- **Server** responds with the result "General Information...": # 47 65 6e 65 ... 00
- **Server** additionally sends an (empty) info string: # 00
- **Client** creates a new query instance for the XQuery "1,2+'3'": 00 31 2C 20 32 2B 27 33 27 00 #
- **Server** returns query id "1" and a success code: # 31 00 00
- **Client** requests the query results via the RESULTS protocol command and its query id: 04 31 00 #
- **Server** returns the first result ("1", type xs:integer): # 52 31 00
- **Server** sends a single \00 byte instead of a new result, which indicates that no more results can be expected: # 00
- **Server** sends the error code \01 and the error message ("Stopped at..."): # 01 53 74 6f ... 00
- **Client** closes the query instance: 02 31 00 #
- **Server** sends a response (which is equal to an empty info string) and success code: # 00 00
- **Client** closes the socket connection

## Constructors and Functions

Most language bindings provide the following constructors and functions:

### Session

- Create and return session with host, port, username and password: `Session(String host, int port, String name, String password)`
- Execute a command and return the result: `String execute(String command)`
- Return a query instance for the specified query: `Query query(String query)`
- Create a database from an input stream: `void create(String name, InputStream input)`
- Add a document to the current database from an input stream: `void add(String path, InputStream input)`

- Put a document with the specified input stream:`void put(String path, InputStream input)`
- Put a binary resource at the specified path:`void putBinary(String path, InputStream input)`
- Return process information:`String info()`
- Close the session:`void close()`

### Query

- Create query instance with session and query:`Query(Session session, String query)`
- Bind an external variable:`void bind(String name, String value, String type)`, The type can be an empty string.
- Bind the context item:`void context(String value, String type)`, The type can be an empty string.
- Execute the query and return the result:`String execute()`
- Iterator: check if a query returns more items:`boolean more()`
- Iterator: return the next item:`String next()`
- Return query information:`String info()`
- Return serialization parameters:`String options()`
- Return if the query may perform updates:`boolean updating()`
- Close the query:`void close()`

### Changelog

#### Version 8.2

- Removed: WATCH and UNWATCH command

#### Version 8.0

- Updated: cram-md5 replaced with digest authentication
- Updated: BIND command: support more than one item

#### Version 7.2

- Added: Query Commands CONTEXT, UPDATING and FULL
- Added: Client function `context(String value, String type)`

---

# Chapter 96. Server Protocol: Types

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article lists extended type information that is returned by the [Server Protocol](#).

## XDM Metadata

In most cases, the XDM metadata is nothing else than the [Type ID](#). There are three exceptions: `document-node()`, `attribute()` and `xs:QName` items are followed by an additional `{URI}` string.

## Type IDs

The following table lists the type IDs that are returned by the server. Currently, all node kinds are of type `xs:untypedAtomic`:

	Type ID	Node Kind/Item Type	Type
7		<a href="#">Function item</a>	<i>function</i>
8		<code>node()</code>	<i>node</i>
9		<code>text()</code>	<i>node</i>
10		<code>processing-instruction()</code>	<i>node</i>
11		<code>element()</code>	<i>node</i>
12		<code>document-node()</code>	<i>node</i>
13		<code>document-node(element())</code>	<i>node</i>
14		<code>attribute()</code>	<i>node</i>
15		<code>comment()</code>	<i>node</i>
32		<code>item()</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
33		<code>xs:untyped</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
34		<code>xs:anyType</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
35		<code>xs:anySimpleType</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
36		<code>xs:anyAtomicType</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
37		<code>xs:untypedAtomic</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
38		<code>xs:string</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
39		<code>xs:normalizedString</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
40		<code>xs:token</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
41		<code>xs:language</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
42		<code>xs:NMTOKEN</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
43		<code>xs&gt;Name</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
44		<code>xs:NCName</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
45		<code>xs:ID</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
46		<code>xs:IDREF</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
47		<code>xs:ENTITY</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
48		<code>xs:float</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
49		<code>xs:double</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
50		<code>xs:decimal</code>	<i>atomic value</i>
51		<code>xs:precisionDecimal</code>	<i>atomic value</i>

Server Protocol: Types

52	xs:integer	<i>atomic value</i>
53	xs:nonPositiveInteger	<i>atomic value</i>
54	xs:negativeInteger	<i>atomic value</i>
55	xs:long	<i>atomic value</i>
56	xs:int	<i>atomic value</i>
57	xs:short	<i>atomic value</i>
58	xs:byte	<i>atomic value</i>
59	xs:nonNegativeInteger	<i>atomic value</i>
60	xs:unsignedLong	<i>atomic value</i>
61	xs:unsignedInt	<i>atomic value</i>
62	xs:unsignedShort	<i>atomic value</i>
63	xs:unsignedByte	<i>atomic value</i>
64	xs:positiveInteger	<i>atomic value</i>
65	xs:duration	<i>atomic value</i>
66	xs:yearMonthDuration	<i>atomic value</i>
67	xs:dayTimeDuration	<i>atomic value</i>
68	xs:dateTime	<i>atomic value</i>
69	xs:dateTimeStamp	<i>atomic value</i>
70	xs:date	<i>atomic value</i>
71	xs:time	<i>atomic value</i>
72	xs:gYearMonth	<i>atomic value</i>
73	xs:gYear	<i>atomic value</i>
74	xs:gMonthDay	<i>atomic value</i>
75	xs:gDay	<i>atomic value</i>
76	xs:gMonth	<i>atomic value</i>
77	xs:boolean	<i>atomic value</i>
78	base64:binary	<i>atomic value</i>
79	xs:base64Binary	<i>atomic value</i>
80	xs:hexBinary	<i>atomic value</i>
81	xs:anyURI	<i>atomic value</i>
82	xs:QName	<i>atomic value</i>
83	xs:NOTATION	<i>atomic value</i>

---

# Chapter 97. Java Examples

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#). The following Java code snippets demonstrate how easy it is to run database commands, create collections, perform queries, etc. by integrating the BaseX code. Most examples are taken from our [basex-examples](#) repository, in which you will find some more use cases.

## Local Examples

The following code snippets work in *embedded* mode; they do not rely on an additional server instance:

- [RunCommands.java](#) creates and drops database and index instances, prints a list of all existing databases.
- [RunQueries.java](#) shows three variants of running queries.
- [BindContext.java](#) demonstrates how a value can be bound as context item.
- [BindVariables.java](#) demonstrates how a value can be bound to a variable.
- [CreateCollection.java](#) creates and manages a collection.
- [QueryCollection.java](#) creates, runs queries against it and drops a collection.
- [WikiExample.java](#) creates a database from an url (wiki instance), runs a query against it and drops the database.

## Server Examples

The examples below take advantage of the client/server architecture:

- [ServerCommands.java](#) launches server-side commands using a client session.
- [ServerAndLocal.java](#) processes server results locally.
- [ServerConcurrency.java](#) runs concurrent queries.
- [ServerQueries.java](#) shows how iterative queries can be performed.
- [UserExample.java](#) manages database users.

## XQuery Module Examples

BaseX provides [Java Bindings](#) for accessing external Java code via XQuery functions. The following examples show how this feature can be utilized:

- [FruitsExample.java](#) demonstrates how Java classes can be imported as XQuery modules.
- [FruitsModule.java](#) is a simple demo module called by `FruitsExample`.
- [ModuleDemo.java](#) is a simple XQuery demo module that demonstrates how XQuery items can be processed from Java. It is derived from the `QueryModule` class.
- [QueryModule.java](#) is located in the BaseX core. Java query modules can extend this class to get access to the current query context and enrich functions with properties ().

## Client API

- [BaseXClient.java](#) provides an implementation of the [Server Protocol](#).



- [Example.java](#) demonstrates how commands can be executed on a server.
- [QueryExample.java](#) shows how queries can be executed in an iterative manner.
- [QueryBindExample.java](#) shows how external variables can be bound to XQuery expressions.
- [CreateExample.java](#) shows how new databases can be created.
- [AddExample.java](#) shows how documents can be added to databases, and how existing documents can be replaced.
- [BinaryExample.java](#) shows how binary resource can be added to and retrieved from the database.

## REST API

- [RESTGet.java](#) presents the HTTP GET method.
- [RESTPost.java](#) presents the HTTP POST method.
- [RESTPut.java](#) presents the HTTP PUT method.
- [RESTAll.java](#) runs all examples at one go.

## XML:DB API (deprecated)

Note that the XML:DB API does not talk to the server and can thus only be used in embedded mode.

- [XMLDBCreate.java](#) creates a collection using XML:DB.
- [XMLDBQuery.java](#) runs a query using XML:DB.
- [XMLDBInsert.java](#) inserts a document into a database using XML:DB.

## XQJ API (closed source)

The implementation of the [BaseX XQJ API](#) has been written by Charles Foster. The basex-examples repository contains [various examples](#) on how to use XQJ.

---

# Part XI. Extensions

---

---

# Chapter 98. YAJSW

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This page is part of the [Developer Section](#).

BaseX server can be configured to run as an always-on service in Windows (or daemon in Linux) using [YAJSW](#).

## Some basics of YAJSW

- Each service running with YAJSW has a configuration file which lives in the `conf` folder.
- Installing and controlling services is done from the command line. Run a command prompt as administrator, then navigate to the folder where you placed YAJSW, e.g. `cd C:\Programs\yajsw\yajsw-beta-12.05`
- If you need to change configuration of a service follow this sequence:
  1. Stop the service `java -jar wrapper.jar --stop conf\wrapper.name.conf`
  2. Remove the service `java -jar wrapper.jar --remove conf\wrapper.name.conf`
  3. Make your changes to the wrapper or application configuration.
  4. Install the service `java -jar wrapper.jar --install conf\wrapper.name.conf`
  5. Start the service `java -jar wrapper.jar --start conf\wrapper.name.conf`

YAJSW comes with some helpful convenience scripts in the 'bat' and 'bin' folders. This set of instructions does not use these convenience scripts.

## Gather the files

- Download the latest version of [BaseX](#). Select the Zip Archive.
- Download the latest version of [YAJSW](#).
- Download the latest version of [Java](#).

## Install BaseX as a Windows Service

The instructions on this page are known to work using Windows Server 2012R2, BaseX 8.4.2, YAJSW 12.05 beta, Java 1.8.0\_77 64-bit from Oracle.

## Install Java

Install Java using the Java installer for your operating system. Use a 64-bit version if you can.

## Put files into position

These instructions assume you will be placing BaseX and YAJSW in `C:\Programs`, but you can choose a different location.

1. Create folder `C:\Programs`
2. Extract YAJSW to `C:\Programs\yajsw\yajsw-beta-12.05`
3. Extract BaseX to `C:\Programs\BaseX\basex`

See [Database Server](#) for information on how to pick an initial admin password.

## Install BaseX as a service

Create wrapper config file `wrapper.basex.conf` and place it in YAJSW's `conf` folder. You can use the example below. You may need to modify this example to:

- Specify the location of `java.exe`
- Change the amount of memory available to BaseX from 1024m (for example, 512m or 2048m)

```
# YAJSW configuration for BaseX

wrapper.java.command=C:/ProgramData/Oracle/Java/javapath/java.exe

wrapper.working.dir=C:\\Programs\\BaseX\\basex

wrapper.java.app.mainclass=org.basex.BaseXHTTP

wrapper.java.classpath.1 = .\\BaseX.jar
wrapper.java.classpath.2 = .\\lib\\*.jar
wrapper.java.classpath.3 = .\\lib\\custom\\*.jar

wrapper.java.additional.1 = -Xmx1024m
wrapper.java.additional.2 = -Dfile.encoding=utf-8

wrapper.ntservice.name=BaseX
wrapper.ntservice.displayname=BaseX
wrapper.ntservice.description=BaseX XQuery database
wrapper.ntservice.starttype=DELAYED_AUTO_START

wrapper.console.loglevel=INFO
wrapper.logfile=${wrapper.working.dir}\\data\\wrapper-basex.log
wrapper.logfile.maxsize=10m
wrapper.logfile.maxfiles=10

wrapper.on_exit.0=SHUTDOWN
wrapper.on_exit.default=RESTART
```

After you have created the wrapper configuration file:

1. Open a command prompt as administrator
2. Navigate to the YAJSW folder: `cd C:\Programs\yajsw\yajsw-beta-12.05`
3. Install the service: `java -jar wrapper.jar --install conf\wrapper.basex.conf`
4. Start the service: `java -jar wrapper.jar --start conf\wrapper.basex.conf`

BaseX server is now running as a service, and will start automatically when Windows starts.

---

# Chapter 99. Android

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

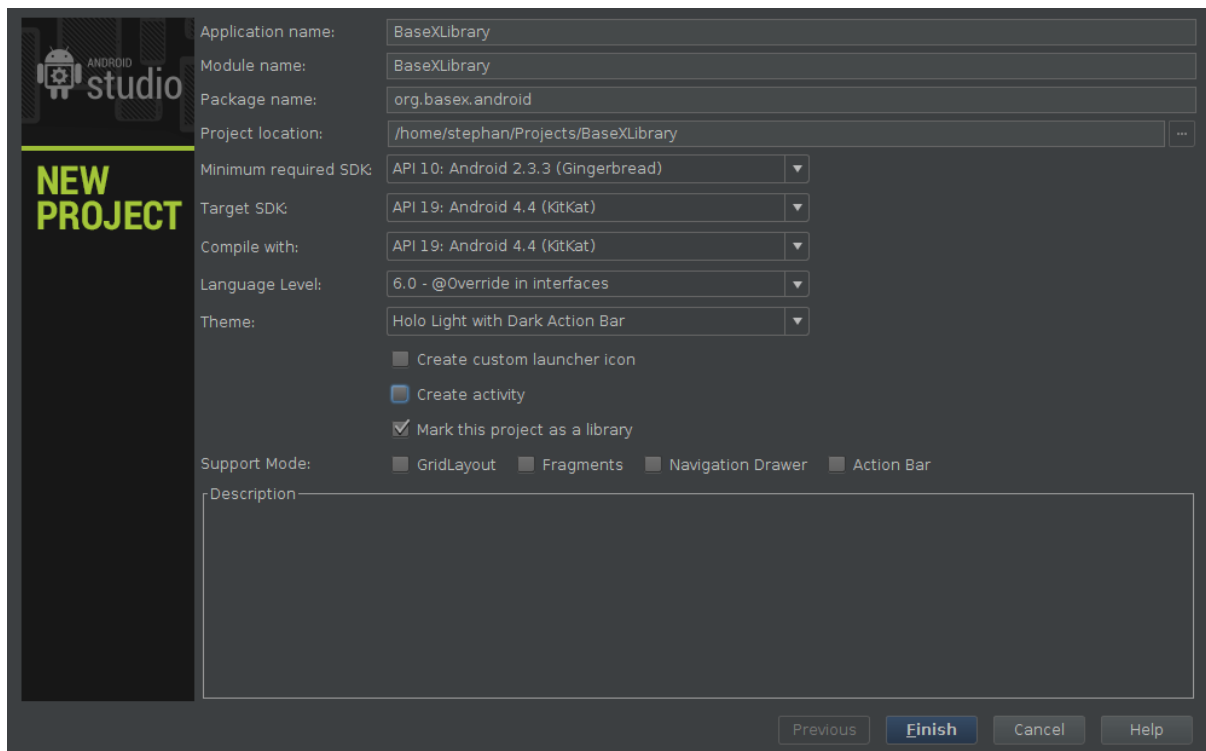
It is possible to create an Android port of BaseX. The present tutorial outlines the creation of a BaseX Android library, which can be used in any other application project.

For the creation of the library the **IDE Android Studio** is used, but the steps are more or less equal using the Eclipse IDE.

## Creating the Android Library Project

The first step is to create an Android library project, which will be later modified to represent the BaseX Android library.

In Android Studio the 'Create New Project' menu item needs to be chosen. In order to this the displayed window appears.



It is important that the minimum Android version is Gingerbread 2.3.3, because of some String methods used in BaseX which are not supported by Android versions older than Gingerbread.

To create an Android library project, the 'Mark this project as library' item need to be checked. An Android library is not executable and therefore does not need the creation of an Activity, which is the reason why this item is unchecked in the picture above.

After finishing the dialog Android Studio creates an empty library project with all needed folders and files.

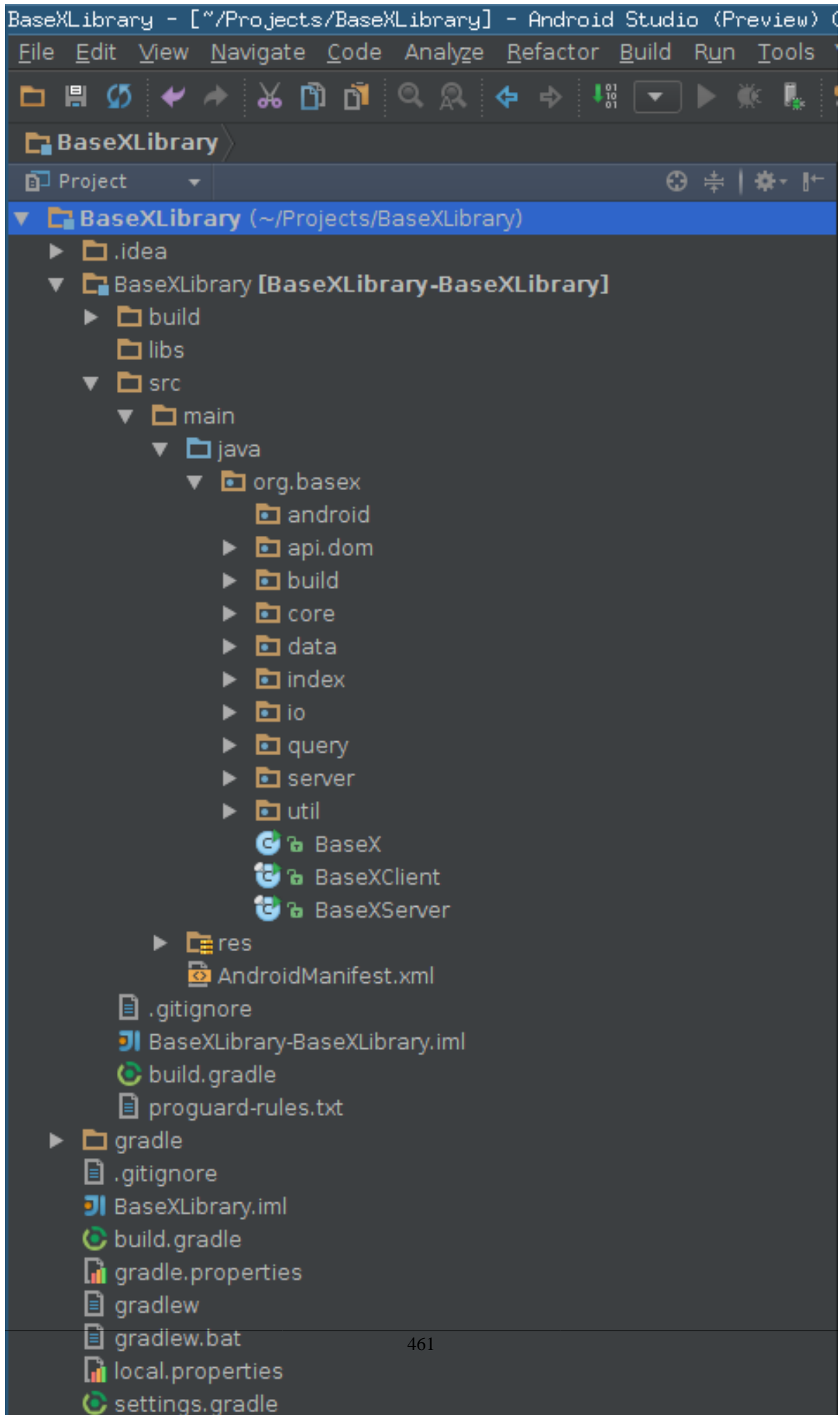
The next step is to copy the BaseX code into the created project folder 'src/main/java'.

Except the package 'gui' and the Java file 'BaseXGui.java' inside the 'src.main.java.org.basex'[1] package can be copied into the project folder. Android does not support Java AWT and Swing, which is the reason for not copying the gui package.

## Adjusting the Code

After successfully copying the corresponding BaseX packages and java files into the created Android library project a few adjustments have to be done in order to get a working Android library.

At this moment the BaseX source code is presented in the Android library project as well as an empty android package, as it is shown in the following image.



In the empty android package a new Java class needs to be created, this class is used to create the necessary BaseX files and communicate with BaseX. This class needs the data directory of the application for storing the corresponding BaseX files. This files should be stored in the apps /data/data/.. folder which is only accessible from the application. This information is only available inside the applications context and not inside a library project, therefore it is necessary to pass this information to this class at the constructor call. The following source code shows a minimal example for a BaseX class.

```
public class BaseXDatabase {
    private Context basexContext = null;

    public BaseXDatabase(String data_dir) {
        basexContext = new Context(data_dir);
    }
}
```

This class can be called in every Android application which uses the BaseX library with the following call, for example:

```
BaseXDatabase baseXDatabase = new BaseXDatabase(getApplicationInfo().dataDir);
```

At the moment it is not possible to use the BaseX library, therefore more adjustments have to be done in the BaseX code.

First it is necessary to add an additional constructor to the Context class to create the BaseX files in the right directory and adjust the default constructor of it. The following code shows the changes inside the Context.java file:

```
public Context(String data_dir) {
    this(true, (Prop.HOME = data_dir + "/"), (Prop.USERHOME = data_dir + "/"));
    File dir = new File(Prop.HOME, "basex/data");
    if(!dir.exists()) {
        if(!dir.mkdir()) {
            android.util.Log.i("BASEX", "CREATING BASEX DIRECTORIES");
        }
    }
}

private Context(final boolean file, String home, String userhome) {
    this(new MainProp(file));
}
```

As shown in the adjustment above, it is necessary to set the two variables 'Prop.HOME' and Prop.USERHOME' during the constructor call. In the BaseX code those variables are final, which need also be changed in order to set them during the call.

The reason for this change is that the in BaseX used System.getProperty(user.dir) returns an **empty string in Android**.

The next adjustment, which needs to be done, is to remove not supported packages inside the BaseX code. Therefore the package 'org.basex.query.util.crypto' need to be removed, because it uses external packages which are not supported by Android. The class which uses these files can be found inside the FNCrypto.java file in the 'query.func' package. This file needs to be deleted as well as its usage inside the Function.java file, which can also be found inside the 'query.func' package. The following lines need to be removed:

```
/** XQuery function. */
_CRYPTO_HMAC(FNCrypto.class, "hmac(message,key,algorithm[,encoding])",
    arg(STR, STR, STR, STR_ZO), STR),
/** XQuery function. */
_CRYPTO_ENCRYPT(FNCrypto.class, "encrypt(input,encryption,key,algorithm)",
    arg(STR, STR, STR, STR), STR),
/** XQuery function. */
_CRYPTO_DECRYPT(FNCrypto.class, "decrypt(input,type,key,algorithm)",
    arg(STR, STR, STR, STR), STR),
```



```

/** XQuery function. */
_CRYPTO_GENERATE_SIGNATURE(FNCrypto.class, "generate-signature" +
    "(input,canonicalization,digest,signature,prefix,type[,item1][,item2])",
    arg(NOD, STR, STR, STR, STR, STR, ITEM_ZO, ITEM_ZO), NOD),
/** XQuery function. */
_CRYPTO_VALIDATE_SIGNATURE(FNCrypto.class, "validate-signature(node)", arg(NOD),
    BLN),
URIS.put(FNCrypto.class, CRYPTOURI);

```

The result of this adjustment is, that it is now possible to use BaseX as an Android library, with the lack of support of the following XQuery functions:

- hmac(string,string,string[,string])
- encrypt(string,string,string,string)
- decrypt(string,string,string,string)
- generate-signature(node,string,string,string,string,string[,item][,item])
- validate-signature(node)

## Using the BaseX Android Library

To use the BaseX library the above created BaseXDatabase class can be extended with additional methods which are delegating requests to the BaseX database and return the results.

An example of this can be seen in the following code:

```

public String executeXQuery(String query) throws IOException {
    if(baseXContext != null)
        return new XQuery(query).execute(baseXContext);
    else
        Log.e("BaseXDatabase", "No context");
    return "";
}

```

This methods of the BaseXDatabase class can now be used in every Android application which includes the created BaseX Android library.

It is possible to create a .jar, or an **.aar file** out of the BaseX library, by just building the source code. This file need to be copied inside the lib folder of the Android project which wants to use the library. Additionally the build file of the application needs to be adjusted to use the library.

Using Gradle, the Android build system, it can be done by adding the following line to the gradle build file. This tells the build system that every library, inside the libs folder, is being compiled into the projects file.

```

dependencies {
    compile fileTree(dir: 'libs', include: ['*.jar', '*.aar'])
}

```

---

## **Part XII. Advanced User's Guide**

---

---

# Chapter 100. Advanced User's Guide

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This page is one of the **Main Sections** of the documentation. It contains details on the BaseX storage and the Server architecture, and presents some more GUI features.

## Storage & Parsing

- **Catalog Resolver** Information on entity resolving
- **Storage Layout** : How data is stored in the database files
- **Binary Data** : How to store and use binary data
- **Parsers** : How different input formats can be converted to XML

## Use Cases

- **Statistics** : Exemplary statistics on databases created with BaseX
- **Twitter** : Storing live tweets in BaseX

## Server and Query Architecture

- **User Management** : User management in the client/server environment
- **Transaction Management** : Insight into the BaseX transaction management
- **Logging** : Description of the server logs

---

# Chapter 101. Catalog Resolver

Read this entry online in the [BaseX Wiki](#).

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). It clarifies how to deal with mapping system IDs (DTD locations) and URIs to local resources when parsing and transforming XML data.

*Changed with Version 10:*

- The [Java 11: XML Catalog API](#) is used to resolve references to external resources.
- As an alternative, Norman Walsh's [Enhanced XML Resolver](#) is utilized if it is found in the classpath.
- The Apache-maintained [XML Commons Resolver](#) has become obsolete.
- If enabled, a catalog is universally applied for resolving:
  - entities (when parsing XML documents);
  - URIs (for documents, module imports, XSL transformations);
  - resources (when validating documents).

## Introduction

XML documents often rely on Document Type Definitions (DTDs). Entities can be resolved with respect to that particular DTD. By default, the DTD is only used for entity resolution.

XHTML, for example, defines its doctype via the following line:

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
```

Fetching `xhtml1-strict.dtd` from the W3C's server obviously involves network traffic. When dealing with single files, this may seem tolerable, but importing large collections benefits from caching these resources. Depending on the remote server, you will experience significant speed improvements when caching DTDs locally.

To address these issues, the [XML Catalogs Standard](#) defines an entity catalog that maps both external identifiers and arbitrary URI references to URI references.

Another application for XML catalogs is to provide local resources for reusable XSLT stylesheet libraries that are imported from a canonical location. This is described in greater detail in the following section.

## Usage

### System ID (DTD Location) Rewrites

To enable entity resolving, you have to provide a valid XML Catalog file so that the parser knows where to look for mirrored DTDs.

A simple working example for XHTML might look like this:

```
<catalog prefer="system" xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
  <rewriteSystem systemIdStartString="http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/"
    rewritePrefix="file:///path/to/dtds/" />
</catalog>
```

This rewrites all systemIds starting with: `http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/` to `file:///path/to/dtds/`. For example, if the following XML file is parsed:

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN"
```

```
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" />
```

The XHTML DTD `xhtml1-transitional.dtd` and all its linked resources will now be loaded from the specified path.

The catalog file `etc/w3-catalog.xml` in the full distributions can be used out of the box. It defines rewritings for some common W3 DTD files.

## URI Rewrites

Consider a library of reusable XSLT stylesheets. For performance reasons, this library will be cached locally. However, the import URI for a given stylesheet should always be the same, independent of the accidental relative or absolute path that it is stored at locally. Example:

```
<xsl:import href="http://acme.com/xsltlib/acme2html/1.0/acme2html.xsl" />
```

The XSLT stylesheet might not even be available from this location. The URI serves as a canonical location identifier for this XSLT stylesheet. A local copy of the `acme2html/1.0/` directory is expected to reside somewhere, and the location of this directory relative to the local XML catalog file is specified in an entry in this catalog, like this:

```
<rewriteURI uriStartString="http://acme.com/xsltlib/acme2html/1.0/"
rewritePrefix="../acmehtml10/" />
```

This way, XSLT import URIs don't have to be adjusted for the relative or absolute locations of the XSLT library's local copy.

The same URI rewriting works for resources retrieved by the `doc()` function from within an XSLT stylesheet. See [XSLT Module](#) for details on how to invoke XSLT stylesheets from within BaseX.

NOTE: This URI rewriting is currently restricted to XSLT stylesheets. It has neither been enabled yet for the XQuery function `doc()` nor for XSD schema locations.

## GUI Mode

When running BaseX in GUI mode, enable DTD parsing and provide the path to your XML Catalog file in the *Parsing* Tab of the Database Creation Dialog.

## Console & Server Mode

To enable Entity Resolving in Console Mode, enable the DTD option and assign the path to your XML catalog file to the `CATALOG` option. All subsequent commands for adding documents will use the specified catalog file to resolve entities.

Paths to your catalog file and the actual DTDs are either absolute or relative to the *current working directory*. When using BaseX in client-server mode, they are resolved against the working directory of the *server*.

## Additional Notes

Entity resolving only works if the [internal XML parser](#) is switched off (which is the default case).

By default, an error is raised if the catalog resolution fails. The runtime properties of the catalog resolver can be changed by setting system properties, either on startup...

```
java -Djavax.xml.catalog.resolve=continue ... org.basex.BaseX
```

...or via XQuery:

```
Q{java:System}setProperty('javax.xml.catalog.resolve', 'continue'),
...
```

See [Java 11: XML Catalog API](#) for more information.

When using a catalog within an XQuery Module, the global `db:catalog` option may not be set in this module. You can set it via pragma instead:

```
(# db:catalog xmlcatalog/catalog.xml #) {  
  xslt:transform(db:get('acme_content')[1], '../acmecustom/acmehtml.xsl')  
}
```

It is assumed that this stylesheet `../acmecustom/acmehtml.xsl` (location relative to the current XQuery script or module) imports `acme2html/1.0/acme2html.xsl` by its canonical URI that will be resolved to a local URI by the catalog resolver.

Please note that since catalog-based URI rewriting does not work yet within URIs accessed from XQuery, you cannot give a canonical location that needs to be catalog-resolved as the second argument of `xslt:transform()`.

The catalog location in the pragma can be given relative to the current working directory (the directory that is returned by `file:current-dir()`) or as an absolute operating system path. The catalog location in the pragma is not an XQuery expression; no concatenation or other operations may occur in the pragma, and the location string must not be surrounded by quotes.

## Changelog

Version 10.0

- Updated: `CATFILE` option renamed to `CATALOG`.

# Chapter 102. Storage Layout

Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). It presents some low-level details on how data is stored in the database files.

## Data Types

The following data types are used for specifying the storage layout:

Type	Description	Example (native → hex integers)
<i>Num</i>	Compressed integer (1-5 bytes), specified in <a href="#">Num.java</a>	15 → 0F; 511 → 41 FF,
<i>Token</i>	Length ( <i>Num</i> ) and bytes of UTF8 byte representation	Hello → 05 48 65 6c 6c 6f
<i>Double</i>	Number, stored as token	123 → 03 31 32 33
<i>Boolean</i>	Boolean (1 byte, 00 or 01)	true → 01
<i>Nums, Tokens, Doubles</i>	Arrays of values, introduced with the number of entries	1, 2 → 02 01 31 01 32
<i>TokenSet</i>	Key array ( <i>Tokens</i> ), next/bucket/size arrays (3x <i>Nums</i> )	

## Database Files

The following tables illustrate the layout of the BaseX database files. All files are suffixed with `.basex`.

### Metadata, Name/Path/Doc Indexes: `inf`

Description	Format
<b>1. Metadata</b>	1. Key/value pairs, in no particular order ( <i>Token/Token</i> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Examples: FNAME, TIME, SIZE, ...</li> <li>• PERM → Number of users (<i>Num</i>), and name/password/permission values for each user (<i>Token/Token/Num</i>)</li> </ul> 2. Empty key as finalizer
<b>2. Main memory indexes</b>	1. Key/value pairs, in no particular order ( <i>Token/Token</i> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TAGS → Element Name Index</li> <li>• ATTS → Attribute Name Index</li> <li>• PATH → Path Index</li> <li>• NS → Namespaces</li> <li>• DOCS → Document Index</li> </ul> 2. Empty key as finalizer
<b>2 a) Name Index</b> Element/attribute names	1. Token set, storing all names ( <i>TokenSet</i> ) 2. One StatsKey instance per entry: 2.1. Content kind ( <i>Num</i> ): 2.1.1. Number: min/max ( <i>Doubles</i> ) 2.1.2. Category: number of entries ( <i>Num</i> ), entries ( <i>Tokens</i> ) 2.2. Number of entries ( <i>Num</i> ) 2.3. Leaf flag ( <i>Boolean</i> ) 2.4. Maximum text length ( <i>Double</i> ; legacy, could be <i>Num</i> )
<b>2 b) Path Index</b>	1. Flag for path definition ( <i>Boolean</i> , always true; legacy) 2. PathNode: 2.1. Name reference ( <i>Num</i> ) 2.2. Node kind ( <i>Num</i> ) 2.3. Number of occurrences ( <i>Num</i> ) 2.4. Number of children ( <i>Num</i> ) 2.5. <i>Double</i> ; legacy, can be reused or discarded 2.6. Recursive generation of child nodes (→ 2)

<b>2 c) Namespaces</b>	1. Token set, storing prefixes ( <i>TokenSet</i> ) 2. Token set, storing URIs ( <i>TokenSet</i> ) 3. NSNode: 3.1. pre value ( <i>Num</i> ) 3.2. References to prefix/URI pairs ( <i>Nums</i> ) 3.3. Number of children ( <i>Num</i> ) 3.4. Recursive generation of child nodes (→ 3)
<b>2 d) Document Index</b>	Array of integers, representing the distances between all document pre values ( <i>Nums</i> )

**Node Table: `tbl`, `tbli`**

- `tbl` : Main database table, stored in blocks.
- `tbli` : Database directory, organizing the database blocks.

Some more information on the [node storage](#) is available.

**Texts: `txt`, `atv`**

- `txt` : Heap file for text values (document names, string values of texts, comments and processing instructions)
- `atv` : Heap file for attribute values.

**Value Indexes: `txtl`, `txtr`, `atvl`, `atvr`****Text Index:**

- `txtl` : Heap file with ID lists.
- `txtr` : Index file with references to ID lists.

The **Attribute Index** is contained in the files `atvl` and `atvr`, the **Token Index** in `tokl` and `tokr`. All have the same layout.

For a more detailed discussion and examples of these file formats please see [Index File Structure](#).

**Document Path Index: `pth`**

Provides an index of all the document paths in the database. For databases with a large number of paths this file can be quite large so it is only generated the first time a function requesting a path lookup is run. For databases where path lookups are never used this file will not exist.

**Note:** On Windows/Mac systems this file is case insensitive (all paths are lower case). On UNIX-like systems this file is case sensitive. The behaviour of path look ups will vary between systems. Copying this file between system types may lead to unexpected behaviour.

**ID/Pre Mapping: `idp`**

This file is only created if incremental indexing (UPDINDEX) is enabled for a database. It is used to provide a quick look up of the pre value for a database node id.

**Full-Text Fuzzy Index: `ftxx`, `ftxy`, `ftxz`**

...may soon be reimplemented.



---

# Chapter 103. Node Storage

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article describes the [Storage Layout](#) of the main database table.

## Node Table

BaseX stores all XML nodes in a flat table. The node table of a database can be displayed via the `INFO STORAGE` command:

```
$ basex -c"create db db <xml>HiThere</xml>" -c"info storage"
```

PRE	DIS	SIZ	ATS	ID	NS	KIND	CONTENT
0	1	3	1	0	0	DOC	db.xml
1	1	2	1	1	0	ELEM	xml
2	1	1	1	2	0	TEXT	HiThere

## PRE Value

The *pre* value of a node represents the order in which the XML nodes are visited by a SAX parser. It is actually not stored in the database; instead, it is implicitly given by the table position. As a result, it will change whenever a node with a smaller *pre* values is added to or deleted from a database.

## ID Value

Each database node has a persistent *id* value, which remains valid after update operations, and which is referenced by the [value indexes](#). As long as no updates are performed on a database, the *pre* and *id* values are identical. The values will remain to be identical if new nodes are exclusively added to the end of the database. If nodes are deleted or inserted somewhere else, the values will diverge, as shown in the next example:

```
$ basex -c"create db db <xml>HiThere</xml>" -q"insert node <b/> before /xml" -c"info storage"
```

PRE	DIS	SIZ	ATS	ID	NS	KIND	CONTENT
0	1	4	1	0	0	DOC	db.xml
1	1	1	1	3	0	ELEM	b
2	2	2	1	1	0	ELEM	xml
3	1	1	1	2	0	TEXT	HiThere

The `db:node-pre` and `db:node-id` functions can be called to retrieve the *pre* and *id* values of a node, and `db:get-pre` and `db:get-id` can be used to go back and retrieve the original node. By default, *id* lookups are expensive. If `UPDINDEX` is turned on, an additional index will be maintained to speed up the process.

## Block Storage

BaseX logically splits the `tbl.basex` file into blocks with length 4096 bytes, i.e. each block can have max 256 records each with length 16 bytes. The records within a block are sorted by their *pre* value (which, therefore, can be implicitly determined and need not be saved).

For each block BaseX stores in a separate file (`tbli.basex`) the smallest *pre* value within that block (and since the records are sorted, that will be the *pre* value of the first record stored in the block). These will be referred as *fpre* from now on. The physical address of each block is stored in `tbli.basex`, too.

Since these two maps will not grow excessively large, but are accessed resp. changed on each read resp. write operation, they are kept in main memory and flushed to disk on closing the database.

A newly created database with 256 + 10 records will occupy the first two blocks with physical addresses 0 and 4096. The corresponding *fpre*'s will be 0 and 256.

If a record with `pre = 12` is to be inserted, it needs to be stored in the first block, which is, however, full. In this case, a new block with physical address 8192 will be allocated, the records with `pre` values from 12 to 255 will be copied to the new block, the new record will be stored in the old block at `pre = 12`, and the two maps will look like this:

```
fpre's = 0, 13, 257  
addr's = 0, 8192, 4096
```

Basically, the old records remain in the first block, but they will not be read, since the `fpre's` array says that only 13 records are stored in the first block. This causes redundant storage of the records with old `pres` from 13 to 255.

Additionally to these two maps (`fpre's` and `addr's`), BaseX maintains a bit map (which is also stored in `tbli.basex`) which reflects which physical blocks are free and which not, so that when a new block is needed, an already free one will be reused.

---

# Chapter 104. Binary Data

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#).

The BaseX store also provides support for binary resources. A database may contain both XML documents and binary files, which are handled in a uniform way: A unique database path serves as key, and the contents can be retrieved via database commands, XQuery, or the various APIs.

## Storage

XML documents are stored in a proprietary format to speed up XPath axis traversals and update operations, and binary files are stored unchanged in a dedicated subdirectory (called `raw`). Several reasons exist for using the traditional file system as storage:

- **Good Performance** : The file system generally performs very well when it comes to the retrieval and update of binary files.
- **Key/Value Stores** : We do not want to compete with existing key/value database solutions.
- **Our Focus** : our main focus is the efficient storage of hierarchical data structures and file formats such as XML or (more and more) JSON. The efficient storage of arbitrary binary resources would introduce many new challenges that would distract us from more pressing tasks.

For some use cases, the chosen database design may bring along certain limitations:

- **Performance Limits** : most file system are not capable of handling thousands or millions of binary resources in a single directory in an efficient way. The same problem happens if you have a large number of XML documents that need to imported in or exported from a BaseX database. The general solution to avoid this bottleneck is to distribute the relevant binaries in additional subdirectories.
- **Keys** : if you want to use arbitrary keys for XML and binary resources, which are not supported by the underlying file system, you may either add an XML document in your database that contains all key/path mappings.

In the latter case, a key/value store might be the better option anyway.

## Usage

More information on how to store, retrieve, update and export binary data is found in the general [Database](#) documentation.

---

# Chapter 105. Parsers

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). It presents the available parsers that can be used to import various data sources in BaseX databases. Please visit the [Serialization](#) article if you want to know how to export data.

## XML Parsers

BaseX provides two alternatives for parsing XML:

- By default, Java's [SAXParser](#) is used to parse XML documents.
- The internal, built-in XML parser is more fault-tolerant than Java's XML parser. It supports standard HTML entities out of the box, and it is faster than the default parser, in particular if small documents are to be parsed. However, the internal parser does not support the full range of DTD features and cannot resolve [catalogs](#).

## GUI

Go to Menu *Database* → *New*, then choose the *Parsing* tab and (de)activate *Use internal XML parser*. The parsing of DTDs can be turned on/off by selecting the checkbox below.

## Command Line

To turn the internal XML parser and DTD parsing on/off, modify the `INTPARSE` and `DTD` options:

```
SET INTPARSE true
SET DTD true
```

## XQuery

The `db:add` and `db:put` functions can also be used to add new XML documents to the database. The following example query uses the internal XML parser and adds all files to the database `DB` that are found in the directory `2Bimported`:

```
for $file in file:list("2Bimported")
return db:add('DB', $file, '', map { 'intparse': true() })
```

## HTML Parser

If [TagSoup](#) is found in the [classpath](#), HTML can be imported in BaseX without any problems. TagSoup ensures that only well-formed HTML arrives at the XML parser (correct opening and closing tags, etc.).

If TagSoup is not available on a system, the default XML parser will be used. (Only) if the input is well-formed XML, the import will succeed.

## Installation

### Downloads

TagSoup is already included in the full BaseX distributions (`BaseX.zip`, `BaseX.exe`, etc.). It can also be manually downloaded and embedded on the appropriate platforms.

### Maven

An easy way to add TagSoup to your project is to follow this steps:

1. Visit [MVN TagSoup Repository](#)

2. Click on the version you want
3. On the first tab, you can see an XML snippet like this:

```
<dependency>
  <groupId>org.ccil.cowan.tagsoup</groupId>
  <artifactId>tagsoup</artifactId>
  <version>1.2.1</version>
</dependency>
```

4. copy that in your own maven project's pom.xml file into the <dependencies> element.
5. don't forget to run `mvn jetty:run` again

## Debian

With Debian, TagSoup will be automatically detected and included after it has been installed via:

```
apt-get install libtagsoup-java
```

## Options

TagSoup offers a variety of options to customize the HTML conversion. For the complete list please visit the [TagSoup](#) website. BaseX supports most of these options with a few exceptions:

- **encoding** : BaseX tries to guess the input encoding, but this can be overwritten by this option.
- **files** : not supported as input documents are piped directly to the XML parser.
- **method** : set to 'xml' as default. If this is set to 'html' ending tags may be missing for instance.
- **version** : dismissed, as TagSoup always falls back to 'version 1.0', no matter what the input is.
- **standalone** : deactivated.
- **pyx** , **pyxin**: not supported as the XML parser can't handle this kind of input.
- **output-encoding** : not supported, BaseX already takes care of that.
- **reuse** , **help**: not supported.

## GUI

Go to Menu *Database* → *New* and select "HTML" in the input format combo box. There's an info in the "Parsing" tab about whether TagSoup is available or not. The same applies to the "Resources" tab in the "Database Properties" dialog.

These two dialogs come with an input field 'Parameters' where TagSoup options can be entered.

## Command Line

Turn on the HTML Parser before parsing documents, and set a file filter:

```
SET PARSER html
SET HTMLPARSER
method=xml,nons=true,nocdata=true,nodefaults=true,nobogons=true,nocolons=true,ignorable=true
SET CREATEFILTER *.html
```

## XQuery

The [HTML Module](#) provides a function for converting HTML to XML documents.

Documents can also be converted by specifying the parser and additional options as function arguments:

```
fetch:doc("index.html", map {  
  'parser': 'html',  
  'htmlparser': map { 'html': false(), 'nodefaults': true() }  
})
```

## JSON Parser

BaseX can also import JSON documents. The resulting format is described in the documentation for the [XQuery JSON Module](#):

### GUI

Go to Menu *Database* → *New* and select "JSON" in the input format combo box. You can set the following options for parsing JSON documents in the "Parsing" tab:

- **Encoding** : Choose the appropriate encoding of the JSON file.
- **JsonML** : Activate this option if the incoming file is a JsonML file.

### Command Line

Turn on the JSON Parser before parsing documents, and set some optional, parser-specific options and a file filter:

```
SET PARSE json  
SET JSONPARSER encoding=utf-8, jsonml=true  
SET CREATEFILTER *.json
```

### XQuery

The [JSON Module](#) provides functions for converting JSON objects to XML documents.

## CSV Parser

BaseX can be used to import CSV documents. Different alternatives how to proceed are shown in the following:

### GUI

Go to Menu *Database* → *New* and select "CSV" in the input format combo box. You can set the following options for parsing CSV documents in the "Parsing" tab:

- **Encoding** : Choose the appropriate encoding of the CSV file.
- **Separator** : Choose the column separator of the CSV file. Possible: comma, semicolon, tab or space or an arbitrary character.
- **Header** : Activate this option if the incoming CSV files have a header line.

### Command Line

Turn on the CSV Parser before parsing documents, and set some optional, parser-specific options and a file filter. Unicode code points can be specified as separators; 32 is the code point for spaces:

```
SET PARSE csv  
SET CSVPARSER encoding=utf-8, lines=true, header=false, separator=space  
SET CREATEFILTER *.csv
```

### XQuery

The [CSV Module](#) provides a function for converting CSV to XML documents.

Documents can also be converted by specifying the parser in an XQuery function. The following example query adds all CSV files that are located in the directory `2Bimported` to the database `DB` and interprets the first lines as column headers:

```
for $file in file:list("2Bimported", false(), "*.csv")
return db:add("DB", $file, "", map {
  'parser': 'csv',
  'csvparser': map { 'header': true() }
})
```

## Text Parser

Plain text can be imported as well:

### GUI

Go to Menu *Database* → *New* and select "TEXT" in the input format combobox. You can set the following option for parsing text documents in the "Parsing" tab:

- **Encoding** : Choose the appropriate encoding of the text file.
- **Lines** : Activate this option to create a `<line>...</line>` element for each line of the input text file.

### Command Line

Turn on the CSV Parser before parsing documents and set some optional, parser-specific options and a file filter:

```
SET PARSER text
SET TEXTPARSER lines=yes
SET CREATEFILTER *
```

### XQuery

Similar to the other formats, the text parser can also be specified via XQuery:

```
for $file in file:list("2Bimported", true(), "*.txt")
return db:add("DB", $file, "", map { 'parser': 'text' })
```

## Changelog

Version 7.8

- Updated: parser options

Version 7.7.2

- Removed: CSV option "format"

Version 7.3

- Updated: the CSV `SEPARATOR` option may now be assigned arbitrary single characters

Version 7.2

- Updated: Enhanced support for TagSoup options

---

# Chapter 106. User Management

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). The user management defines which permissions are required by a user to perform a database command or XQuery expression.

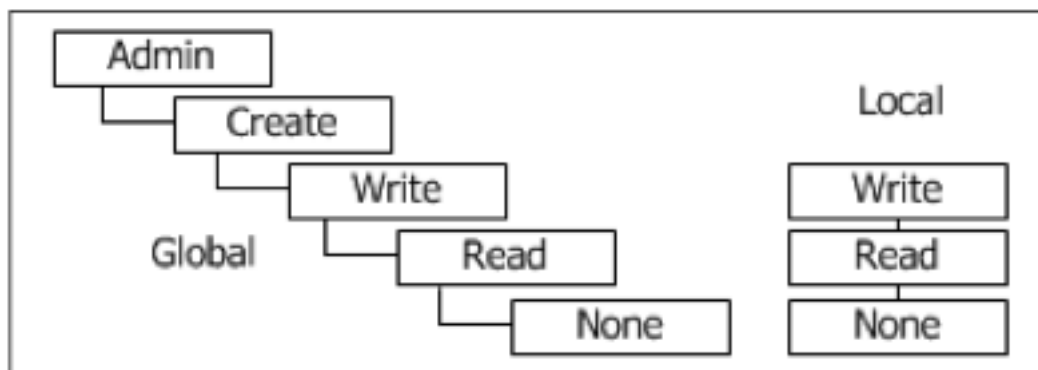
Permissions are mostly relevant in the client/server architecture, as the [GUI](#) and the [Command-Line Client](#) is run with admin permissions. There are a few exceptions such as the `xquery:eval` function: Its execution scope can also be limited by specifying a permission.

Please take care of usual security measures: ensure that your password will not end up in your bash history, avoid sending passwords via ordinary REST requests, etc.

## Rules

In the permission hierarchy below, the existing permissions are illustrated. A higher permission includes all lower permissions. For example, all users who have the `write` permission assigned will also be able to execute commands requiring `read` permission.

Local permissions are applied to databases. They have a higher precedence and override global permissions.



User names must follow the [valid names constraints](#), and the database patterns must follow the [Glob Syntax](#).

## Operations

For all operations, admin permissions are required:

## Commands

**Create user 'test' (password will be entered on command line). By default, the user will have no permissions ('none'):**

```
> CREATE USER test
```

**Change password of user 'test' to '71x343sd#':**

```
> ALTER PASSWORD test 71x343sd#
```

**Grant local write permissions to user 'test':**

```
> GRANT write ON unit* TO test
```

Note: Local permissions overwrite global permissions. As a consequence, the 'test' user will only be allowed to access (i.e., read and write) database starting with the letters 'unit'. If no local permissions are set, the global rights are inherited.



**Show global permissions:**

```
> SHOW USERS
```

## XQuery

The available user functions are listed in the [User Module](#):

**Create user 'test' with no permissions:**

```
user:create('test', 'top-secret')
```

**Show detailed information about user 'test':**

```
user:list-details()[@name = 'test']
```

**Drop user 'test':**

```
user:drop('test')
```

## Storage

The permission file `users.xml` is stored in the database directory. This file can be manually edited; it will be parsed once when BaseX is started.

Salted SHA256 hashes are used for authentication (the current timestamp will be used as salt). Additionally, digest hashes are used in the client/server architecture and the [Language Bindings](#), and in the [HTTP Context](#) if `AUTHMETHOD` is set to `Digest`.

## Changelog

Revised in Version 8.0.

---

# Chapter 107. Transaction Management

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). The BaseX client-server architecture offers ACID-safe transactions, with multiple readers and writers. Here is some more information about the transaction management.

## Introduction

In a nutshell, a transaction is equal to a command or query. So each command or query sent to the server becomes a transaction.

Incoming requests are parsed and checked for errors on the server. If the command or query is not correct, the request will not be executed, and the user will receive an error message. Otherwise the request becomes a transaction and gets into the transaction monitor.

Please note that:

- Locks *cannot be synchronized* across BaseX instances that run in different JVMs. If concurrent write operations are to be performed, we generally recommend working with the client/server or the HTTP architecture .
- An *unexpected abort* of the server during a transaction, caused by a hardware failure or power cut, may lead to an inconsistent database state if a transaction was active at shutdown time. It is advisable to use the CREATE BACKUP command to regularly back up your database. If the worst case occurs, you can try the INSPECT command to check if your database has obvious inconsistencies, and use RESTORE to restore the last backed up version of the database.

## XQuery Update

Many update operations are triggered by [XQuery Update](#) expressions. When executing an updating query, all update operations of the query are stored in a pending update list. They will be executed all at once, so the database is updated atomically. If any of the update sub-operations is erroneous, the overall transaction will be aborted.

## Concurrency Control

BaseX provides support for multiple read and single write operations (using preclaiming and starvation-free two phase locking). This means that:

- Read transactions are executed in parallel.
- If an updating transaction comes in, it will be queued and executed after all previous read transaction have been executed.
- Subsequent operations (read or write) will be queued until the updating transaction has completed.
- Jobs without database access will never be locked. Globally locking jobs can now be executed in parallel with non-locking jobs.
- Each database has its own queue: An update on database A will not block operations on database B. This is under the premise that it can be statically determined, i.e., before the transaction is evaluated, which databases will be accessed by a transaction (see [below](#)).
- The number of maximum parallel transactions can be adjusted with the PARALLEL option.
- By default, read transactions are favored, and transactions that access no databases can be evaluated even if the transactions limit has been reached. This behavior can be changed via the FAIRLOCK option.

## Limitations

### Commands

All commands come with a detector for local locks. Global locking is applied if the glob syntax is used:

- `DROP DB new*` : Drop all databases starting with the prefix string new.

### XQuery

With *Version 10*, the **lock detection has been fundamentally improved**, by splitting compilation into multiple steps.

Local locks can be applied if it is possible after compile time to associate all database operations with static databases names:

Query	Description
<code>//item</code>	Read lock of the currently opened database
<code>doc('factbook')</code>	Read lock of the factbook database
<code>collection('documents/path/to/docs')</code>	Read lock of the documents database
<code>delete nodes db:get('test')//*[@type = 'misc']</code>	Write lock of the test database
<code>declare variables \$db external;db:get(\$db)</code>	Read lock of the database externally bound to \$db.
<code>for \$db in ('db1', 'db2')return db:get(\$db)</code>	Read lock of db1 and db2, as the query is <b>unrolled at compile time</b> .
<code>let \$db := 'test'return insert nodes &lt;test/&gt; into db:get(\$db)</code>	Read lock of test, as the <b>variable is inlined</b> at compile time.
<code>sum(1 to 100)</code>	No lock required
<code>declare variable \$SIMULATE := true();if(\$SIMULATE) then &lt;doc/&gt; else db:get('doc')</code>	No lock required, as the query is simplified to <code>&lt;doc/&gt;</code> at compile time.

A global lock will be assigned if the static detection fails:

Query	Description
<code>db:get(doc('test')/reference/text())</code>	The name of the database to be opened will only be known at evaluation time.
<code>(1 to 100) ! db:get(concat('db', .))</code>	The UNROLLLIMIT can be increased to generate 100 <code>db:get</code> function calls and corresponding locks.

The functions `fn:doc` and `fn:collection` can be used for both accessing databases resources and fetching resources at the specified URI (see [Access Resources](#) for more details). There are two ways to reduce the number of locks:

1. Turn off the WITHDB option to prevent the functions from accessing databases; or
2. use `fetch:doc` for fetching resources from URIs, and use `db:get` for accessing databases.

You can consult the query info output (via the **Info View** of the GUI, via `-V` on **Command-Line** or via turning on the `QUERYINFO` option) to find out which databases are locked by a query, and if local locks or a global lock is applied.

## XQuery Locks

By default, access to external resources (files on hard disk, HTTP requests, ...) is not controlled by the transaction monitor of BaseX. Custom locks can be assigned via annotations, pragmas or options:

- A lock string may consist of a single key or multiple keys separated with commas.
- Internal locks and XQuery locks can co-exist. No conflicts arise, even if a lock string equals the name of a database that is locked by the transaction manager.
- The lock is transformed into a write lock by making the corresponding expression updating.

## Annotations

In the following module, lock annotations are used to prevent concurrent write operations on the same file:

```
module namespace config = 'config';

declare %baseex:lock('CONFIG') function config:read() as xs:string {
  file:read-text('config.txt')
};

declare %updating %baseex:lock('CONFIG') function config:write($data as xs:string) {
  file:write-text('config.txt', $data)
};
```

Some explanations:

- If a query calls the `config:read` function, a read lock will be acquired for the user-defined CONFIG lock string before query evaluation.
- If `config:write` is called by a query, a write lock will be applied.
- If another query calls `config:write`, it will be queued until the first query is evaluated.

## Pragmas

Locks can also be declared via pragmas:

```
update:output((# baseex:lock CONFIG #) {
  file:write('config.xml', <config/>)
})
```

The write locks is enforced via the Update.

## Options

Locks for the functions of a module can also be assigned via option declarations:

```
declare option baseex:lock 'CONFIG';

update:output(file:write('config.xml', <config/>))
```

Once again, a write lock is enforced.

## Java Modules

Locks can also be acquired on **Java functions** which are imported and invoked from an XQuery expression. It is advisable to explicitly lock Java code whenever it performs sensitive read and write operations.

## File-System Locks

### Update Operations

During a database update, a locking file `upd.baseex` will reside in that database directory. If the update fails for some unexpected reason, or if the process is killed ungracefully, this file will not be deleted. In this case, the

database cannot be opened anymore, and the message "Database ... is being updated, or update was not completed" will be shown instead.

If the locking file is manually removed, you may be able to reopen the database, but you should be aware that database may have got corrupt due to the interrupted update process, and you should revert to the most recent database backup.

## Database Locks

To avoid database corruptions that are caused by accidental write operations from different JVMs, a shared lock is requested on the database table file (`tbl.basex`) whenever a database is opened. If an update operation is triggered, and if no exclusive lock can be acquired, it will be rejected with the message "Database ... is currently opened by another process."

Please note that you cannot 100% rely on this mechanism, as it is not possible to synchronize operations across different JVMs. You will be safe when using the client/server or HTTP architecture.

## Changelog

### Version 10.0

- Updated: Lock detection was improved by splitting compilation into multiple steps.

### Version 9.4

- Updated: Single lock option for reads and writes.

### Version 9.1

- Updated: Query lock options were moved from `query` to `basex` namespace.

### Version 8.6

- Updated: New `FAIRLOCK` option, improved detection of lock patterns.

### Version 7.8

- Added: Locks can also be acquired on **Java functions**.

### Version 7.6

- Added: database locking introduced, replacing process locking.

### Version 7.2.1

- Updated: pin files replaced with shared/exclusive filesystem locking.

### Version 7.2

- Added: pin files to mark open databases.

### Version 7.1

- Added: update lock files.

---

# Chapter 108. Logging

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). It describes how client operations are logged by the server. The server logs can e.g. be used to get an overview of all processes executed on your server, trace any errors or compile performance statistics.

## Introduction

The server logs are written in plain text. In your [Database Directory](#), you can find a folder named `.logs` in which all log files are stored with the according date. Note that, depending on your OS and configuration, files and folders beginning with a `.` may be hidden. The log directory can be changed via the `LOGPATH` option.

If BaseX is used in a [Web Application](#), all trace output (generated via `fn:trace`, `prof:dump` and similar functions) will be stored in the logs as well.

Some more notes on the logging facility:

- HTTP requests are included in the log files.
- Logging can be turned on/off via the `LOG` option.
- The maximum length of logging messages can be changed via `LOGMSGMAXLEN`.
- The [Admin Module](#) provides access to the log files from XQuery.

If a proxy is used, the original IP address of the client will be added to the logs.

## RESTXQ

By default, RESTXQ code is executed with the `admin` user. As a result, this user will be displayed in the logs for all RESTXQ requests. In a web application with a custom user management, however, the name of the actual user who has sent a request is often more relevant.

When log data is written during the processing of a RESTXQ function, the following is looked up as follows:

1. The current request is checked for an `id` attribute. The attribute can be assigned via RESTXQ and the `request:set-attribute` function, and it is the recommended approach for stateless requests as all request attributes will be dropped after the finalization of a request.
2. If none is found, the `id` attribute is looked up in the current user session. The attribute can be assigned via `session:set` (see e.g. the [DBA](#) code for sessions and user handling). If the request path contains a `dba` segment, a `dba session` attribute will be looked up instead.
3. If none is found, the default path will be taken, and the user of the current database context will be included in the logs.

## Format

Example 1

```
01:18:12.892  SERVER      admin  OK      Server was started (port: 1984)
01:18:15.436  127.0.0.1:4722 jack   REQUEST XQUERY for $i in 1 to 5 return
random:double()
01:18:15.446  127.0.0.1:4722 jack   OK      Query executed in 2.38 ms.
                2.72 ms
01:18:15.447  127.0.0.1:4722 jack   REQUEST EXIT
01:18:15.447  127.0.0.1:4722 jack   OK      
                0.39 ms
```

A server has been started and a user `jack` has connected to the server to perform a query and exit properly.

Example 2

```
01:23:33.251 127.0.0.1:4736 john OK QUERY[0] 'hi' 0.44 ms
01:23:33.337 127.0.0.1:4736 john OK ITER[0] 1.14 ms
01:23:33.338 127.0.0.1:4736 john OK INFO[0] 0.36 ms
01:23:33.339 127.0.0.1:4736 john OK CLOSE[0] 0.21 ms
01:23:33.359 127.0.0.1:4736 john REQUEST EXIT
01:23:33.359 127.0.0.1:4736 john OK 0.14 ms
```

A user `john` has performed an iterative query, using one of the client APIs.

Example 3

```
01:31:51.888 127.0.0.1:4803 admin REQUEST [GET] http://localhost:8984/rest/
factbook
01:31:51.892 127.0.0.1:4803 admin 200
4.43 ms
```

An admin user has accessed the `factbook` database via REST.

## Changelog

### Version 9.5

- Updated: Show IP address behind proxy.

### Version 9.3

- Updated: Store trace output in database logs
- Updated: **RESTXQ**: The request attributes will be checked for a user id.

### Version 8.6

- Added: The log directory can be changed with the `LOGPATH` option.
- Updated: Include session attributes in log data.

---

# Part XIII. Use Cases

---



# Chapter 109. Statistics

Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). It lists statistics on various databases instances that have been created with BaseX, with value and full-text indexes turned off. The URLs to the original sources, if available or public, are listed below.

**Databases** in BaseX are light-weight. If a database limit is reached, you can distribute your documents across multiple database instances and access all of them with a single XQuery expression.

## Databases

Instances	FileSize	#Files	DbSize	#Nodes	#Attr	#ENames	#ANames	#URIs	Height
<b>Limits</b>	<b>512 GiB</b> (2 <sup>39</sup> Bytes)	<b>536'870'912</b> (2 <sup>29</sup> )	<b>126'272</b>	<b>2'147'483'648</b> (2 <sup>31</sup> )	<b>32768</b> (2 <sup>15</sup> )	<b>52768</b> (2 <sup>16</sup> )	<b>256</b> (2 <sup>8</sup> )	<i>no limit</i>	
RuWikiHis	421 GiB	1	416 GiB	324'848'508	3	21	6	2	6
ZhWikiHis	126 GiB	1	120 GiB	179'199'662	3	21	6	2	6
EnWiktionary	79 GiB	1	75 GiB	134'380'393	3	21	6	2	6
XMark	55 GiB	1	64 GiB	1'615'071'328	28	74	9	0	13
EnWikiMeta	54 GiB	1	52 GiB	401'456'348	8	21	6	2	6
MedLine	38 GiB	379	36 GiB	1'623'764'234	24	84	6	0	9
iProClass	36 GiB	1	37 GiB	1'631'218'984	84	245	4	2	9
Inex2009	31 GiB	2'666'500	34 GiB	1'336'110'619	19	28'034	451	1	37
CoPhIR	29 GiB	10'000'000	31 GiB	1'104'623'376	16	42	42	0	8
EnWikipedia	26 GiB	1	25 GiB	198'546'747	7	24	21	2	6
XMark	22 GiB	1	26 GiB	645'997'962	2	74	9	0	13
InterPro	14 GiB	1	19 GiB	860'304'235	5	7	15	0	4
Genome1	13 GiB	1	13 GiB	432'628'1012	12	26	101	2	6
NewYorkTimes	12 GiB	1'855'659	13 GiB	280'407'005	5	41	33	0	6
TrEMBL	11 GiB	1	14 GiB	589'650'538	8	47	30	2	7
XMark	11 GiB	1	13 GiB	323'083'402	2	74	9	0	13
IntAct	7973 MiB	25'624	6717 MiB	297'478'397	7	64	22	2	14
Freebase	7366 MiB	1	10 GiB	443'627'994	8	61	283	1	93
SDMX	6356 MiB	1	8028 MiB	395'871'872	2	22	6	3	7
OpenStreetMap	512 MiB	1	5171 MiB	6'910'669	3	19	5	2	6
SwissProt	4604 MiB	1	5422 MiB	241'274'406	6	70	39	2	7
EURLex	4815 MiB	1	5532 MiB	167'328'032	3	186	46	1	12
Wikicorpus	4492 MiB	659'338	4432 MiB	157'948'561	12	1'257	2'687	2	50
EnWikiRD	3679 MiB	1	3537 MiB	98'433'194	1	11	2	11	4
CoPhIR	2695 MiB	1'000'000	2882 MiB	101'638'857	10	42	42	0	8
MeSH	2091 MiB	1	2410 MiB	104'845'819	9	6	5	2	5
FreeDB	1723 MiB	1	2462 MiB	102'901'512	2	7	3	0	4
XMark	1134 MiB	1	1303 MiB	32'298'989	2	74	9	0	13

Statistics

DeepFS	810 MiB	1	850 MiB	44'821'506	4	3	6	0	24
LibraryUKN	760 MiB	1	918 MiB	46'401'941	3	23	3	0	5
Twitter	736 MiB	1'177'495	767 MiB	15'309'015	0	8	0	0	3
Organization	733 MiB	1'019'132	724 MiB	33'112'392	3	38	9	0	7
DBLP	694 MiB	1	944 MiB	36'878'181	4	35	6	0	7
Feeds	692 MiB	444'014	604 MiB	5'933'713	0	8	0	0	3
MedLineSupp	477 MiB	1	407 MiB	21'602'141	5	55	7	0	9
AirBase	449 MiB	38	273 MiB	14'512'851	1	111	5	0	11
MedLineDe	260 MiB	1	195 MiB	10'401'847	5	66	8	0	9
ZDNET	130 MiB	95'663	133 MiB	3'060'186	21	40	90	0	13
JMNEdict	124 MiB	1	171 MiB	8'592'666	0	10	0	0	5
XMark	111 MiB	1	130 MiB	3'221'926	2	74	9	0	13
Freshmeat	105 MiB	1	86 MiB	3'832'028	1	58	1	0	6
DeepFS	83 MiB	1	93 MiB	4'842'638	4	3	6	0	21
Treebank	82 MiB	1	92 MiB	3'829'513	1	250	1	0	37
DBLP2	80 MiB	170'843	102 MiB	4'044'649	4	35	6	0	6
DDI	76 MiB	3	39 MiB	2'070'157	7	104	16	21	11
Alfred	75 MiB	1	68 MiB	3'784'285	0	60	0	0	6
University	56 MiB	6	66 MiB	3'468'606	1	28	4	0	5
MediaUKN	38 MiB	1	45 MiB	1'619'443	3	21	3	0	5
HCIBIB2	32 MiB	26'390	33 MiB	617'023	1	39	1	0	4
Nasa	24 MiB	1	25 MiB	845'805	2	61	8	1	9
MovieDB	16 MiB	1	19 MiB	868'980	6	7	8	0	4
KanjiDic2	13 MiB	1	18 MiB	917'833	3	27	10	0	6
XMark	11 MiB	1	13 MiB	324'274	2	74	9	0	13
Shakespeare	711 KiB	1	9854 KiB	327'170	0	59	0	0	9
TreeOfLife	5425 KiB	1	7106 KiB	363'560	7	4	7	0	243
Thesaurus	4288 KiB	1	4088 KiB	201'798	7	33	9	0	7
MusicXML	3155 KiB	17	2942 KiB	171'400	8	179	56	0	8
BibDBPub	2292 KiB	3'465	2359 KiB	80'178	1	54	1	0	4
Factbook	1743 KiB	1	1560 KiB	77'315	16	23	32	0	6
XMark	1134 KiB	1	1334 KiB	33'056	2	74	9	0	13

This is the meaning of the attributes:

- *FileSize* is the original size of the input documents
- *#Files* indicates the number of stored XML documents
- *#DbSize* is the size of the resulting database (excluding the **value index structures**)
- *#Nodes* represents the number of XML nodes (elements, attributes, texts, etc.) stored in the database
- *#Attr* indicates the maximum number of attributes stored for a single element
- *#ENames* and *#ANames* reflect the number of distinct element and attribute names
- *#URIs* represent the number of distinct namespace URIs

- *Height* indicates the maximum level depth of the stored nodes

## Sources

Instances	Source
AirBase	<a href="http://air-climate.eionet.europa.eu/databases/airbase/airbasexml">http://air-climate.eionet.europa.eu/databases/airbase/airbasexml</a>
Alfred	<a href="http://alfred.med.yale.edu/alfred/alfredWithDescription.zip">http://alfred.med.yale.edu/alfred/alfredWithDescription.zip</a>
BibDBPub	<a href="http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/">http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/</a>
CoPhIR	<a href="http://cophir.isti.cnr.it/">http://cophir.isti.cnr.it/</a>
DBLP	<a href="http://dblp.uni-trier.de/xml">http://dblp.uni-trier.de/xml</a>
DBLP2	<a href="http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/">http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/</a>
DDI	<a href="http://tools.ddialliance.org/">http://tools.ddialliance.org/</a>
EnWikiMeta	<a href="http://dumps.wikimedia.org/enwiki/latest/enwiki-latest-pages-meta-current.xml.bz2">http://dumps.wikimedia.org/enwiki/latest/enwiki-latest-pages-meta-current.xml.bz2</a>
EnWikipedia	<a href="http://dumps.wikimedia.org/enwiki/latest/enwiki-latest-pages-articles.xml.bz2">http://dumps.wikimedia.org/enwiki/latest/enwiki-latest-pages-articles.xml.bz2</a>
EnWikiRDF	<a href="http://www.xml-benchmark.org/">http://www.xml-benchmark.org/</a> generated with xmlgen
EnWiktionary	<a href="http://dumps.wikimedia.org/enwiktionary/latest/enwiktionary-latest-pages-meta-history.xml.7z">http://dumps.wikimedia.org/enwiktionary/latest/enwiktionary-latest-pages-meta-history.xml.7z</a>
EURLex	<a href="http://www.epsiplatform.eu/">http://www.epsiplatform.eu/</a>
Factbook	<a href="http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/xmldatasets/www/repository.html">http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/xmldatasets/www/repository.html</a>
Freebase	<a href="http://download.freebase.com/wex">http://download.freebase.com/wex</a>
FreeDB	<a href="http://www.xmldatabases.org/radio/xmlDatabases/projects/FreeDBtoXML">http://www.xmldatabases.org/radio/xmlDatabases/projects/FreeDBtoXML</a>
Freshmeat	<a href="http://freshmeat.net/articles/freshmeat-xml-rpc-api-available">http://freshmeat.net/articles/freshmeat-xml-rpc-api-available</a>
Genome1	<a href="ftp://ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/snp/organisms/human_9606/XML/ds_ch1.xml.gz">ftp://ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/snp/organisms/human_9606/XML/ds_ch1.xml.gz</a>
HCIBIB2	<a href="http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/">http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/</a>
Inex2009	<a href="http://www.mpi-inf.mpg.de/departments/d5/software/inex">http://www.mpi-inf.mpg.de/departments/d5/software/inex</a>
IntAct	<a href="ftp://ftp.ebi.ac.uk/pub/databases/intact/current/index.html">ftp://ftp.ebi.ac.uk/pub/databases/intact/current/index.html</a>
InterPro	<a href="ftp://ftp.bio.net/biomirror/interpro/match_complete.xml.gz">ftp://ftp.bio.net/biomirror/interpro/match_complete.xml.gz</a>
iProClass	<a href="ftp://ftp.pir.georgetown.edu/pir_databases/iproclass/iproclass.xml.gz">ftp://ftp.pir.georgetown.edu/pir_databases/iproclass/iproclass.xml.gz</a>
JMNEdict	<a href="ftp://ftp.monash.edu.au/pub/nihongo/enamdict_doc.html">ftp://ftp.monash.edu.au/pub/nihongo/enamdict_doc.html</a>
KanjiDic2	<a href="http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/kanjadic2">http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/kanjadic2</a>
MedLine	<a href="http://www.nlm.nih.gov/bsd">http://www.nlm.nih.gov/bsd</a>
MeSH	<a href="http://www.nlm.nih.gov/mesh/xmlmesh.html">http://www.nlm.nih.gov/mesh/xmlmesh.html</a>
MovieDB	<a href="http://eagereyes.org/InfoVisContest2007Data.html">http://eagereyes.org/InfoVisContest2007Data.html</a>

MusicXML	<a href="http://www.recordare.com/xml/samples.html">http://www.recordare.com/xml/samples.html</a>
Nasa	<a href="http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/xmldatasets/www/repository.html">http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/xmldatasets/www/repository.html</a>
NewYorkTimes	<a href="http://www.nytimes.com/ref/membercenter/nytarchive.html">http://www.nytimes.com/ref/membercenter/nytarchive.html</a>
OpenStreetMap	<a href="http://dump.wiki.openstreetmap.org/osmwiki-latest-files.tar.gz">http://dump.wiki.openstreetmap.org/osmwiki-latest-files.tar.gz</a>
Organizations	<a href="http://www.data.gov/raw/1358">http://www.data.gov/raw/1358</a>
RuWikiHist	<a href="http://dumps.wikimedia.org/ruwiki/latest/ruwiki-latest-pages-meta-history.xml.7z">http://dumps.wikimedia.org/ruwiki/latest/ruwiki-latest-pages-meta-history.xml.7z</a>
SDMX	<a href="http://www.metadatatechnology.com/">http://www.metadatatechnology.com/</a>
Shakespeare	<a href="http://www.cafeconleche.org/examples/shakespeare">http://www.cafeconleche.org/examples/shakespeare</a>
SwissProt	<a href="ftp://ftp.uniprot.org/pub/databases/uniprot/current_release/knowledgebase">ftp://ftp.uniprot.org/pub/databases/uniprot/current_release/knowledgebase</a>
Thesaurus	<a href="http://www.drze.de/BELIT/thesaurus">http://www.drze.de/BELIT/thesaurus</a>
Treebank	<a href="http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/xmldatasets">http://www.cs.washington.edu/research/xmldatasets</a>
TreeOfLife	<a href="http://tolweb.org/data/tolskeletaldump.xml">http://tolweb.org/data/tolskeletaldump.xml</a>
TrEMBL	<a href="ftp://ftp.uniprot.org/pub/databases/uniprot/current_release/knowledgebase">ftp://ftp.uniprot.org/pub/databases/uniprot/current_release/knowledgebase</a>
Wikicorpus	<a href="http://www-connex.lip6.fr/~denoyer/wikipediaXML">http://www-connex.lip6.fr/~denoyer/wikipediaXML</a>
XMark	<a href="http://www.xml-benchmark.org/">http://www.xml-benchmark.org/</a> generated with xmlgen
ZDNET	<a href="http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/">http://inex.is.informatik.uni-duisburg.de/2005/</a>
ZhWikiHist	<a href="http://dumps.wikimedia.org/zhwiki/latest/zhwiki-latest-pages-meta-history.xml.7z">http://dumps.wikimedia.org/zhwiki/latest/zhwiki-latest-pages-meta-history.xml.7z</a>
LibraryUKN	generated from university library data
MediaUKN	generated from university library data
DeepFS	generated from filesystem structure
University	generated from students test data
Feeds	compiled from news feeds
Twitter	compiled from Twitter feeds

# Chapter 110. Twitter

[Read this entry online in the BaseX Wiki.](#)

This article is part of the [Advanced User's Guide](#). It is about the usage of BaseX for processing and storing the live data stream of Twitter. We illustrate some statistics about the Twitter data and the performance of BaseX.

As Twitter attracts more and more users (over 140 million active users in 2012) and is generating large amounts of data (over 340 millions of short messages ('tweets') daily), it became a really exciting data source for all kind of analytics. Twitter provides the developer community with a set of [APIs](#) for retrieving the data about its users and their communication, including the Streaming API for data-intensive applications, the [Search API](#) for querying and filtering the messaging content, and the [REST API](#) for accessing the core primitives of the Twitter platform.

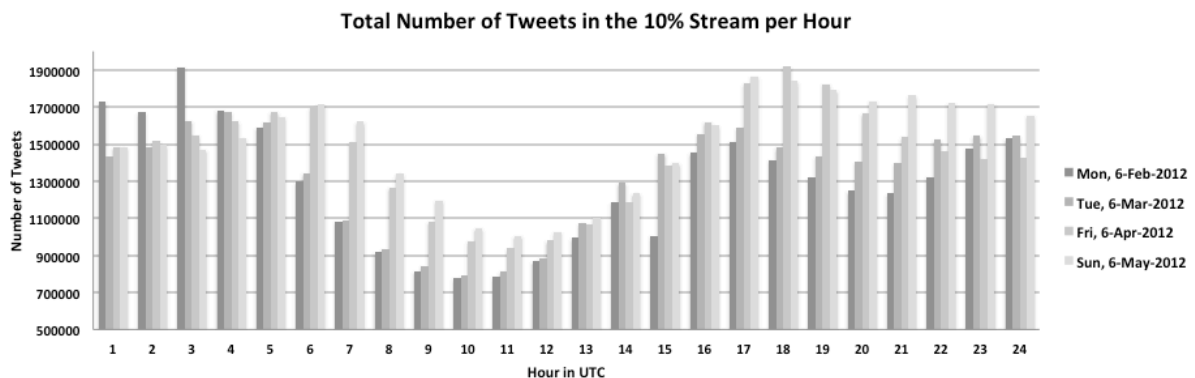
## BaseX as Twitter Storage

For retrieving the Twitter stream we connect with the Streaming API to the endpoint of Twitter and receive a never-ending tweet stream. As Twitter delivers the tweets as [JSON](#) objects, the data is converted into XML fragments. For this purpose, the parse function of the [XQuery JSON Module](#) is used. In the examples section both versions are shown ([tweet as JSON](#) and [tweet as XML](#)). For storing the tweets including the meta-data, we use the standard [insert](#) function of [XQuery Update](#).

## Twitter's Streaming Data

Each tweet object in the data stream contains the tweet message itself and over 60 data fields (for further information see the [fields description](#)). The following section shows the amount of data, that is delivered by the Twitter Streaming API to the connected endpoints with the 10% gardenhose access per hour on the 6th of the months February, March, April and May. It is the pure public live stream without any filtering applied.

## Statistics



Day	Description	Amount
Mon, 6-Feb-2012	Total tweets	30.824.976
	Average tweets per hour	1.284.374
	Average tweets per minute	21.406
	Average tweets per second	356
Tue, 6-Mar-2012	Total tweets	31.823.776
	Average tweets per hour	1.325.990
	Average tweets per minute	22.099
	Average tweets per second	368

Fri, 6-Apr-2012	Total tweets	34.638.976
	Average tweets per hour	1.443.290
	Average tweets per minute	24.054
	Average tweets per second	400
Sun, 6-May-2012	Total tweets	35.982.976
	Average tweets per hour	1.499.290
	Average tweets per minute	24.988
	Average tweets per second	416

## Example Tweet (JSON)

```
{
  "contributors": null,
  "text": "Using BaseX for storing the Twitter Stream",
  "geo": null,
  "retweeted": false,
  "in_reply_to_screen_name": null,
  "possibly_sensitive": false,
  "truncated": false,
  "entities": {
    "urls": [
      ],
    "hashtags": [
      ],
    "user_mentions": [
      ]
  },
  "in_reply_to_status_id_str": null,
  "id": 1984009055807*****,
  "in_reply_to_user_id_str": null,
  "source": "&lt;a href=\\\"http:\\/\\/twitterfeed.com\\\" rel=\\\"nofollow
\\&gt;twitterfeed&lt;\\/a&gt;",
  "favorited": false,
  "in_reply_to_status_id": null,
  "retweet_count": 0,
  "created_at": "Fri May 04 13:17:16 +0000 2012",
  "in_reply_to_user_id": null,
  "possibly_sensitive_editable": true,
  "id_str": "1984009055807****",
  "place": null,
  "user": {
    "location": "",
    "default_profile": true,
    "statuses_count": 9096,
    "profile_background_tile": false,
    "lang": "en",
    "profile_link_color": "0084B4",
    "id": 5024566**,
    "following": null,
    "protected": false,
    "favourites_count": 0,
    "profile_text_color": "333333",
    "contributors_enabled": false,
    "verified": false,
    "description": "http:\\/\\/basex.org",
    "profile_sidebar_border_color": "CODEED",
    "name": "BaseX",
    "profile_background_color": "CODEED",
    "created_at": "Sat Feb 25 04:05:30 +0000 2012",
    "default_profile_image": true,
  }
}
```

```

    "followers_count": 860,
    "geo_enabled": false,
    "profile_image_url_https": "https://si0.twimg.com/sticky/default_profile_images/default_profile_0_normal.png",
    "profile_background_image_url": "http://a0.twimg.com/images/themes/theme1/bg.png",
    "profile_background_image_url_https": "https://si0.twimg.com/images/themes/theme1/bg.png",
    "follow_request_sent": null,
    "url": "http://adf.ly/5ktAf",
    "utc_offset": null,
    "time_zone": null,
    "notifications": null,
    "friends_count": 2004,
    "profile_use_background_image": true,
    "profile_sidebar_fill_color": "DDEEF6",
    "screen_name": "BaseX",
    "id_str": "5024566**",
    "show_all_inline_media": false,
    "profile_image_url": "http://a0.twimg.com/sticky/default_profile_images/default_profile_0_normal.png",
    "is_translator": false,
    "listed_count": 0
  },
  "coordinates": null
}

```

## Example Tweet (XML)

```

<json booleans="retweeted possibly_sensitive truncated favorited
possibly_sensitive_editable default_profile profile_background_tile
protected contributors_enabled verified default_profile_image geo_enabled
profile_use_background_image show_all_inline_media is_translator"
numbers="id retweet_count statuses_count favourites_count followers_count
friends_count listed_count"
nulls="contributors geo in_reply_to_screen_name
in_reply_to_status_id_str in_reply_to_user_id_str
in_reply_to_status_id in_reply_to_user_id place following
follow_request_sent utc_offset time_zone notifications coordinates"
arrays="urls indices hashtags user_mentions"
objects="json entities user">
<contributors/>
<text>Using BaseX for storing the Twitter Stream</text>
<geo/>
<retweeted>>false</retweeted>
<in_reply_to_screen_name/>
<possibly_sensitive>>false</possibly_sensitive>
<truncated>>false</truncated>
<entities>
  <urls/>
  <hashtags/>
  <user_mentions/>
</entities>
<in_reply_to_status_id_str/>
<id>1984009055807*****</id>
<in_reply_to_user_id_str/>
<source><a href="http://twitterfeed.com" rel="nofollow">twitterfeed</a></source>
<favorited>>false</favorited>
<in_reply_to_status_id/>
<retweet_count>0</retweet_count>
<created_at>Fri May 04 13:17:16 +0000 2012</created_at>
<in_reply_to_user_id/>
<possibly_sensitive_editable>>true</possibly_sensitive_editable>
<id_str>1984009055807*****</id_str>

```

```

<place/>
<user>
  <location/>
  <default__profile>true</default__profile>
  <statuses__count>9096</statuses__count>
  <profile__background__tile>false</profile__background__tile>
  <lang>en</lang>
  <profile__link__color>0084B4</profile__link__color>
  <id>5024566**</id>
  <following/>
  <protected>false</protected>
  <favourites__count>0</favourites__count>
  <profile__text__color>333333</profile__text__color>
  <contributors__enabled>false</contributors__enabled>
  <verified>false</verified>
  <description>http://baseX.org</description>
  <profile__sidebar__border__color>CODEED</profile__sidebar__border__color>
  <name>BaseX</name>
  <profile__background__color>C0DEED</profile__background__color>
  <created__at>Sat Feb 25 04:05:30 +0000 2012</created__at>
  <default__profile__image>true</default__profile__image>
  <followers__count>860</followers__count>
  <geo__enabled>false</geo__enabled>
  <profile__image__url__https>https://si0.twimg.com/sticky/
default_profile_images/default_profile_0_normal.png</profile__image__url__https>
  <profile__background__image__url>http://a0.twimg.com/images/themes/theme1/
bg.png</profile__background__image__url>
  <profile__background__image__url__https>https://si0.twimg.com/images/themes/
theme1/bg.png</profile__background__image__url__https>
  <follow__request__sent/>
  <url>http://adf.ly/5ktAf</url>
  <utc__offset/>
  <time__zone/>
  <notifications/>
  <friends__count>2004</friends__count>
  <profile__use__background__image>true</profile__use__background__image>
  <profile__sidebar__fill__color>DDEEF6</profile__sidebar__fill__color>
  <screen__name>BaseX</screen__name>
  <id__str>5024566**</id__str>
  <show__all__inline__media>false</show__all__inline__media>
  <profile__image__url>http://a0.twimg.com/sticky/default_profile_images/
default_profile_0_normal.png</profile__image__url>
  <is__translator>false</is__translator>
  <listed__count>0</listed__count>
</user>
<coordinates/>
</json>

```

## BaseX Performance

The test show the time BaseX needs to insert large amounts of real tweets into a database. We can derive that BaseX scales very well and can keep up with the incoming amount of tweets in the stream. Some lower values can occur, cause the size of the tweets differ according to the meta-data contained in the tweet object. Note: The AUTOFLUSH option is set to FALSE.

System Setup: Mac OS X 10.6.8, 3.2 GHz Intel Core i3, 8 GB 1333 MHz DDR3 RAM BaseX Version: BaseX 7.3 beta

## Insert with XQuery Update

These tests show the performance of BaseX performing inserts with XQuery Update as single updates per tweet or bulk updates with different amount of tweets. The initial database just contained a root node <tweets/> and



all incoming tweets are inserted after converting from JSON to XML into the root node. The time needed for the inserts includes the conversion time.

### Single Updates

Amount of tweets	Time in seconds	Time in minutes	Database Size (without indexes)
1.000.000	492.26346	8.2	3396 MB
2.000.000	461.87326	7.6	6997 MB
3.000.000	470.7054	7.8	10452 MB

